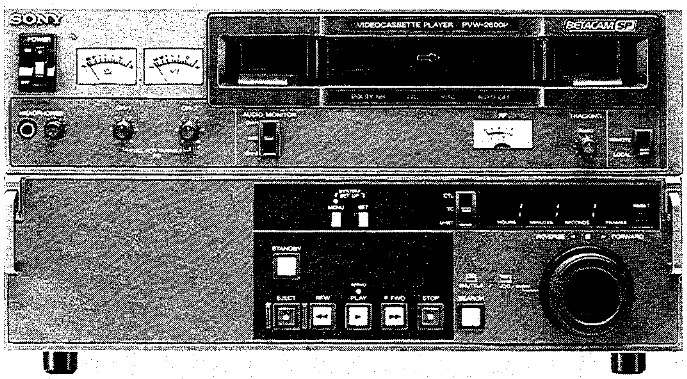
SONY®

VIDEOCASSETTE PLAYER

PVW-2600P

SERVICE MANUAL

Vol.1 1st Edition
Serial No.10001 and Higher


SONY
POWER
VIDEOCASSETTE PLAYER PVW-2600P
BETACAM SP
AUDIO MONITOR
TRACKING
STANDBY
EJECT
REW
PLAY
F FWD
STOP
SEARCH
HOURS
MINUTES
SECONDS
FRAMES
REVERSE
FORWARD

BETACAM SP
2000PRO

このマニュアルに記載されている事柄の著作権は当社にあり、説明内容は機器購入者の使用を目的としています。

従って、当社の許可なしに無断で複写したり、説明内容(操作、保守等)と異なる目的で本マニュアルを使用することを禁止します。

The material contained in this manual consists of information that is the property of Sony Corporation and is intended solely for use by the purchasers of the equipment described in this manual.

Sony Corporation expressly prohibits the duplication of any portion of this manual or the use thereof for any purpose other than the operation or maintenance of the equipment described in this manual without the express written permission of Sony Corporation.

Le matériel contenu dans ce manuel consiste en informations qui sont la propriété de Sony Corporation et sont destinées exclusivement à l'usage des acquéreurs de l'équipement décrit dans ce manuel.

Sony Corporation interdit formellement la copie de quelque partie que ce soit de ce manuel ou son emploi pour tout autre but que des opérations ou entretiens de l'équipement à moins d'une permission écrite de Sony Corporation.

Das in dieser Anleitung enthaltene Material besteht aus Informationen, die Eigentum der Sony Corporation sind, und ausschließlich zum Gebrauch durch den Käufer der in dieser Anleitung beschriebenen Ausrüstung bestimmt sind.

Die Sony Corporation untersagt ausdrücklich die Vervielfältigung jeglicher Teile dieser Anleitung oder den Gebrauch derselben für irgendeinen andere Zweck als die Bedienung oder Wartung der in dieser Anleitung beschriebenen Ausrüstung ohne ausdrückliche schriftliche Erlaubnis der Sony Corporation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume-1

1. INSTALLATION

1-1. Operational Environment 1-1
1-2. Installation 1-1
  1-2-1. Installation Space 1-1
  1-2-2. Installation Setup and Adjustment 1-2
1-3. Operating Voltage 1-2
1-4. Matching Connectors and Cables 1-3
1-5. Input/Output Signals of the Connectors 1-4
1-6. Select Switch Setting on the Board 1-7
1-7. System Control Setup 1-12
  1-7-1. Setup Menu 1-12
  1-7-2. Setup Operation 1-14
  1-7-3. Main Menu 1-16
  1-7-4. System Menu 1-18
1-8. Rack Mounting 1-24
1-9. Supplied Accessories 1-25
1-10. Optional Accessories 1-25
1-11. Setting Check Sheet 1-26

2. SERVICE INFORMATION

2-1. Specifications 2-1
2-2. Main Parts Location 2-3
  2-2-1. Location of Printed Circuit Board 2-3
  2-2-2. Location of Mechanical Parts /Components 2-4
  2-2-3. Location of Sensor (1) 2-4
  2-2-4. Location of Sensor (2)···Cassette Compartment 2-5
  2-2-5. Function of the Cassette Plug and Tub 2-6
2-3. Error Message 2-7
2-4. Printed Circuit Board 2-21
2-5. Removal of Cabinet 2-22
2-6. Removal/Installation of Cassette Compartment 2-23
2-7. Removal of Power Supply Block 2-24
2-8. Removal/Installation of Lower Control Panel Ass'y 2-24
2-9. Tilt the Lower Control Panel 2-25
2-10. Removal of Connector Panel 2-25
2-11. Note for Check and Maintenance of Printed Circuit Board 2-25
2-12. Extension Board 2-25
2-13. Notes on Repair Parts 2-26
  2-13-1. Notes on Repair Parts 2-26
  2-13-2. Replacement Procedure for Chip Parts 2-26
  2-13-3. Removal of PLCC IC 2-27
  2-13-4. Replacement of Fuse 2-27
2-14. How to Operate the Unit Without Cassette Tape 2-28
2-15. Take Out the Cassette Tape in Slacking ..2-29
2-16. Cleaning When Heads Clogged 2-30
2-17. Replacement of Boards 2-31
  2-17-1. SW-444 Board 2-31
  2-17-2. VR-117 Board 2-32
  2-17-3. MA-44 Board 2-32
  2-17-4. DP-138 Board 2-33
  2-17-5. VR-116 Board 2-34
  2-17-6. PTC-42 Board 2-34
2-18. Removal/Installation of Detection Switch ..2-35
  2-18-1. Removal of MC Sensor 2-35
2-19. Precaution in Replacement of DR-118 Board 2-35
2-20. Fixture 2-36
2-21. Introduction to Circuit 2-38
  2-21-1. Outline of the Betacam Method 2-38

3. MAINTENANCE MODE

3-1. Video System Check Mode (A0 : Video Check)........................3-3
3-2. Servo System Check Mode (B0 : Servo Check)........................3-5
3-3. Servo System Adjustment Mode (B1 : Servo Adjust)........................3-21
3-4. Other Check Mode (F : Others) 3-34

4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

4-1. Hours Meter 4-1
4-2. Maintenance After Repairs 4-2
  4-2-1. Cleaning Procedure of Video Head 4-2
  4-2-2. Cleaning Procedure of Stationary Heads 4-2
  4-2-3. Cleaning Procedure of Tape Movement Areas 4-2
4-3. Periodic Maintenance Table 4-3

5. REPLACEMENT OF MAJOR PARTS

5-1. General Information for Part Replacement and Adjustment 5-1
  5-1-1. Index for Adjustment Item 5-4
5-2. Upper Drum Assembly Replacement 5-5
  5-2-1. Upper Drum Eccentricity Adjustment ..5-9
5-3. Drum Assembly Replacement 5-11
  5-3-1. Drum Motor Operation Check 5-15

5-4. Drum Ground Shaft Assembly Replacement 5-17
5-5. Pinch Roller Assembly Replacement 5-18
5-6. Cleaning Roller Assembly Replacement 5-20
  5-6-1. Cleaning Roller Block Position Adjustment 5-21
5-7. Brake Lining Assembly Replacement 5-22
  5-7-1. Reel Brake Clearance Check 5-24
  5-7-2. Reel Brake Release Amount Adjustment 5-25
5-8. Tape Guide Replacement 5-26
  5-8-1. TG-4 Tape Guide Roller Replacement 5-27
  5-8-2. Other Tape Guide Rollers Replacement 5-28
5-9. Cleaning Solenoid Replacement 5-30
5-10. Reel Table Replacement 5-31
  5-10-1. Cassette Pillar (S) Height Adjustment 5-32
  5-10-2. Reel Table Height Adjustment 5-34
  5-10-3. Reel Rotation Detector Position Adjustment 5-36
5-11. Reel Motor Plate Replacement 5-38
5-12. Reel Motor Replacement 5-41
  5-12-1. Reel Motor Shaft Slantness Adjustment 5-44
  5-12-2. Reel Motor Operation Check 5-46
  5-12-3. Reel FG Duty Adjustment 5-47
  5-12-4. S Reel Offset/Friction Adjustment 5-48
  5-12-5. S Reel Torque Adjustment 5-50
  5-12-6. T Reel Offset/Friction Adjustment 5-52
  5-12-7. T Reel Torque Adjustment 5-54
5-13. Reel Position Motor Replacement 5-56
  5-13-1. Reel Position Motor Operation Check 5-57
5-14. Reel Position Sensor Replacement 5-58
5-15. Threading Motor Replacement 5-59
  5-15-1. Threading Motor Operation Check 5-60
5-16. S Slider Assembly Replacement 5-62
5-17. T Slider Assembly Replacement 5-65
5-18. P Slider Assembly Replacement 5-69
5-19. S Tension Regulator Arm Assembly Replacement 5-72
  5-19-1. S Tension Regulator Arm Operating Position Adjustment 5-74
  5-19-2. S Tension Sensor Sensitivity Adjustment 5-78
  5-19-3. FWD Back Tension Adjustment 5-84
  5-19-4. REV Back Tension Adjustment 5-87
5-20. T Tension Regulator Arm Assembly Replacement 5-91
  5-20-1. T Tension Regulator Arm Operating Position Adjustment 5-93
  5-20-2. T Tension Sensor Sensitivity Adjustment 5-97
5-21. Pinch Press Block Replacement 5-100
5-22. Pinch Solenoid Replacement 5-101
  5-22-1. Pinch Solenoid Position Adjustment 5-104
5-23. Threading Ring Replacement 5-106
5-24. Threading Gear Replacement 5-110
5-25. CTL Head Replacement 5-115
5-26. AUDIO/TC Head Replacement 5-117
5-27. Capstan Motor Replacement 5-120
  5-27-1. Capstan Motor Operation Check 5-122
  5-27-2. Capstan FG Duty Adjustment 5-123
  5-27-3. Capstan Speed Adjustment 5-125

6. TAPE RUN ALIGNMENT

6-1. General Information for Tape Run Adjustment 6-1
6-2. Audio/TC Head Zenith Adjustment 6-4
6-3. Tape Running Adjustment 6-6
6-4. Confirmation of Video Tracking 6-8
  6-4-1. Video Tracking Adjustment (1) 6-10
  6-4-2. Video Tracking Adjustment (2) 6-14
  6-4-3. Video Tracking Adjustment (3) 6-18
6-5. CTL Head Height Adjustment 6-20
6-6. CTL Head Position Adjustment 6-22
6-7. Audio Head Height Adjustment 6-24
6-8. Audio Head Phase Adjustment 6-26
6-9. Audio Head Head-to-Tape Contact Adjustment 6-28
6-10. TC Head Position Adjustment 6-30
6-11. Audio Level Adjustment (in REV Mode) 6-32
6-12. RF Switching Position Adjustment 6-34
6-13. Video Head Dihedral Check 6-36
6-14. Picture Splitting Compensation Adjustment 6-37

7. GENERAL INFORMATION FOR ELECTRICAL ADJUSTMENT

7-1. Adjustment Component Index 7-1
7-2. Required Equipment 7-4
7-3. Test Signal 7-5

8. POWER SUPPLY AND SYSTEM CONTROL ALIGNMENT

8-1. Switching Regulator Voltage Check 8-1
8-2. Character Position Adjustment 8-1

9. SERVO SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

9-1. Search Dial Assembly Sensor Duty Adjustment 9-2

10. AUDIO/TIME CODE SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

10-1. Audio PB Dolby Off Frequency Response Adjustment 10-7
  10-1-1. CH-1 Audio PB Dolby Off Frequency Response Adjustment 10-7
  10-1-2. CH-2 Audio PB Dolby Off Frequency Response Adjustment 10-8
  10-1-3. CH-1 Audio PB Dolby Off Metal Frequency Response Adjustment 10-9
  10-1-4. CH-1 Audio PB Phase Adjustment 10-10
  10-1-5. CH-2 Audio PB Dolby Off Metal Frequency Response Adjustment 10-12
  10-1-6. CH-2 Audio PB Phase Adjustment 10-13
10-2. Search Mode Audio PB Level Check 10-14
  10-2-1. CH-1 Search Mode Audio Oxide/Metal PB Level Check 10-14
  10-2-2. CH-2 Search Mode Audio Oxide/Metal PB Level Check 10-14
10-3. Audio Meter Adjustment 10-14
10-4. Audio Monitor Out Level Check 10-15
  10-4-1. CH-1 Audio Monitor Out Level Check 10-15
  10-4-2. CH-2 Audio Monitor Out Level Check 10-15
10-5. Headphones Level Check 10-16

11. VIDEO SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

11-1. VP Board (RF, DM System) Adjustment 11-15
  11-1-1. Y PB RF Level Adjustment (Metal) 11-15
  11-1-2. RF Meter Adjustment (Metal) 11-15
  11-1-3. Y PB RF Level Adjustment (Oxide) 11-16
  11-1-4. C PB RF Level Adjustment (Metal) 11-17
  11-1-5. C PB RF Level Adjustment (Oxide) 11-17
  11-1-6. Y and C Demodulator Gain Adjustment (Metal) 11-18
  11-1-7. Y/C Demodulator Gain Adjustment (Oxide) 11-19
  11-1-8. Y and C Limiter Balance Adjustment 11-20
  11-1-9. Y and C Demodulator Balance Adjustment 11-24
  11-1-10. Y and C OMC Adjustment (Metal) 11-28
  11-1-11. Y and C OMC Adjustment (Oxide) 11-29
  11-1-12. PB Y Frequency Response Adjustment (Metal) 11-30
  11-1-13. PB Y Frequency Response Adjustment (Oxide) 11-31
  11-1-14. PB C Frequency Response Adjustment (Metal) 11-32
  11-1-15. PB C Frequency Response Adjustment (Oxide) 11-33
  11-1-16. Y DOC Sensitivity Adjustment 11-35
  11-1-17. C DOC Sensitivity Adjustment 11-36
11-2. TBC Board Adjustment 11-38
  11-2-1. Y and C TBC Input Level Check 11-38
  11-2-2. Y TBC Output Level and Gain Adjustment 11-39
  11-2-3. C TBC Output Level and Gain Adjustment 11-40
  11-2-4. Y and C Normal VCO Adjustment 11-42
  11-2-5. INT SC Frequency Adjustment 11-43
  11-2-6. U−V Axis Phase (B−Y, R−Y Phase) Adjustment 11-44
  11-2-7. TBC Tracking Adjustment 11-45
11-3. VP Board (VO, EN System) Adjustment 11-46
  11-3-1. ENC Y Level Adjustment 11-46
  11-3-2. COMPONENT 2 and 1 Y OUT Level Adjustment 11-47
  11-3-3. S-VIDEO OUT Y Level Adjustment 11-47
  11-3-4. VIDEO OUT 1 and 2 Y Level Adjustment 11-48
  11-3-5. VIDEO OUT 3 and MONITOR OUT Y Level Adjustment 11-48
  11-3-6. COMPONENT 2 and 1 R−Y OUT Level Adjustment 11-49
  11-3-7. COMPONENT 2 and 1 B−Y OUT Level Adjustment 11-50
  11-3-8. COMPONENT 2 B−Y CF ID Level Adjustment 11-51
  11-3-9. COMPONENT 2 Y VISC Level Adjustment 11-52
  11-3-10. VIDEO OUT 1 ENC SC Leak Adjustment 11-53
  11-3-11. VIDEO OUT 1 Chroma Level Adjustment 11-54
  11-3-12. VIDEO OUT 1 Burst Level Adjustment 11-54
  11-3-13. VIDEO OUT 2 Chroma Level and Burst Level Check 11-55
  11-3-14. VIDEO OUT 3 Chroma Level and Burst Level Check 11-56

11-3-15. MONITOR OUT Chroma Level and Burst Level Check 11-57
11-3-16. S-VIDEO OUT Chroma Level and Burst Level Check 11-58

12. VIDEO OVERALL ALIGNMENT

12-1. Y and C PB RF Frequency Response Adjustment 12-11
12-2. Noise Reduce Adjustment 12-12
12-3. Y and C BID Level Check 12-13
12-4. Y and C WCK Frequency Adjustment 12-15
12-5. Y and C Error Offset Adjustment 12-16
12-6. INT REF. VIDEO OUT Level Adjustment 12-16
12-7. PB Video Phase Adjustment 12-17
12-8. PB Composite Y/C Delay Adjustment (Metal/Oxide) 12-20
12-9. PB Component Y/C Delay Adjustment (Metal/Oxide) 12-22
12-10. Encode CF Phase Adjustment 12-24
12-11. Reference CF Phase Adjustment 12-26
12-12. VISC Lock in Adjustment 12-28
12-13. VISC Regen Phase Adjustment 12-30
12-14. VISC Tracking Check 12-32
12-15. H Shift Check 12-33
12-16. No Burst REF IN Check 12-34
12-17. INT SCH Phase Adjustment 12-35
12-18. DUB OUT REF IN Check 12-36
12-19. Play Back Component Linearity Check 12-36

13. SIMPLE ALIGNMENT
(This section will be available as a supplement.)

Volume-2

14. BLOCK DIAGRAM

15. BOARD LAYOUT

16. SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

17. SEMICONDUCTOR PIN ASSIGNMENT

18. REPLACEABLE PARTS & OPTIONAL FIXTURE

19. CHANGED PARTS

INSTALLATION

SECTION 1
INSTALLATION

Be sure to install the PVW-2600P in locations satisfying the required operational environment described below to assure the PVW-2600P's superior performance and to maintain the excellent serviceability and accessibility.

1-1. OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

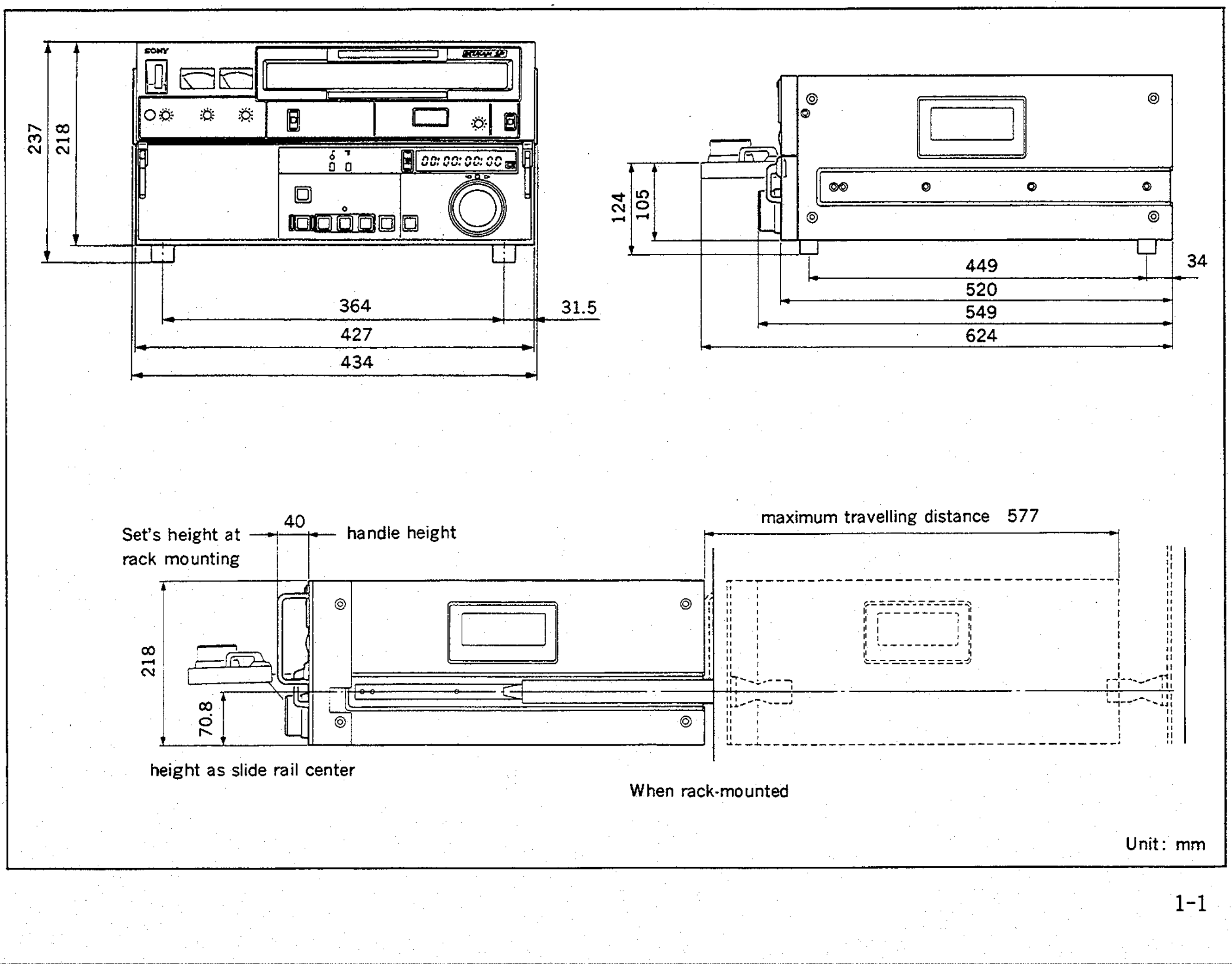
• Operating temperature	:	+5 °C to +40 °C (Good air circulation is essential to prevent internal heat build-up. Place the unit in location with sufficient air circulation. Do not block the ventilation holes on the cabinet and the rear panel.)
• Humidity	:	80% or less
• Storage temperature	:	−20 °C to +60 °C
• Locations to avoid	:	• Areas where the unit will be exposed to direct sunlight or any other strong lights. • Dusty areas or areas where it is subject to vibration. • Areas with strong electric or magnetic fields. • Areas near heat sources.

1-2. INSTALLATION

1-2-1. Installation Space

(1) The rear side must be at least 40 cm away from the walls for ventilation and maintenance.

(2) When the unit is operated on a desk or similar condition, assure that the clearance above the unit is at least 40 cm to provide accessibility to the printed circuit boards and other mechanical parts. Note that it is not necessary to provide the space when the unit is mounted in a rack since the printed circuit boards can be repaired after it is pulled out.


237
218
364
427
434
31.5
124
105
449
520
549
624
34
Set's height at rack mounting
40
handle height
maximum travelling distance 577
218
70.8
height as slide rail center
When rack-mounted
Unit: mm

1-2-2. Installation Setup and Adjustment

When the unit is installed, be sure to perform the following setup and adjustment. If the adjustment is not performed, the unit may not oprerate properly.
Refer to the operation manual "Chapter 3 Setting Up the Unit" for setup and adjustment.

(1) 75 Ω termination switch setting : 75 Ω ON/OFF

Further, under the applications, perform the following setup and adjustment.

- In case of performing time code editing.
  (1) Time code reader mode setting
- In case of using as editing system.
  (1) Put the reference video signal to REF. VIDEO IN connector.
  (2) H system phase adjustment
  (3) SC system phase adjustment

1-3. OPERATING VOLTAGE

- Power voltage : 90-264 V ac
- Power frequency : 48-64 Hz
- Power consumption : 130 W

1-4. MATCHING CONNECTORS AND CABLES

When external cables are connected to the connector on a connector panel during maintenance, the hardware listed below (or equivalents) must be used.

PVW-2600P side Connector	Matching Connector/Cable	
Panel Indication	**Connector/Cable**	**Sony Part No.**
VIDEO INPUT REF. VIDEO	BNC, MALE	1-560-069-11
VIDEO OUTPUT 1/2/3 REF. VIDEO COMPONENT 2 (Y, R-Y, B-Y)	BNC, MALE	1-560-069-11
COMPONENT 1	PLUG, 12P, MALE	1-560-995-00
DUB (U-matic)	PLUG, 7P, MALE	1-508-948-00
	VDC-3 (3 m) VDC-5 (5 m)	optional accessory
S-VIDEO	YC-15V (1.5 m)	optional accessory
AUDIO OUTPUT CH-1/CH-2/MONITOR	XLR 3P, FEMALE	1-508-083-00
TIME CODE OUT	BNC, MALE	1-560-069-11
MONITOR	RECTANGULAR, 8P, MALE	1-506-161-00
TBC REMOTE	CONNECTOR, D-SUB 15P, FEMALE and JUNCTION SHELL, 15P	1-561-610-21 1-561-929-00
REMOTE	CONNECTOR, D-SUB 9P, MALE and JUNCTION SHELL, 9P	1-560-651-00 1-561-749-00
	RCC-5G (5 m) RCC-10G (10 m) RCC-30G (30 m)	optional accessory

1-5. INPUT/OUTPUT SIGNALS OF THE CONNECTORS

INPUT

REF VIDEO : BNC×2 (bridging connection)
Black burst or composite video 1.0±0.3 V p-p, 75 Ω (ON/OFF), sync negative

OUTPUT

REF VIDEO : BNC
Black burst, 75 Ω, sync negative

VIDEO OUTPUT 1/2/3 : BNC×3
Composite video, 1.0 V p-p, 75 Ω, sync negative
Superimposed time code etc. output from VIDEO OUTPUT 3, as specified by CHARACTER switch on a sub control panel.

COMPONENT 1 : Circular 12 pin
Y : 1.0 V p-p, 75 Ω, sync negative
R-Y : 0.7 V p-p, 75 Ω
B-Y : 0.7 V p-p, 75 Ω

COMPONENT 2 : BNC×3
Y : 1.0 V p-p, 75 Ω, sync negative
R-Y : 0.7 V p-p, 75 Ω
B-Y : 0.7 V p-p, 75 Ω

DUB (U-matic) (with an optional BKW-2030) : Circular 7 pin
Y : 0.5 V p-p (75 Ω load)
C : 0.5 V p-p (75 Ω load)

S-VIDEO : Circular 4 pin
Y : 1.0 V p-p, 75 Ω, sync negative
C : 0.7 V p-p, 75 Ω (burst 0.286 V p-p)

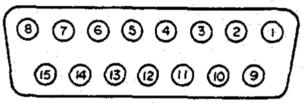
AUDIO OUTPUT CH-1/2/MONITOR
: XLR 3P×3
+4 dBu (600 Ω load), low impedance, balanced
(0 dBu=0.775 V rms)

TIME CODE OUT : BNC
2.2 V p-p (600 Ω load), unbalanced

HEADPHONES : Stereo phone jack
−14 dBu max. (8 Ω load)
(0 dBu=0.775 V rms)

TBC REMOTE

<external view>



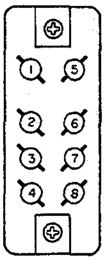
TBC REMOTE

Pin No.	Description	Operating Voltage	IN/OUT
1	SYNC CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
2	HUE CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
3	SC CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
4	VIDEO LEVEL CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
5	SETUP CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
6	CHROMA LEVEL CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
7	−12 V	−12 V	OUT
8	GND	——	IN/OUT
9	FRAME GND	——	IN/OUT
10	N C	——	——
11	N C	——	——
12	N C	——	——
13	Y/C DELAY CONTROL	−5 V to +5 V	IN
14	N C	——	——
15	+12 V	+12 V	OUT

MONITOR

Pin No.	Output Signal
1	AUDIO MONITOR OUT (X)
2	VIDEO OUT (X)
3	——
4	——
5	AUDIO MONITOR OUT (G)
6	VIDEO OUT (G)
7	——
8	——

<external view>

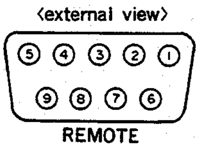


MONITOR

VIDEO : 1.0 V p-p, 75 Ω, sync negative
Superimposed time code etc. output as specified by sub control panel switches.

AUDIO : −5 dBu (47 kΩ load), unbalanced
(0 dBu=0.775 V rms)

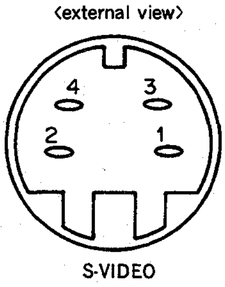
REMOTE


‹external view›
⑤ ④ ③ ② ①
⑨ ⑧ ⑦ ⑥
REMOTE

Pin No.	Controlling Device	Controlled Device
1	Frame Ground	Frame Ground
2	Receive A	Transmit A
3	Transmit B	Receive B
4	Transmit Common	Receive Common
5	—	—
6	Receive Common	Transmit Common
7	Receive B	Transmit B
8	Transmit A	Receive A
9	Frame Ground	Frame Ground

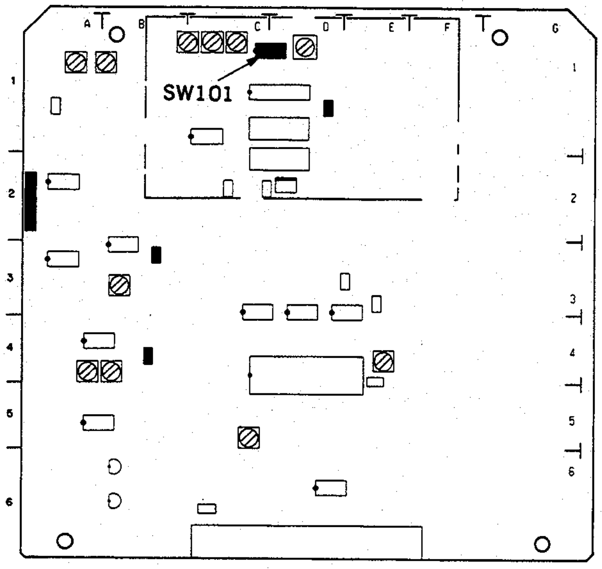
S-VIDEO

Pin No.	Description
1	Y (G)
2	C (G)
3	Y (X)
4	C (X)


‹external view›
4
3
2
1
S-VIDEO

1-6. SELECT SWITCH SETTING ON THE BOARD

AU-148 board



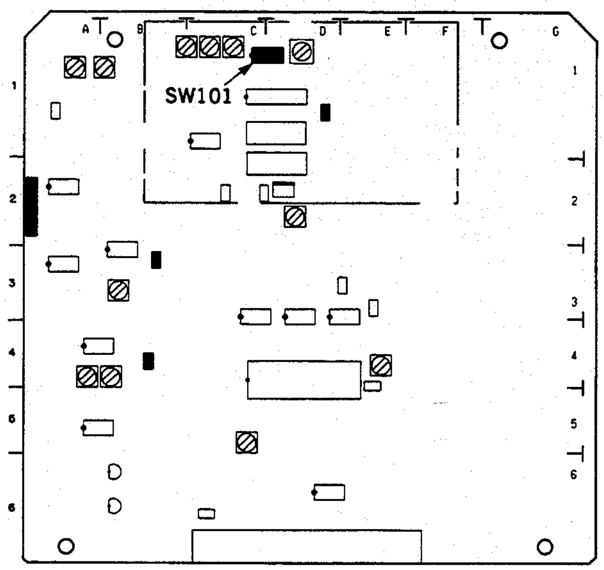
SW101 (C-1/AU-148): AUDIO HEAD TUNE ADJ SW

By coupling with LV101 on the AU-148 board, adjust the CH-1 head amp high frequency response (head vibration). (Refer to Section 10-1.)

This switch is used in audio head tune adjustment. If the switch setting is changed when this adjustment is not performed, audio frequency response may be failed.

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to the position based on the adjustment condition.

AU-149 board



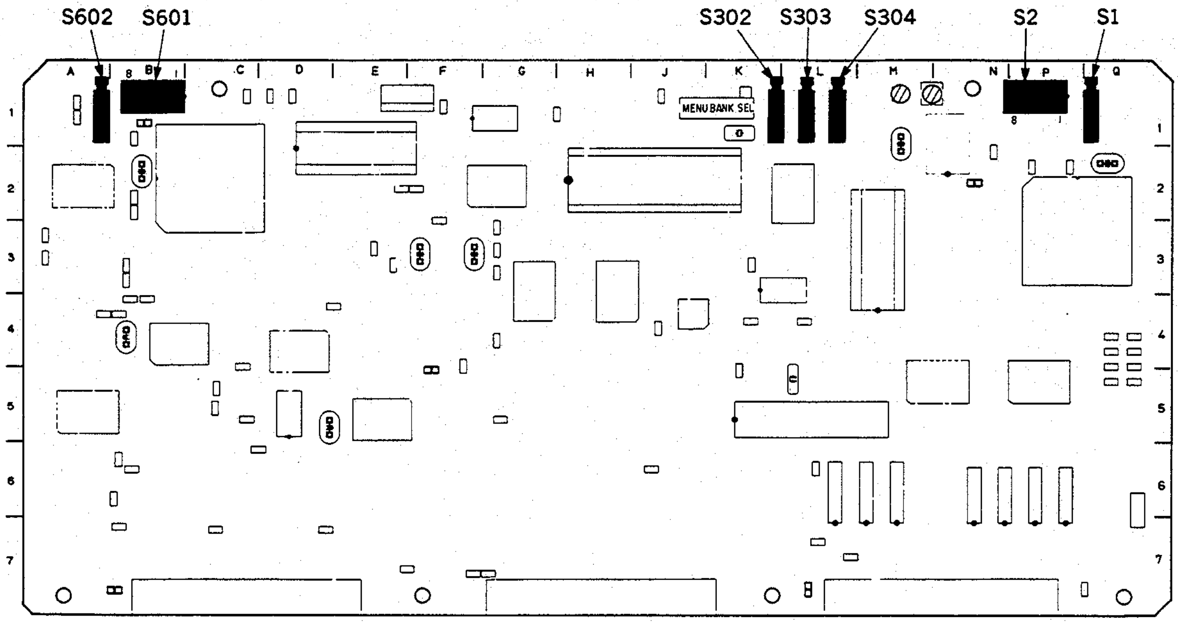
SW101 (C-1/AU-149): AUDIO HEAD TUNE ADJ SW

By coupling with LV101 on the AU-149 board, adjust the CH-2 head amp high frequency response (head vibration). (Refer to Section 10-1.)

This switch is used in audio head tune adjustment. If the switch setting is changed when this adjustment is not performed, audio frequency response may be failed.

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to the position based on the adjustment condition.

SS-48 board



S1 (Q-1/SS-48) : SY/SV RESET SW

When this switch is pressed, systems are initialized as the POWER is turned ON.

S2 (P-1/SS-48) : SY DIP SW

S2-1 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-2 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-3 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-4 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-5 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-6 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-7 (P-1/SS-48) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S2-8 (P-1/SS-48) : KEY BOARD SELECT

This switch should be set to CLOSE.

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to CLOSE.

S302 (K-1/SS-48) : ADJ (+) SW

When this switch is pressed, the unit is put into the maintenance mode, or execute a menu. (Refer to Section 3 Maintenance Mode.)

S303 (L-1/SS-48) : ADJ (−) SW

In the maintenance mode, when this switch is pressed, you can return a menu display or mode display, or finish the maintenance mode. (Refer to Section 3 Maintenance Mode.)

S304 (L-1/SS-48) : Does not use.

S601 (B-1/SS-48) : SV DIP SW

S601-1 (B-1/SS-48) : factory use
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S601-2 (B-1/SS-48) : factory use
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S601-3 (B-1/SS-48) : factory use
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S601-4 (B-1/SS-48) : SERVO ADJUST
Set this switch to ON (CLOSE), when perform the servo system adjustment mode (B1 : SERVO ADJUST) in the maintenance mode. (Refer to Section 3-3.)
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF (OPEN).

S601-5 (B-1/SS-48) : factory use
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

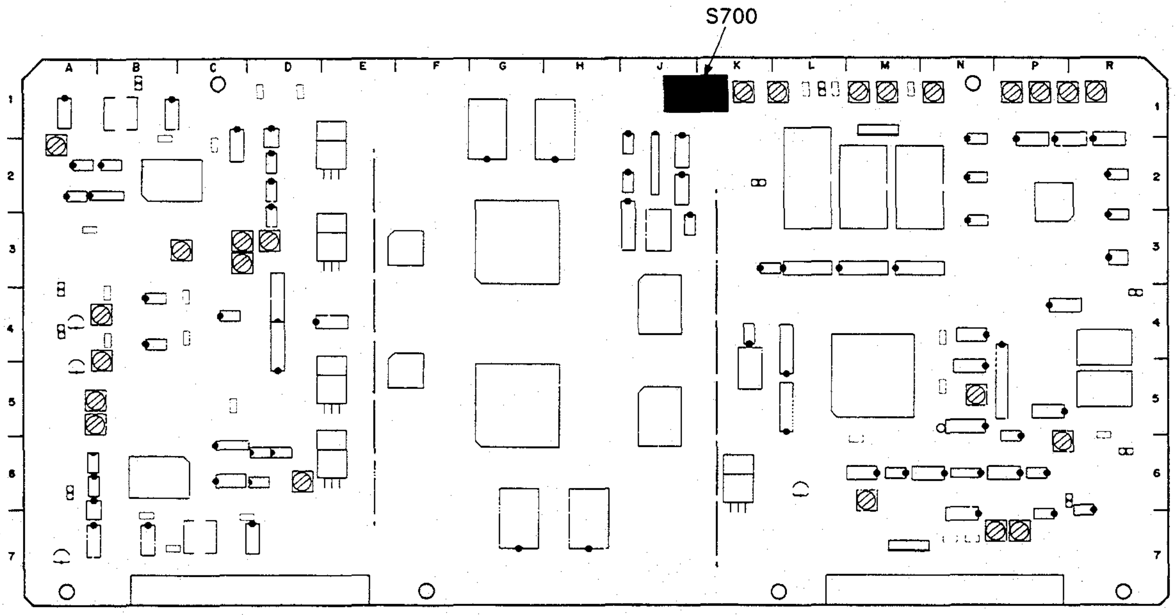
S601-6 (B-1/SS-48) : factory use
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S601-7 (B-1/SS-48) : SERVO CHECK
Set this switch to ON (CLOSE) to perform the servo system check mode (B0 : SERVO CHECK) in the maintenance mode. (Refer to Section 3-2.)
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF (OPEN).

S601-8 (B-1/SS-48) :
This switch is for selecting the initial data.
OPEN : NOVRAM data
CLOSE : ROM data
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OPEN.

S602 (A-1/SS-48) : REEL POSITION SELECT SW
When this switch is pressed, reel tables are moved to large or small position forcibly.
The reel tables are moved toggle by pressing the switch.

TBC-18 board



S700-1 (J-1/TBC-18) : LEVEL REF SW

This switch is used for Y/C level adjustment. (Refer to Section 11-2-2 and 11-2-3.)
When this switch is set to ON, reference level signal of internal data is output and D/A, A/D level can be adjusted.
When the adjustment is completed, this switch is surely set to OFF.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

S700-2 (J-1/TBC-18) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

S700-3 (J-1/TBC-18) : Y MUTE SW

This switch is for muting the Y signal of TBC output.
When this switch is set to ON, the Y signal of all video output is muted and is not output.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

S700-4 (J-1/TBC-18) : C MUTE SW

This switch is for muting the R-Y, B-Y signal of TBC output.
When this switch is set to ON, the R-Y, B-Y signal of COMPONENT 1/2 OUT are muted and are not output. And the chroma signal of COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT is muted, is not output. (The color burst is not muted and is output.)
When the unit is shipped, this swich is set to OFF.

S700-5 (J-1/TBC-18) : COMB SW

The R-Y, B-Y signal of TBC output is filtered by simple comb filter with this switch.
If there is the H step difference which is not-correctable by LCC(Line Crawl Canceller) on the PB video signal, this switch is set to ON.
When this switch is set to ON, this signal is corrected by comb filter.
When this switch is set to OFF, the PB video signal is corrected by LCC only.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

S700-6 (J-1/TBC-18) : VISC TEST SW

This switch is for VISC phase check and adjustment. (Refer to Section 12-11.)
When this switch is set to ON, the VISC of TBC input is out to TBC output as it is. So this is useful for adjustment.
This switch is set to OFF in usual, the regenerated VISC is out to COMPONENT 1/2 OUT.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

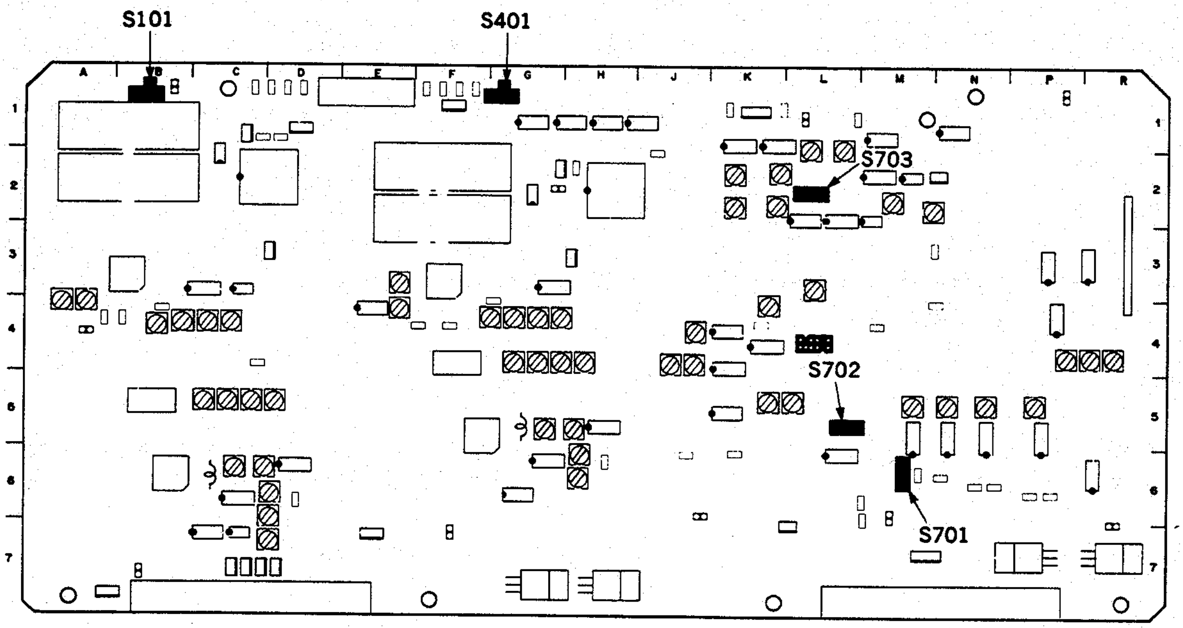
S700-7 (J-1/TBC-18) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

S700-8 (J-1/TBC-18) : factory use

When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF.

VP-33 board



S101 (B-1/VP-33): Y RF AGC ON/OFF SW

When this switch is set to OFF, AGC is set to OFF.
This switch is set to ON in usual.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to ON.

S401 (G-1/VP-33): C RF AGC ON/OFF SW

When this switch is set to OFF, AGC is set to OFF.
This switch is set to ON in usual.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to ON.

S701 (M-6/VP-33): VISC MUTE ON/OFF SW

The VISC which is inserted in the 11th line of COMPONENT Y signal and output to COMPONENT 1/2 OUT is muted or not by this switch.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF. (VISC is inserted.)

S702 (L-5/VP-33): ENC CHROMA MUTE SW

The chroma signal of COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT (including color burst) is on or off by this switch. (The signal of COMPONENT OUT is not affected by this switch.)
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to OFF (color mode).

S703 (L-2/VP-33): CF ID SW

The CF ID inserted in the 15th line of COMPONENT B-Y signal is output or not to COMPONENT 1/2 OUT by this switch.
When the unit is shipped, this switch is set to ON (CF ID is inserted).

1-7. SYSTEM CONTROL SETUP

Various select switches are provided on the control panel, sub control panel, and printed circuit board in the unit. (Refer to Section 1-6 "Select Switch Setting on the Board".)
For the system control items described below, the reference control settings "setup" can be set with menus according to the system.

1-7-1. Setup Menu

The setup menu has Main Menu and System Menu.
The each menu contains the following items.

1. Main Menu

ITEM-000 SERIES : OPERATIONAL KEY PARAMETER

001 : PRELOLL TIME
002 : CHARACTER H-POSITION
003 : CHARACTER V-POSITION
005 : DISPLAY INFORMATION SELECT
006 : LOCAL FUNCTION ENABLE
007 : TAPE TIMER DISPLAY
009 : CHARACTER TYPE
010 : CHARACTER H SIZE
011 : CHARACTER V SIZE

2. System Menu

ITEM-100 SERIES : OPERATIONAL PARAMETER

101 : SELECTION FOR SEARCH DIAL ENABLE
102 : MAXIMUM TAPE SPEED
104 : AUDIO MUTING TIME
105 : REF VIDEO MISSING ALARM
106 : CAPSTAN LOCK

ITEM-200 SERIES : INTERFACE OF ROMOTE CONTROL

202 : CF FLAG REPLY

ITEM-300 SERIES : EDITING PARAMETER

302 : CAPSTAN RE-LOCKING DIRECTION
307 : AUTO-DELETION FOR INCONSISTENT DATA

ITEM-400 SERIES : PREROLL PARAMETER

401 : FUNCTION MODE AFTER CUE-UP
402 : TIME REFERENCE FOR PREROLL
403 : AUTOMATIC PREROLL REFERENCE ENTRY

ITEM-500 SERIES : TAPE PROTECTION PARAMETER

501 : STILL TIMER
502 : TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM SEARCH
503 : TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM STOP
504 : DRUM ROTATION IN STANDBY OFF

ITEM-700 SERIES : VIDEO CONTROL PARAMETER

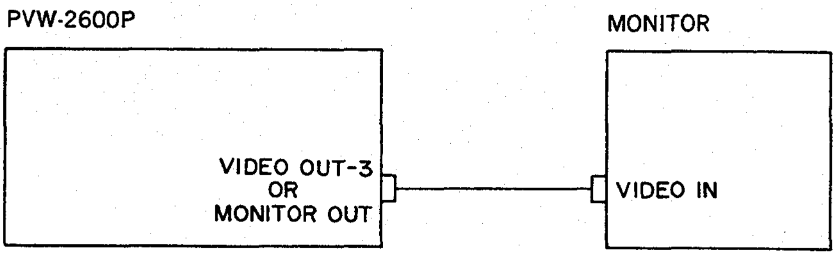
703 : BLANK LINE SELECT

ITEM-900 SERIES : ADJUSTMENT USE ONLY
(FACTORY USE PARAMETER)

901 : AUDIO NR IN SP MODE
902 : EMERGENCY TAPE PROTECTION

1-7-2. Setup Operation

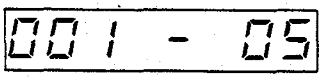
The setup conditions appears in the time counter on the control panel and video monitor display.
The time counter display indicates the item number, and data number only.
The informations about the item and data can be superimposed on a video monitor display connected to the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR OUT connector on the connector panel of the unit. However the CHARACTER switch on the sub control panel must be set to ON.



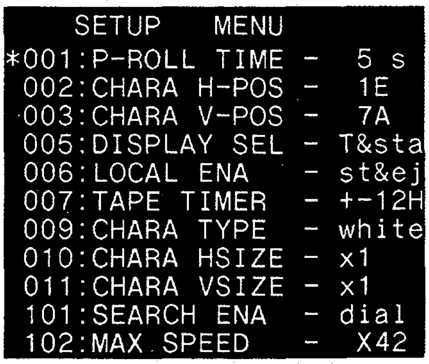
1. Put the unit into setup menu mode.

Press the SYSTEM SET-UP MENU button on the sub control panel.

time counter display



monitor display



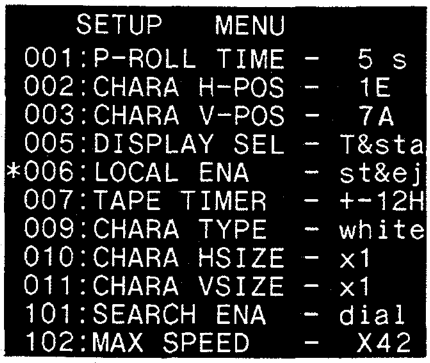
```
   SETUP    MENU
*001:P-ROLL TIME -   5 s
 002:CHARA H-POS -   1E
 003:CHARA V-POS -   7A
 005:DISPLAY SEL - T&sta
 006:LOCAL ENA   - st&ej
 007:TAPE TIMER  - +-12H
 009:CHARA TYPE  - white
 010:CHARA HSIZE - x1
 011:CHARA VSIZE - x1
 101:SEARCH ENA  - dial
 102:MAX SPEED   -  X42
```

2. Select the item.

Push the search dial, and the unit enters the JOG mode.
Rotate the search dial on the control panel.
Rotate the dial clockwise to display higher-numbered items, and counterclockwise to display lower-numbered items.

time counter display

monitor display

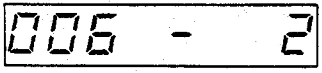


```
   SETUP    MENU
 001:P-ROLL TIME -   5 s
 002:CHARA H-POS -   1E
 003:CHARA V-POS -   7A
 005:DISPLAY SEL - T&sta
*006:LOCAL ENA   - st&ej
 007:TAPE TIMER  - +-12H
 009:CHARA TYPE  - white
 010:CHARA HSIZE - x1
 011:CHARA VSIZE - x1
 101:SEARCH ENA  - dial
 102:MAX SPEED   -  X42
```

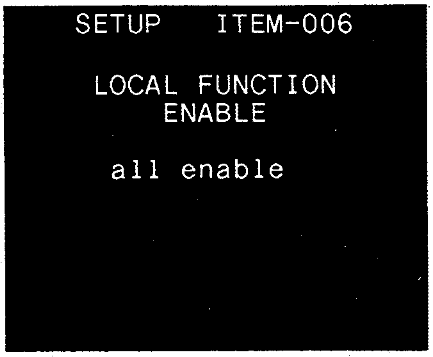
3. Change the data.

Pressing the SEARCH button, rotate the search dial.
Rotate the dial clockwise to display higher-numbered data, and counterclockwise to display lower-numbered data.
After changing the data, release the SEARCH button to select the data.

time counter display



monitor display


SETUP ITEM-006

LOCAL FUNCTION
ENABLE

all enable

This is displayed during pressing the SEARCH button.

Repeat Step 2 and 3 until you are satisfied with the settings of all menu items.

When changes are cancelled and restored to the former settings, press the SYSTEM SET-UP MENU button.

4. Save the data, and finish the setup menu mode.

Press the SET button on the sub control panel.

- The setup data is saved to a nonvolatile memory (NV-RAM) and remains even if the POWER switch is turned off.

Restoring the factory settings

If it is wishing to be restored all data to the factory setting, press the MENU button of the SYSTEM-UP on the sub control panel and press the RESET button at the upper right of the time counter.

1-7-3. Main Menu

The numbers enclosed with $\boxed{\quad}$ in the data column indicate the factory preset settings.

ITEM-000 SERIES : OPERATIONAL KEY PARAMETER

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
001	**PREROLL TIME**	00	0 sec	Set the preroll time to between 0 and 15 seconds in steps of 1 second. A preroll time of at least 3 seconds is recommended when using this unit for editing.
		01	1 sec	
		02	2 sec	
		03	3 sec	
		04	4 sec	
		$\boxed{05}$	$\boxed{\text{5 sec}}$	
		06	6 sec	
		07	7 sec	
		08	8 sec	
		09	9 sec	
		10	10 sec	
		11	11 sec	
		12	12 sec	
		13	13 sec	
		14	14 sec	
		15	15 sec	
002	**CHARACTER H-POSITION**	00		Adjust the horizontal position of the characters superimposed on the signal output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector. The hexadecimal value "00" is for the far left of the screen and "57" (decimal 87) for the far right. Increasing the value moves the position of the characters to the right. It is possible to place the character to 88 positions.
		≀		
		$\boxed{1E}$		
		≀		
		57		
003	**CHARACTER V-POSITION**	00		Adjust the vertical position of the characters superimposed on the signal output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector. The hexadecimal value "00" is for the top of the screen and "94" (decimal 148) for the bottom. Increasing the value lowers the position of the screen. It is possible to place the character to 149 positions.
		≀		
		$\boxed{7A}$		
		≀		
		94		
005	**DISPLAY INFORMATION SELECT**	$\boxed{0}$	$\boxed{\text{time data \& status}}$	Determines the data output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector when the CHARACTER ON/OFF switch on the sub control panel to ON. **0** : Timer information and VTR status. **1** : Timer information and users bit. **2** : Timer information and CTL. **3** : Timer information (LTC and VITC). **4** : Timer information only (LTC or VITC).
		1	time data & UB	
		2	time data & CTL	
		3	time data & time data	
		4	time data & only	

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
006	**LOCAL FUNCTION ENABLE**	0 $\boxed{1}$ 2	all disable $\boxed{\text{stop \& eject}}$ all enable	Determines which buttons on the control panel are enabled, when the unit is set to the REMOTE mode. **0 :** All of the switches/buttons are disabled. **1 :** Only the STOP and EJECT buttons are enabled. **2 :** All of the switches/buttons are enabled.
007	**TAPE TIMER DISPLAY**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{+/-12\text{H}}$ 24H	Determines whether the CTL counter should display 12-hour or 24-hour time. **0 :** 12-hour time. **1 :** 24-hour time.
009	**CHARACTER TYPE**	$\boxed{0}$ 1 2 3		Determines the type of superimposed characters output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector. **0 :** White letters on a black background. **1 :** Black letters on a white background. **2 :** Black outline letters. **3 :** White outline letters.
010	**CHARACTER H SIZE**	$\boxed{01}$ 02		Determines the horizontal size of superimposed characters output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector. **01 :** Standard **02 :** Twice standard size
011	**CHARACTER V SIZE**	$\boxed{01}$ 02 03 04		Determines the vertical size of superimposed characters output from the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector. **01 :** Standard size **02 :** Twice standard size **03 :** 3 times standard size **04 :** 4 times standard size

1-7-4. System Menu

The numbers enclosed with $\boxed{}$ in the data column indicate the factory preset settings.

ITEM-100 SERIES : OPERATIONAL PARAMETER

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
101	**SELECTION FOR SEARCH DIAL ENABLE**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{dial direct}}$ via search key	Determines when the unit is put into search mode. **0**: When the search dial is rotated, the unit is put into the search mode from any mode. **1**: When the SEARCH button is pressed, the unit is put into the search mode.
102	**MAXIMUM TAPE SPEED**	0 $\boxed{1}$ 2	X42 $\boxed{\text{X42 (shuttle X24)}}$ X24	Sets the maximum tape speed for fast forward and rewind, and the maximum tape speed selectable with the search dial. **0**: 42 times normal speed. **1**: 42 times normal speed for fast forward and rewind, and 24 times normal speed for the search dial in shuttle mode. **2**: 24 times normal speed.
104	**AUDIO MUTING TIME**	$\boxed{00}$ 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10	$\boxed{\text{OFF}}$ 0.1 sec 0.2 sec 0.3 sec 0.4 sec 0.5 sec 0.6 sec 0.7 sec 0.8 sec 0.9 sec 1.0 sec	Determines the muting time of an audio signal when the unit enters the playback mode from stop or still mode to playback mode. Can be set to any value between 0 and 1.0 second, in steps of 0.1 second.
105	**REF VIDEO MISSING ALARM**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{off}}$ on	Issue warning if reference video signals are not being supplied through the REF.VIDEO connector. **0**: Does not issue warning. **1**: Warns by flashing the STOP button.
106	**CAPSTAN LOCK**	$\boxed{0}$ 1 2 3 4	$\boxed{\text{switch select}}$ 2F 2F/4F 4F 8F	Selects the capstan servo lock mode. **0**: Use the setting of the CAPSTAN LOCK switch on the sub control panel. **1**: Always 2F, regardless of CAPSTAN LOCK switch setting on the sub control panel. **2**: Always 2F/4F, regardless of CAPSTAN LOCK switch setting on the sub control panel. **3**: Always 4F, regardless of CAPSTAN LOCK switch setting on the sub control panel. **4**: Always 8F, regardless of CAPSTAN LOCK switch setting on the sub control panel.

ITEM-200 SERIES : INTERFACE OF REMOTE CONTROL

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
202	**CF FLAG REPLY**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{8F}}$ 4/8F	Determines the status of color frame which is sent to remote controller. **0**: 8FD **1**: 4/8FD

ITEM-300 SERIES : EDITING PARAMETER

(Items concerning operational settings when you use this unit as a player in an editing system.)

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
302	**CAPSTAN RE-LOCKING DIRECTION**	0 $\boxed{1}$	deceleration $\boxed{\text{acceleration}}$	Determines whether capstan servo lock mode is deceleration mode or acceleration mode, when the CAPSTAN LOCK switch on the sub control panel is set to 4FD. **0**: Capstan servo locks in deceleration mode. **1**: Capstan servo locks in acceleration mode.
307	**AUTO-DELETION FOR INCONSISTENT DATA**	$\boxed{0}$ 1 2	$\boxed{\text{manual}}$ neg & excess neg	Determines the mode what happens when an erroneous edit point, such as an OUT point located before an IN point, or excessive edit points are set. **0**: Issue a warning by flashing the DELETE indicator on the recorder (PVW-2800P). The operator must manually delete the excessive unnecessary edit points or correct the erroneous edit point. **1**: When a incorrect edit point is set, the previously set edit point is deleted automatically. When excessive edit points are set, the previously set edit point is deleted automatically. **2**: When a incorrect edit point is set, the previously set edit point is deleted automatically. When excessive edit points are set, the DELETE indicator on the recorder (PVW-2800P) flashes to issue a warning. NOTE : Delete edit points by pressing the DELETE button simultaneously with one of the IN/OUT or AUDIO IN/OUT buttons. (These buttons are on the recorder (PVW-2800P)) Edits cannot be executed if the DELETE indicator on the recorder (PVW-2800P) is flashing.

ITEM-400 SERIES : PREROLL PARAMETER

(Items concering operational settings when you use this unit as a player in an editing system.)

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
401	**FUNCTION MODE AFTER CUE-UP**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{stop}}$ still	Determines the unit's mode after cue-up. **0 :** Stop mode. **1 :** Still mode. (Search mode.)
402	**TIME REFERENCE FOR PREROLL**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{CTL}}$ TC	When a tape with the time code signal containing a discontinuous point is used and discontinuous point is prerolled, determines whether the time code signal preceeding the point is advanced and prerolled using a CTL signal. **0 :** Interpolate with a CTL signal. **1 :** Does not interpolate with a CTL signal. NOTE: When "0" is selected, maximum tape speed during cue-up or preroll is limited to 10 times normal speed.
403	**AUTOMATIC PREROLL REFERENCE ENTRY**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{disable}}$ enable	Determines whether the IN point is entered by pressing only the PREROLL button on the recorder (PVW-2800P) when it is not entered during preroll operation. **0 :** Does not enter the IN point automatically. **1 :** Enters the IN point automatically.

ITEM-500 SERIES : TAPE PROTECTION PARAMETER

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
501	**STILL TIMER**	00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 15	0.5 sec 5 sec 10 sec 20 sec 30 sec 40 sec 50 sec 1 min 2 min 3 min 4 min 5 min 6 min 7 min 8 min 30 min	If the unit remains in stop or still mode for a certain period of time, it is put automatically into tape protection mode in order to prevent from head clogging and tape damage. This item determines the transition time of the tape stop to tape protection mode. The time may set to one of the 16 values, ranging between 0.5 second to 30 minutes.
502	**TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM SEARCH**	0 1 2	step fwd standby off tension release	When the time in the still mode during search mode (JOG/SHUTTLE) set using Item 501 passes, the unit enters the tape protection mode. This item determines the tape protection mode setting. **0:** When the time designated by Item 501 passes, the tape is sent repeatedly for 2 seconds at 1/30 times normal speed in the forward direction. **1:** When the designated time passes, the unit enters the standby off mode. **2:** When the designated time passes, the unit enters the tension release mode.
503	**TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM STOP**	0 1	standby off tension release	When the time in the stop mode set using Item 501 passes, the unit enters the tape protection mode. This item determines the tape protection mode setting. **0:** When the designated time passes, the unit enters the standby off mode. **1:** When the designated time passes, the unit enters the tension release mode.
504	**DRUM ROTATION IN STANDBY OFF**	0 1	off on	Determines whether the head drum stops rotating in standby OFF mode. **0:** Drum stops rotating. **1:** Drum keeps rotating.

ITEM-700 SERIES : VIDEO CONTROL PARAMETER

* To choose line for setup menu "Item 703", rotate the search dial while pressing the STOP button on the control panel.

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
703*	**BLANK LINE SELECT**	9,322 ~ 22,335 line		Determines blanking lines for the V-blanking period of output video signals. Each of the lines from 9,322 to 23,336 may be set ON or OFF separately. **0**: Blanking ON **1**: Half blanking at line 23,336. **2**: Blanking OFF
		0	blank	
		2	throu	
		23,336 line		
		1	half	
		2	throu	

ITEM-900 SERIES : ADJUSTMENT USE ONLY (FACTORY USE PARAMETER)

The items below are not displayed on the normal operation to avoid the erroneous operation.
To display "Item 901" or "Item 902", turn the SEARCH dial while pressing the PLAY button in setup memu mode.
The two items are used exclusively for adjustment. After adjustment is completed, the menu data should be returned to the factory setting.

ITEM		DATA		Description
No.	ITEM	No.	DATA	
901	**AUDIO NR IN SP MODE**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{on}}$ switch select	This item is used exclusively for audio system adjustment. After adjustment is completed, be sure to return the menu data to the factory setting "0". The Dolby NR control is selected when a metal particle tape is used for recording and playback. **0 :** Turned ON at all times when the metal particle tape is used. **1 :** Turned ON or OFF using the DOLBY NR switch on the sub control panel. NOTE: When an oxide tape is used, set using the DOLBY NR switch on the sub control panel irrespective of this setting.
902	**EMERGENCY TAPE PROTECTION**	$\boxed{0}$ 1	$\boxed{\text{enable}}$ disable	This item is used exclusively for servo system and mechanical adjustments. After adjustment is completed, be sure to return the menu data to the factory setting "0". When the unit detects an error in the tape transport system, selects whether tape protection is done or not. **0 :** Tape protection is done. **1 :** Tape protection is not done. NOTE: When "1" is selected, the auto off lamp goes on and off.

1-8. RACK MOUNTING

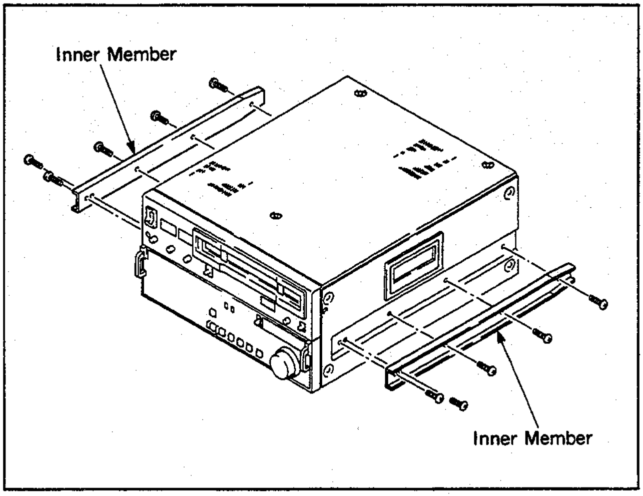
The unit can be mounted in a 19-inch standard rack.
It is recommended to use the following kit.

Rack Mount Kit : RMM-110 (optional accessory)
or
RACK-MOUNT SLIDES : MODEL 305
slide length 558.8 mm
(ACCURIDE)

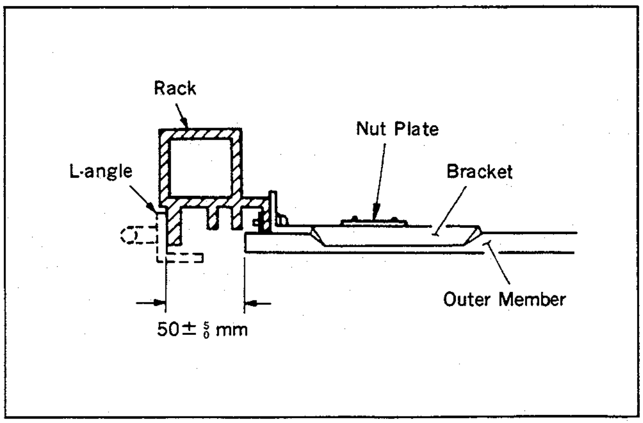
Note for rack mounting :

- When several units are mounted in a rack, it is recommended to install a fan for ventilation. Good air circulation is essential to prevent internal heat build-up in a rack (5 °C to 40 °C must be met for all units).
- Never remove a upper panel and lower panel during rack mounting.
- Be sure to secure the rack to the floor to avoid accidents when a unit is pulled out.

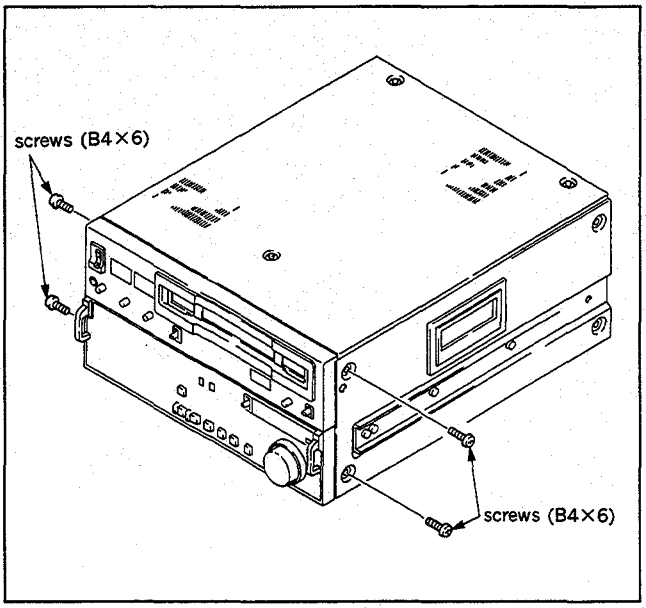
1. Remove the five screws on right and left side panels. And install the Inner Members of the rails to the right and left side panels with the screws removed.



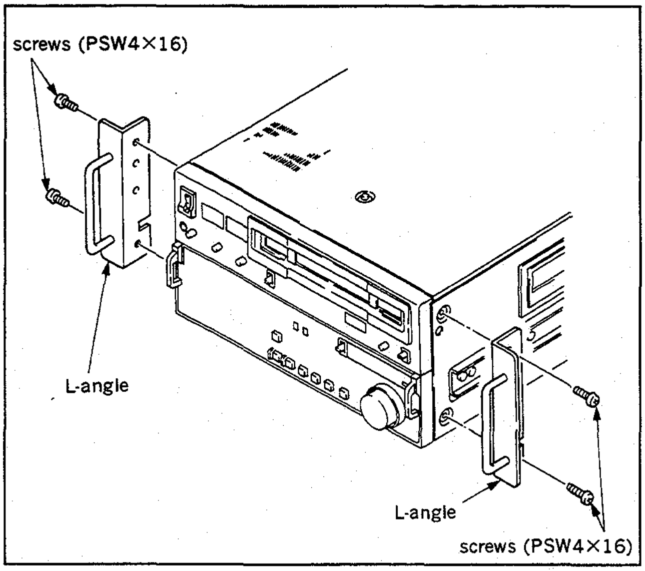
2. Remove the four feet on the lower panel. If the unit is mounted in the rack with the feet attached, they will contact the lower and the upper portions of the rack and the unit cannot be pulled out from the rack.
3. Install the Outer Member Bracket of the slide rail to the rack. Adjust the distance from the edge of the slide rail to the outside of the rack so that it meets the required specification.



4. Remove the two screws(B4×6) on the right and left side panels. (Be careful not to lose these four screws.)



5. Install the Handle Brackets to the holes described in step (4) with the supplied screws (PSW4×16) for these brackets.



(NOTE) Never use screws PSW4×16 to install the right and left side panels. Be sure to install the panels with the screws B4×6 removed in step 4. Screws for L angles are longer than the ones of side panels. Therefore, using the screws PSW4×16 may cause trouble in the unit.

1-9. SUPPLIED ACCESSORIES

- AC power code (1)
- 9-pin remote cable RCC-5G (1)
- PSW4×16 screws for rack mounting (4)
- Operation manual (1)

1-10. OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES

- U-matic dubbing output kit: BKW-2030
- Control panel extension kit: BKW-2010
- Control panel case: BK-803
- TBC remote control unit: BK-2006
  BVR-50P
- Rack mount kit: RMM-110
  This kit is used to mount the unit in a standard 19-inch rack.
- 12-pin dubbing cable: VDC-C5
- 7-pin dubbing cable: VDC-5
- Cleaning cassette tape: BCT-5CLN

1-11. SETTING CHECK SHEET

It is recommended to check the setup conditions such as switch, setup menu under the application.
And it is recommended to copy this sheet and write down and keep, when maintenance or changing the use condition.
If the unit is used in editing room, changing the system combination very often, several sheet based on the combination is useful.
This is to help the trouble during editing such as setting.

CONTROL PANEL

AUDIO MONITOR	☐ CH1 ☐ MIX ☐ CH2
LOCAL/REMOTE	☐ LOCAL ☐ REMOTE
CH1 PB VOL	☐ MANUAL ☐ AUTO
CH2 PB VOL	☐ MANUAL ☐ AUTO

SUB CONTROL PANEL

DOLBY NR	☐ ON ☐ OFF
CHARACTER	☐ ON ☐ OFF
TC	☐ LTC ☐ AUTO ☐ VITC
CAPSTAN LOCK	☐ 2FD ☐ 2/4FD ☐ 4FD ☐ 8FD
TBC CONTROL	☐ REMOTE ☐ LOCAL
VIDEO	☐ PRESET ☐ MANUAL
CHROMA	☐ PRESET ☐ MANUAL
SET UP	☐ PRESET ☐ MANUAL
Y/C DELAY	☐ PRESET ☐ MANUAL

CONNECTOR PANEL

REF. VIDEO 75 Ω	☐ ON ☐ OFF

SETUP MENU

ITEM	factory setting	setting
001 PREROLL TIME	05	
002 CHARACTER H-POSITION	1E	
003 CHARACTER V-POSITION	7A	
005 DISPLAY INFORMATION SELECT	0	
006 LOCAL FUNCTION ENABLE	1	
007 TAPE TIMER DISPLAY	0	
009 CHARACTER TYPE	0	
010 CHARACTER H SIZE	01	
011 CHARACTER V SIZE	01	
101 SELECTION FOR SEARCH DIAL ENABLE	0	
102 MAXIMUM TAPE SPEED	1	
104 AUDIO MUTING TIME	00	
105 REF VIDEO MISSING ALARM	0	
106 CAPSTAN LOCK	0	
202 CF FLAG REPLY	0	
302 CAPSTAN RE-LOCKING DIRECTION	1	
307 AUTO-DELETION FOR INCONSISTENT DATA	0	
401 FUNCTION MODE AFTER CUE-UP	0	
402 TIME REFERENCE FOR PREROLL	0	
403 AUTOMATIC PREROLL REFERENCE ENTRY	0	

ITEM		factory setting	setting
501 STILL TIMER		14	
502 TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM SEARCH		0	
503 TAPE PROTECTION MODE FROM STOP		0	
504 DRUM ROTATION IN STANDBY OFF		0	
703 BLANK LINE SELECT	9,322	0	
	10,323		
	11,324		
	12,325		
	13,326		
	14,327		
	15,328		
	16,329		
	17,330		
	18,331		
	19,332		
	20,333		
	21,334		
	22,335		
	23,336	1	
901 AUDIO NR IN SP MODE		0	
902 EMERGENCY TAPE PROTECTION		0	

SWITCH ON BOARD

board	switch	factory setting	setting
AU-148 board	SW101 AUDIO HEAD TUNE ADJ SW (CH-1)	Dependent on adjustment	
AU-149 board	SW101 AUDIO HEAD TUNE ADJ SW (CH-2)	Dependent on adjustment	
SS-48 board	S2-1 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-2 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-3 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-4 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-5 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-6 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-7 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S2-8 KEY BOARD SELECT	ON (CLOSE)	
	S601-1 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-2 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-3 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-4 SERVO ADJUST	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-5 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-6 factory use	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-7 SERVO CHECK	OFF (OPEN)	
	S601-8 NOVRAM/ROM DATA SELECT SW	OFF (OPEN)	

board	switch	factory setting	setting
TBC-18 board	S700-1 LEVEL REF SW	OFF	
	S700-2 factory use	OFF	
	S700-3 Y MUTE SW	OFF	
	S700-4 C MUTE SW	OFF	
	S700-5 COMB SW	OFF	
	S700-6 VISC TEST SW	OFF	
	S700-7 factory use	OFF	
	S700-8 factory use	OFF	
VP-33 board	S101 Y RF AGC ON/OFF SW	ON	
	S401 C RF AGC ON/OFF SW	ON	
	S701 VISC MUTE ON/OFF SW	OFF	
	S702 ENC CHROMA MUTE SW	OFF	
	S703 CF ID SW	ON	

SERVICE INF.

SECTION 2
SERVICE INFORMATION

2-1. SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL

Power requirements : 220-240 V ac, 50/60 Hz
Operating voltage : 90-264 V
Power consumption : 130 W
Operating temperature : +5 °C to +40 °C
Storage temperature : −20 °C to +60 °C
Humidity : 80% or less
Weight : 24.5 kg
Dimensions : 427×237×520 mm (w/h/d, excluding the projections)
Normal tape speed : 101.51 mm/s
Maximum playback time : 100 min or longer with BCT-90ML cassette
Fast forward/rewind time : 180 s or less with BCT-90ML cassette
Search speed
Shuttle mode : Still, 0.03, 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1, 3, 5, 10, 24 and * 42 times normal speed, forward and reverse.
* 42 times ; by setting in setup menu ITEM-102.
Jog mode : Variable from still to normal speed, forward and reverse.
Recommended cassette tape : 1/2-inch Betacam or Betacam SP cassette
Metal tapes : BCT-5M/10M/20M/30M/
BCT-5ML/10ML/20ML/30ML/60ML/90ML or equivalent
Oxide tapes : BCT-5G/10G/20G/30G/
BCT-5GL/10GL/20GL/30GL/60GL/90GL or equivalent

Video

(recording)/play back Luminance FM
Chrominance FM (Compressed time division multiplexed)

		Metal tape	Oxide tape
Band width	Luminance	25 Hz to 5.5 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-4.0}$ dB	25 Hz to 4.0 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-6.0}$ dB
	Color difference	R-Y : 25 Hz to 2.0 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-3.0}$ dB B-Y : 25 Hz to 2.0 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-3.0}$ dB	R-Y : 25 Hz to 1.5 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-3.0}$ dB B-Y : 25 Hz to 1.5 MHz $^{+0.5}_{-3.0}$ dB
S/N	Luminance (component)	48 dB or greater	46 dB or greater
	Chrominance	AM : 48 dB or greater PM : 48 dB or greater	AM : 48 dB or greater PM : 48 dB or greater
K-factor (2T pulse)		2 % or less	3 % or less
DG		3 % or less	3 % or less
DP		3° or less	3° or less
Y/C delay		20 ns or less	

*When play back a standard tape.

Audio

(Audio recording) AC Bias

	Metal tape	**Oxide tape**
Frequency response	50 Hz to 15 kHz $^{+1.5}_{-3.0}$ dB	50 Hz to 15 kHz ±3.0 dB
Signal to noise ratio (at peak level*, weighted CCIR468-3)	68 dB or greater (with dolby NR)	62 dB or greater (with dolby NR)
Distortion factor (THD) (Reference level, 1 kHz)	1% or less	2% or less
Wow & flutter	0.1% rms or less	

* Peak level: +8 dB above the operation level

Processor adjustment range

Video level : ± 3 dB

Chroma level : ± 3 dB

Setup level : 0-100 mV

System SC phase : 360° p-p

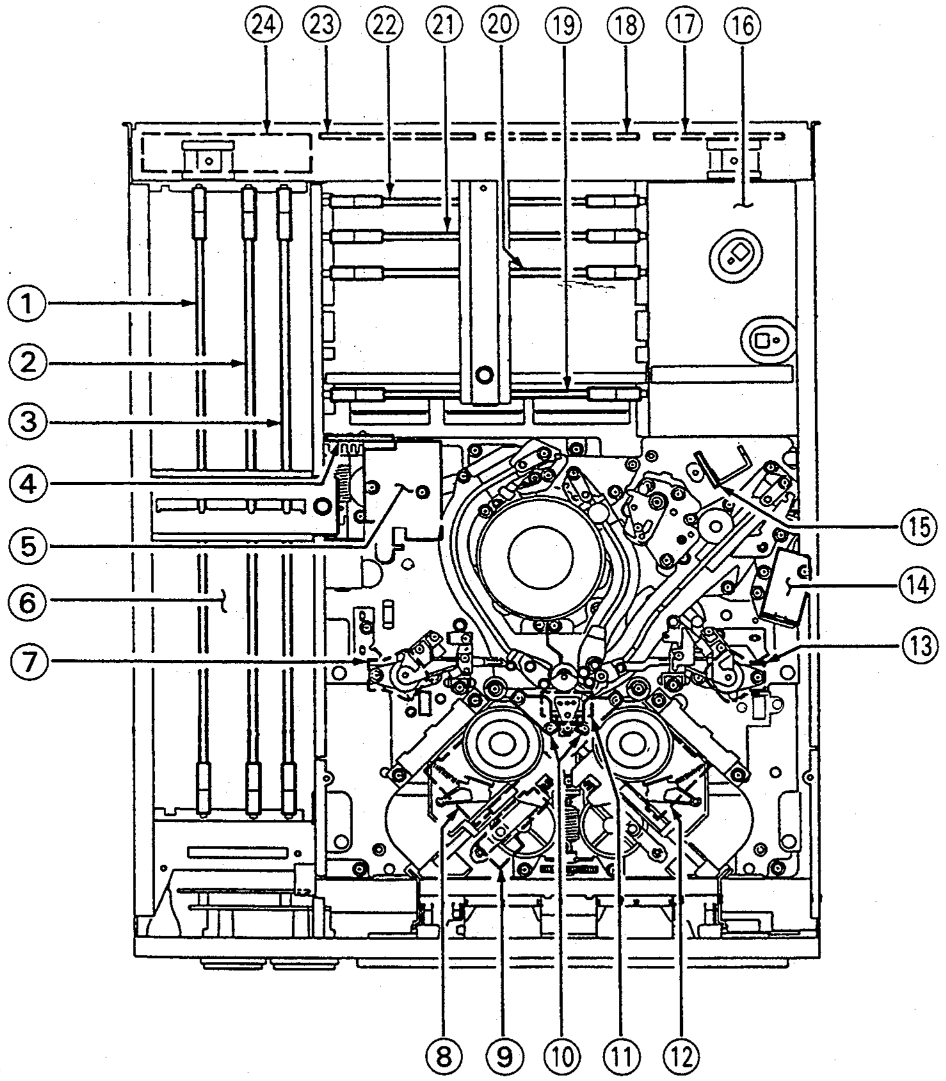
System sync phase : $^{+3}_{-1}$ μs

Y/C delay : ± 50 ns

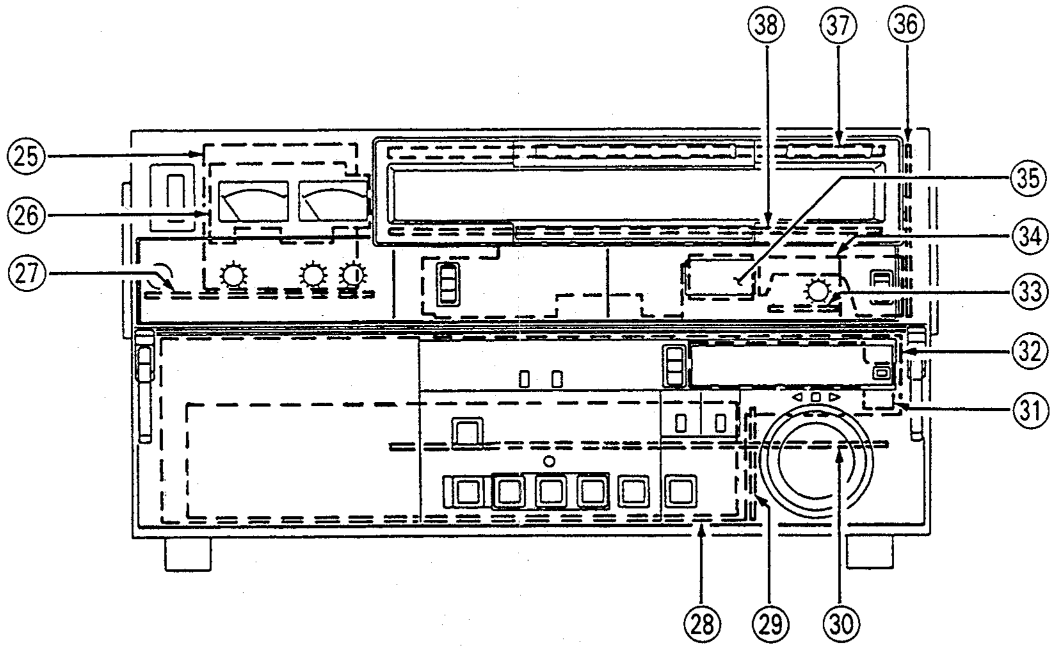
* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol DD are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

2-2. MAIN PARTS LOCATION

2-2-1. Location of Printed Circuit Board



① VP-33 board
② TBC-18 board
③ SS-48 board
④ PTC-54 board
⑤ PTC-49 board
⑥ MB-322 board
⑦ TR-73 board
⑧ RM-82 board
⑨ PTC-42 board
⑩ DE-15 board
⑪ PTC-55 board
⑫ RM-82 board
⑬ TR-73 board
⑭ PD-56 board
⑮ DS-31 board
⑯ Switching regulator
⑰ AC-133 board
⑱ CP-167 board
⑲ RP-57 board
⑳ AU-148 board
㉑ AU-149 board
㉒ AU-150 board
㉓ CP-166 board
㉔ RM-93 board

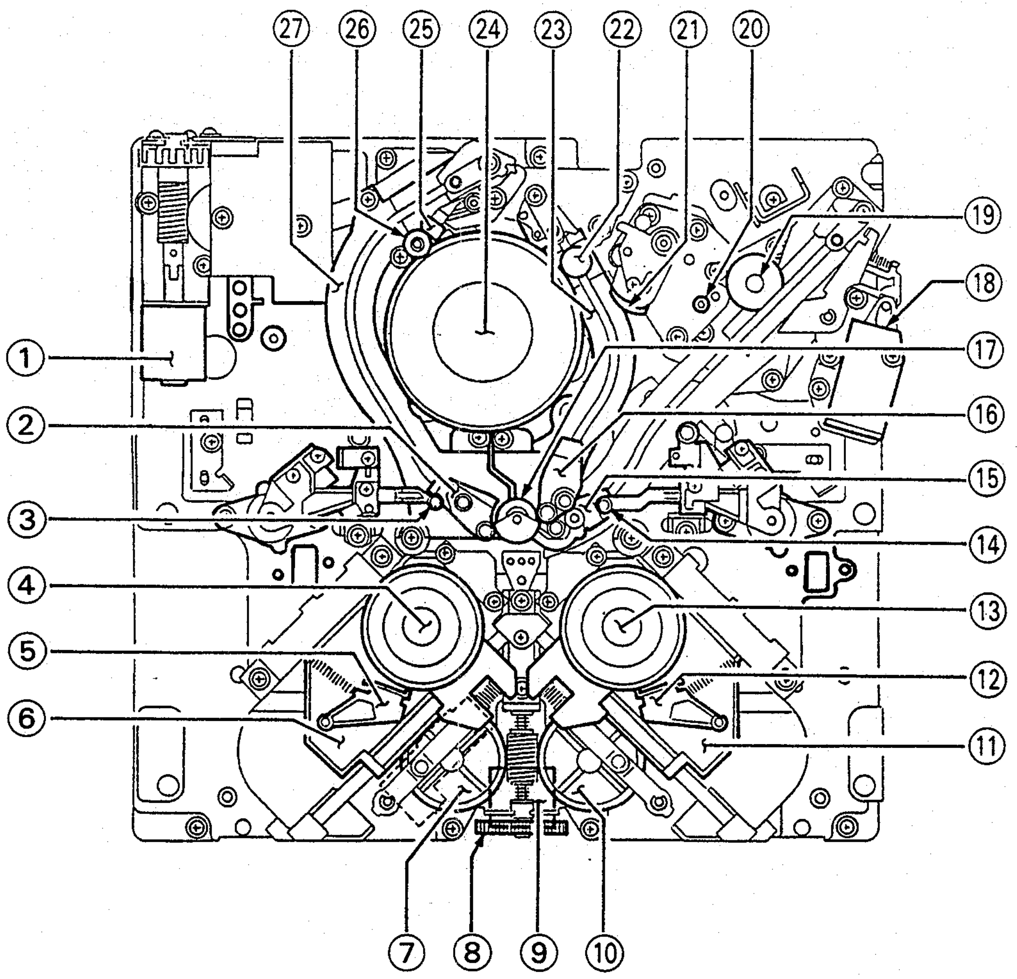


㉕ MA-44 board
㉖ DP-138 board
㉗ VR-116 board
㉘ HC-14 board
㉙ PTC-39 board
㉚ DR-118 board
㉛ DP-139 board
㉜ KY-210 board
㉝ VR-117 board
㉞ SW-444 board
㉟ DP-159 board
㊱ CL-25 board (cassette compartment)
㊲ LP-57 board (cassette compartment)
㊳ PC-62 board (cassette compartment)

INDEX

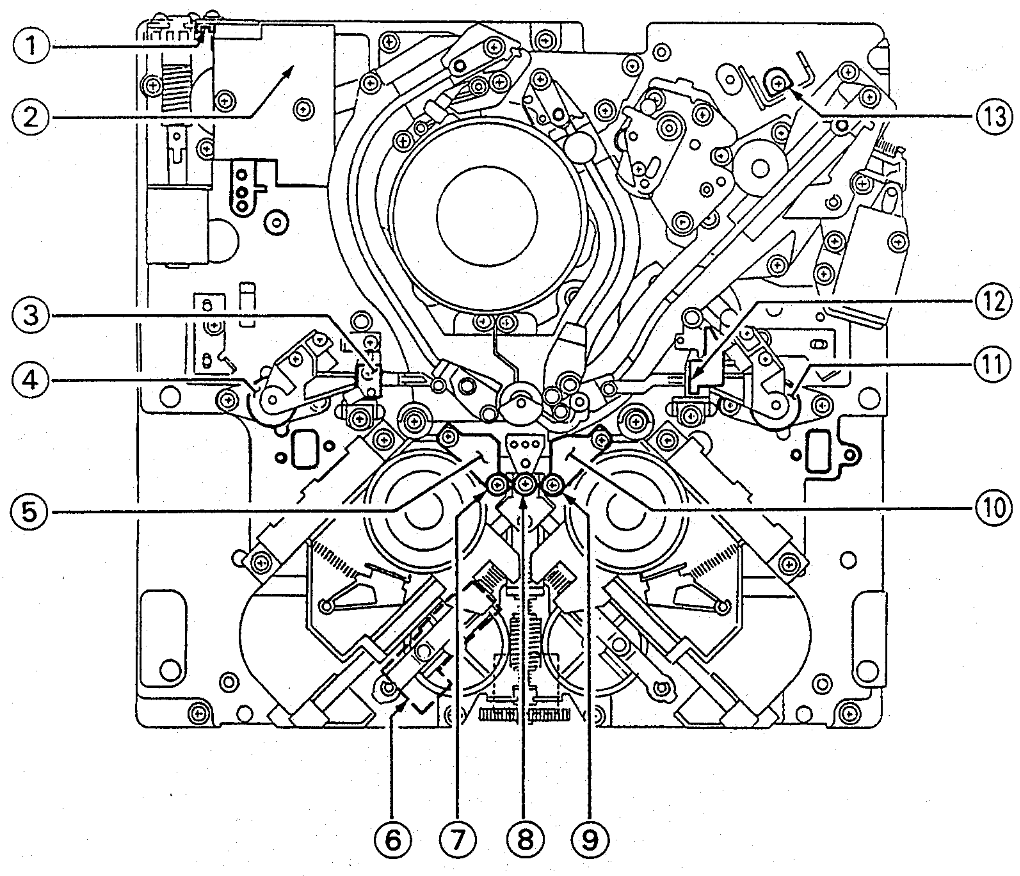
AC-133 board ··························⑰
AU-148 board ··························⑳
AU-149 board ··························㉑
AU-150 board ··························㉒
CL-25 board ···························㊱
CP-166 board ··························㉓
CP-167 board ··························⑱
DE-15 board ···························⑩
DP-138 board ··························㉖
DP-139 board ··························㉛
DP-159 board ··························㉟
DR-118 board ··························㉚
DS-31 board ···························⑮
HC-14 board····························㉘
KY-210 board ··························㉜
LP-57 board ···························㊲
MA-44 board ···························㉕
MB-322 board ··························⑥
PC-62 board ···························㊳
PD-56 board····························⑭
PTC-39 board ··························㉙
PTC-42 board ··························⑨
PTC-49 board ··························⑤
PTC-54 board ··························④
PTC-55 board ··························⑪
RM-82 board ···························⑧ : [Supply side] ; ⑫ : [Take-up side]
RM-93 board ···························㉔
RP-57 board····························⑲
SS-48 board ···························③
SW-444 board ··························㉞
TBC-18 board ··························②
TR-73 board····························⑦ : [Supply side] ; ⑬ : [Take-up side]
VP-33 board····························①
VR-116 board ··························㉗
VR-117 board ··························㉝
switching regulator ···········⑯

2-2-2. Location of Mechanical Parts/Components



① Threading motor
② S slider
③ S tension regulator arm
④ S reel table
⑤ S brake
⑥ S reel motor plate
⑦ S worm wheel
⑧ Reel shift driver gear
⑨ Reel shift motor
⑩ T worm wheel
⑪ T reel motor plate
⑫ T brake
⑬ T reel table
⑭ T tension regulator arm
⑮ P slider
⑯ T slider
⑰ Pinch roller
⑱ Pinch solenoid
⑲ Capstan shaft
⑳ TG-6 tape guide
㉑ Audio/TC head
㉒ Cleaning roller
㉓ T rail
㉔ Head drum
㉕ CTL head
㉖ TG-4 tape guide
㉗ S rail

2-2-3. Location of Sensor (1)



① Threading motor rotation detection sensor
Threading motor rotation detection sensor detects the rotation speed of the threading motor.
The FG output signal of this sensor inputs to servo circuit, and controls the threading speed to protects the tape from damage.

② Threading-end/unthreading-end detection sensor
This sensor detects whether the threading ring reaches the threading-end or unthreading-end position.

③ Tape end sensor
During tape travelling in the FWD direction, tape end sensor detects the end of tape.

④ S tension regulator arm sensor
During playback, S tension regulator arm activates to keep a constant tape tension.
S tension regulator arm sensor detects the position of the S tension regulator arm.

⑤ S reel rotation detection sensor
S reel rotation detection sensor detects the rotation of the S reel table.
The FG output signal of this sensor inputs to servo circuit, and controls the rotation speed and torque of the reel motor.

⑥ Reel L/S position sensor
This sensor detects whether the reel table moves to the correct position according to the size of the inserted cassette tape.

⑦ Reel hub diameter detection sensor
The reel hub diameter varies depending on the length of the tape wound on a cassette tape. The reel hub diameter detection sensor detects the reel hub diameter using a tub on the back side of the cassette tape.
The output signal of this sensor inputs to servo circuit, and controls the rotation speed and torque of the reel motor.

⑧ Oxide tape/metal particle tape detection sensor
This sensor detects whether an oxide tape or metal particle tape is being inserted to the unit using a tub on the back side of the cassette tape.

⑨ Video tape thickness detection sensor
This sensor detects the thickness of the wound tape that is being inserted to the unit using a tub on the back side of the cassette tape.

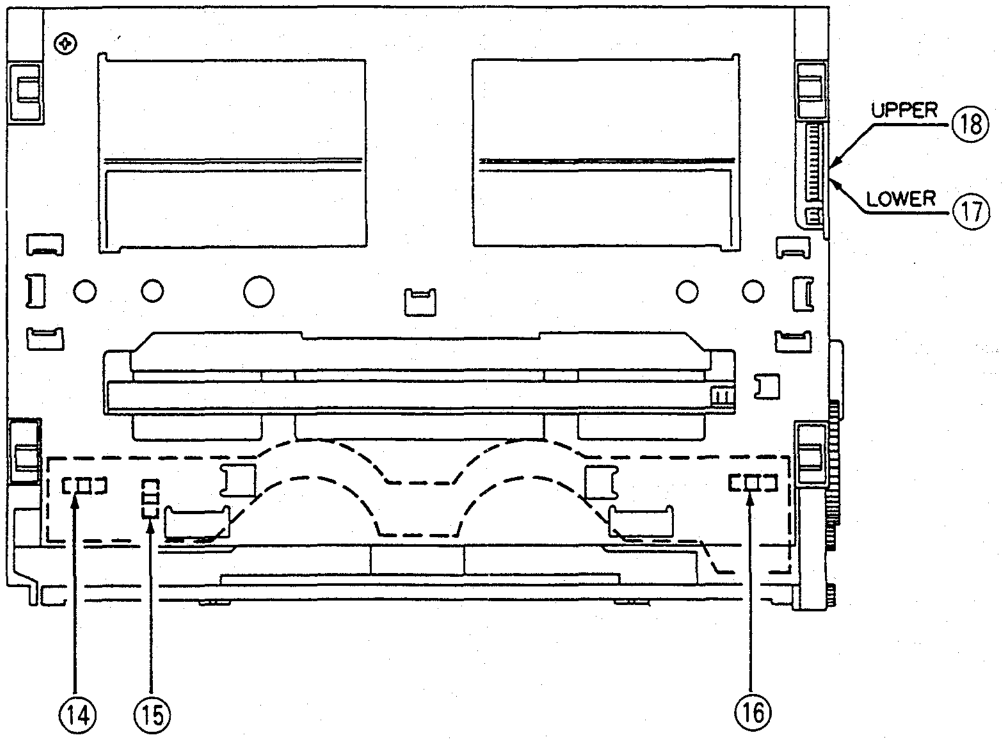
⑩ T reel rotation detection sensor
T reel rotation detection sensor detects the rotation of the T reel table.
The FG output signal of this sensor inputs to servo circuit, and controls the rotation speed and torque of the reel motor.

⑪ T tension regulator arm sensor
During playback, T tension regulator arm activates to keep a constant tape tension.
T tension regulator arm sensor detects the position of the T tension regulator arm.

⑫ Tape beginning sensor
During tape travelling in the FWD direction, tape beginning sensor detects the beginning of tape.

⑬ Condensation sensor
This sensor detects whether the moisture condensation occures in the unit.

2-2-4. Location of Sensor (2)……Cassette Compartment



⑭ Cassette-in sensor (L)
This sensor detects whether a cassette is being inserted.

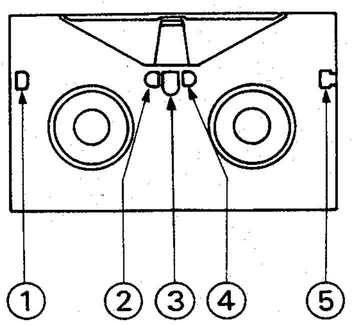
⑮ Cassette L/S size detection sensor
This sensor detects whether the inserted cassette tape is an L size on S size.

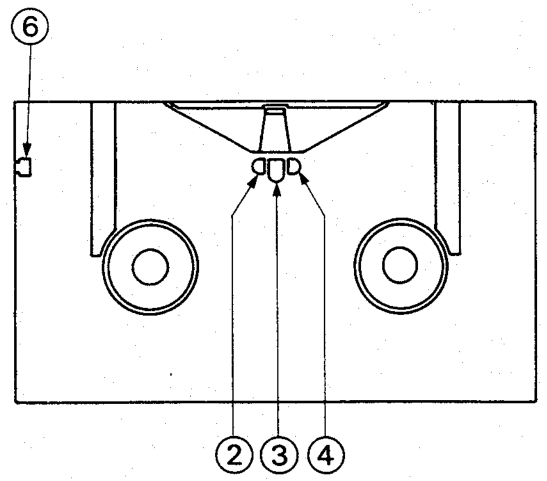
⑯ Cassette-in sensor (R)
This sensor detects whether a cassette is being inserted.

⑰ Cassette-down (2) sensor
⑱ Cassette-down (1) sensor
(1) sensor detects the position of the cassette compartment by using the combination of ON/OFF operation of these sensors and cassette-in sensor.

2-2-5. Function of the Cassette Plug and Tub

As shown in the figure below, plugs and tabs are provided at the back side of the cassette tape.





① S cassette Miss-REC tab (for oxide tape)
② Video tape thickness detection tab
③ Oxide/metal particle tape detection tab
④ Reel hab diameter detection tab
⑤ S cassette Miss-REC plug (for metal particle tape)
⑥ L cassette Miss-REC plug

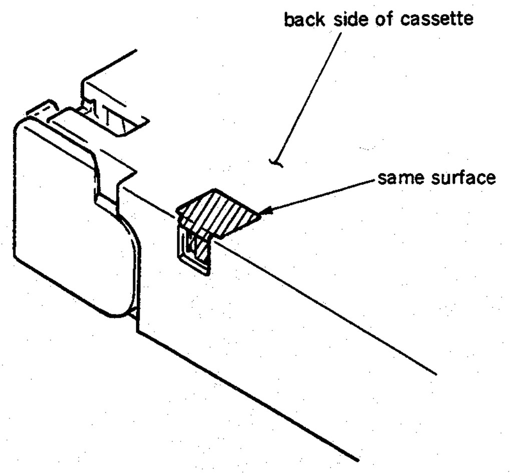


Fig. 1

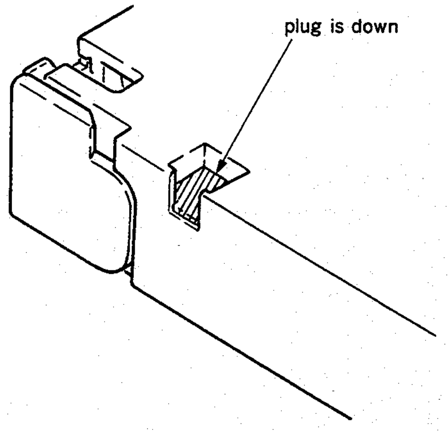


Fig. 2

The presence of absence of these plugs and tabs determines the cassette status as shown in the table below.

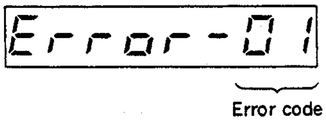
Plug and tab	Cassette status with plugs and tabs	Cassette status without plugs and tabs
S cassette Miss-REC tab (for oxide tape)	Can be recorded (refer to Fig.1).	Cannot be recorded (refer to Fig.2).
S cassette Miss-REC plug (for metal particle tape)		
L cassette Miss-REC plug		
Tape thickness detection tab	A 20 μm thick tape is wound on the cassette.	A 15 μm thick tape is wound on the cassette.
Oxide/metal particle tape detection tab	An oxide tape is wound on the cassette.	A metal particle tape is wound on the cassette.
Reel hub diameter detection tab	For small hub	For large hub

(NOTE) This unit cannot record.

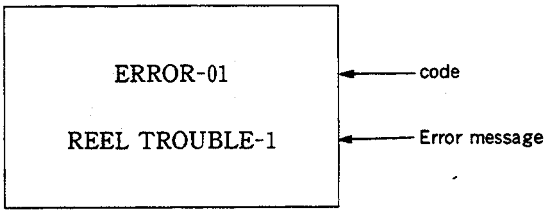
2-3. ERROR MESSAGE

This unit features self-diagnostics.
When trouble is detected, an error code is displayed immediately in the time counter display on the control panel, an error code and message are displayed on the video monitor display.
Furthermore, as for the interface error (error code 92,93), interface object which error occured replaced by sub error massage on the video monitor display.
(To display error code and message on the monitor, the monitor must be connected to the VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR OUT connector, and the CHARACTER switch on the sub control panel must be set to ON.)

Time counter display

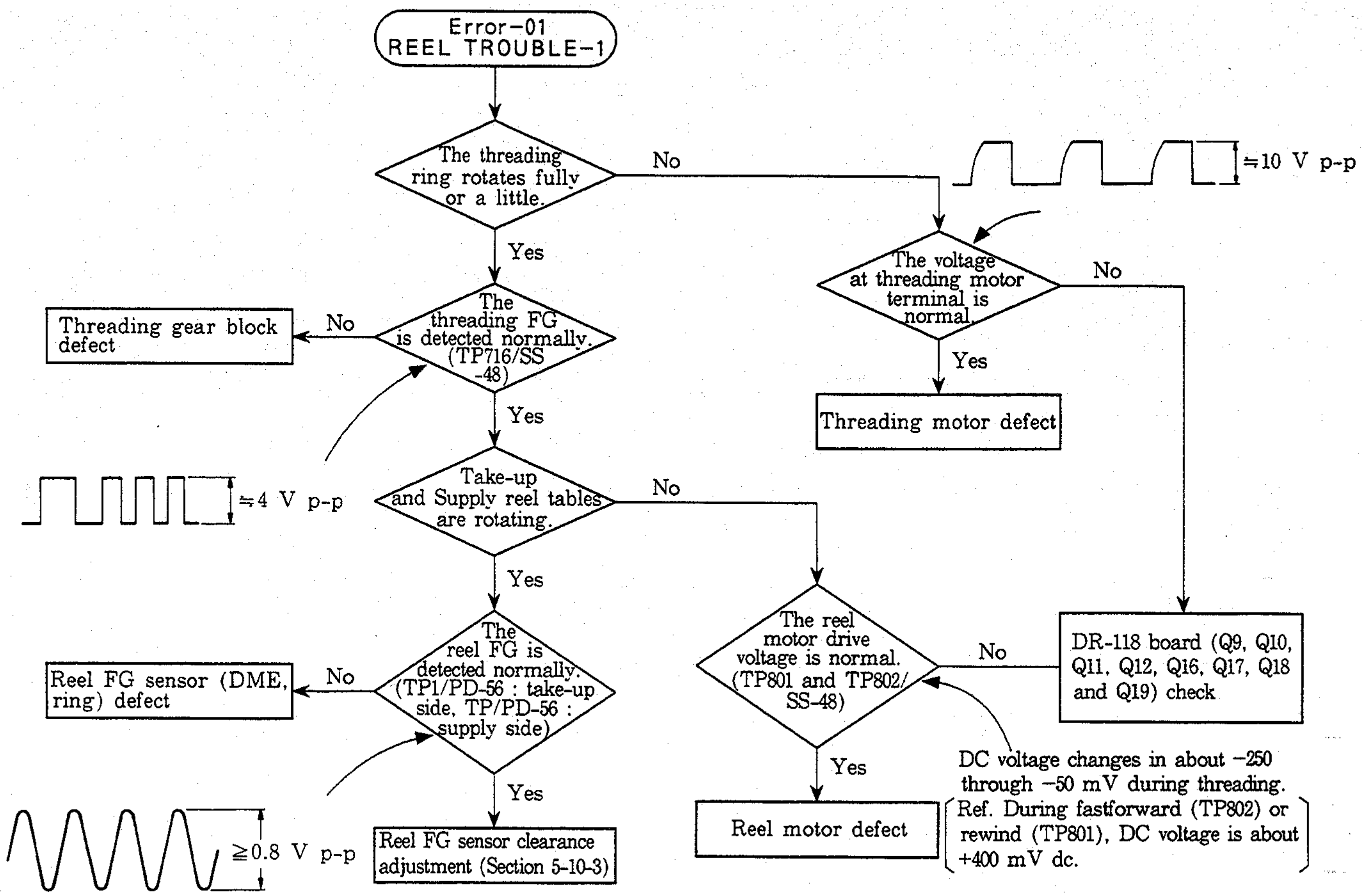


Video monitor display

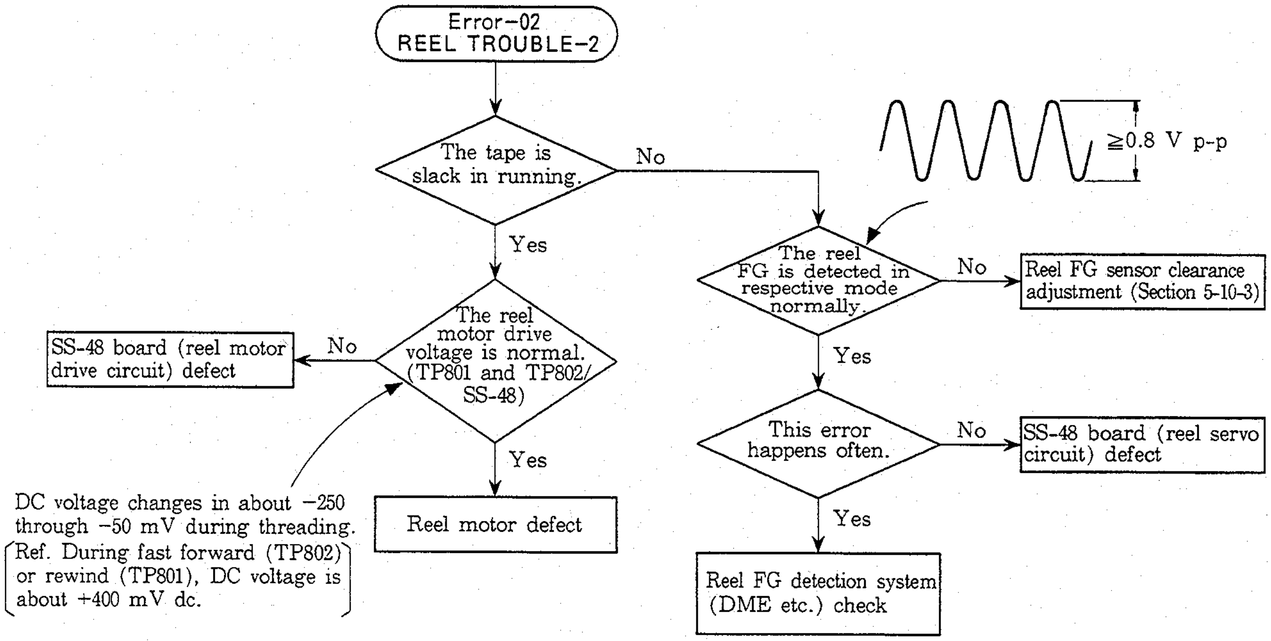


code	error message	description	detection
01	REEL TROUBLE-1	The slack of the tape is detected during threading or unthreading, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when the ratio of the FG frequency at a supply reel, take-up reel and threading ring is less than the specified value.
02	REEL TROUBLE-2	The slack or breaking of the tape is detected in search, fast foward, or rewind mode, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when the ratio of the FG frequency at a supply reel and take-up reel is less than the specified value.
03	REEL TROUBLE-3	The slack or breaking of the tape is detected in recording or playback mode, or either of the lock of the supply or take-up reel is detected, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when the FG frequency at a supply or take-up reel is zero (0), or when the tension detected from a tension sensor is less than 15 g.
04	REEL TROUBLE-4	It is detected that the tape does not run at the speed of designation in fast forward or rewind mode, and then tape protection is done.	Depends on the comparison between the tape speed using the FG frequency at supply and take-up reels and the designated speed.
05	REEL TROUBLE-5	It is detected that the supply or take-up reel cannot stop with a cassette is not inserted, or detected that over current has been flowing to supply and take-up reels.	Detected using the FG frequency or current at supply and take-up reels.
06	TAPE TENSION ERROR	When excessive tension is detected, tape protection is done.	Detected when the tension detected from a tension sensor is more than 55 g.
07	CAPSTAN TROUBLE	It is detected that the tape does not run at the speed of designation in play or search mode, and tape protection is done.	Detected at the tape speed detected from the FG frequency at a capstan motor.
08	DRUM TROUBLE	It is detected that drum motor rotation is not normal, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when the drum speed obtained from the speed FG of the drum motor is less than the specified value.
09	TH/UNTH MOTOR TIME OUT	It is detected that threading or unthreading is not completed, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when threading or unthreading is not completed within ten seconds after it is started.

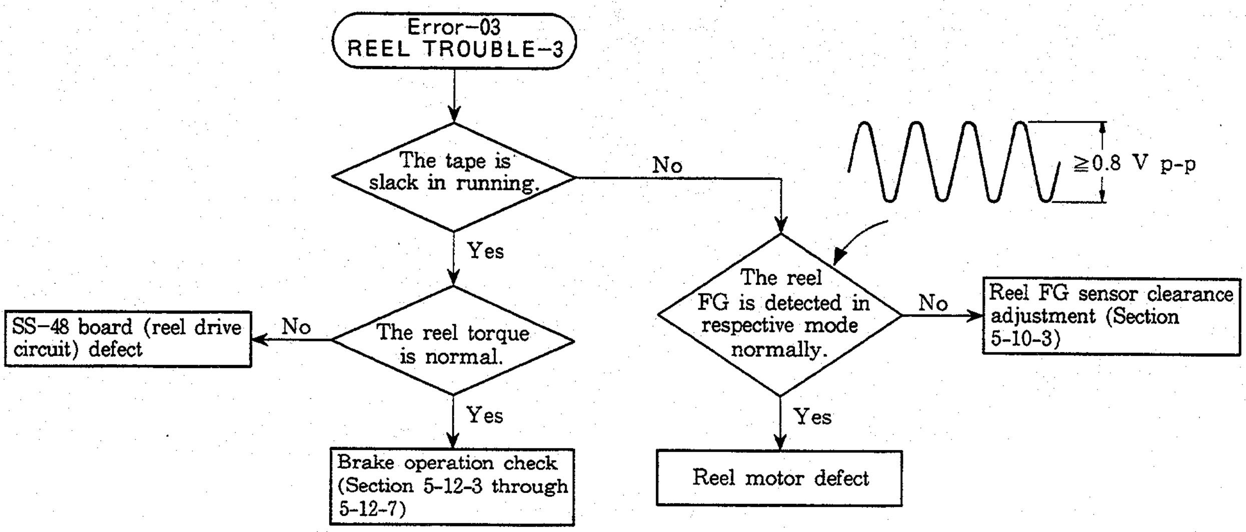
code	error message	description	detection
0A	**THREADING TROUBLE**	It is detected that threading cannot be done, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when the tape beginning sensor is acted during threading after the short FF mode is automatically entered three times.
10	**HUMID**	Condensation is detected.	Detected using a condensation sensor.
11	**TAPE BEGINNING/END SENSOR TROUBLE**	The tape beginning or end sensor operation is defective.	Detected when the tape beginning and end are detected at the same time.
12	**TAPE BEGINNING SENSOR TROUBLE**	The tape beginning sensor operation is defective.	Detected when the tape beginning continues for more than seven seconds.
13	**TAPE END SENSOR TROUBLE**	The tape end sensor operation is defective.	Detected when the tape end continues for more than seven seconds.
14	**FAN MOTOR TROUBLE**	The operation of the fan motor is defective.	Detected according to the period of a ripple noise at the fan motor terminal.
20	**CASSETTE COMPARTMENT MOTOR LOCK**	It is detected that cassette up/down operation is not completed, and then tape protection is done.	Detected when cassette up/down operation is not completed within four seconds after it is started.
21	**REEL TABLE MOTOR LOCK**	It is detected that driving of the L position to S position or the S position to L position in the reel table is not completed, and then tape protection operation is done.	Detect when reel table driving is not completed within four seconds after it is started.
22	**REEL TABLE SENSOR TROUBLE**	The operation of the L/S position detection sensor of the reel table is defective.	Detected when the L and S positions are detected at the same time.
90	**KEY INTERFACE ERROR**	The interface between the keyboard and system control is defective.	Detected when no interface signal is sent from the system control to the keyboard.
91	**1/2 VD NOT EXIST**	No 1/2 VD signal input to system control is detected.	Detected when no 1/2 VD signal input to system control.
92	**INTERNAL SERIAL INTERFACE ERROR** **sub error message** **HC** **TBC**	The serial interface between the HC-14 board, TBC-18 board and system control is defective. HC : IC1/HC-14 TBC : IC717/TBC-18	Detected when no interface signal is sent from the each board to the system control three times continuously.
93	**CPU INITIALIZE ERROR** **sub error message** **servo (main)** **servo (sub)** **time code**	The interface between the time code and system control, or the servo and system control is defective when the POWER switch is turned ON. servo (main) : IC604/SS-48 servo(sub) : IC710/SS-48 time code : IC403/SS-48	Detected when the interface signal from the time code or servo system to the system control when the POWER switch is turned ON is defect.
96	**SY NV-RAM TROUBLE**	The operational defect of the NV-RAM (setup menu data) is detected on the HC-14 board. Then, reset the data in the NV-RAM to the condition at exfactory.	Detected by the NV-RAM data's checksum.
97	**SV NV-RAM TROUBLE**	The operational defect of the NV-RAM (servo adjustment data) is detected on the DR-118 board.	Detected by the NV-RAM data's checksum.

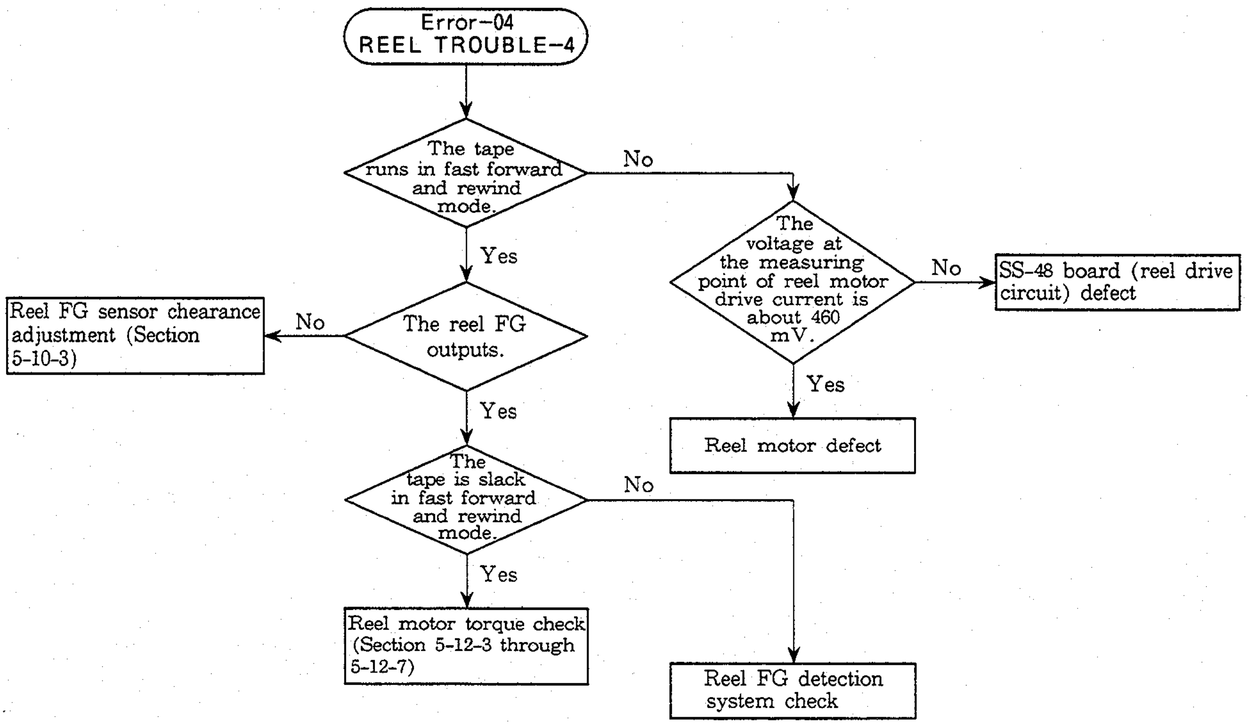


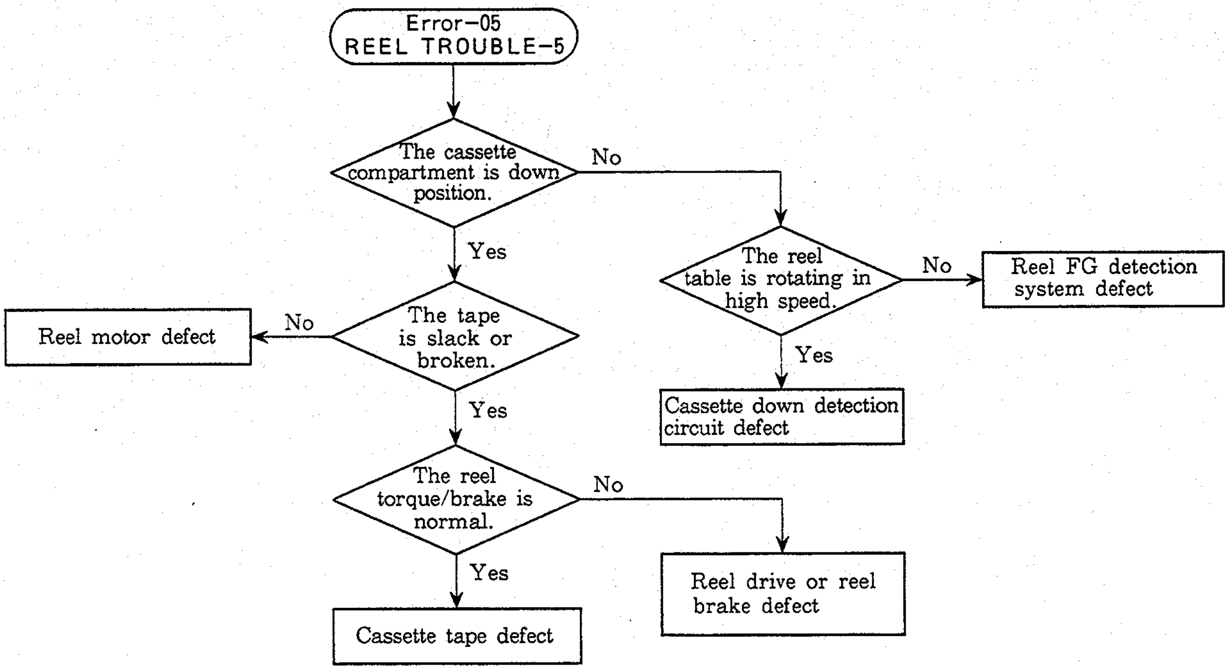
Error-01
REEL TROUBLE-1
The threading ring rotates fully or a little.
No
Yes
The threading FG is detected normally. (TP716/SS-48)
No
Threading gear block defect
Yes
≒4 V p-p
Take-up and Supply reel tables are rotating.
No
Yes
The reel FG is detected normally. (TP1/PD-56 : take-up side, TP/PD-56 : supply side)
No
Reel FG sensor (DME, ring) defect
Yes
≧0.8 V p-p
Reel FG sensor clearance adjustment (Section 5-10-3)
≒10 V p-p
The voltage at threading motor terminal is normal.
No
Yes
Threading motor defect
The reel motor drive voltage is normal. (TP801 and TP802/SS-48)
No
DR-118 board (Q9, Q10, Q11, Q12, Q16, Q17, Q18 and Q19) check
Yes
Reel motor defect
DC voltage changes in about −250 through −50 mV during threading.
Ref. During fastforward (TP802) or rewind (TP801), DC voltage is about +400 mV dc.

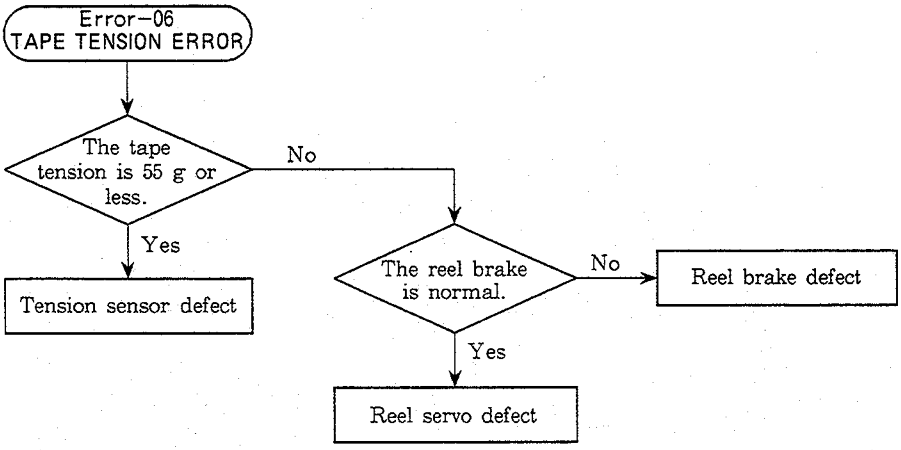


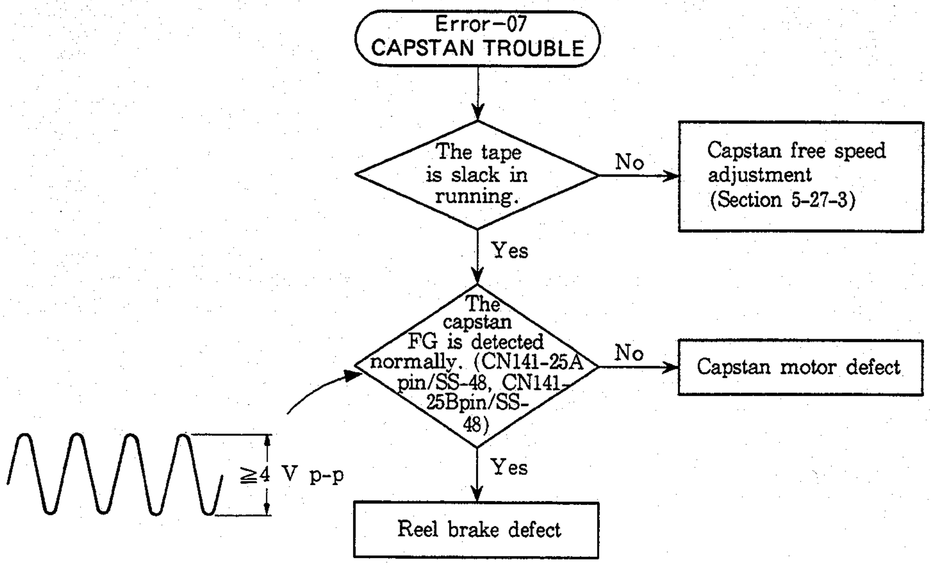
Error-02
REEL TROUBLE-2
The tape is slack in running.
No
Yes
The reel motor drive voltage is normal. (TP801 and TP802/SS-48)
No
SS-48 board (reel motor drive circuit) defect
Yes
Reel motor defect
DC voltage changes in about −250 through −50 mV during threading.
Ref. During fast forward (TP802) or rewind (TP801), DC voltage is about +400 mV dc.
≧0.8 V p-p
The reel FG is detected in respective mode normally.
No
Reel FG sensor clearance adjustment (Section 5-10-3)
Yes
This error happens often.
No
SS-48 board (reel servo circuit) defect
Yes
Reel FG detection system (DME etc.) check

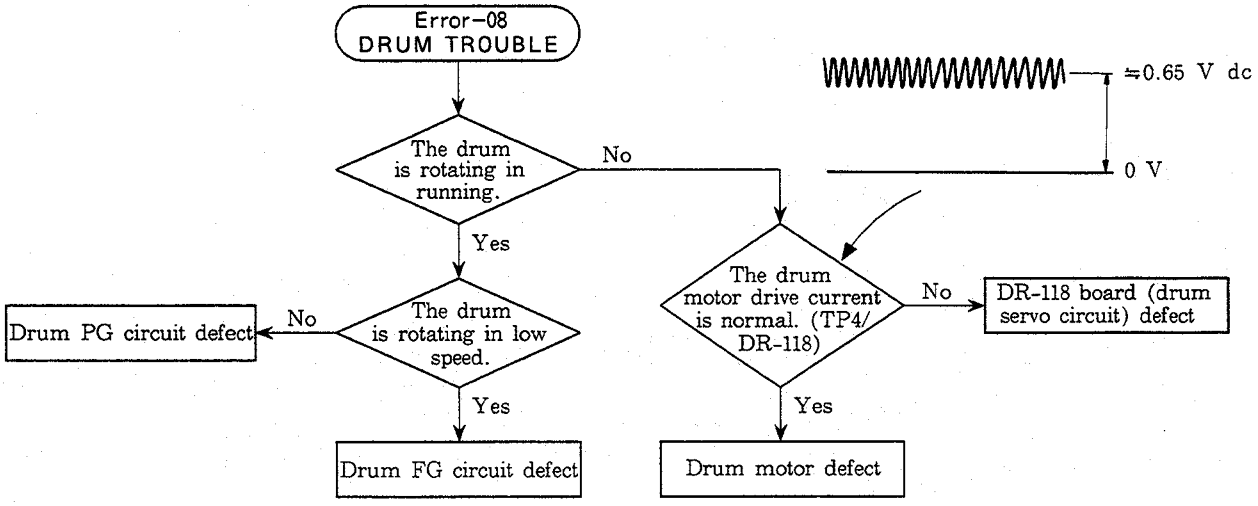

Error-03
REEL TROUBLE-3
The tape is slack in running.
No
Yes
≧0.8 V p-p
The reel FG is detected in respective mode normally.
No
Reel FG sensor clearance adjustment (Section 5-10-3)
SS-48 board (reel drive circuit) defect
No
The reel torque is normal.
Yes
Yes
Brake operation check (Section 5-12-3 through 5-12-7)
Reel motor defect

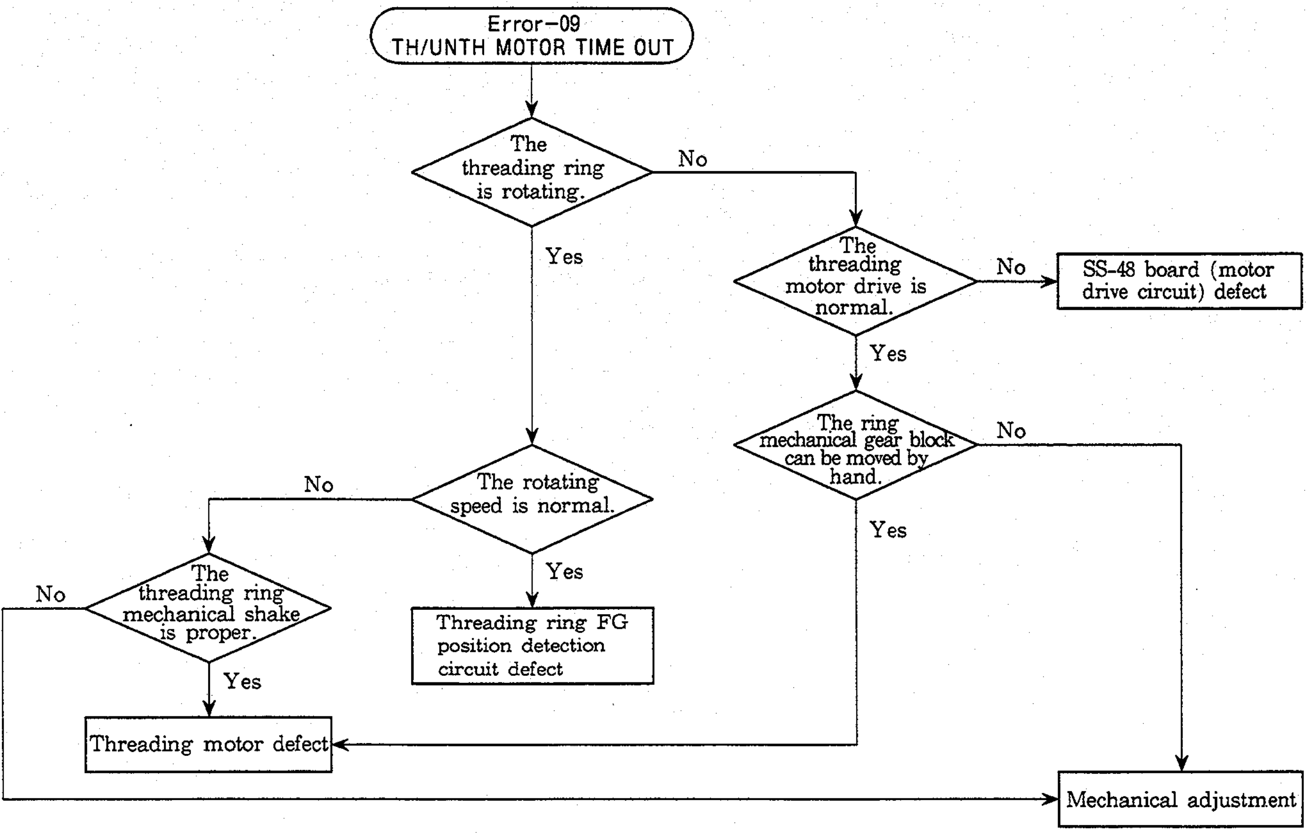

Error-04
REEL TROUBLE-4
The tape runs in fast forward and rewind mode.
No
The voltage at the measuring point of reel motor drive current is about 460 mV.
No
SS-48 board (reel drive circuit) defect
Yes
Yes
Reel FG sensor chearance adjustment (Section 5-10-3)
No
The reel FG outputs.
Reel motor defect
Yes
The tape is slack in fast forward and rewind mode.
No
Yes
Reel motor torque check (Section 5-12-3 through 5-12-7)
Reel FG detection system check

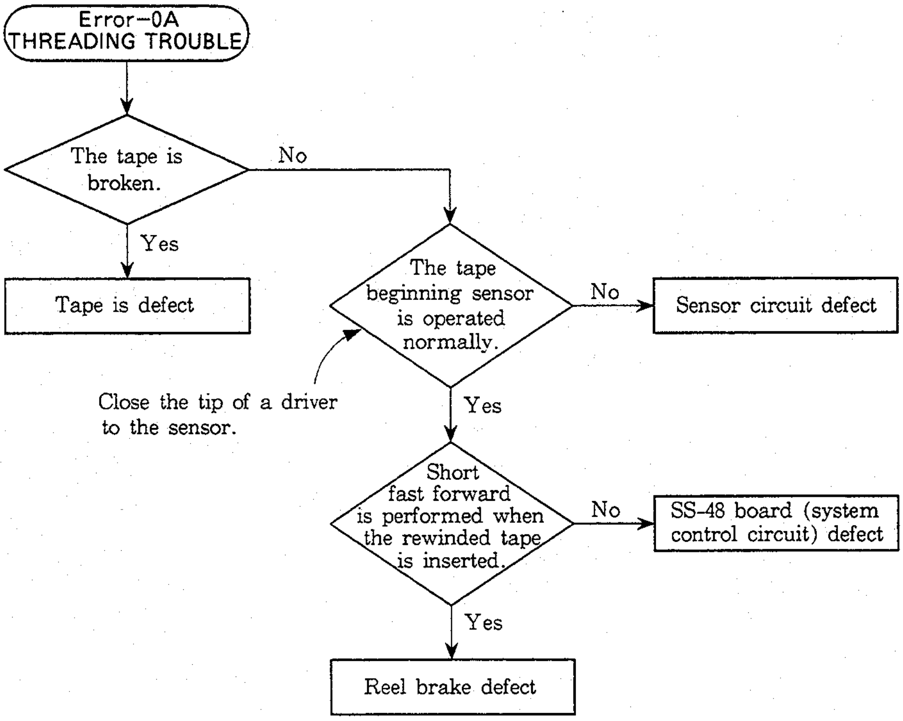

Error-05
REEL TROUBLE-5
The cassette compartment is down position.
No
Yes
The reel table is rotating in high speed.
No
Reel FG detection system defect
Yes
Cassette down detection circuit defect
The tape is slack or broken.
No
Reel motor defect
Yes
The reel torque/brake is normal.
No
Reel drive or reel brake defect
Yes
Cassette tape defect


Error-06
TAPE TENSION ERROR
The tape tension is 55 g or less.
No
Yes
Tension sensor defect
The reel brake is normal.
No
Reel brake defect
Yes
Reel servo defect

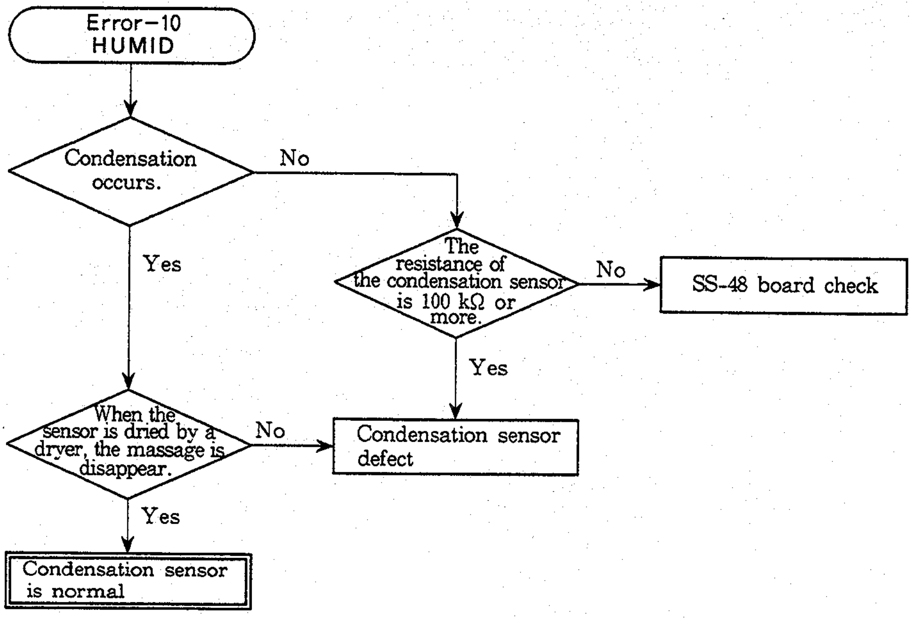

Error-07
CAPSTAN TROUBLE
The tape is slack in running.
No
Capstan free speed adjustment (Section 5-27-3)
Yes
The capstan FG is detected normally. (CN141-25A pin/SS-48, CN141-25Bpin/SS-48)
No
Capstan motor defect
≧4 V p-p
Yes
Reel brake defect

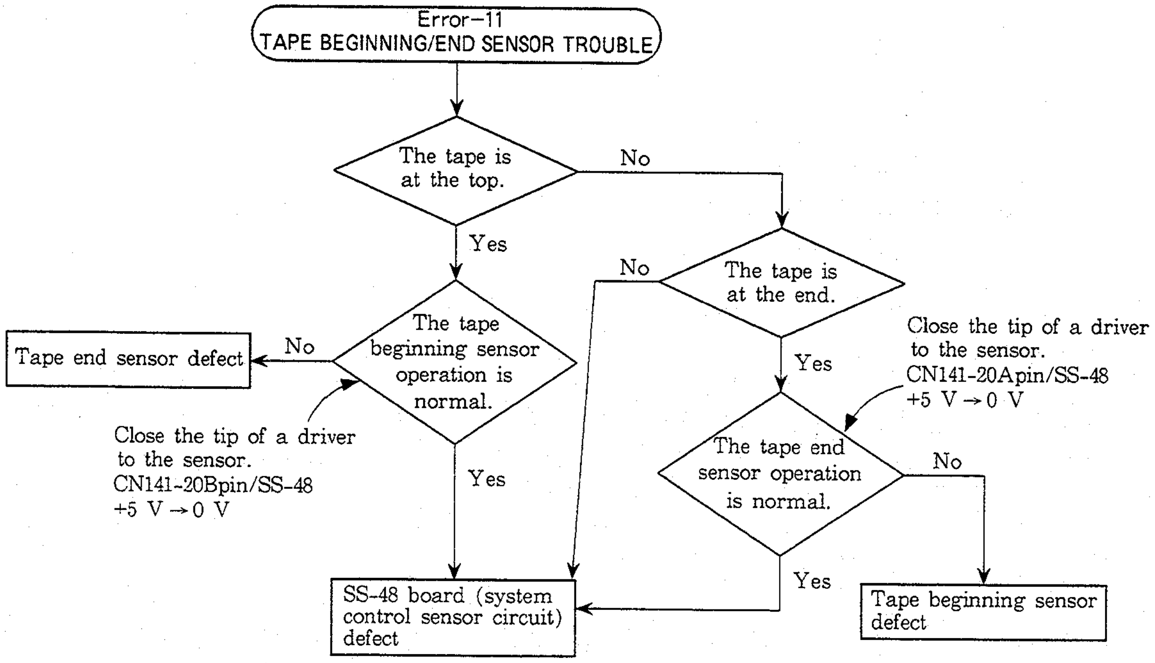

Error-08
DRUM TROUBLE
≒0.65 V dc
0 V
The drum is rotating in running.
No
Yes
The drum motor drive current is normal. (TP4/ DR-118)
No
DR-118 board (drum servo circuit) defect
Drum PG circuit defect
No
The drum is rotating in low speed.
Yes
Yes
Drum FG circuit defect
Drum motor defect

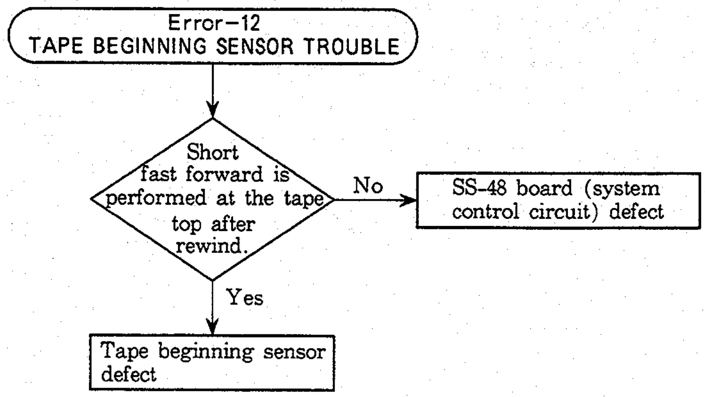

Error−09
TH/UNTH MOTOR TIME OUT
The threading ring is rotating.
No
Yes
The threading motor drive is normal.
No
SS-48 board (motor drive circuit) defect
Yes
The ring mechanical gear block can be moved by hand.
No
Yes
The rotating speed is normal.
No
Yes
The threading ring mechanical shake is proper.
No
Yes
Threading ring FG position detection circuit defect
Threading motor defect
Mechanical adjustment

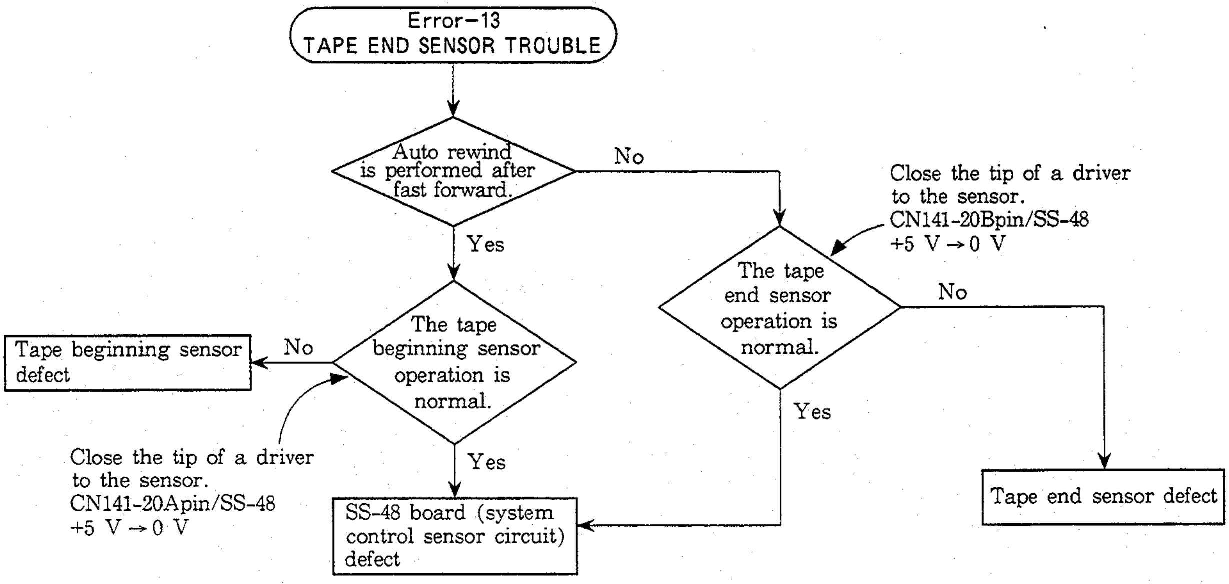

Error−0A
THREADING TROUBLE
The tape is broken.
No
Yes
Tape is defect
The tape beginning sensor is operated normally.
No
Sensor circuit defect
Yes
Short fast forward is performed when the rewinded tape is inserted.
No
SS-48 board (system control circuit) defect
Yes
Reel brake defect

Close the tip of a driver to the sensor.


Error−10
HUMID
Condensation occurs.
No
Yes
The resistance of the condensation sensor is 100 kΩ or more.
No
SS-48 board check
Yes
When the sensor is dried by a dryer, the massage is disappear.
No
Condensation sensor defect
Yes
Condensation sensor is normal

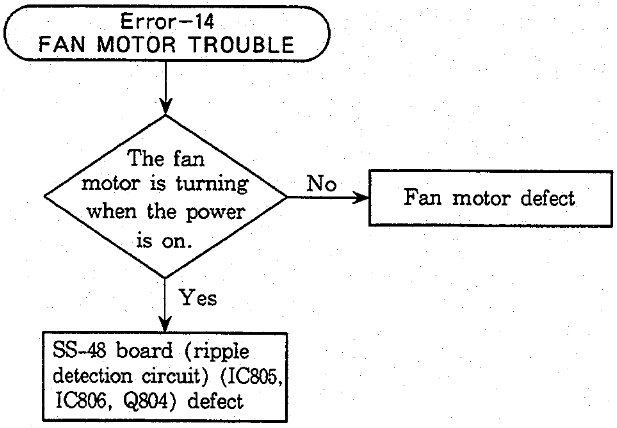

Error−11
TAPE BEGINNING/END SENSOR TROUBLE
The tape is at the top.
No
Yes
No
The tape is at the end.
Close the tip of a driver to the sensor.
CN141-20Apin/SS-48
+5 V → 0 V
Tape end sensor defect
No
The tape beginning sensor operation is normal.
Yes
Close the tip of a driver to the sensor.
CN141-20Bpin/SS-48
+5 V → 0 V
Yes
The tape end sensor operation is normal.
No
Yes
SS-48 board (system control sensor circuit) defect
Tape beginning sensor defect

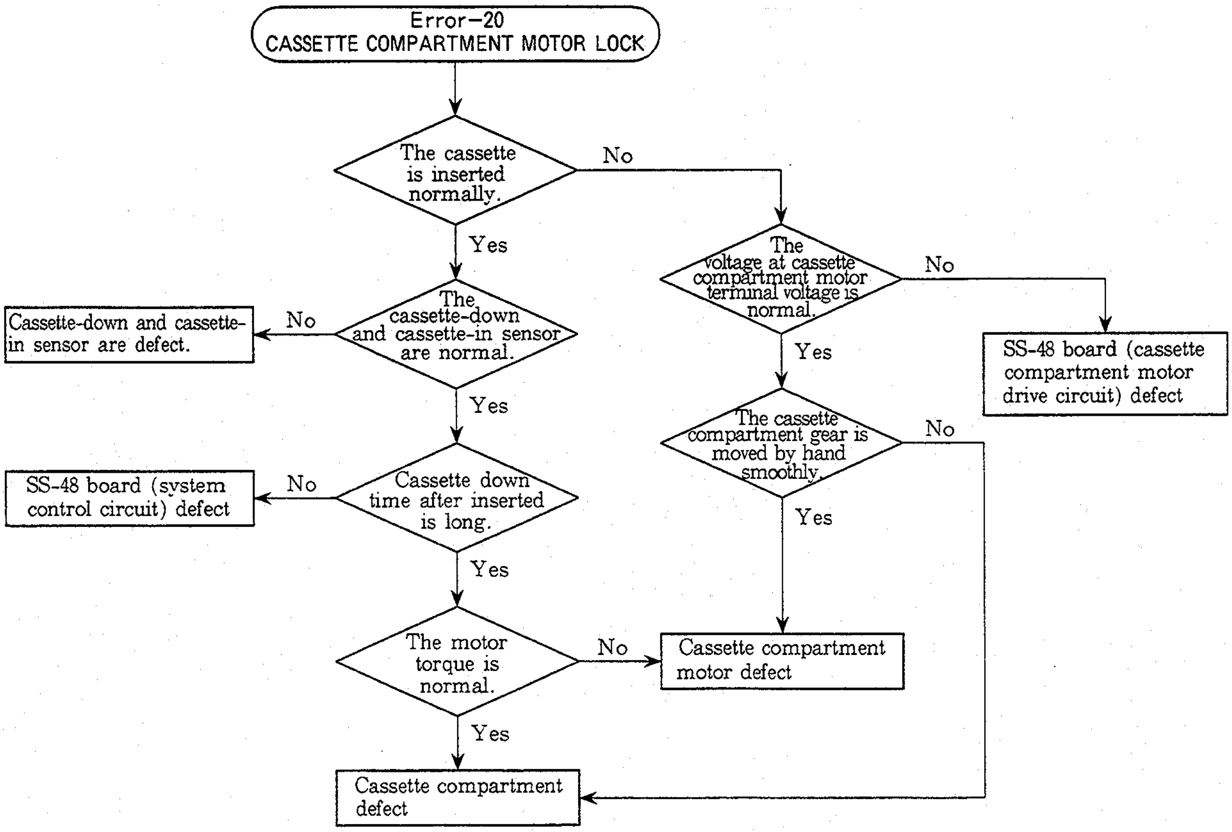

Error−12
TAPE BEGINNING SENSOR TROUBLE
Short fast forward is performed at the tape top after rewind.
No
SS-48 board (system control circuit) defect
Yes
Tape beginning sensor defect

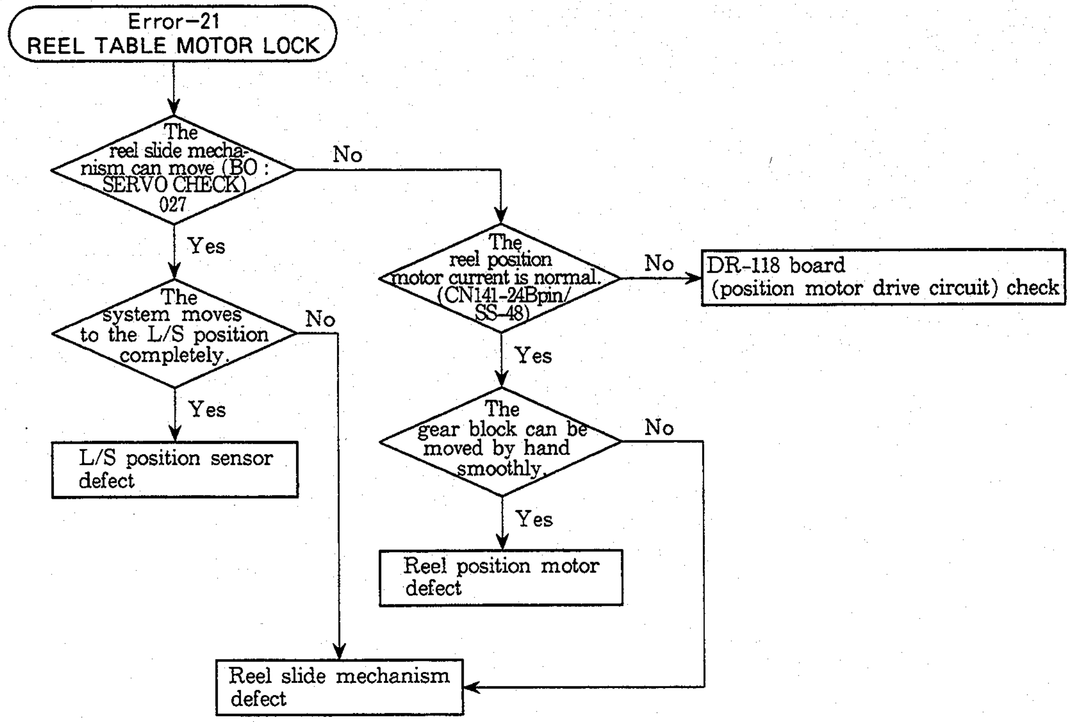

Error−13
TAPE END SENSOR TROUBLE
Auto rewind is performed after fast forward.
No
Yes
The tape end sensor operation is normal.
No
Yes
Tape end sensor defect
The tape beginning sensor operation is normal.
No
Tape beginning sensor defect
Yes
SS-48 board (system control sensor circuit) defect

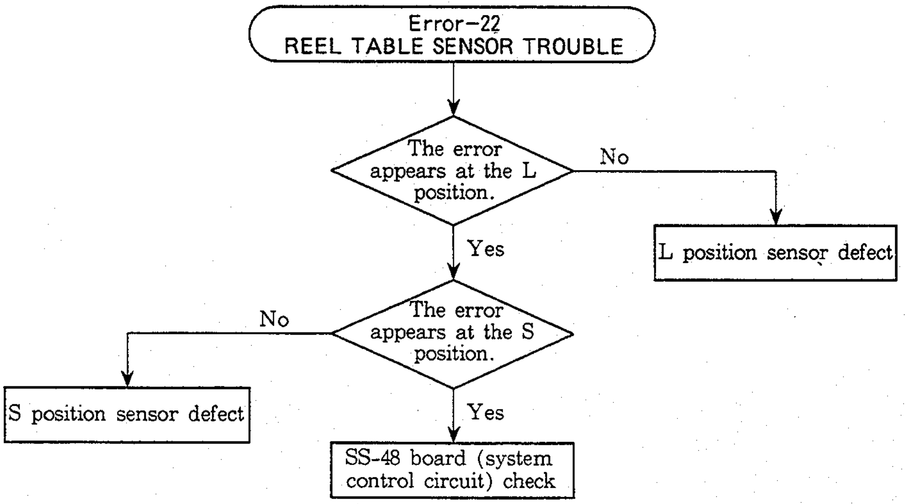
Close the tip of a driver to the sensor.
CN141-20Bpin/SS-48
+5 V → 0 V

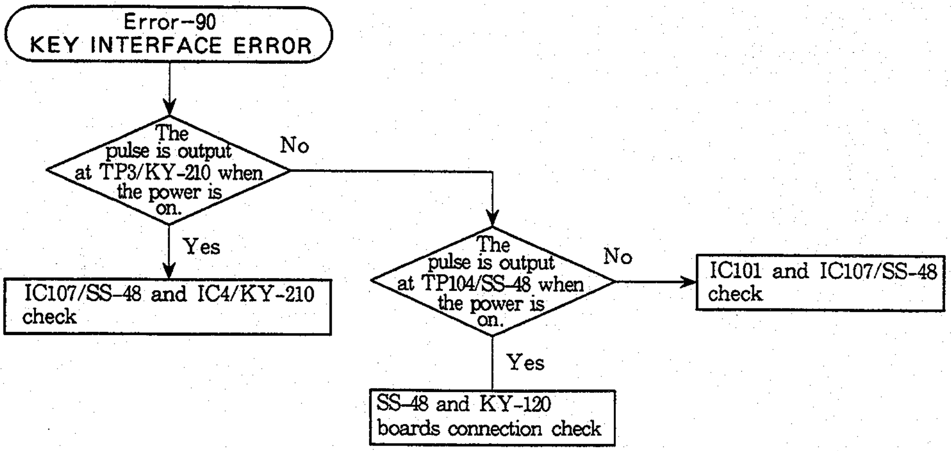
Close the tip of a driver to the sensor.
CN141-20Apin/SS-48
+5 V → 0 V

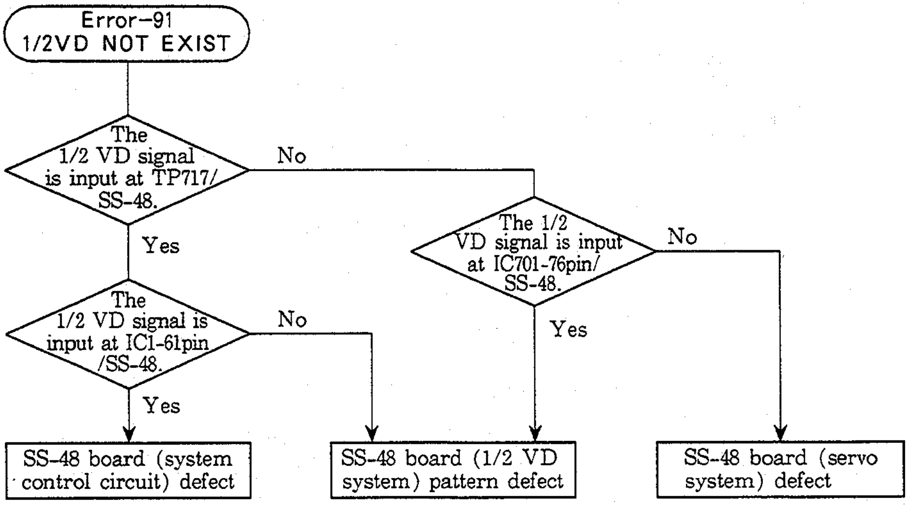

Error–14
FAN MOTOR TROUBLE
The fan motor is turning when the power is on.
No
Fan motor defect
Yes
SS-48 board (ripple detection circuit) (IC805, IC806, Q804) defect

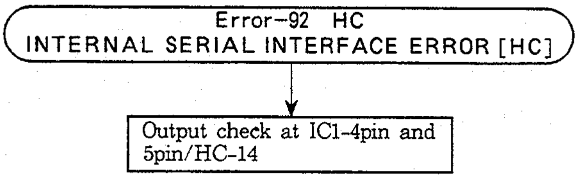

Error–20
CASSETTE COMPARTMENT MOTOR LOCK
The cassette is inserted normally.
No
Yes
The cassette-down and cassette-in sensor are normal.
No
Cassette-down and cassette-in sensor are defect.
Yes
Cassette down time after inserted is long.
No
SS-48 board (system control circuit) defect
Yes
The motor torque is normal.
No
Cassette compartment motor defect
Yes
Cassette compartment defect
The voltage at cassette compartment motor terminal voltage is normal.
No
SS-48 board (cassette compartment motor drive circuit) defect
Yes
The cassette compartment gear is moved by hand smoothly.
No
Yes

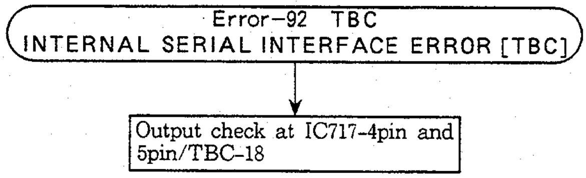

Error-21
REEL TABLE MOTOR LOCK
The reel slide mechanism can move (BO : SERVO CHECK) 027
No
Yes
The system moves to the L/S position completely.
No
Yes
L/S position sensor defect
The reel position motor current is normal. (CN141-24Bpin/ SS-48)
No
DR-118 board (position motor drive circuit) check
Yes
The gear block can be moved by hand smoothly.
No
Yes
Reel position motor defect
Reel slide mechanism defect

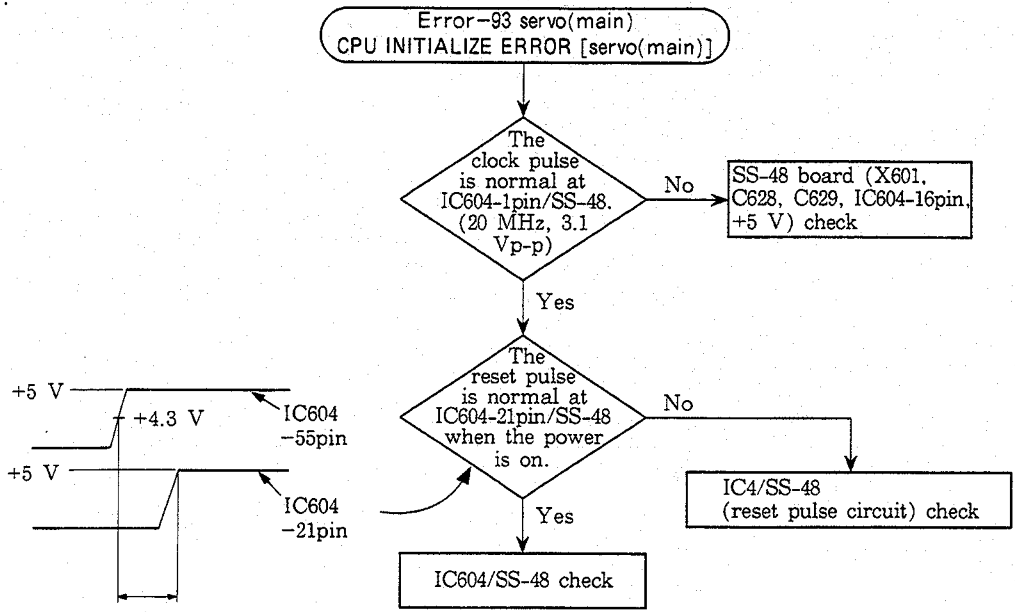

Error-22
REEL TABLE SENSOR TROUBLE
The error appears at the L position.
No
L position sensor defect
Yes
The error appears at the S position.
No
S position sensor defect
Yes
SS-48 board (system control circuit) check


Error-90
KEY INTERFACE ERROR
The pulse is output at TP3/KY-210 when the power is on.
No
Yes
IC107/SS-48 and IC4/KY-210 check
The pulse is output at TP104/SS-48 when the power is on.
No
IC101 and IC107/SS-48 check
Yes
SS-48 and KY-120 boards connection check

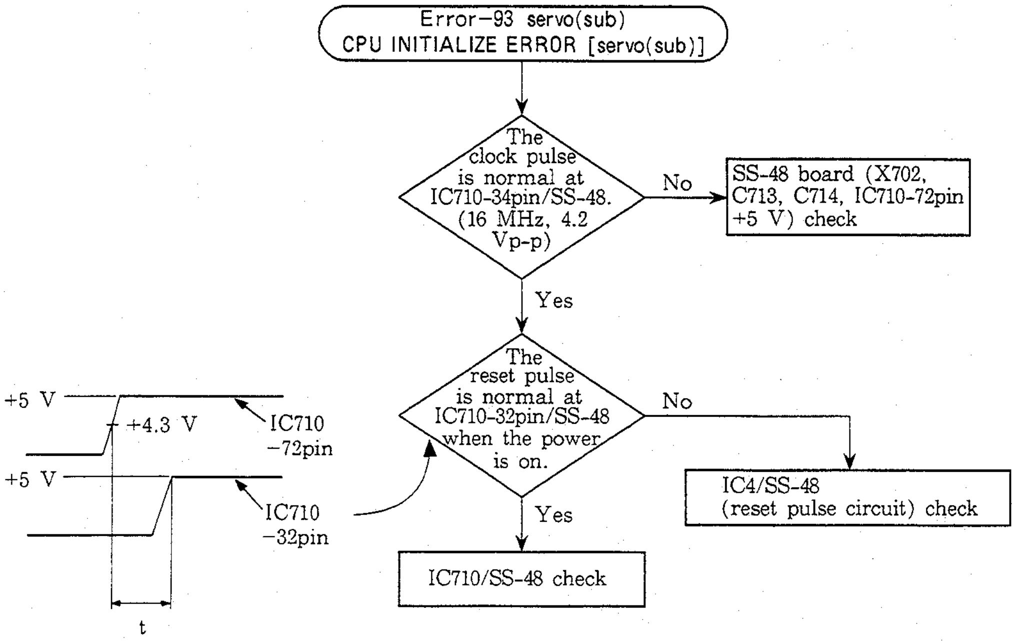

Error-91
1/2VD NOT EXIST
The 1/2 VD signal is input at TP717/SS-48.
No
Yes
The 1/2 VD signal is input at IC701-76pin/SS-48.
No
Yes
The 1/2 VD signal is input at IC1-61pin/SS-48.
No
Yes
SS-48 board (system control circuit) defect
SS-48 board (1/2 VD system) pattern defect
SS-48 board (servo system) defect


Error-92 HC
INTERNAL SERIAL INTERFACE ERROR [HC]
Output check at IC1-4pin and 5pin/HC-14

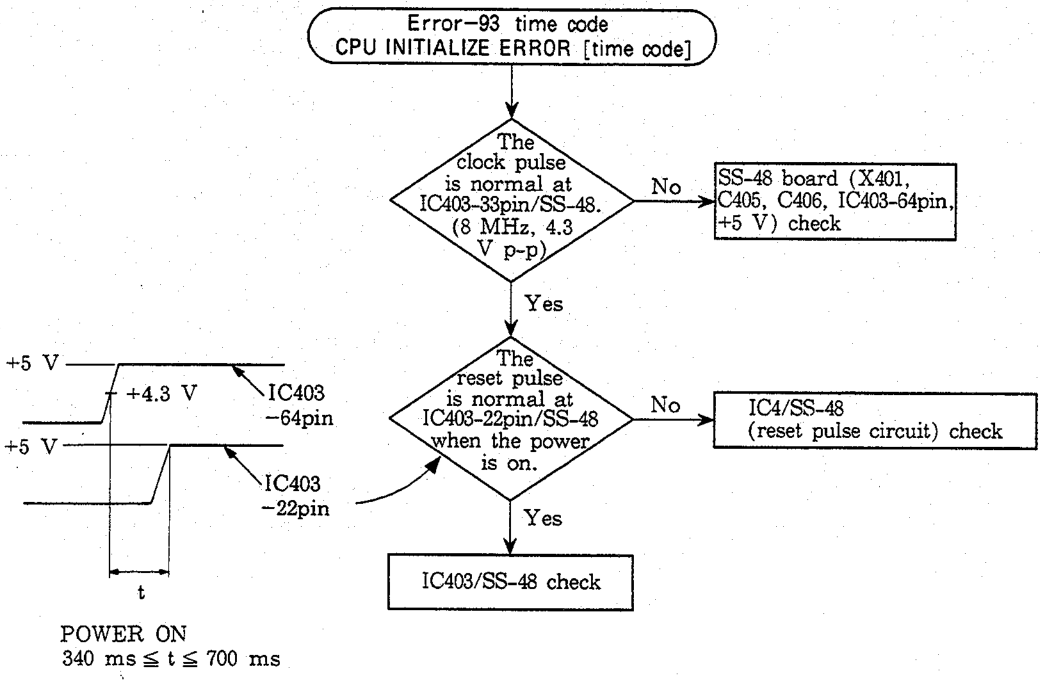

Error-92 TBC
INTERNAL SERIAL INTERFACE ERROR [TBC]
Output check at IC717-4pin and 5pin/TBC-18

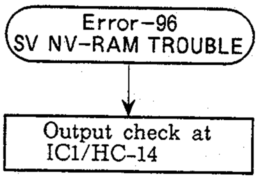

Error−93 servo(main)
CPU INITIALIZE ERROR [servo(main)]
The clock pulse is normal at IC604-1pin/SS-48. (20 MHz, 3.1 Vp-p)
No
SS-48 board (X601, C628, C629, IC604-16pin, +5 V) check
Yes
The reset pulse is normal at IC604-21pin/SS-48 when the power is on.
No
IC4/SS-48 (reset pulse circuit) check
Yes
IC604/SS-48 check
+5 V
+4.3 V
IC604 −55pin
+5 V
IC604 −21pin
t

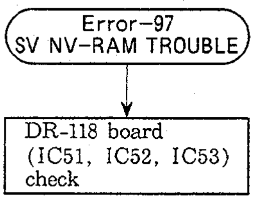
POWER ON
340 ms ≦ t ≦ 700 ms


Error−93 servo(sub)
CPU INITIALIZE ERROR [servo(sub)]
The clock pulse is normal at IC710-34pin/SS-48. (16 MHz, 4.2 Vp-p)
No
SS-48 board (X702, C713, C714, IC710-72pin +5 V) check
Yes
The reset pulse is normal at IC710-32pin/SS-48 when the power is on.
No
IC4/SS-48 (reset pulse circuit) check
Yes
IC710/SS-48 check
+5 V
+4.3 V
IC710 −72pin
+5 V
IC710 −32pin
t

POWER ON
340 ms ≦ t ≦ 700 ms


Error−93 time code
CPU INITIALIZE ERROR [time code]
The clock pulse is normal at IC403-33pin/SS-48. (8 MHz, 4.3 V p-p)
No
SS-48 board (X401, C405, C406, IC403-64pin, +5 V) check
Yes
The reset pulse is normal at IC403-22pin/SS-48 when the power is on.
No
IC4/SS-48 (reset pulse circuit) check
Yes
IC403/SS-48 check
+5 V
+4.3 V
IC403 −64pin
+5 V
IC403 −22pin
t
POWER ON
340 ms ≦ t ≦ 700 ms


Error−96
SV NV-RAM TROUBLE
Output check at IC1/HC-14


Error−97
SV NV-RAM TROUBLE
DR-118 board (IC51, IC52, IC53) check

2-4. PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD

SYSTEM	BOARD	CIRCUIT FUNCTION
VIDEO	RP-57AP	RF PB Amplifier
	VP-33AP	Y/C PB Process (PB RF EQ, Demod, Encode, Y-RF Envelope DET), Composite Out Driver
	TBC-18P	Time Base Corrector, CTDM (Expand)
	CP-166A	Output Connector, Component Out Driver
	VR-117A	Tracking Control
AUDIO	AU-148AP	CH-1 PB Process, Dolby System
	AU-149AP	CH-2 PB Process, Dolby System
	AU-150A	Mode Control, LTC PB
	CP-167A	Output Connector, Line Amplifier
	DP-138A	Level Meter, Back Light
	VR-116A	PB Level Control, Headphone Volume Control
	MA-44A	Meter Driver,Headphone Amplifier
SERVO/ SYSTEM CONTROL/ TIME CODE	SS-48P	System Control, Servo System Main, Time Code Reader, Character Generator
	KY-210A	Keyboard
	DP-139A	Time Code Display
	DR-118A	Motor Driver, Solenoid Driver, Sensor Input, Tension Amplifier, FG Amplifier, CTL PB, Adjust Data Storage
	CL-25	Cassette Compartment (Cassette Loading Begin/Near-end Sensor, LP-57 Connection)
	DE-15	Reel FG
	DS-31	Condensation Sensor
	HC-14C	Sub-control Panel
	PC-62	Cassette In/Large Cassette Sensor
	PD-56	Pinch/Cleaning Solenoid Connection, Reel FG check
	PTC-39	Search Dial
	PTC-42	Cassette Size Sensor
	PTC-49	Threading Motor
	PTC-54	Threading FG
	PTC-55	Cassette Information Sensor (Tape Thickness, Reel Hub Diameter, Metal/Oxide)
	RM-82	Reel Motor
	RM-93A	TBC/9P Remote Connector
	SW-444A	Select Switch, Indicator, RF Level Meter
	TR-73	S/T Tension Sensor
OTHERS	AC-133	AC Line Filter, Fuse
	DP-159A	RF Meter Back Light
	LP-57	Cassette Illumination
	MB-322A	Mother Board

2-5. REMOVAL OF CABINET

Turn the POWER switch to OFF during removal.

Left Side Panel

1. Remove a carrying handle.
2. Remove four screws (4×6) and remove a left side panel.

Upper Panel

1. Loosen three fixing screws, and remove an upper panel moving in the direction of the arrow.

Lower Panel

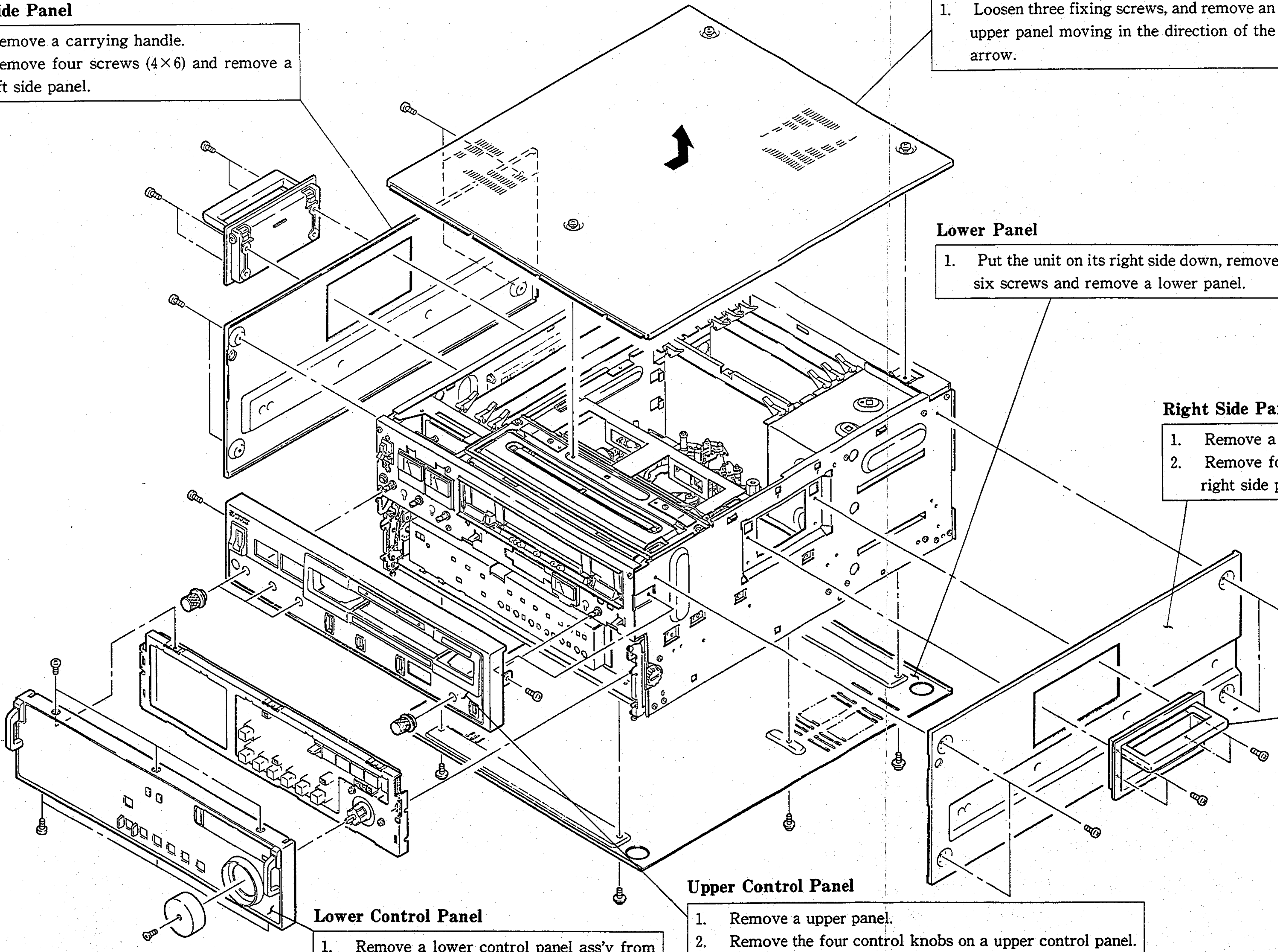
1. Put the unit on its right side down, remove six screws and remove a lower panel.

Right Side Panel

1. Remove a carrying handle.
2. Remove four screws (4×6) and remove a right side panel.

Carrying Handle

1. Remove four screws (3×6) and remove a carrying handle.



Lower Control Panel

1. Remove a lower control panel ass'y from the unit. (Refer to Section 2-8.)
2. Remove the each three screws (3×6) at the top and bottom on the lower control panel ass'y.
3. Remove the screw on a search dial (3×5) and remove a dial knob, then remove the lower control panel.

Upper Control Panel

1. Remove a upper panel.
2. Remove the four control knobs on a upper control panel.
3. Remove the each one screw (3×6) at the left and right of the upper control panel.
Insert your fingers in the space between the upper control panel and chassis, and remove the upper control panel as shown in the figure 1.
4. When installing, insert the claws of the upper control panel into the lack of chassis, then fix the panel with the screws as shown in the figure 2.

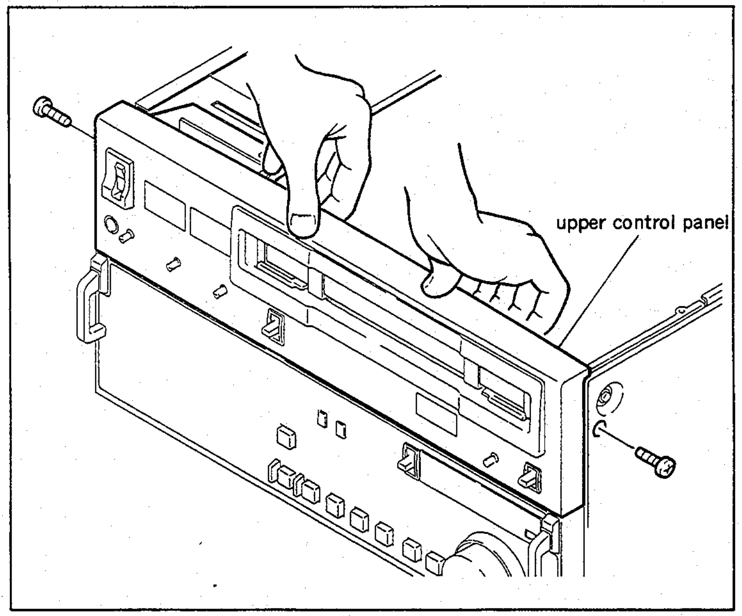


Figure 1

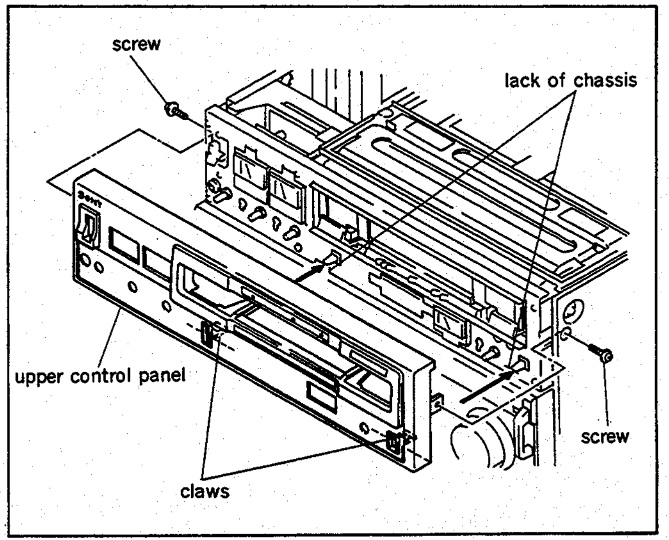
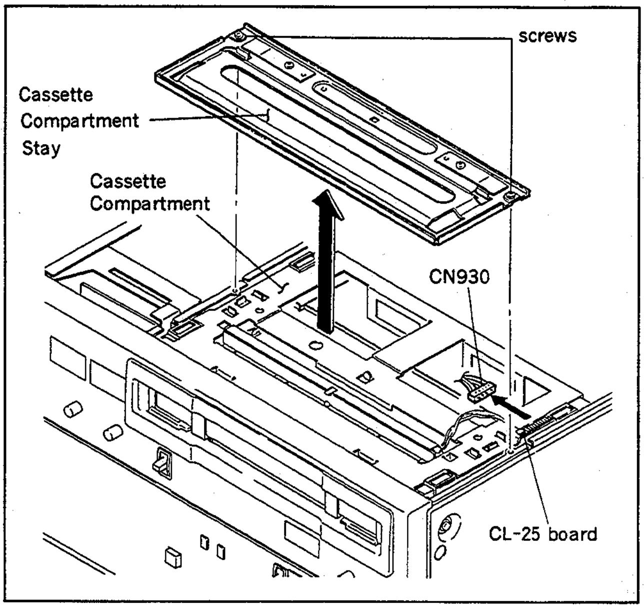


Figure 2

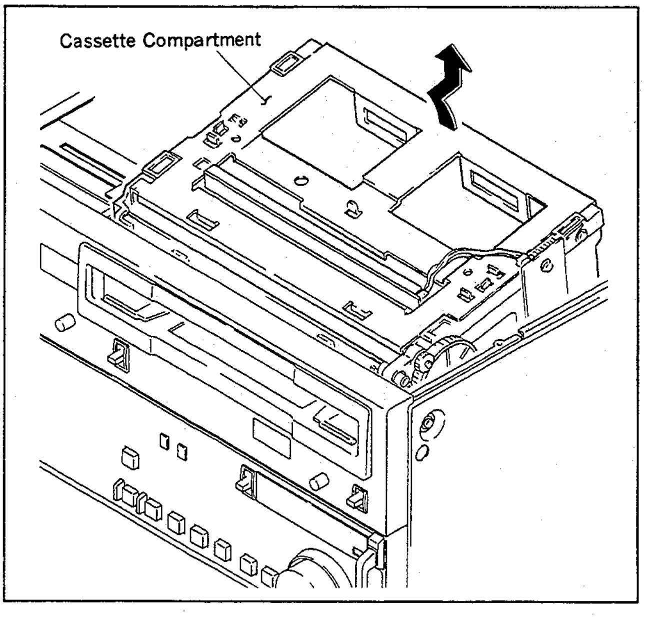
2-6. REMOVAL/INSTALLATION OF CASSETTE COMPARTMENT

• Removal

1. Turn the POWER OFF.
2. Loosen three screws and remove an upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
3. Loosen the two screws shown in the figure and remove a Cassette Compartment Stay.
   These screws are retained on the Stay, so they don't get out of the Stay.
4. Disconnect the connector CN930 on the CL-25 board at the upper right of the Cassette Compartment.

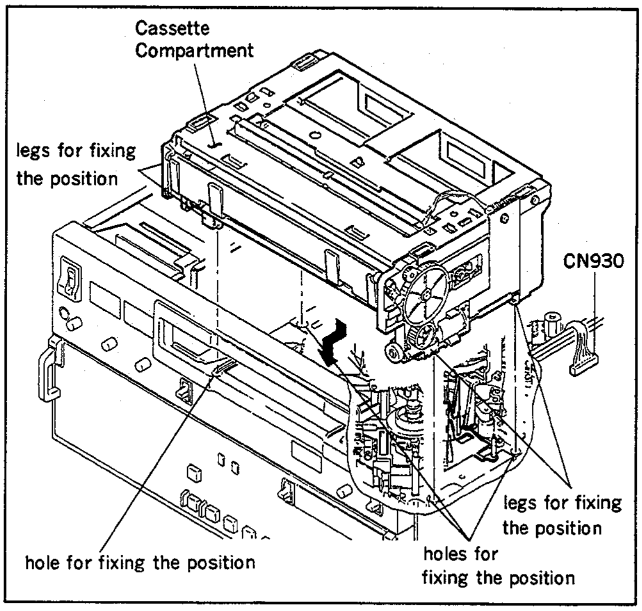

screws
Cassette Compartment Stay
Cassette Compartment
CN930
CL-25 board

5. Slide up the Cassette Compartment raising up the rear part as shown in the figure. Lift up the Cassette Compartment slowly.


Cassette Compartment

• Installation

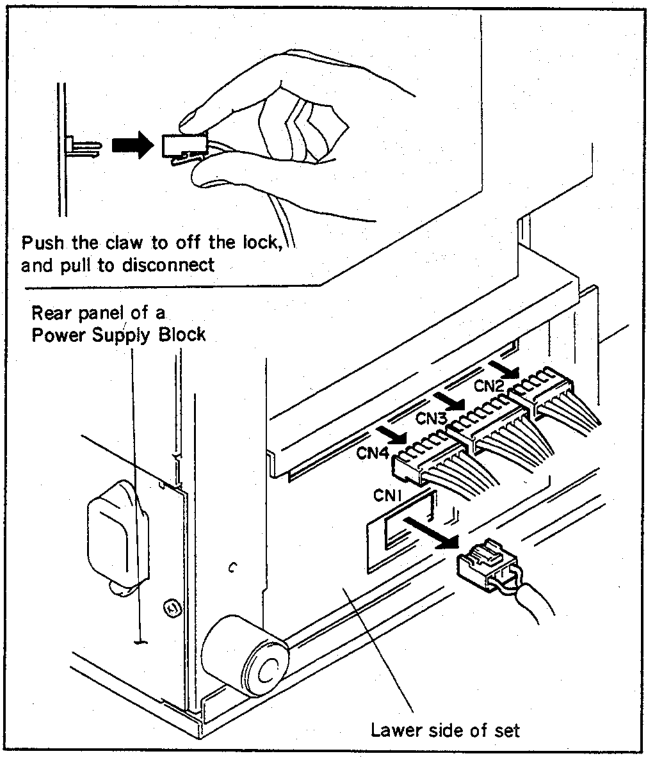
6. Set the harness of the connector(CN930) disconnected in step (4) so it is not put between chassises.
   Install the Cassette Compartment inserting slantingly in the direction as shown in the figure.
   (Note) In this time, confirm that the four legs of the Cassette Compartment for fixing the position are in the holes of the mechanical chassis for fixing the position.


Cassette Compartment
legs for fixing the position
CN930
legs for fixing the position
hole for fixing the position
holes for fixing the position

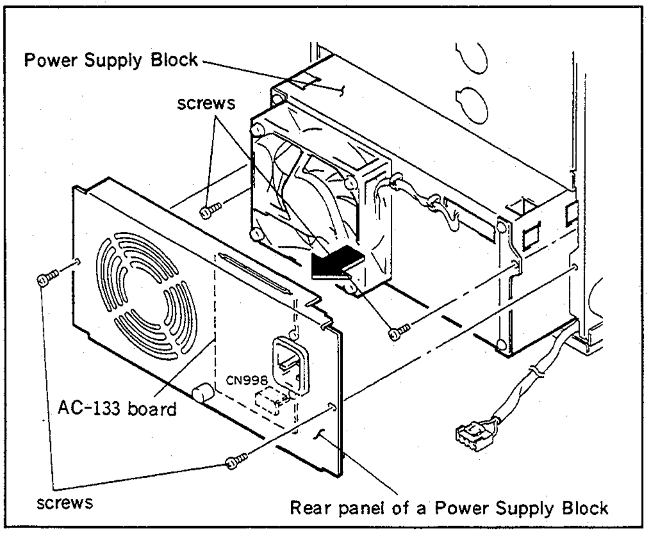
7. After confirming that the Cassette Compartment is fixed to the chassis, install the Cassette Compartment Stay and connect the connector CN930 of the CL-25 board.

2-7. REMOVAL OF POWER SUPPLY BLOCK

1. Turn the POWER OFF.
2. Put the unit on its right side down and remove six screws and remove a lower panel.
3. Disconnect the four . connectors(CN1, CN2, CN3, and CN4) shown in the figure.


Push the claw to off the lock, and pull to disconnect
Rear panel of a Power Supply Block
CN2
CN3
CN4
CN1
Lawer side of set

4. Remove the two screws at the top and bottom on the rear panel of a Power Supply Block and remove the rear panel.

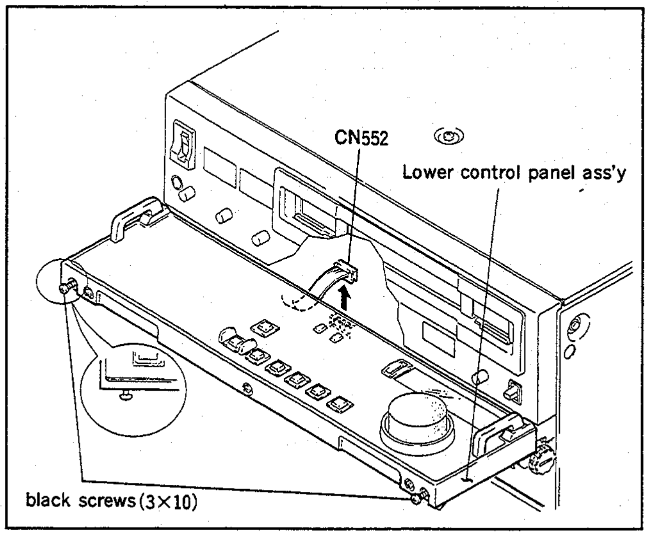

Power Supply Block
screws
CN998
AC-133 board
screws
Rear panel of a Power Supply Block

5. Disconnect the connector CN998 on the AC-133 board.
6. Remove the two screws at the top and bottom diagonal and slide the Power Supply Block not to catch the harnesses, and remove the Power Supply Block.

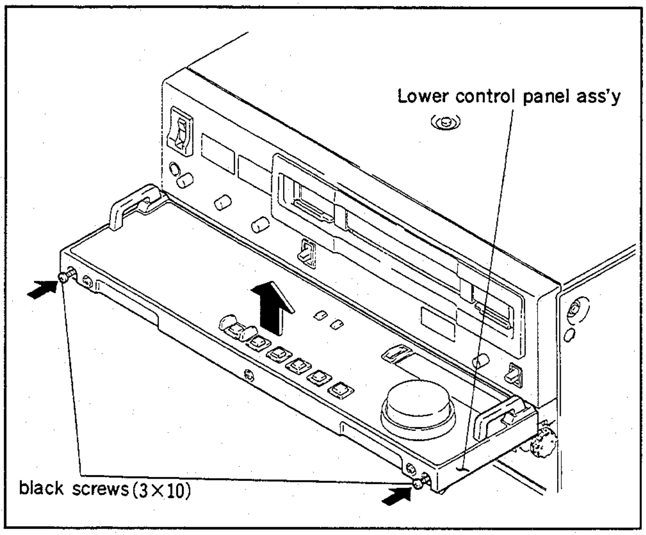
2-8. REMOVAL/INSTALLATION OF LOWER CONTROL PANEL ASS'Y

- **Removal**

1. Fix a lower control panel ass'y at 90 degrees (Refer to section 2-9.), disconnect the connector CN552 on the HC-14 board of a sub control panel.
2. Loosen the two black screws (3×10) on the lower control panel ass'y shown in the figure. (Loosen the screws until screw's top are exposed from the lack of the lower control panel ass'y.)

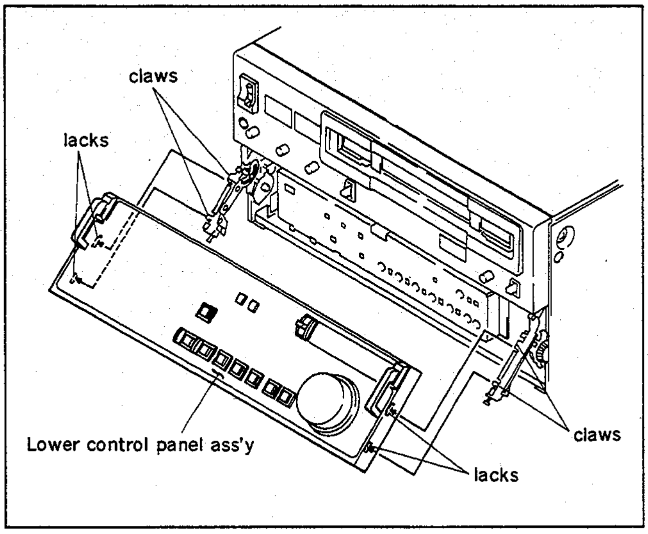

CN552
Lower control panel ass'y
black screws(3×10)

3. While pushing the loosen black screws in the direction of the arrow, remove the lower control panel ass'y from arms.


Lower control panel ass'y
black screws(3×10)

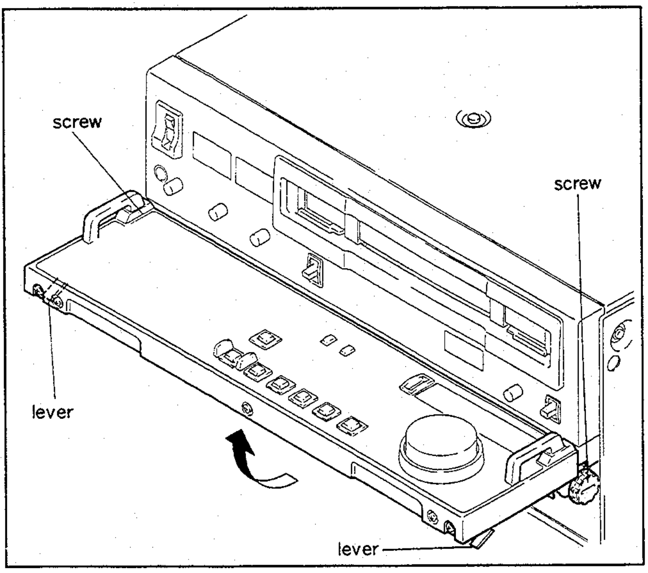
• Installation

4. Connect the harness of the lower control panel ass'y to the connector CN552 on the HC-14 board of the sub control panel.
5. Fix the arms at 45 degrees, set the lacks of the lower control panel ass'y to the claws of the arms and insert the ass'y until you can hear the click.
   Then fix the ass'y with screws.



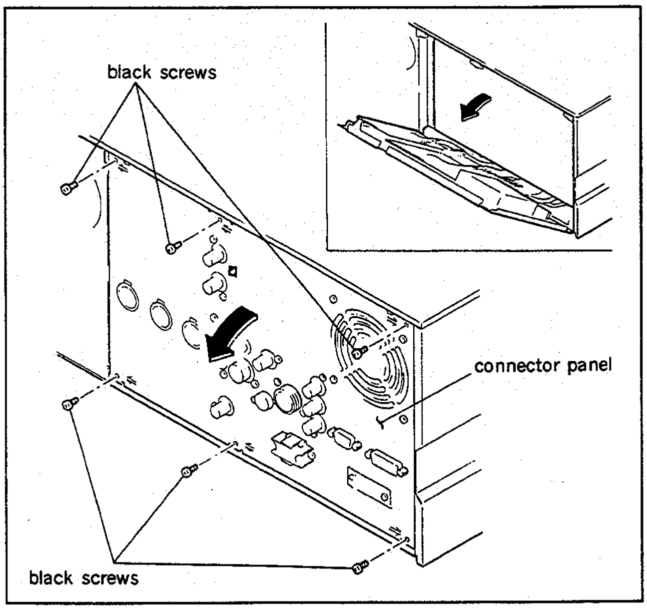
2-9. TILT THE LOWER CONTROL PANEL

1. Raise the panel to the desired angle.
2. While pressing the levers at the right and left sides of the panel, pull the panel up until it stops.
3. Tighten the screws on the right and left sides inside the panel by turning them clockwise.
4. While pressing the levers, lower the panel to the desired angle.
5. In case of change the angle, loosen the screws and try again from stepl.



2-10. REMOVAL OF CONNECTOR PANEL

1. Turn the POWER OFF.
2. Remove the six screws indicated ⇛ at the top and bottom on the connector panel, then remove the connector panel not to stretch the harnesses as shown in the figure.



2-11. NOTE FOR CHECK AND MAINTENANCE OF PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD

Be sure to turn the POWER OFF before removing or inserting the printed circuit boards.

2-12. EXTENSION BOARD

Two extension boards are supplied as optional accessory for check and adjutment of some printed circuit boards.
Insert the extension board into the chassis of a unit and connect the circuit board to be checked or adjusted to the end of the extension board.

Extension board	Connectable Printed Circuit Boards
EX-286 A-6766-389-A	VP-33, TBC-18, SS-48
EX-287 J-6338-130-A	AU-148, AU-149, AU-150, RP-57

2-13. NOTES ON REPAIR PARTS

2-13-1. Notes on Repair Parts

(1) Safety Related Components Warning

Components marked with ⚠ on the schematic diagrams, exploded views and electrical spare parts list are critical to safe operation. Replace these components with Sony parts whose part numbers appear in this manual or in service bulletins and service manual supplements published by Sony.

(2) Standardization of Parts

Repair parts supplied from Sony Parts Center may not be always identical with the parts which actually in use due to "accommodating the improved parts and/or engineering changes" or "standardization of genuine parts".

This manual's exploded views and electrical spare parts list are indicating the part numbers of "the standardized genuine parts at present".

(3) Change of Parts

Regarding engineering parts changes, refer to Section 19 "CHANGED PARTS".

(4) Stock of Parts

Parts marked with "o" SP (Supply Code) column of the spare parts list are not normally required for routine service work. Orders for parts marked with "o" will be processed, but allow for additional delivery time.

(5) Units for Capacitors and Resistors

The following units may be assumed in schematic diagrams, electrical parts list and exploded views unless otherwise specified.

Capacitors : μF
Resistors : Ω

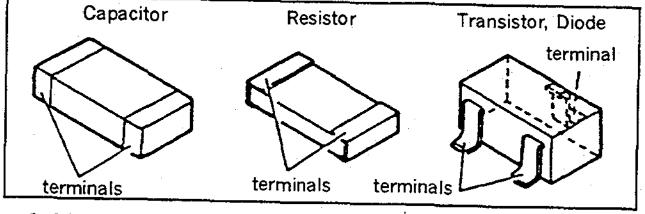
2-13-2. Replacement Procedure for Chip Parts

Required Tools

Soldering iron : 20 W If possible, use a soldering iron tip heat-controller at 270 ± 10 °C.
Braided wire : SOLDER TAUL or equivalent
Sony part No. 7-641-300-81
Solder : 0.6 mm dia. is recommended.
Tweezers

Soldering Conditions

Soldering iron temperature : 270 ± 10 °C.
Soldering time : less than two seconds per a pin.



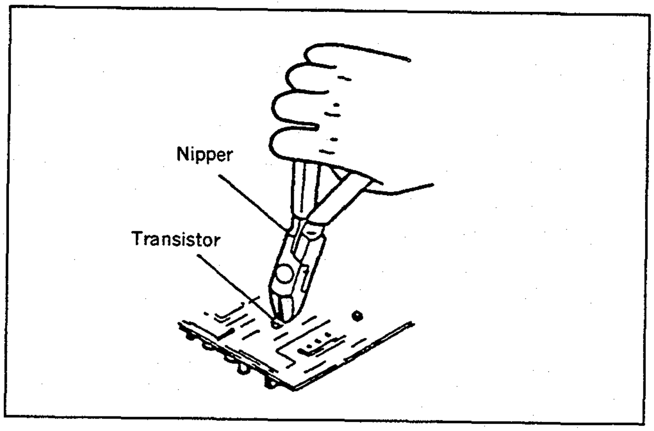
• Resistor and Capacitor Replacement

(1) Place the soldering iron tip onto the chip part and heat it up until the solder is melted. When the solder is melted, slide the chip part aside.
(2) Make sure that there is no pattern peeling, damage and/or bridges around the desoldering positions.
(3) After removing the chip part, presolder the area, in which the new chip part is to be placed, with a thin layer of solder.
(4) Place new chip part in the desired position and solder both ends.

NOTE: Once a chip part has been removed, never use it again.

• Transistor and Diode Replacement

(1) Cut the terminals of the chip part with a nipper.
(2) Remove the cut leads.
(3) Make sure that there is no pattern peeling, damage and/or bridges around the desoldering positions.
(4) After removing the chip part, presolder the area, in which the new chip part is to be placed, with a thin layer of solder.
(5) Place new chip part in the desired position and solder the terminals.



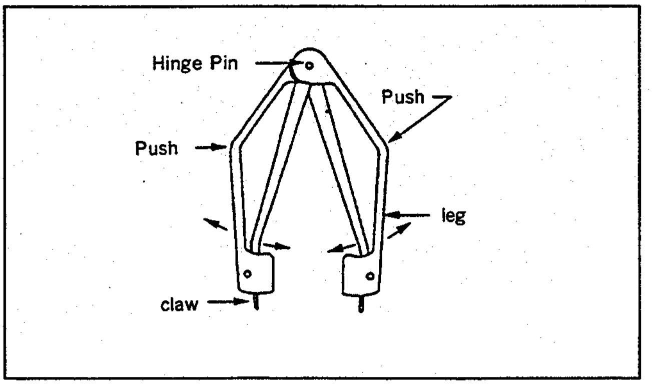
• IC Replacement

(1) Using the braided wire, "SOLDER TAUL" Sony Part No. 7-641-300-81, remove the solder around the pins of the IC-chip to be removed.
(2) While heating up the pins, remove the pins one by one using sharp-pointed tweezers.
(3) Make sure that there is no pattern peeling, damage and/or bridges around the desoldering positions.
(4) After removing the chip part, presolder the area, in which the new chip part is to be placed, with a thin layer of solder.
(5) Place new chip part in the desired position and solder the pins.

2-13-3. Removal of PLCC IC

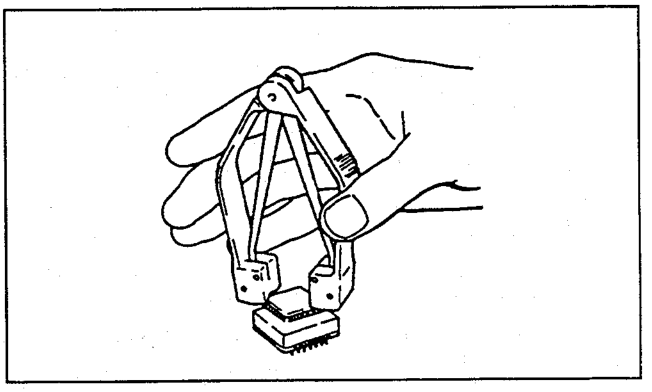
The Extraction Tool is useful for removing the IC (PLCC type) inserted into an IC socket. This is useful for all sizes of ICs of 20 pins through 124 pins.

Extraction Tool (for PLCC socket)
Sony Part No. J-6035-070-A

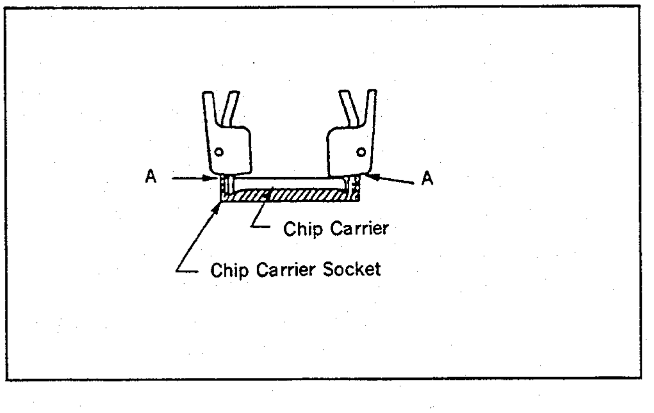

Hinge Pin
Push
Push
leg
claw

NOTE : • Never pull chips of IC upward with the Extraction Tool.
• Never hold the Extraction Tool on a strong force.

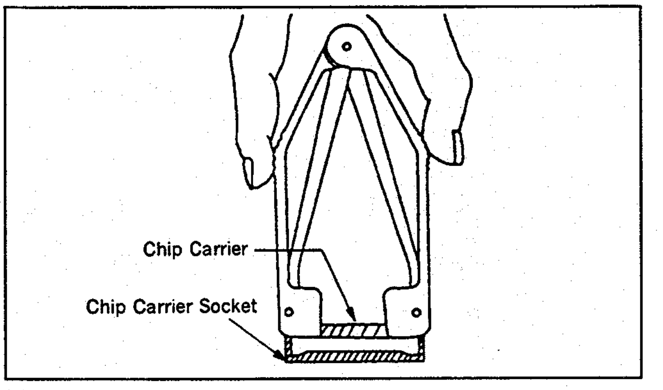
(1) Adjust width so that the claws of the tool are matched to the socket of an IC.



(2) Insert the claws of the tool into the slots of the socket, and then press the tool aginst the socket so that the A portion shown in the figure contact to the socket.


A
A
Chip Carrier
Chip Carrier Socket

(3) Hold the tool as shown in the figure. The socket is pressed on a little force to downward.


Chip Carrier
Chip Carrier Socket

(4) Pinch the tool, so the legs of the tool are straightened. At that time, the claws pinch the chips of the IC and pull the IC upward.

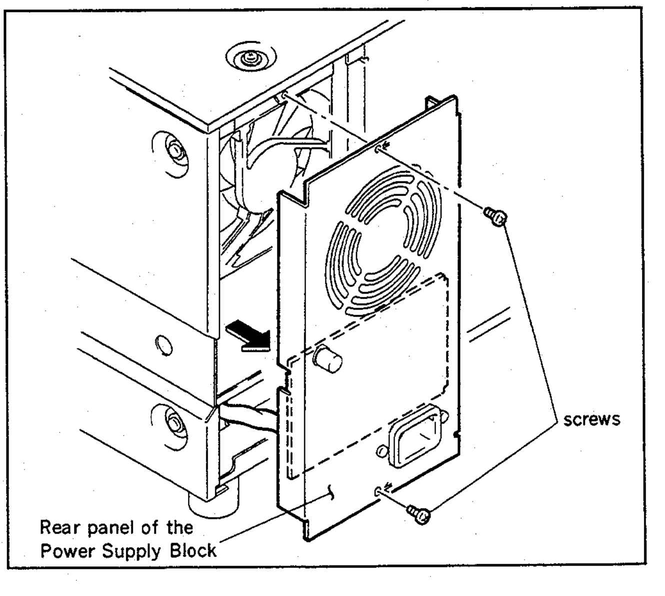
(5) After pulling the IC, loosen the force of the fingers, and take off the chip.

2-13-4. Replacement of Fuse

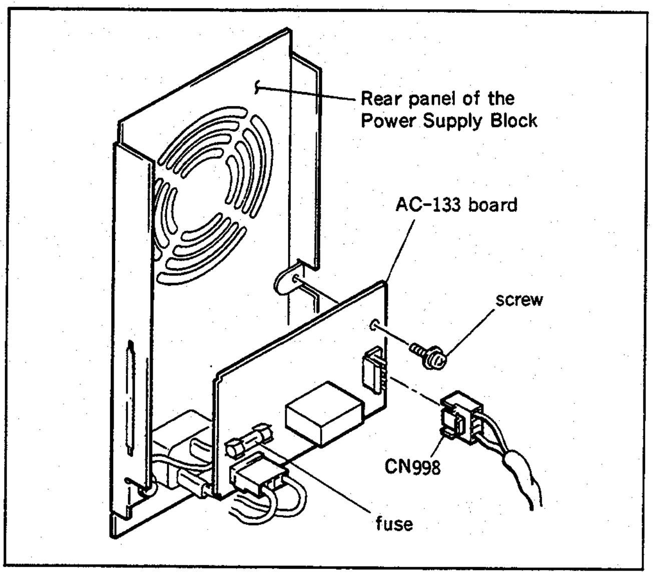
A power fuse is mounted on the AC-133 board. If the fuse has blown, first remedy cause of trouble, and replace the fuse.

(1) Turn the POWER OFF.

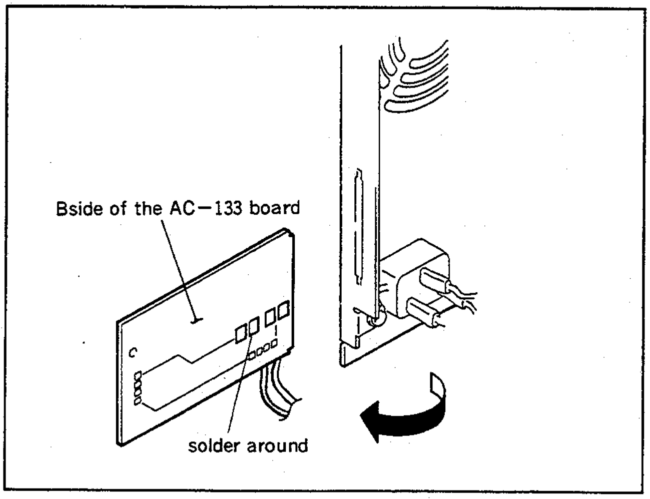
(2) Remove the two screws at the top and bottom on the rear panel of the Power Supply Block and remove the rear panel.


screws
Rear panel of the Power Supply Block

(3) Disconnect the connector CN998 on the AC-133 board and remove a screw.



(4) Remove the solder around the pins of the fuse on the B side of the AC-133 board using the braided wire "SOLDER TAUL" and replace the fuse.



2-14. HOW TO OPERATE THE UNIT WITHOUT CASSETTE TAPE

When some mechanical alignments are performed, it may be operated the unit without inserting a cassette tape.
The following procedures are described about the operation of the unit without installing a Cassette Compartment.

1. **Threading**

   Turn the POWER ON.
   After the reel motor and upper drum are rotated, the supply tension arm, take-up tension arm, supply slider, take-up slider and pinch roller slider begin to move, and the unit is put into threading mode.
   The tension arm and three sliders move to the regular positions, and threading is completed.
   It is said that this threading completed state is STOP mode.

2. **Playback**

   Set the setup menu "Item 902" to 1. (At this time, tape protection mode is off.)
   Press the PLAY button in threading completed state. A pinch roller is pressed to the capstan shaft, and the unit is put into PLAY mode.
   If the PLAY button is pressed during the threading, the pinch roller is pressed to a capstan shaft after threading is completed, and the unit is put into PLAY mode.
   NOTE : After adjustment is completed, set the setup menu "Item 902" to 0.

3. **Unthreading**

   Press the EJECT button in threading completed state. A supply slider, take-up slider and pinch roller slider begin to move, and the unit is put into unthreading mode.
   Three sliders move to the regular positions, and unthreading is completed.

4. **Search**

   Set the setup menu "Item 902" to 1. (At this time, tape protection mode is off.)
   Rotate a search dial to forward or reverse direction in threading completed state. A pinch roller is pressed to a capstan shaft, and the unit is put into search mode in the direction and the speed decided by the search dial.
   If setup menu "Item 101" is set to 1, press the SEARCH button and rotate the search dial in threading completed state. Then the unit is put into search mode.
   NOTE : After adjustment is completed, set the setup menu "Item 902" to 0.

5. **Fast forward and rewind**

Set the setup menu "Item 902" to 1. (At this time, tape protection mode is off.)

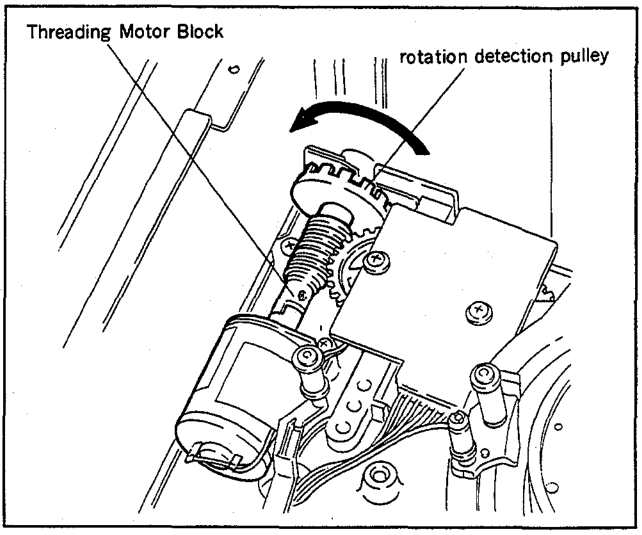
Press the F.FWD button or REW button in threading completed state. Then the unit is put into fast foward or rewind mode.

NOTE : After adjustment is completed, set the setup menu "Item 902" to 0.

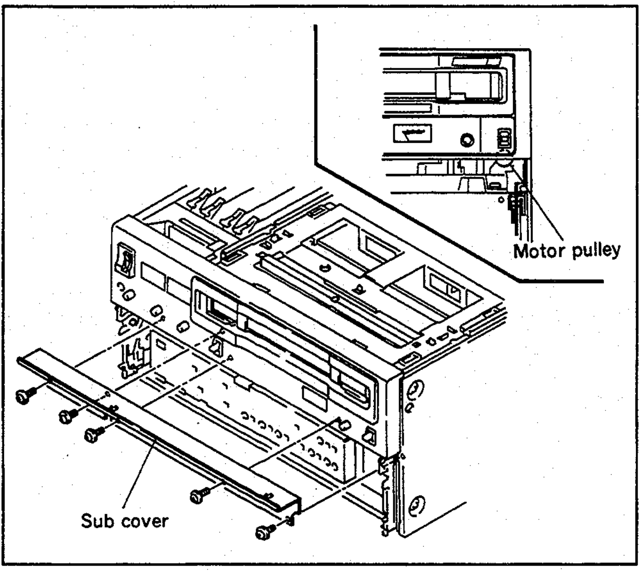
2-15. TAKE OUT THE CASSETTE TAPE IN SLACKING

When the tape in the unit is slacked, take out the cassette tape by the following procedures carefully so that the tape is not damaged.

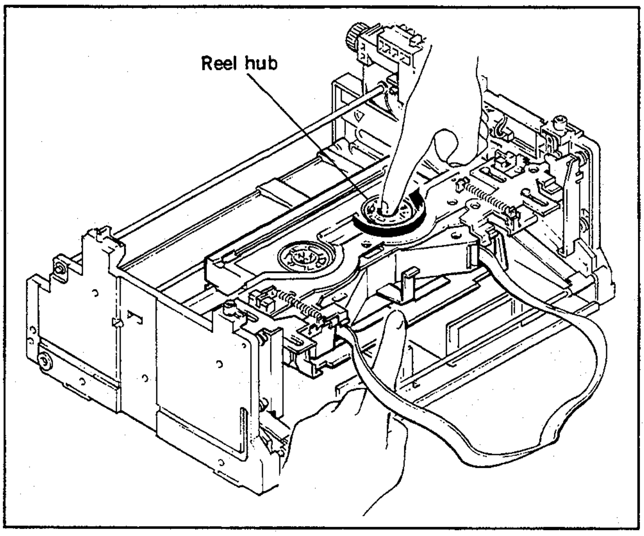
1. Turn the POWER OFF.
2. Remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
3. Turn the rotation detection pulley of a Threading Motor Block counterclockwise until the supply tension arm, take-up tension arm, supply slider, take-up slider and pinch roller slider are threading completed state.



4. Remove the Cassette Compartment Stay. (Refer to Section 2-6.)
5. Disconnect the connector CN930 on the CL-25 board of the Cassette Compartment. (Refer to Section 2-6.)
6. Remove the lower control panel ass'y. (Refer to Section 2-8.)
7. Remove the sub cover.
8. Turn the motor pulley shown in the figure in the direction of the arrow.



9. While holding a cassette lid by hand to prevent it closing so that the cassette compartment moves up. (Stop rotating the pulley just before the cassette compartment begin to moves to the surface.)
10. Take out the cassette compartment slowly from the unit while holding the cassette lid.
11. Wind the tape into the cassette by turning a reel hub with a finger and close the cassette lid.



12. Remove the cassette tape from the cassette compartment.
13. Turn the pulley described in Step 8 so that the stage of the cassette compartment moves the cassette out position.
14. Install the cassette compartment to the unit.
15. Connect the connector (CN930), then install the Cassette Compartment Stay.

NOTE : Locate the cause of the trouble and remedy the problem, before the POWER switch is turned ON.

2-16. CLEANING WHEN HEADS CLOGGED

If the video head is clogged, clean the head as the following procedures.

• Cleaning by cleaning cassette

1. Insert the cleaning cassette BCT-5CLN in the unit, and press the PLAY button at once.
   NOTE : • Make sure to use the cleaning cassette BCT-5CLN. If the cleaning is performed by other cleaning cassette, not the BCT-5CLN, unusual friction or damage of the video head may occurred.
   • Press the PLAY button immediately after inserting the cleaning cassette BCT-5CLN in the unit.
2. After using the cleaning tape in play mode for 5 seconds, press the EJECT button.
   NOTE : • Make sure to press the EJECT button not STOP button.
   • Do not put the unit in play mode more than 5 seconds.
   • Do not use the cleaning cassette with rewind.
3. Confirm that the head clog is clear.
   If the video head is clogged after Step 2, clean the video head as following procedure.

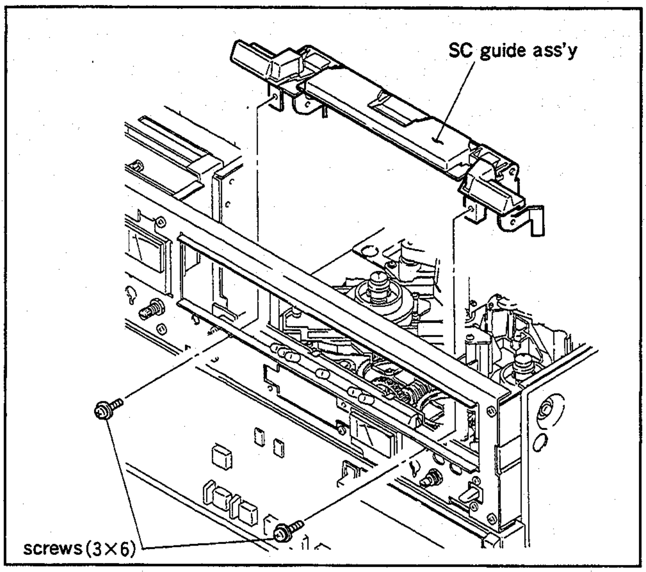
• Cleaning by cleaning piece

1. Hold the cleaning piece moisten with cleaning fluid against the heads gently.
2. Slowly rotate the upper drum in the direction of head's rotation with a finger and clean the video head.
   NOTE : • Do not move the cleaning piece in a vertical direction. This will damage the video head.
   • Be sure to turn the POWER ON, when cleaning is performed.

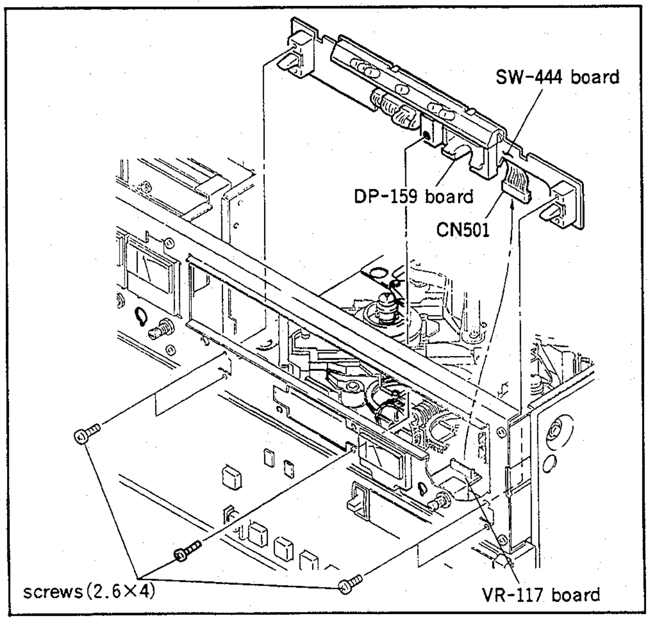
2-17. REPLACEMENT OF BOARDS

2-17-1. SW-444 Board

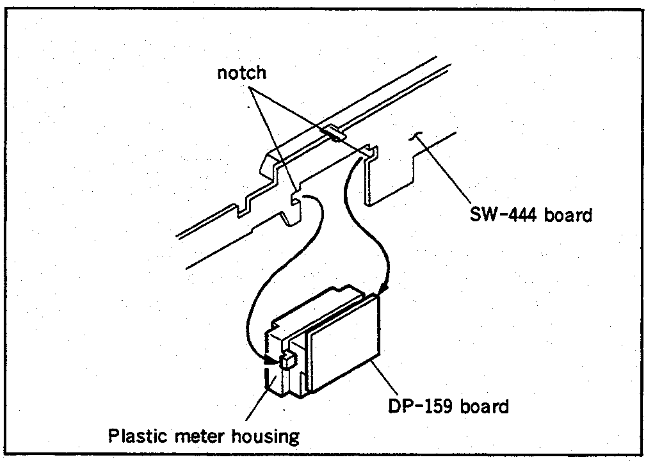
(1) Turn the POWER OFF.
(2) Loosen three screws and remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(3) Remove four control knobs and two screws and remove the upper control panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(4) Remove the Cassette Compartment. (Refer to Section 2-6.)
(5) Remove the two screws (3×6) shown in the figure and remove the SC guide ass'y.


SC guide ass'y
screws(3×6)

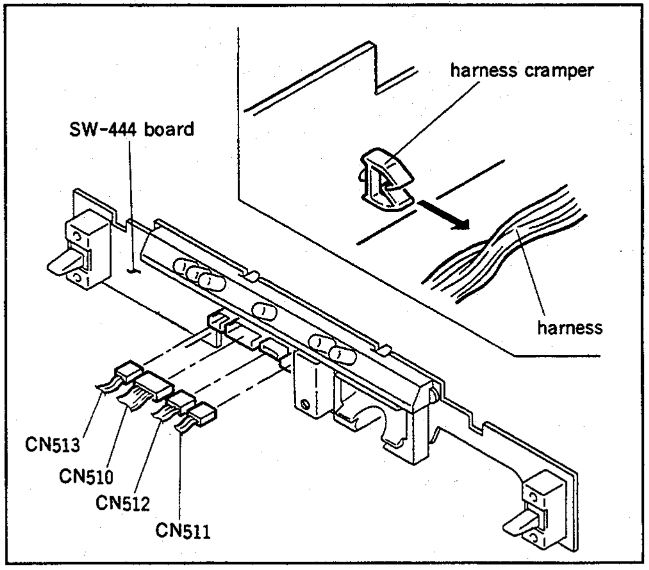
(6) Disconnect the connector(CN501) of the VR-117 board while holding the board.
(7) Remove the seven screws (2.6×4) shown in the figure and remove the SW-444/DP-159 boards.


SW-444 board
DP-159 board
CN501
screws(2.6×4)
VR-117 board

(8) Pull off the plastic meter housing of the DP-159 board from the notch of the SW-444 board.


notch
SW-444 board
DP-159 board
Plastic meter housing

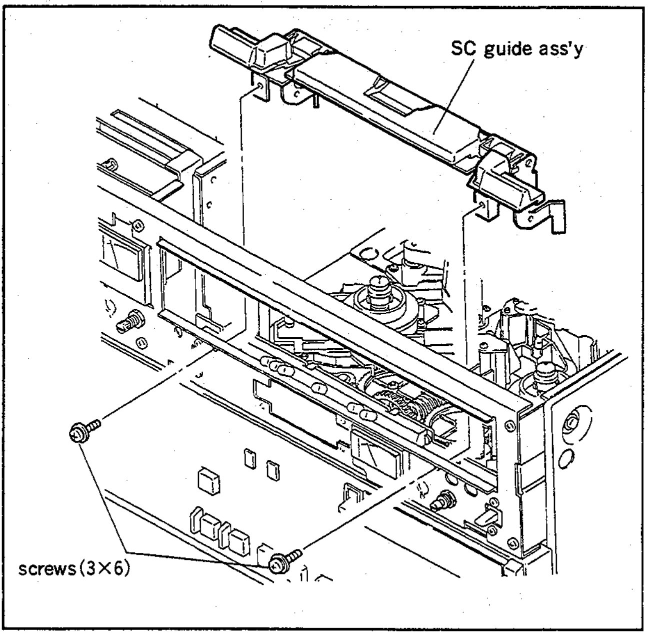
(9) Disconnect the four connectors(CN510, CN511, CN512 and CN513) of the SW-444 board.


harness cramper
SW-444 board
harness
CN513
CN510
CN512
CN511

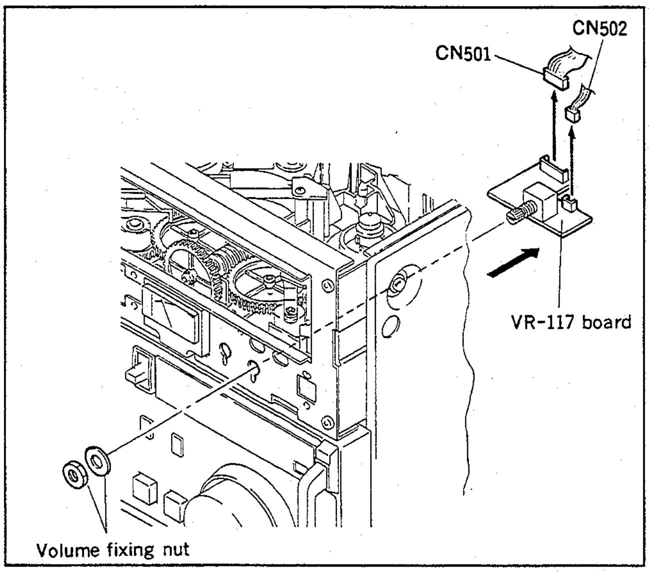
(10) Remove the harness from the cramper and remove the SW-444 board.

2-17-2. VR-117 Board

(1) Turn the POWER OFF.
(2) Loosen three screws and remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(3) Remove four control knobs and two screws and remove the upper control panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(4) Remove the Cassette Compartment. (Refer to Section 2-6.)
(5) Remove the two screws (3×6) shown in the figure and remove the SC guide ass'y.


SC guide ass'y
screws(3×6)

(6) Disconnect the connectors (CN501 and CN502) of the VR-117 board while holding the board.

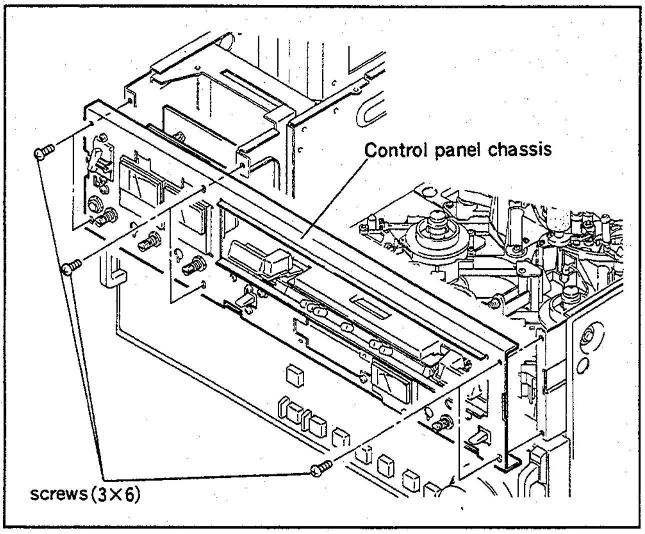

CN502
CN501
VR-117 board
Volume fixing nut

(7) Remove a volume fixing nut from the control panel side and remove the VR-117 board.

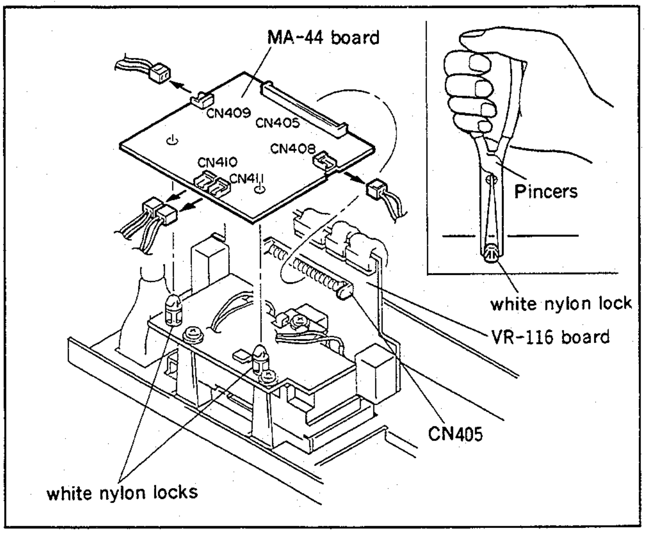
2-17-3. MA-44 Board

- **Removal**

(1) Turn the POWER OFF.
(2) Loosen three screws and remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(3) Remove four control knobs and two screws and remove the upper control panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(4) Remove the six screws (3×6) shown in the figure and remove the control panel chassis.


Control panel chassis
screws(3×6)

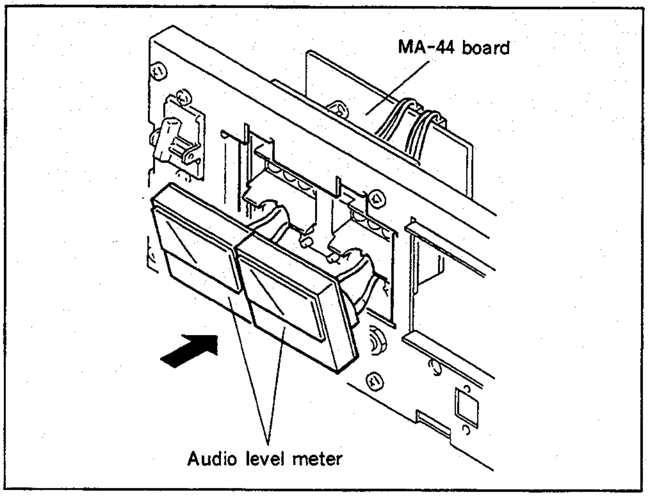
(5) Disconnect the four connectors (CN408, CN409, CN410 and CN411) of the MA-44 board.
(6) Push and remove the white nylon locks fixing the MA-44 board with a pincers from the board.
(7) Disconnect the connector (CN405) connected to the VR-116 board and remove the MA-44 board.


MA-44 board
CN409
CN405
CN408
CN410
CN411
Pincers
white nylon lock
VR-116 board
CN405
white nylon locks

- **Installation**

(8) Connect the MA-44 board to the connector (CN405) of the VR-116 board and insert the white nylon locks to the board.

(9) Connect the four connectors (CN408, CN409, CN410 and CN411) and push two audio level meters into the chassis from the control panel side.



2-17-4. DP-138 Board

- **Removal**

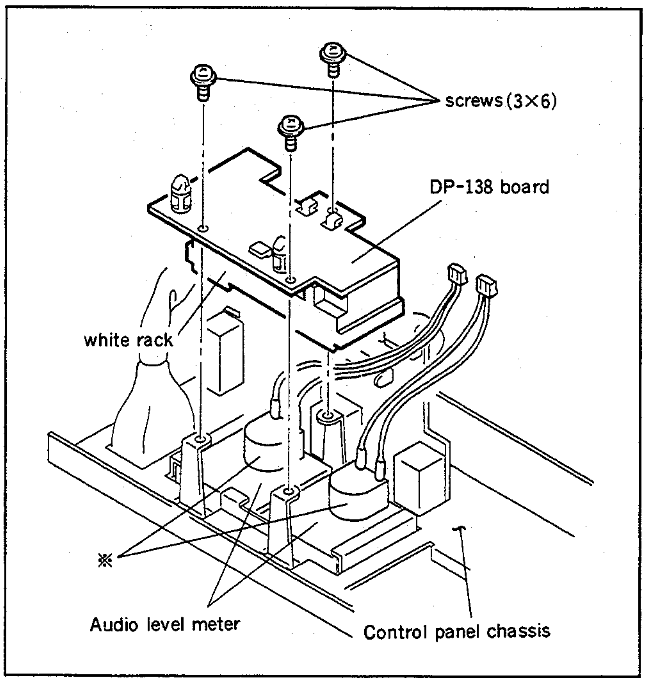
(1) Turn the POWER OFF.

(2) Loosen three screws and remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)

(3) Remove four control knobs and two screws and remove the upper control panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)

(4) Remove six screws and the control panel chassis and remove the MA-44 board. (Refer to Section 2-17-3.)

(5) Remove the three screws of the DP-138 board and remove the board.



- **Installation**

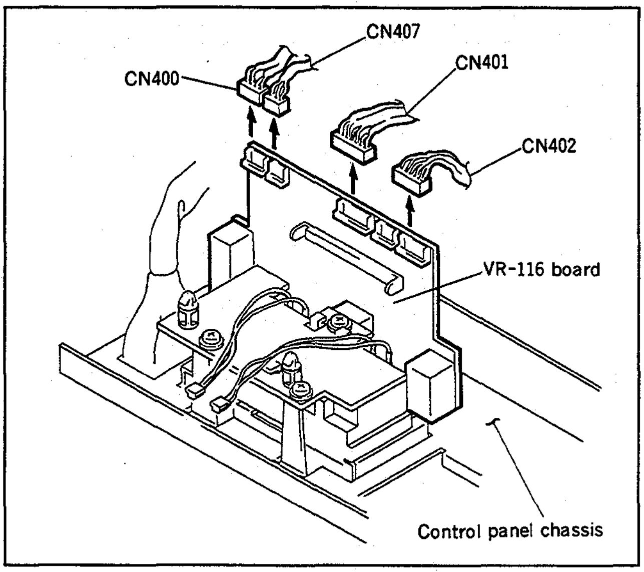
(6) Set the white rack of the DP-138 board and ※ portion of the audio level meters as shown in the figure above and fasten the DP-138 board by the screws.

(7) Install the MA-44 board and connect the four connectors (CN408, CN409, CN410 and CN411).

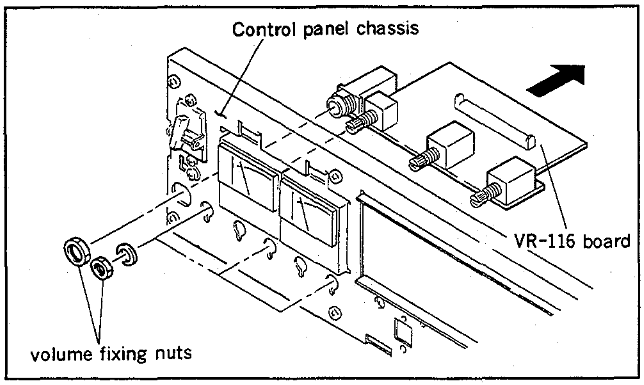
(8) Push the audio level meters into the chassis from the control panel side.

2-17-5. VR-116 Board

(1) Turn the POWER OFF.
(2) Loosen three screws and remove the upper panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(3) Remove four control knobs and two screws and remove the upper control panel. (Refer to Section 2-5.)
(4) Remove six screws and the control panel chassis and remove the MA-44 board. (Refer to Section 2-17-3.)
(5) Disconnect the four connectors (CN400, CN401, CN402, and CN407) of the VR-116 board.

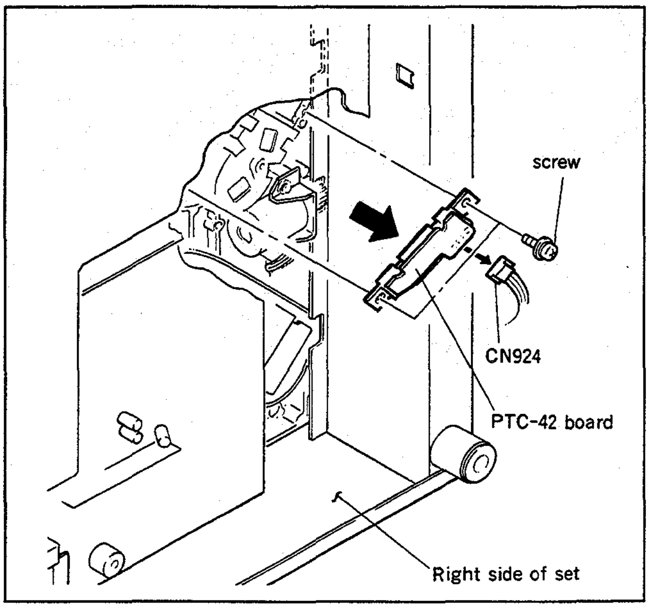

CN407
CN400
CN401
CN402
VR-116 board
Control panel chassis

(6) Remove four volume fixing nuts from the control panel side and remove the VR-116 board.


Control panel chassis
VR-116 board
volume fixing nuts

2-17-6. PTC-42 Board

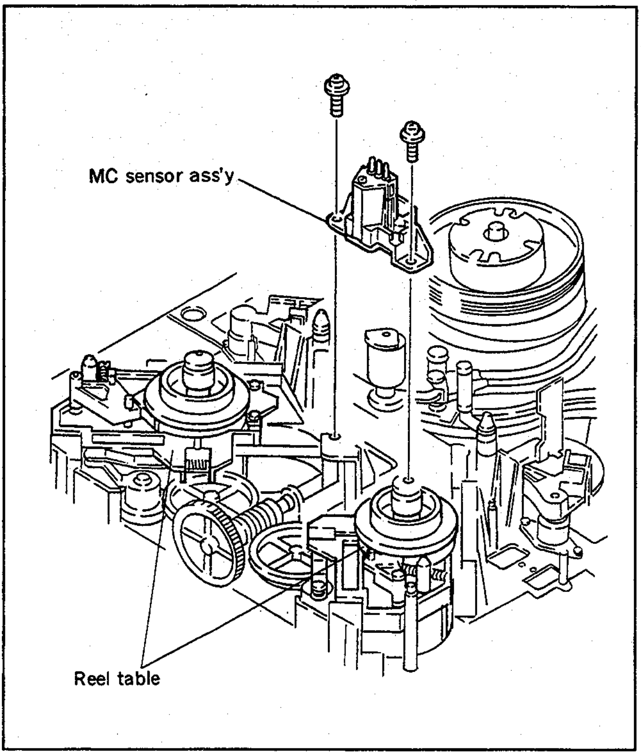
(1) Turn the POWER OFF.
(2) Put the unit right side down and remove six screws and remove the lower panel.
(3) Remove two screws and remove the PTC-42 board.
(4) Disconnect the connector CN924.


screw
CN924
PTC-42 board
Right side of set

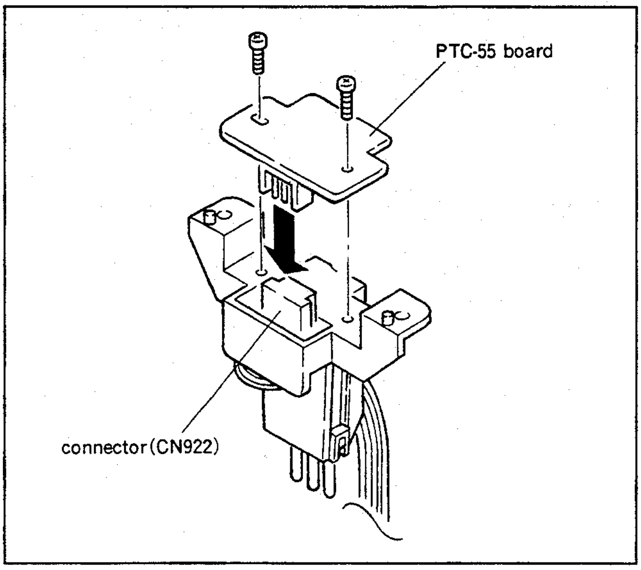
2-18. REMOVAL/INSTALLATION OF DETECTION SWITCH

2-18-1. Removal of MC Sensor

1. Remove the Cassette Compartment. (Refer to Section 2-6.)
2. Position the reel table at the center or large cassette position.
3. Remove the two screws shown in the figure and remove the MC sensor ass'y.



4. Remove the two screws from the reverse side of the MC sensor ass'y and remove the PTC-55 board.
5. Disconnect the connector CN922 on the PTC-55 board.



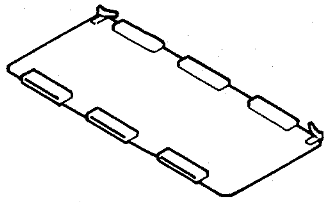
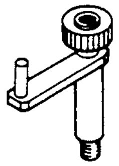
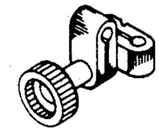
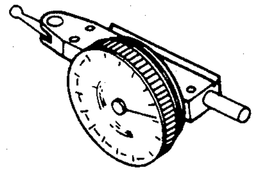
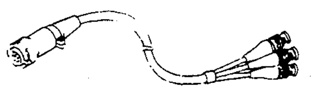
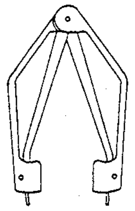
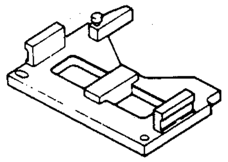
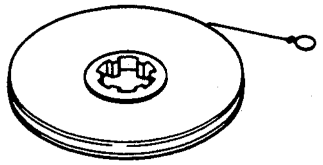
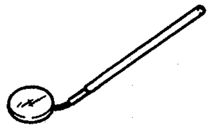
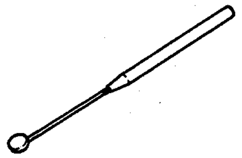
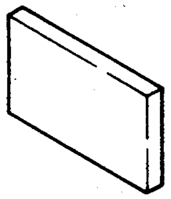
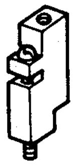
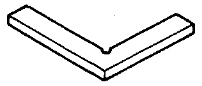
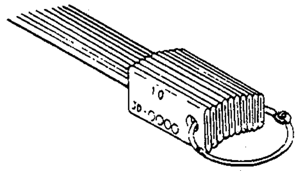
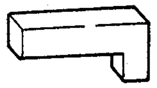
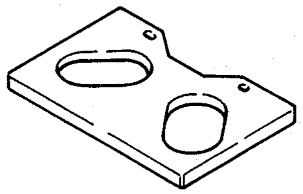
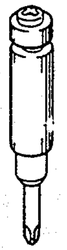
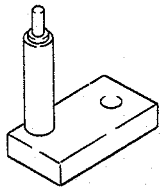
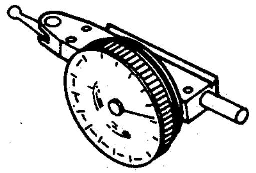
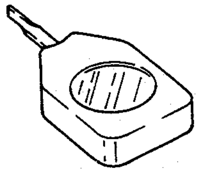
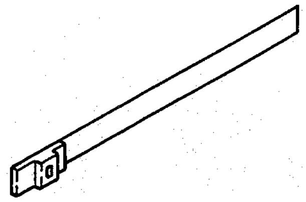
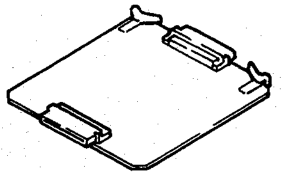
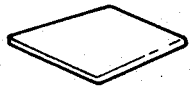
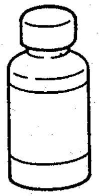
2-19. PRECAUTION IN REPLACEMENT OF DR-118 BOARD

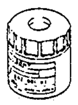
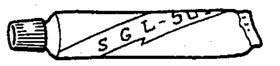
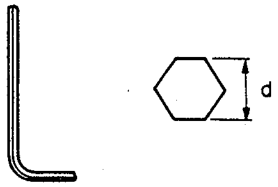
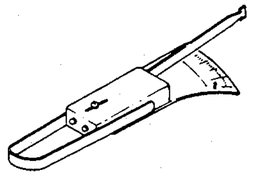
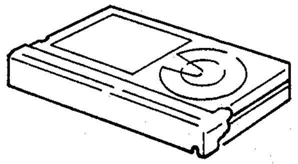
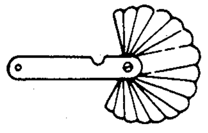
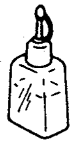
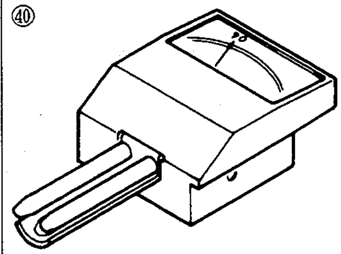
NOVRAM CXK1013P (IC51, IC52 and IC53) are mounted on the DR-118 board to save the data of servo system adjustment.
When the DR-118 board is replaced. pull out the NOVRAM (IC51, IC52 and IC53) and mount them on the new DR-118 board.
If not mounting them to the new board, servo system may not be oprated normally.

NOTE : The IC51, 52 and 53 are not mounted on the boards which are in stock as service parts.

2-20. FIXTURE

Fig. No	Part No.	Description	For Use
1	A-6766-389-A	Extention Board (L), EX-286	VP-33, TBC-18, SS-48 Board extention
2	J-6001-820-A	Drum Eccentricity Gauge (3)	Upper drum eccentricity adjustment
3	J-6001-830-A	Drum Eccentricity Gauge (2)	
4	J-6001-840-A	Drum Eccentricity Gauge (1)	
5	J-6031-830-A	Multi Connector Cable (DOBNC)	Video adjustment (Connector DUB OUT)
6	J-6035-070-A	Extraction Tool (for PLCC socket)	Extraction of IC (PLCC type)
7	J-6080-008-A	Cassette Reference Plate	Reel table height adjustment
8	J-6080-011-A	Reel Table Tension Gauge	Brake torque adjustment
9	J-6080-029-A	Adjustment Mirror	
10	J-6080-840-A	Adjustment Mirror	Tape path adjustment
11	J-6086-570-A	Reference Flat Plate	Audio/TC head slantness adjustment
12	J-6087-000-A	Drum Eccentricity Gauge (5)	Upper drum eccentricity adjustment
13	J-6320-870-A	Reel Motor Shaft Slantness Check Fixture	Reel motor shaft slantness check and adjustment
14	J-6152-450-A	Wire Clearance Check Gauge	Clearance check
15	J-6320-680-A	Reel Table Height Gauge	Reel table height adjustment
16	J-6320-880-A	Cassette Base Plate (L)	Reel table height adjustment
17	J-6321-500-A	Tape Guide Adjustment Driver	Tape guide height adjustment
18	J-6322-370-A	Tension Regulator Position Adjustment Fixture	Tension regulator position adjustment
19	J-6325-530-A	Drum Eccentricity Gauge (6)	Upper drum eccentricity adjustment
20	J-6327-850-A	Dial Tension Gauge	Measuring torques
21	J-6327-930-A	Tension Measurement Tape	Tension arm sensitivity/position adjustment
23	J-6338-130-A	Extention Board (S), EX-287	AU-148, AU-149, AU-150, RP-57 Board extention
24	2-034-697-00	Cleaning Piece	Cleaning
25	7-661-018-18	Oil	
26	7-662-001-41	Molyton Grease, No.320 (30 g Bottle)	
27	7-662-010-04	Grease, SGL-505 (20 g)	
28	7-700-736-01	L-Shaped Hexagonal Wrench (d : 1.27 mm)	
29	7-700-736-05	L-Shaped Hexagonal Wrench (d : 1.5 mm)	
30	7-700-736-06	L-Shaped Hexagonal Wrench (d : 0.89 mm)	
31	7-732-050-20	Tension Scale (50 g full scale)	Tension adjustment
32	7-732-050-30	Tension Scale (100 g full scale)	
33	8-960-096-51	Alignment Tape, CR2-1B PS	Servo and Tracking alignments (metal particle tape)
34	8-960-096-86	Alignment Tape, CR8-1B PS	Audio alignment (oxide tape)
35	8-960-096-91	Alignment Tape, CR5-1B PS	Video and Audio alignments (metal particle tape)
36	8-960-098-44	Alignment Tape, CR5-2A PS	Video, Servo and Power Supply/System Control alignments (oxide tape)
37	8-960-098-45	Alignment Tape, CR8-1A PS	Audio alignment (oxide tape)
38	9-911-053-00	Thickness Gauge	Clearance check
39	9-919-573-01	Cleaning Fluid	Cleaning
40	standard product	TENTELOMETER (T2-H7-UMC)	Back tension adjustment

① 	② 	③ 	④ 
⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 	⑧ 
⑨ 	⑩ 	⑪ 	⑫ 
⑬ 	⑭ 	⑮ 	⑯ 
⑰ 	⑱ 	⑲ 	⑳ 
㉑ 	㉓ 	㉔ 	㉕ 

㉖ 	㉗ 	㉘, ㉙, ㉚ 	㉛, ㉜ 
㉝, ㉞, ㉟, ㊱, ㊲ 	㊳ 	㊴ 	㊵ 

TENTEL and TENTELOMETER are registered trademark of TENTEL Corp., Campbell, CA U.S.A.

2-21. INTRODUCTION TO CIRCUIT

2-21-1. Outline of The Betacam Method

The Betacam recording method was developed for the purpose of ENG (Electronic News Gathering) and EFP (Electronic Field Production). Therefore, the primary object of its development is to make it compact and to have good quality of portrait enough to use broadcast.

As for recording system, all processes are disposed as component signal. Consequently, composite input signals are replaced as Y, B-Y or R-Y and disposed.
The process is shown as fig.1. After A/D converting, the input signals are separated as Y/C, converted as component signal at decoder. The converted each signal is send to process of luminance signal (Y) system, B-Y and R-Y send to process of chroma signal (C) system. After that, Y-signal which added synchronized signal is FM-modulated and recorded at Y-R/P head. On the other side, chroma signal add B-Y and CFID (Color Framing ID), and is time-compressed to record within the time of 1H. The process is read back alternately R-Y by the double-pulsed clock of memory-write, then time-compressed to half. This compressed signal is called CTDM signal. The chroma signal resulted in CTDM signal is FM-modulated after phase adjustment with Y signal, recorded at C-R/P head.

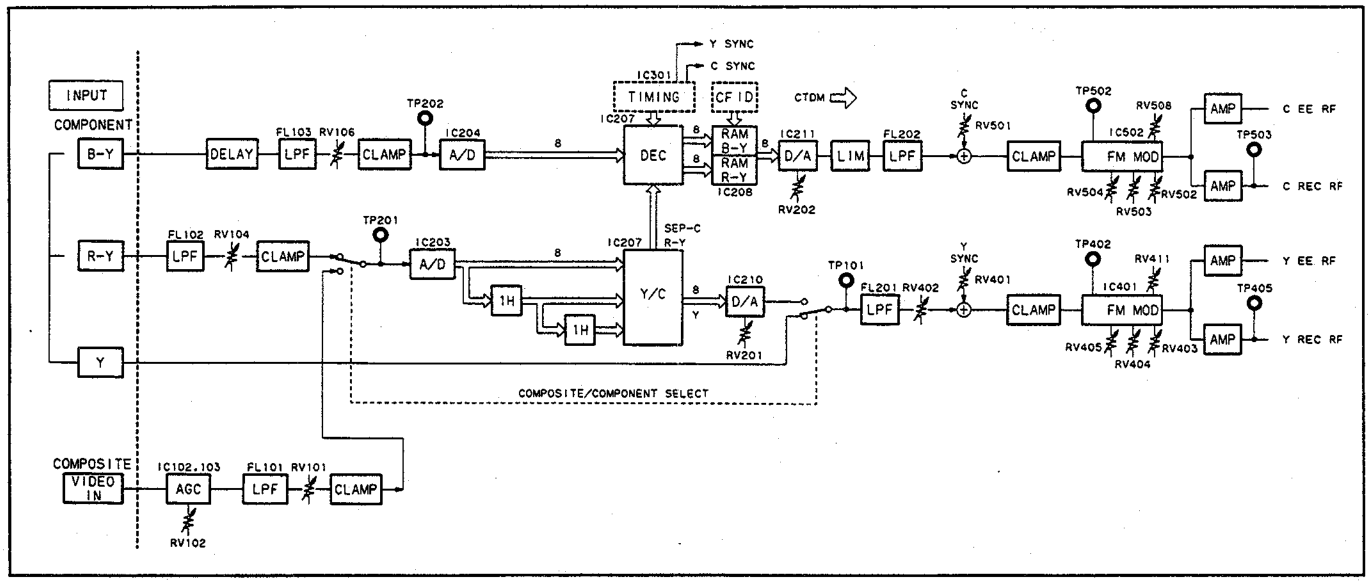

INPUT
COMPONENT
B-Y
R-Y
Y
COMPOSITE
VIDEO IN
DELAY
LPF
CLAMP
A/D
AGC
RV102
FL103 RV106
FL102 RV104
FL101 RV101
IC102,103
TP202
TP201
IC204
IC203
1H
DEC
Y/C
TIMING
CF ID
IC301
IC207
IC208
RAM B-Y
RAM R-Y
IC211
D/A
IC210
RV202
RV201
SEP-C R-Y
Y SYNC
C SYNC
CTDM
LIM
FL202
FL201 RV402
TP101
C SYNC
Y SYNC
RV501
RV401
CLAMP
FM MOD
IC502
IC401
TP502
TP402
RV508
RV411
RV504 RV503 RV502
RV405 RV404 RV403
AMP
TP503
TP405
C EE RF
C REC RF
Y EE RF
Y REC RF
COMPOSITE/COMPONENT SELECT

Fig. 1

As shown in fig.2, Y signal and CTDM chroma signal are recorded on respective track at R/P head of each Y/C at the same time.

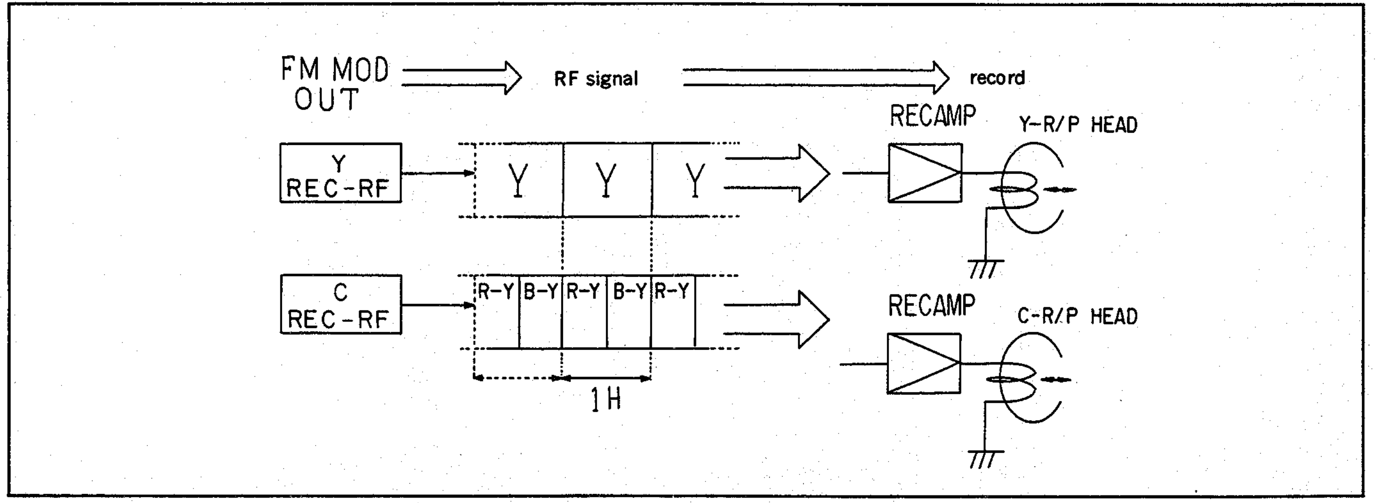

FM MOD OUT
RF signal
record
Y REC-RF
Y Y Y
RECAMP
Y-R/P HEAD
C REC-RF
R-Y B-Y R-Y B-Y R-Y
1H
RECAMP
C-R/P HEAD

Fig. 2

The Betacam recording pattern that 2CH of audio, Time code (LTC) and CTL signal are added to video signal is shown in fig. 3.

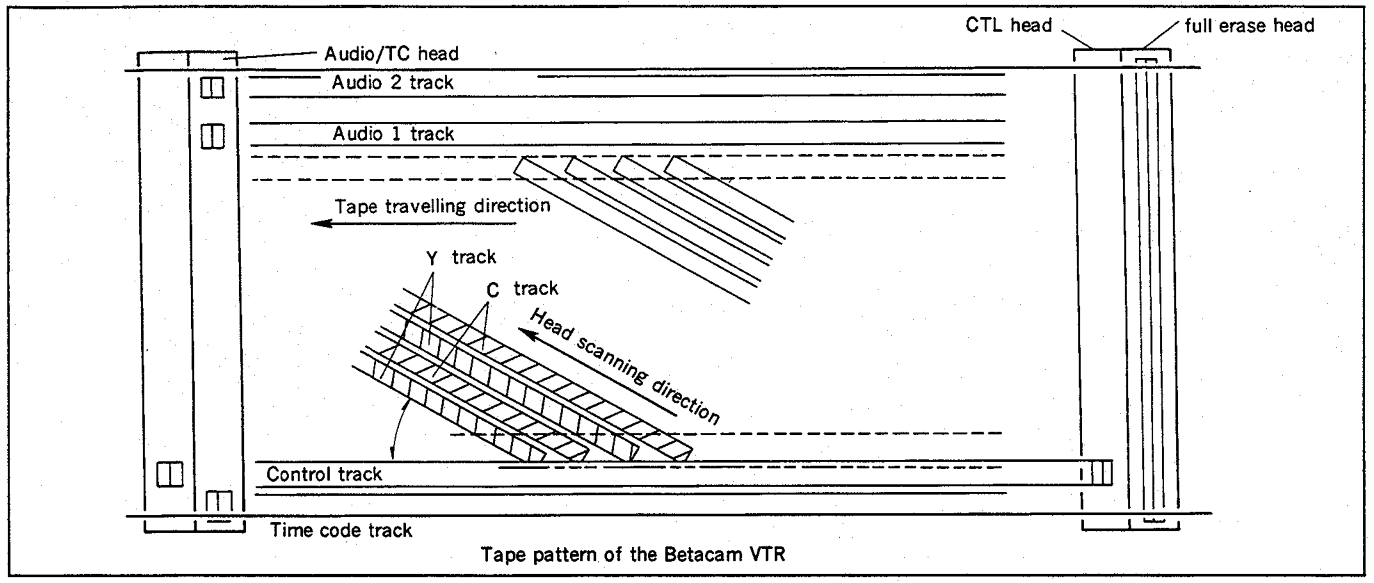

CTL head
full erase head
Audio/TC head
Audio 2 track
Audio 1 track
Tape travelling direction
Y track
C track
Head scanning direction
Control track
Time code track
Tape pattern of the Betacam VTR

Fig. 3

In the playback system, playback the tape which is recorded using above mentioned process, and then return to original signal using the reversing process. PVW-2600P is a player, so that it is only provided the following playback system.
At the process of play system, as shown in fig.4, RF signal from Y-R/P head is sent to circuit of TBC after FM demodulated and deemphasized through preamplifier and equalizer. On the other side, chroma signal from C-RP head enter the circuit of TBC after FM demodulated through preamplifier and equalizer. At the circuit of TBC, both of Y and C signal are revised of time axis (revice of jitter element) and drop out (DO process), and at the same time, CTDM chroma signal is expanded in time and returned to B-Y or R-Y signal. Next, the signals are encoded to color-differential, composite or Y/C signal at encoder and output after added burst and sync that are remade at circuit of TBC.

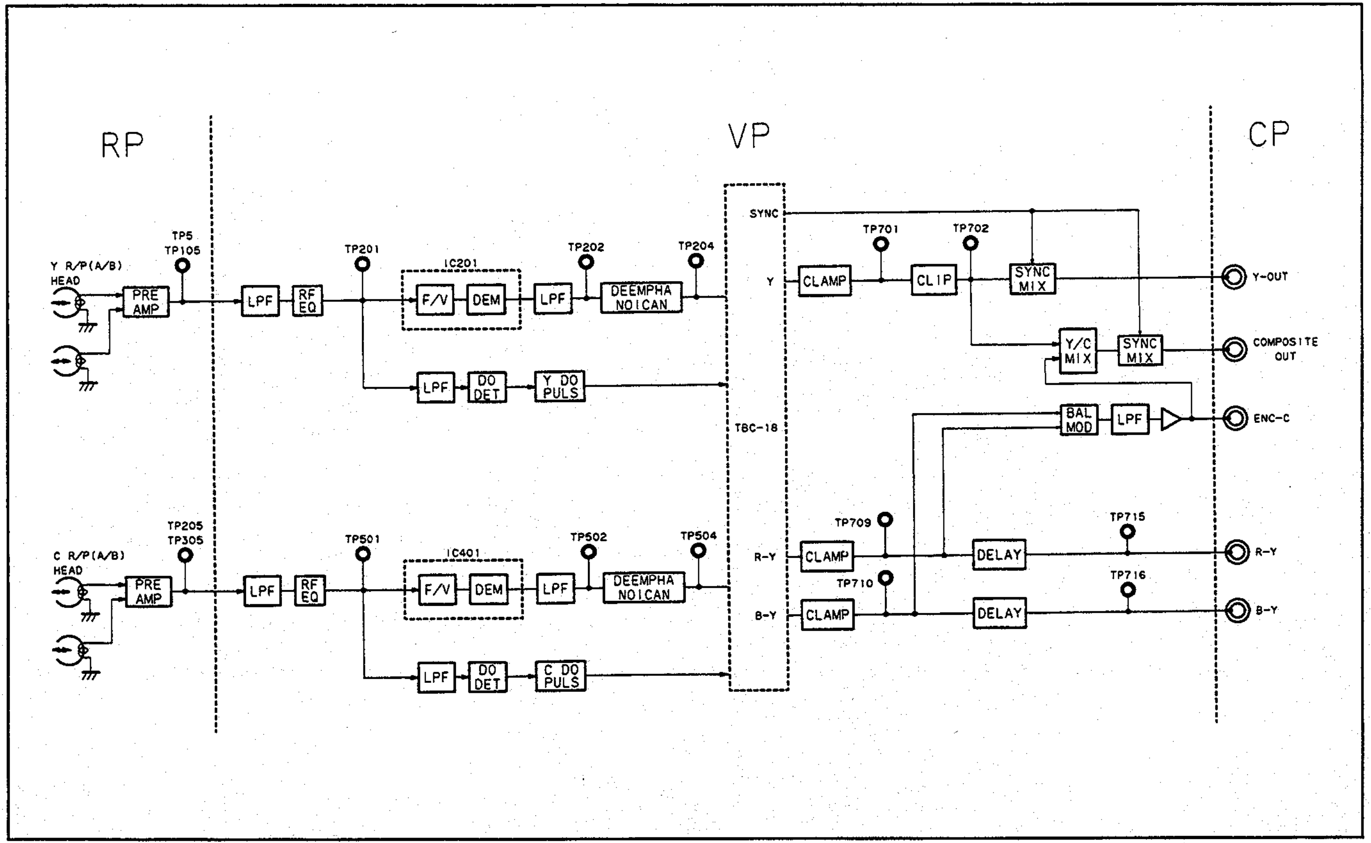

RP
VP
CP
Y R/P(A/B) HEAD
C R/P(A/B) HEAD
TP5 TP105
TP205 TP305
PRE AMP
LPF
RF EQ
TP201
TP501
IC201
IC401
F/V
DEM
TP202
TP502
TP204
TP504
DEEMPHA NOICAN
DO DET
Y DO PULS
C DO PULS
SYNC
TBC-18
Y
R-Y
B-Y
CLAMP
CLIP
TP701
TP702
SYNC MIX
Y/C MIX
BAL MOD
DELAY
TP709
TP710
TP715
TP716
Y-OUT
COMPOSITE OUT
ENC-C
R-Y
B-Y

Fig. 4

MAINTENANCE MODE

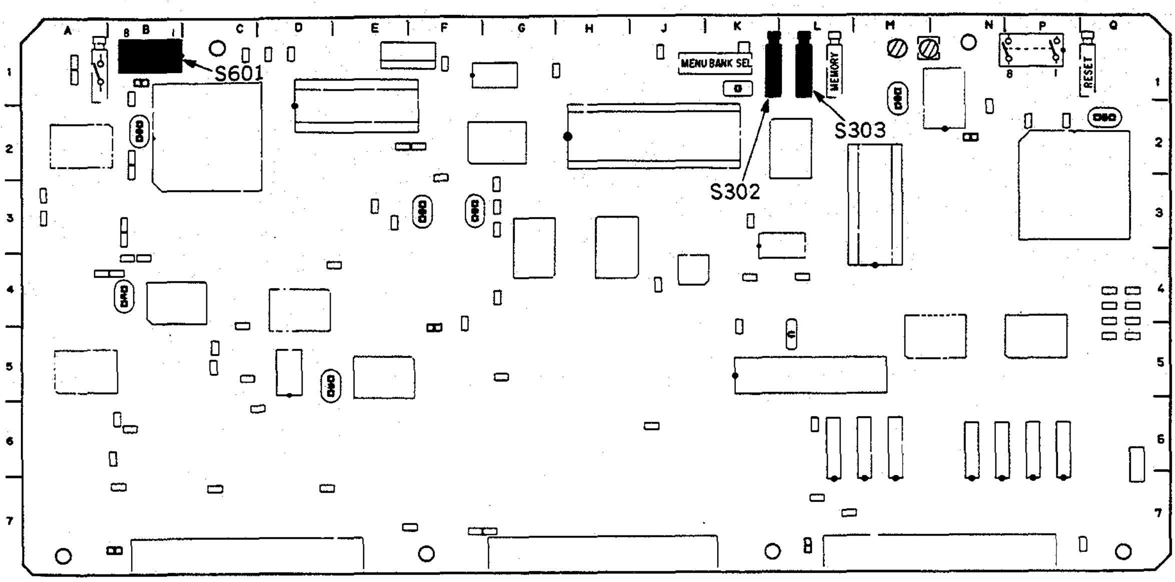
SECTION 3
MAINTENANCE MODE

This equipment provides the maintenance mode which is necessary when performing maintenance.
The maintenance mode has following modes of four kinds. Each mode consists of several menus and sub menus.
Contents of the maintenance mode are displayed in the video monitor which is connected with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector.

MODE	MENU	SUB MENU
A0 : VIDEO CHECK	A001 : TBC thru pass(Y) A002 : TBC thru pass(C) A003 : TEST SIG. GEN	———
B0 : SERVO CHECK	B01 : INPUT CHECK	B011 : CASSETTE SW B012 : CASSETTE COMP. SW B013 : TOP/END SENSOR B014 : DEW SENSOR
	B02 : MOTOR CHECK	B021 : S REEL B022 : T REEL B023 : THREADING B024 : CASSETTE COMP. B025 : CAPSTAN MOTOR B026 : DRUM MOTOR B027 : REEL POSITION
	B03 : PLUNGER SOL. CHECK	B031 : PINCH ROLLER B032 : S REEL BRAKE B033 : T REEL BRAKE B034 : CLEANING ROLLER
	B04 : REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR & FG CHECK	———
B1 : SERVO ADJUST	B101 : B102-B108 ADJ. B102 : S REEL FG DUTY B103 : T REEL FG DUTY B104 : CAPSTAN FG DUTY B105 : S REEL OFFSET/FRIC B106 : T REEL OFFSET/FRIC B107 : S REEL TORQUE B108 : T REEL TORQUE B109 : CAPSTAN SPEED B110 : RF SWITCHING POS. B111 : TRACKING CENTER B112 : S TENSION SENSOR B113 : T TENSION SENSOR B114 : PICTURE SPLITTING B115 : FWD TENSION B116 : REV TENSION B117 : NV RAM CONTROL	———
F : OTHERS	F00 : rom version F01 : front panel check F02 : F03 : F04 : syscon panel check F05 : CF data check F06 : memory check	———

Following switches on the SS-48 board or search dial are used so as to execute the maintenance mode.

SS-48 board



S601-4 (B-1) : SERVO ADJUST SW
Set this switch to ON (CLOSE) when executing the servo system adjustment mode (B1 : SERVO ADJUST) in the maintenance mode.

S601-7 (B-1) : SERVO CHECK SW
Set this switch to ON (CLOSE) when executing the servo system check adjustment mode (B0 : SERVO CHECK) in the maintenance mode.

S302 (K-1) : ADJ (+) SW
Press this switch when entering into the maintenance mode. Also press this switch when executing the menu which is selected by search dial.

S303 (L-1) : ADJ (−) SW
Press this switch when returning to the menu picture or mode picture of the maintenance mode. Also press this switch when closing the maintenance mode.

Search Dial : Select a menu or sub menu in the jog mode.

How to enter the maintenance mode

1. When performing the servo system check mode (B0 : SERVO CHECK), turn OFF the POWER, and then set S601-7 switch on the SS-48 board to ON (CLOSE). When performing the servo system adjustment mode (B1 : SERVO ADJUST), turn OFF the POWER, and then set S601-4 switch to ON (CLOSE).
   NOTE : Omit this step when performing the video system check mode (A0 : VIDEO CHECK) or others check mode (F : OTHERS).
2. Turn ON the POWER, and press S302 switch on the SS-48 board to display modes on the monitor.
3. Press the search dial to put the unit into the jog mode, then move the * mark to a desired mode which is displayed on the monitor.
4. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board to select the * marked mode.

How to close the maintenance mode

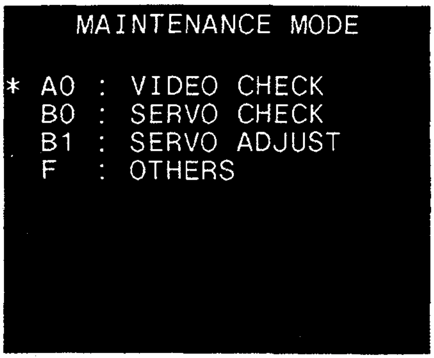
5. Press S303 switch on the SS-48 board.
   When S601-7 or S601-4 switch on the SS-48 board is set to ON (CLOSE) at step 1, turn OFF the POWER, and reset the switch to OFF (OPEN).

3-1. VIDEO SYSTEM CHECK MODE (A0: VIDEO CHECK)

Video system is checked automatically or semiautomatically in this mode.

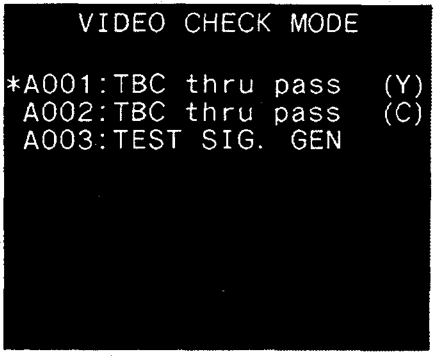
- **Procedure**

1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the unit enters into the maintenance mode. Modes of four kinds are displayed on the monitor.
2. Press the search dial for put the unit into the jog mode, and move the * mark to "A0: VIDEO CHECK" mode which is displayed on the monitor.



```
    MAINTENANCE MODE

* A0  :  VIDEO CHECK
  B0  :  SERVO CHECK
  B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
  F   :  OTHERS
```

3. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then "A0: VIDEO CHECK" mode is selected, and menus are displayed on the monitor.

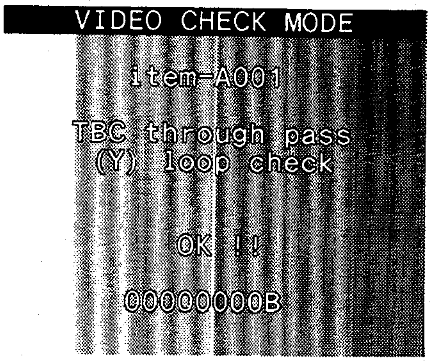


```
    VIDEO CHECK MODE

*A001:TBC thru pass   (Y)
 A002:TBC thru pass   (C)
 A003:TEST SIG. GEN
```

4. Move the * mark to a desired menu by the search dial (jog mode).
5. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board, and execute the * marked menu.
   Then check is executed automatically.
6. "OK !!" is displayed on the monitor when the check finishes.
   If the result of the check is NG, "NG!!" is displayed on the monitor.
   In this case, check the related circuit.
7. Press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the menu picture.
8. If there are other menus wishing to be checked, repeat the step 4 to 7.
9. When all the checks are performed, press S303 switch twice to return to the mode picture.
10. When closing the maintenance mode, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board.

A001 : TBC thru pass (Y)

This mode checks whether the digital system (Y) on the TBC-18 board acts normally or not, automatically.



VIDEO CHECK MODE

item-A001

TBC through pass
(Y) loop check

OK !!

00000000B

In case of NG

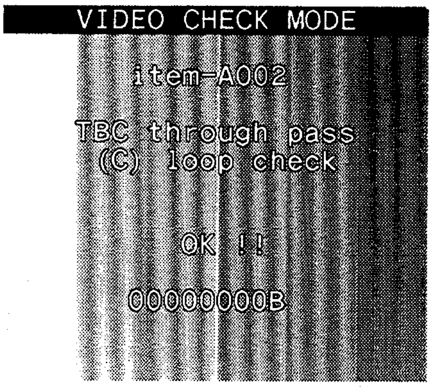
If "NG" is displayed, watch the error indication on the lower on the monitor.

There is unusual on the bit indicated "1". Check the DATA bit indicated "1" of IC501, 503, 504 and 507 on the TBC-18 board.

ex : unusual bit
↓
00100000B
(MSB) (LSB)

A002 : TBC thru pass (C)

This mode checks whether the digital system (C) on the TBC-18 board acts normally or not, automatically.



VIDEO CHECK MODE

item-A002

TBC through pass
(C) loop check

OK !!

00000000B

In case of NG

If "NG!!" is displayed, watch the error indication on the lower on the monitor.

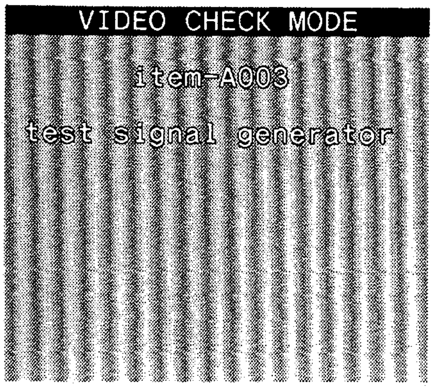
There is unusual on the bit indicated "1". Check the DATA bit indicated "1" of IC501, 503, 504 and 507 on the TBC-18 board.

ex : unusual bit
↓
00100000B
(MSB) (LSB)

A003 : TEST SIG. GEN

The built-in test signal generator acts, and the video signal is output from VIDEO OUT 1 / 2 / 3 , COMPONENT OUT 1 / 2 and S-VIDEO OUT connectors.

By connecting the signal to the VP-33 board can be checked.



VIDEO CHECK MODE

item-A003

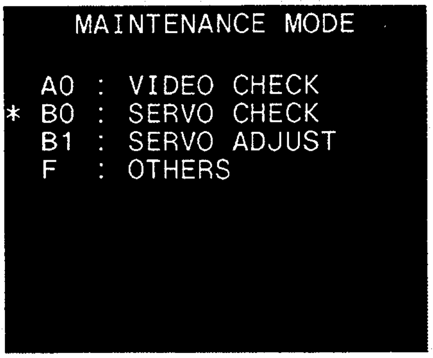
test signal generator

3-2. SERVO SYSTEM CHECK MODE (B0 : SERVO CHECK)

Servo system is checked automatically or semiautomatically in this mode.

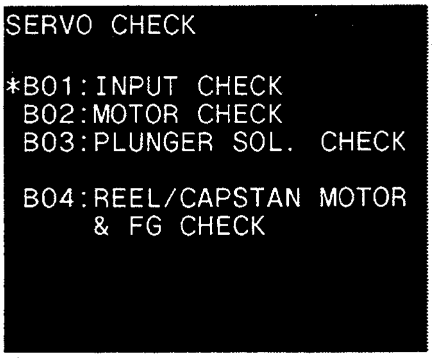
- **Procedure**

1. Turn OFF the POWER, and set S601-7 switch on the SS-48 board to ON (CLOSE).
2. Turn ON the POWER.
3. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board. Then the unit enters into the maintenance mode. Modes of four kinds are displayed on the monitor.
4. Press the search dial to put the unit into the jog mode, then move the ∗ mark to "B0 : SERVO CHECK" which is a mode displayed on the monitor.



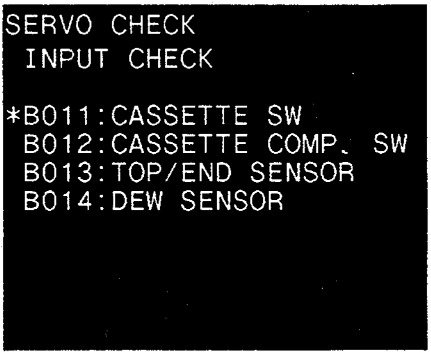
```
    MAINTENANCE MODE

   A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 * B0 : SERVO CHECK
   B1 : SERVO ADJUST
   F  : OTHERS
```

5. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then "B0 : SERVO CHECK" mode is selected, and menus are displayed on the monitor.
6. Move the ∗ mark to a desired menu by the search dial (Jog mode).



```
SERVO CHECK

*B01:INPUT CHECK
 B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

7. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the sub menus are displayed further.



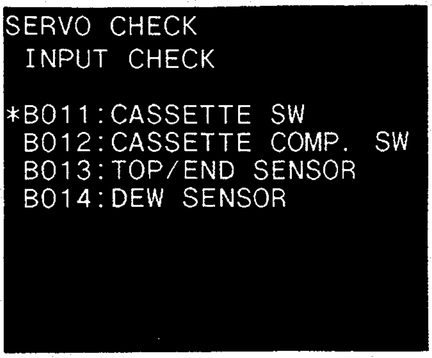
```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

*B011:CASSETTE SW
 B012:CASSETTE COMP. SW
 B013:TOP/END SENSOR
 B014:DEW SENSOR
```

8. Move the ∗ mark to a desired sub menu by the search dial (jog mode).

9. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board, and execute the * marked sub menu.
   (Refer to each page of menu item about a method of check.)
   While the sub menu is being performed, the keyboard operation is possible by pressing S302 on the SS-48 board. (Character displays on the monitor continuously.)
   Then, mechanical operation is possible in the maintenance mode.
   In this state, the key board operation is returned to the state of the maintenance mode by pressing S303 on the SS-48 board.
10. When check is finished, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the submenu picture. Or, press switch SW303 twice to return to the menu picture.
11. If there are other menus or submenus wishing to be checked, repeat the step 4 to 10.
12. When all the checks are performed, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board three times to return to the mode picture.
13. When closing the maintenance mode, press S303 on the SS-48 board. Next, turn OFF the POWER, and reset S601-7 switch on the SS-48 board to OFF (OPEN).

B01 : INPUT CHECK

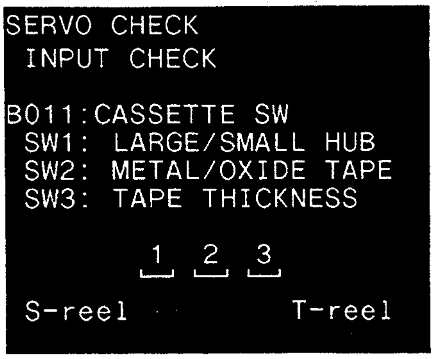
The sub menus of the "B01 : INPUT CHECK" are explained here.



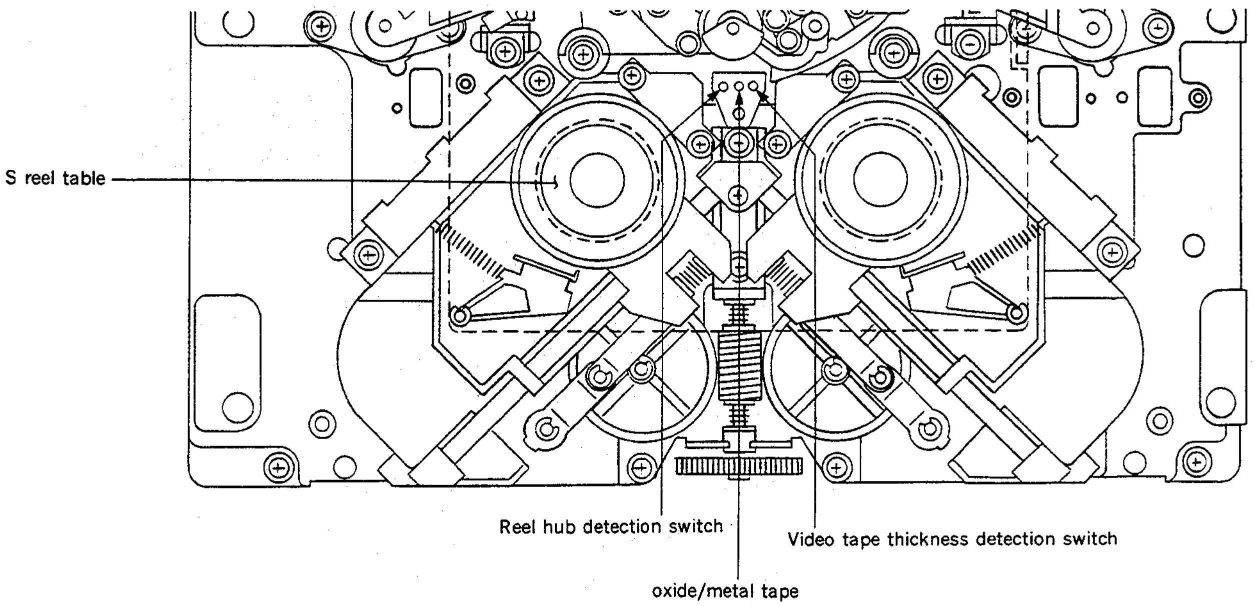
```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

*B011:CASSETTE SW
 B012:CASSETTE COMP. SW
 B013:TOP/END SENSOR
 B014:DEW SENSOR
```

(1) B011 : CASSETTE SW

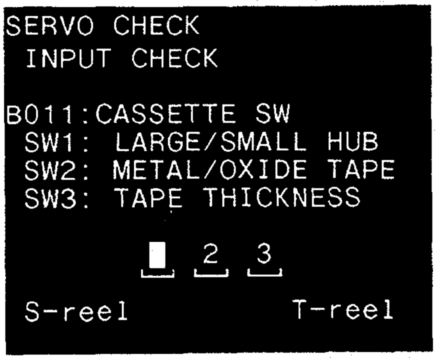
This mode checks the function of the cassette switch (sensor).



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B011:CASSETTE SW
 SW1: LARGE/SMALL HUB
 SW2: METAL/OXIDE TAPE
 SW3: TAPE THICKNESS

           1  2  3

 S-reel            T-reel
```

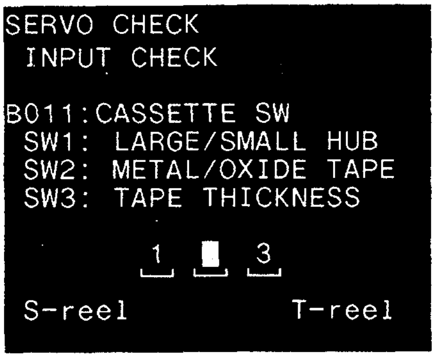

S reel table
Reel hub detection switch
Video tape thickness detection switch
oxide/metal tape

1. Press the reel hub detection switch (sensor) with finger. Confirm that ■ is displayed on the "1" which is in the monitor picture.



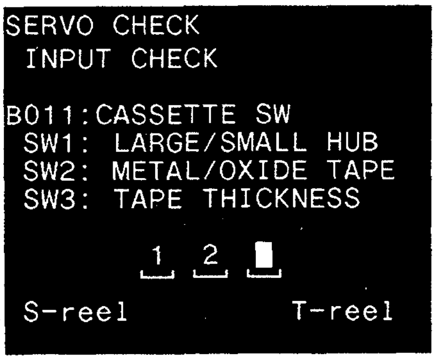
```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B011:CASSETTE SW
 SW1: LARGE/SMALL HUB
 SW2: METAL/OXIDE TAPE
 SW3: TAPE THICKNESS

        █  2  3

 S-reel          T-reel
```

2. Press the oxide/metal tape detection switch (sensor) with finger.
   Confirm that ■ is displayed on the "2" which is in the monitor picture.



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B011:CASSETTE SW
 SW1: LARGE/SMALL HUB
 SW2: METAL/OXIDE TAPE
 SW3: TAPE THICKNESS

        1  █  3

 S-reel          T-reel
```

3. Press the video tape thickness detection sensor with finger.
   Confirm that ■ is displayed on the "3" which is in the monitor picture.

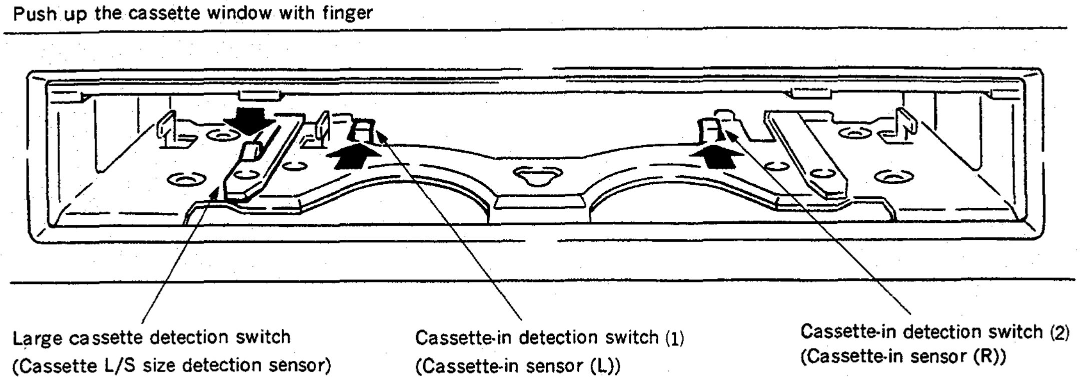


```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B011:CASSETTE SW
 SW1: LARGE/SMALL HUB
 SW2: METAL/OXIDE TAPE
 SW3: TAPE THICKNESS

        1  2  █

 S-reel          T-reel
```

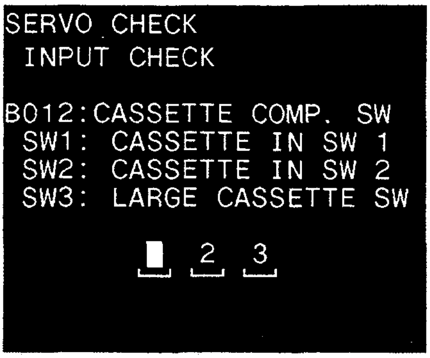
In case of NG
If ■ isn't displayed on the appointed number, check the sensor on the PTC-55 board and the sensor input circuit (DR-118 board).

(2) B012 : CASSETTE COMP. SW

This mode checks the function of the Cassette Compartment switch (sensor).

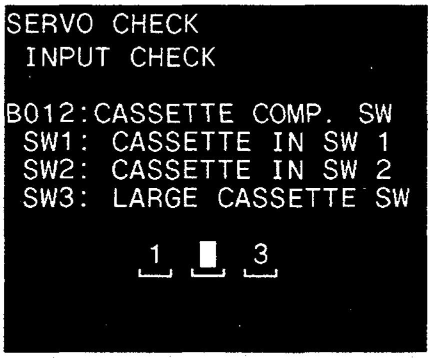

Push up the cassette window with finger
Large cassette detection switch
(Cassette L/S size detection sensor)
Cassette-in detection switch (1)
(Cassette-in sensor (L))
Cassette-in detection switch (2)
(Cassette-in sensor (R))

1. Press the cassette-in detection switch (1) (cassette-in sensor (L)) with finger.
   Confirm that ■ is displayed on the "1" which is in the monitor picture.



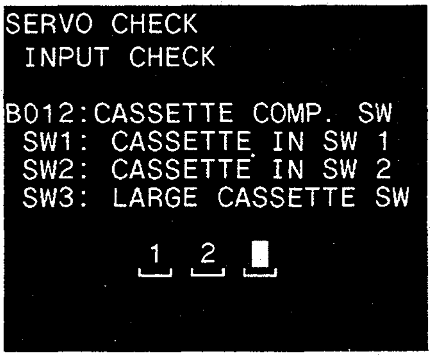
```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B012:CASSETTE COMP. SW
 SW1: CASSETTE IN SW 1
 SW2: CASSETTE IN SW 2
 SW3: LARGE CASSETTE SW

          ■  2  3
```

2. Press the cassette-in detection switch (2) (cassette-in sensor (R)) with finger.
   Comfirm that ■ is displayed on the "2" which is in the monitor picture.



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B012:CASSETTE COMP. SW
 SW1: CASSETTE IN SW 1
 SW2: CASSETTE IN SW 2
 SW3: LARGE CASSETTE SW

          1  ■  3
```

3. Press the large cassette detection switch (cassette L/S size detection sensor) with finger.
   Comfirm that ■ is displayed on the "3" which is in the monitor picture.

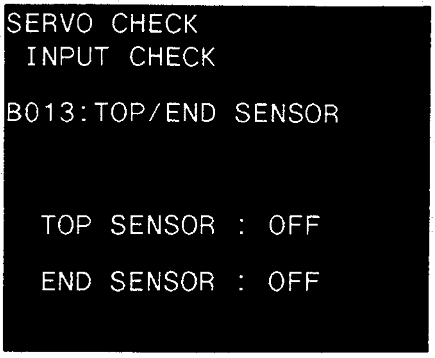


```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B012:CASSETTE COMP. SW
 SW1: CASSETTE IN SW 1
 SW2: CASSETTE IN SW 2
 SW3: LARGE CASSETTE SW

          1  2  ■
```

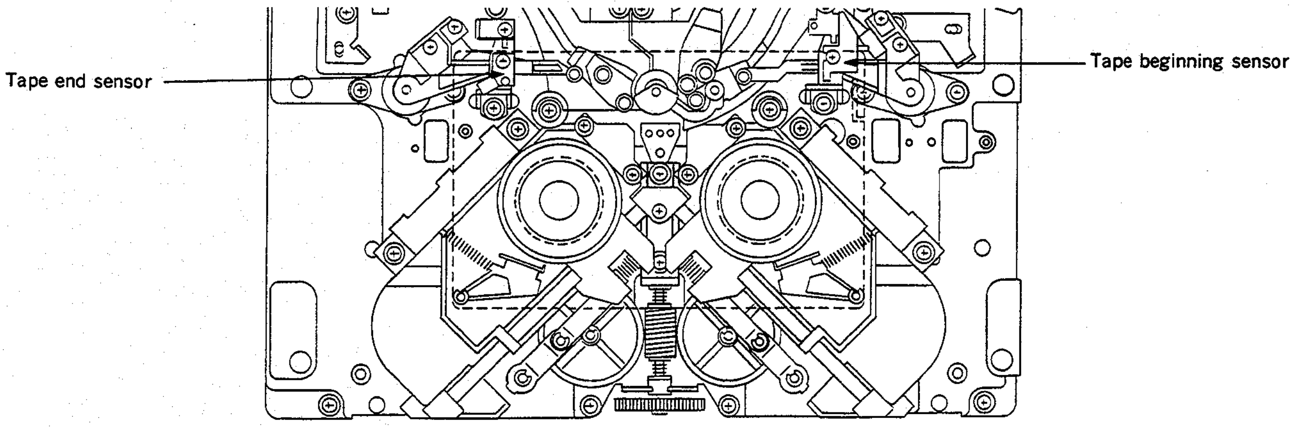
In case of NG
If ■ is not displayed on the appointed number, check the sensor on the PC-62 board and the sensor input circuit (DR-118 board).

(3) B013 : TOP/END SENSOR

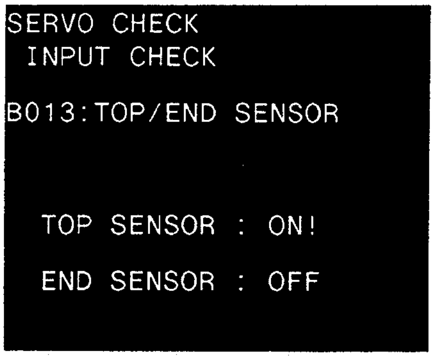
This mode checks the function of the tape beginning/end sensor.



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B013:TOP/END SENSOR


  TOP SENSOR : OFF

  END SENSOR : OFF
```

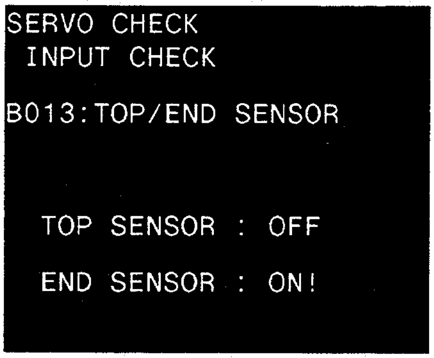


1. Draw a screw driver up to the tape beginning sensor. Confirm that "TOP SENSOR : OFF" which is in the monitor picture changes into "TOP SENSOR : ON!".



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B013:TOP/END SENSOR


  TOP SENSOR : ON!

  END SENSOR : OFF
```

2. Draw a screw driver up to the tape end sensor. Comfirm that "END SENSOR : OFF" which is in the monitor picture changes into "END SENSOR : ON!".

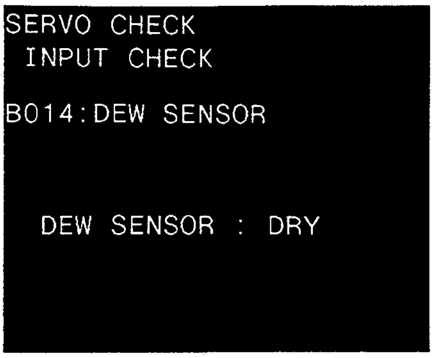


```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B013:TOP/END SENSOR


  TOP SENSOR : OFF

  END SENSOR : ON!
```

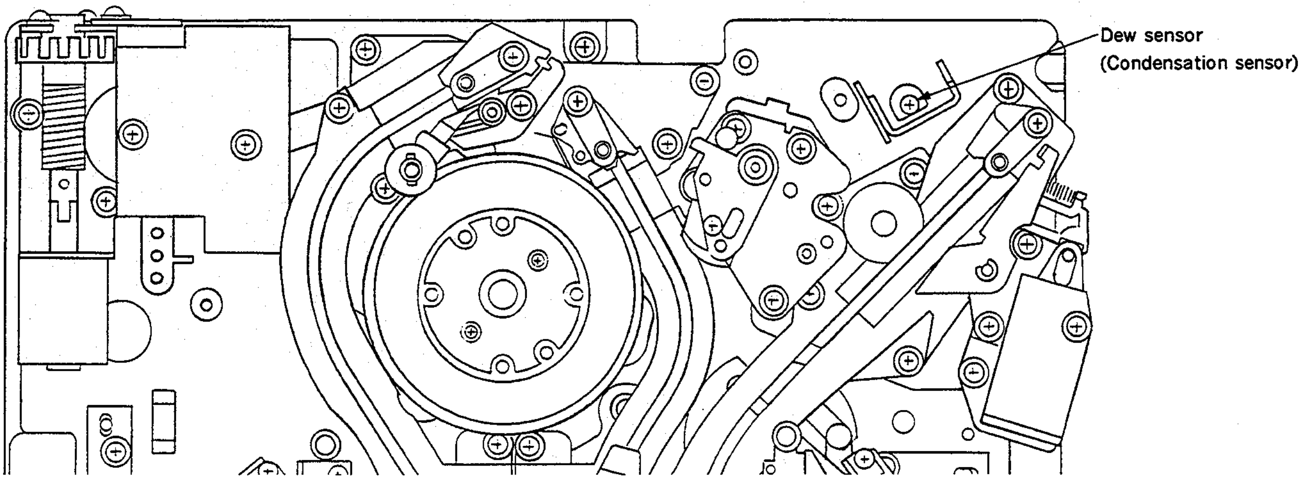
In case of NG
If "OFF" does not change into "ON!", check that the tape beginning/end sensor is normal or not, individually.
And check the tape beginning/end sensor circuit (DR-118 board).

(4) B014 : DEW SENSOR

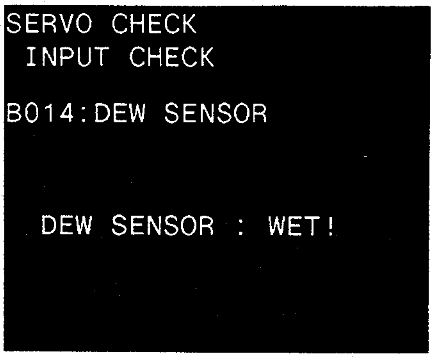
This mode checks the function of the dew (condensation) sensor.



```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B014:DEW SENSOR


  DEW SENSOR : DRY
```



1. Touch the dew sensor (condensation sensor) softly with a wet applicator.
   Confirm that "DRY" which is in the monitor picture changes into "WET!".



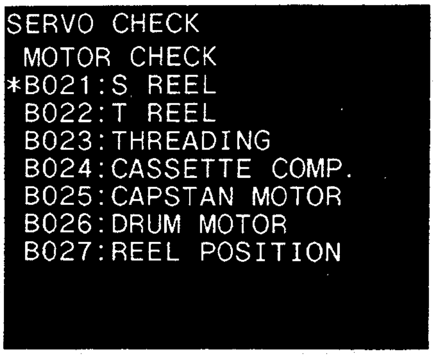
```
SERVO CHECK
 INPUT CHECK

B014:DEW SENSOR


  DEW SENSOR : WET!
```

2. Mop the moisture of the dew sensor (condensation sensor) with a dry applicator, or blow the sensor with a blower to evaporate.
   Confirm that "WET!" which is in the monitor picture changes into "DRY".

In case of NG
If "DRY" does not change to "WET!" when the dew sensor (condensation sensor) is damped, check that condensation sensor is normal or not, individually.
And check the dew sensor amplifier (DS-31 board).

B02 : MOTOR CHECK

The sub menus of the "B02 : Motor Check" are explained here.

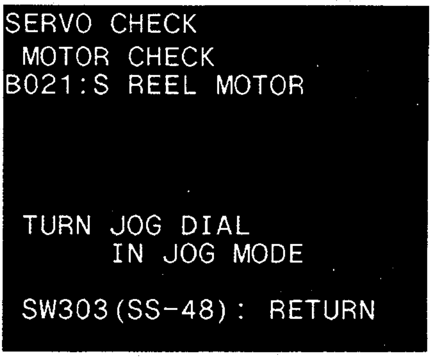


```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
*B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
 B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
 B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
 B026:DRUM MOTOR
 B027:REEL POSITION
```

(1) B021 : S REEL

This mode checks the rotation of the S reel motor.

Set the search dial to the jog mode, and turn it in the direction of forward and reverse. Confirm that the S reel motor rotates in the dial appointed direction, after the brake solenoid inhaled to release the reel brake.



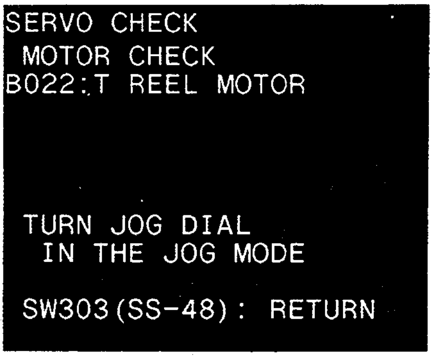
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B021:S REEL MOTOR



 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

In case of NG
If inhalation of the brake solenoid is soundless and the S reel motor does not rotate in the dial appointed direction, check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

(2) B022 : T REEL

This mode checks the rotation of the T reel motor.

Set the search dial to the jog mode, and turn in the direction of forward and reverse.
Confirm that the T reel motor rotates in the dial appointed direction, after the brake solenoid inhaled to release the reel brak.

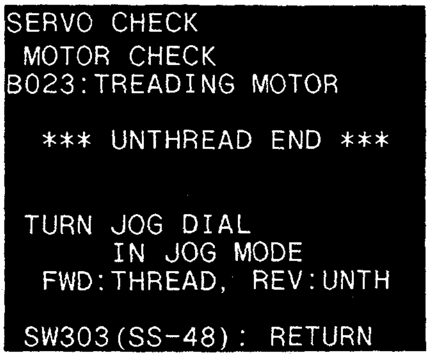


```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B022:T REEL MOTOR



 TURN JOG DIAL
  IN THE JOG MODE

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

In case of NG
If inhalation of the brake solenoid is soundless, and the T reel motor does not rotate in the dial appointed direction, check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

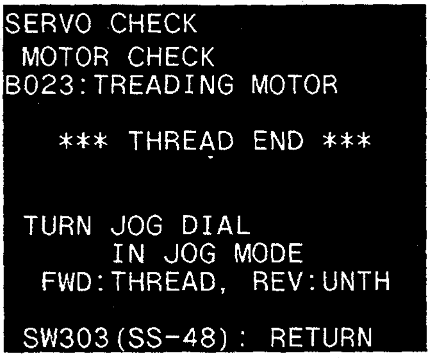
(3) B023 : THREADING

This mode checks the rotation of the threading motor and threading-end/unthreading-end sensor.



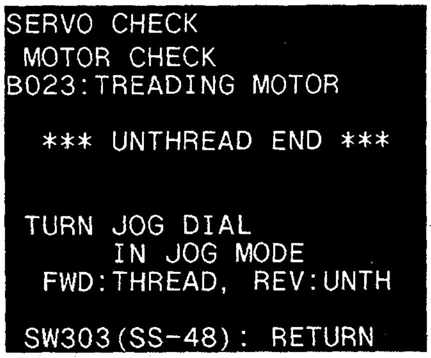
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

  *** UNTHREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

1. Set the search dial to the jog mode, and turn it in the direction of forward.
   Confirm that S slider, T slider and P slider are threaded, and "THREAD END" is displayed in the monitor picture.



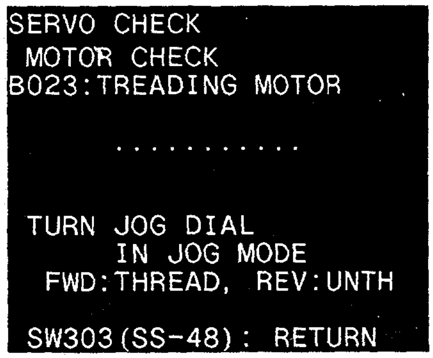
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

   *** THREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

2. Turn the search dial in the direction of reverse.
   Confirm that S slider, T slider and P slider are unthreaded, and "UNTHREAD END" is displayed in the monitor picture.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

  *** UNTHREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

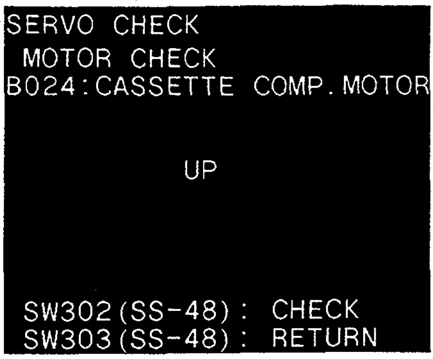
In case of NG
If the threading motor does not rotate, "···········" is displayed on the monitor after finishing threading, or "UNTHREAD END" is not displayed in the monitor picture after finishing unthreading, confirm that whether the threading motor and sensor on the PTC-49 board are normal or not. Also, check the loading motor driver circuit, loading FG amplifier circuit (DR-118 board), and loading TOP/END switch.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

      ...........


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

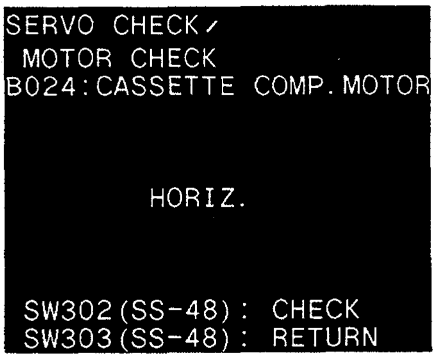
(4) B024 : CASSETTE COMP.

This mode checks the cassette compartment motor.



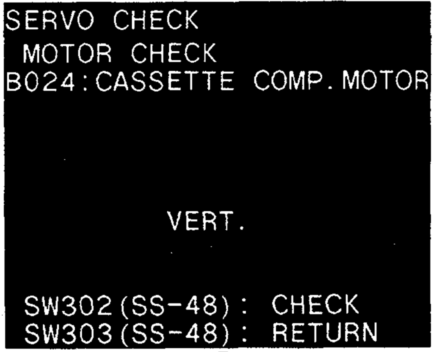
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B024:CASSETTE COMP.MOTOR

           UP

 SW302(SS-48) : CHECK
 SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
Confirm that cassette compartment goes down.
Confirm that cassette compartment goes up when pressing S302 switch again. (The display on the monitor changes in the reverse order when it going down.)



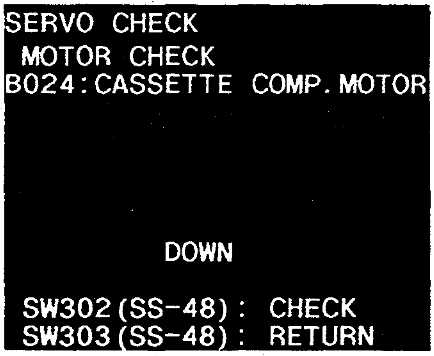
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B024:CASSETTE COMP.MOTOR

         HORIZ.

 SW302(SS-48) : CHECK
 SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

⇩



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B024:CASSETTE COMP.MOTOR

          VERT.

 SW302(SS-48) : CHECK
 SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

⇩

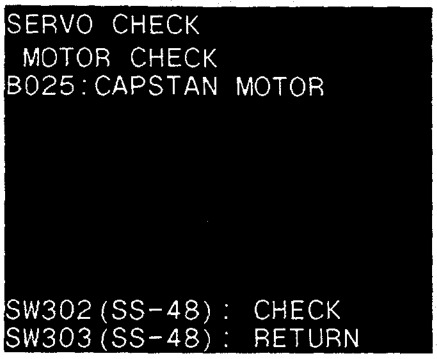


```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B024:CASSETTE COMP.MOTOR

          DOWN

 SW302(SS-48) : CHECK
 SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

In case of NG
If the display in the monitor doesn't change, check the cassette compartment motor and the sensor input circuit (DR-118 borad).

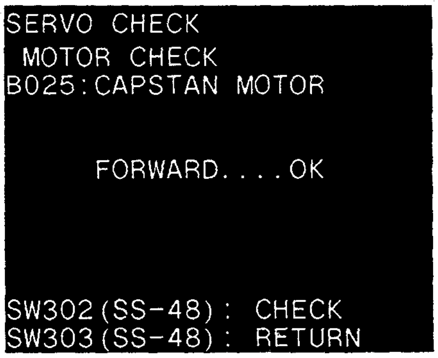
(5) B025: CAPSTAN MOTOR

This mode checks the direction of the rotation of the capstan motor.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR




SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

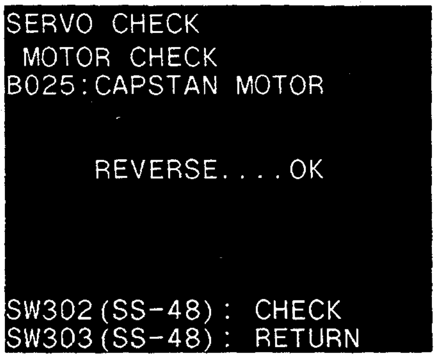
1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Confirm that "FORWORD...OK" is displayed in the monitor picture.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR

      FORWARD....OK


SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

2. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board again.

   Confirm that "REVERSE...OK" is displayed in the monitor picture.

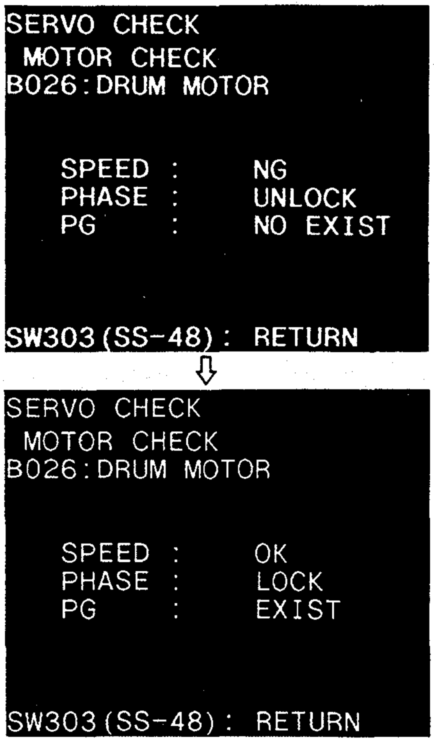


```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR

      REVERSE....OK


SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

In case of NG
If the display on the monitor does not change, check the capstan motor and the capstan motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

(6) B026 : DRUM MOTOR

This mode checks the rotation of the drum motor.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B026:DRUM MOTOR

   SPEED :    NG
   PHASE :    UNLOCK
   PG    :    NO EXIST

SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

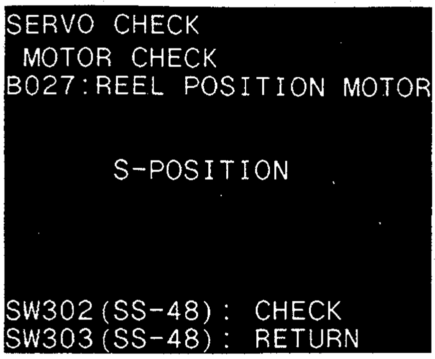
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B026:DRUM MOTOR

   SPEED :    OK
   PHASE :    LOCK
   PG    :    EXIST

SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

SPEED : Confirm that the display on the monitor changes into "OK".
PHASE : Confirm that the display on the monitor changes into "LOCK".
PG : Confirm that the display on the monitor changes into "EXIST".

In case of NG
If the display on the monitor does not change, check the drum motor, drum motor driver circuit, drum FG amplifier circuit, and drum PG amplifier circuit (DR-118 board).

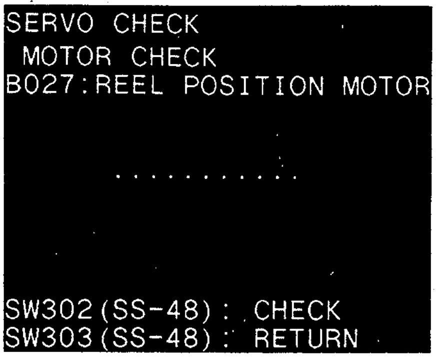
(7) B027 : REEL POSITION MOTOR

This mode checks the action of the reel position motor and the function of the reel L/S position sensor.



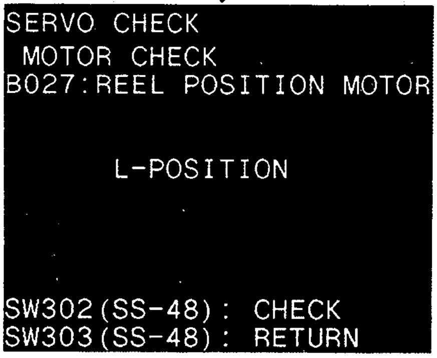
```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B027:REEL POSITION MOTOR

      S-POSITION



SW302(SS-48) :  CHECK
SW303(SS-48) :  RETURN
```

Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
Confirm that the reel table moves S-POSITION to L-POSITION, and the display changes.



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B027:REEL POSITION MOTOR

      . . . . . . . . . . .



SW302(SS-48) :  CHECK
SW303(SS-48) :  RETURN
```

⇩

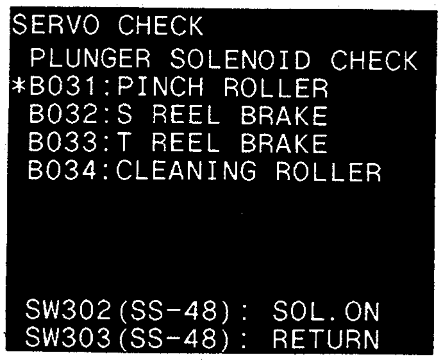


```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B027:REEL POSITION MOTOR

      L-POSITION



SW302(SS-48) :  CHECK
SW303(SS-48) :  RETURN
```

In case of NG
If the reel table does not move and the display on the monitor does not change, check the reel shift motor, reel L/S position sensor (PTC-42 board) and reel position motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

B03 : PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

The submenus of the "B03 : PLUNGER SOL. CHECK" are explained here.

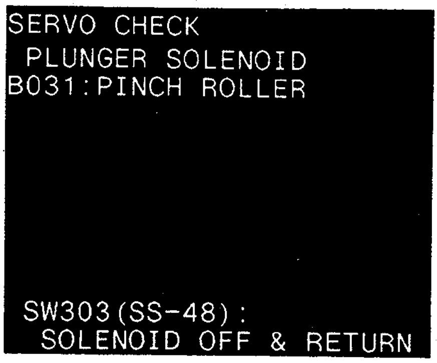


```
SERVO CHECK
 PLUNGER SOLENOID CHECK
*B031:PINCH ROLLER
 B032:S REEL BRAKE
 B033:T REEL BRAKE
 B034:CLEANING ROLLER



 SW302(SS-48): SOL.ON
 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

(1) B031 : PINCH ROLLER

This mode checks the action of the pinch roller solenoid.

1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Confirm with a sound that the pinch solenoid is set to ON.
2. Press S303 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the voltage which is supplied to pinch solenoid is set to OFF. And the monitor picture returns to the sub menu picture.
3. Push the pinch lever in the direction of the pinch solenoid lightly.
   Then iron core of the pinch solenoid is back to the original position.



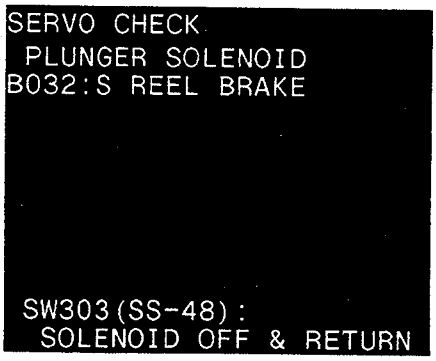
```
SERVO CHECK
 PLUNGER SOLENOID
B031:PINCH ROLLER




 SW303(SS-48):
  SOLENOID OFF & RETURN
```

In case of NG
If there is no sound that the pinch solenoid is set to ON, and the monitor picture does not change, check the pinch solenoid and circuit.

(2) B032 : S REEL BRAKE

This mode checks the action of the S reel brake solenoid.

1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Confirm with a sound that the S reel brake solenoid is set to ON.
2. Press S303 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then iron core of the S reel brake solenoid is back to the original position. And the monitor picture returns to the sub menu picture.

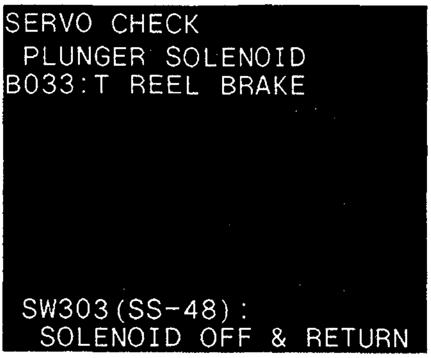


```
SERVO CHECK
 PLUNGER SOLENOID
B032:S REEL BRAKE




 SW303(SS-48):
  SOLENOID OFF & RETURN
```

In case of NG
If there is no sound that S reel brake solenoid is set to ON, and the monitor picture does not change, check the S reel brake solenoid, reel brake plunger and driver circuit (DR-118 board).

(3) B033 : T REEL BRAKE

This mode checks the action of the T reel brake solenoid.



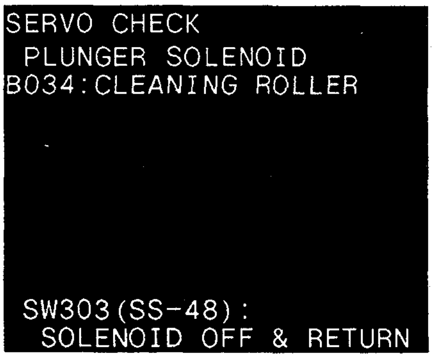
```
SERVO CHECK
 PLUNGER SOLENOID
B033:T REEL BRAKE




 SW303(SS-48):
  SOLENOID OFF & RETURN
```

1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Confirm with a sound that the T reel brake solenoid is set to ON.
2. Press S303 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then iron core of the T reel brake solenoid is back to the original position. And the monitor picture returns to the sub menu picture.

In case of NG
If there is no sound that the T reel brake solenoid is set to ON, and the monitor picture doesn't change, check the T reel brake solenoid, reel brake plunger and driver circuit (DR-118 board).

(4) B034 : CLEANING ROLLER

This mode checks the action of the cleaning roller solenoid.



```
SERVO CHECK
 PLUNGER SOLENOID
B034:CLEANING ROLLER




 SW303(SS-48):
  SOLENOID OFF & RETURN
```

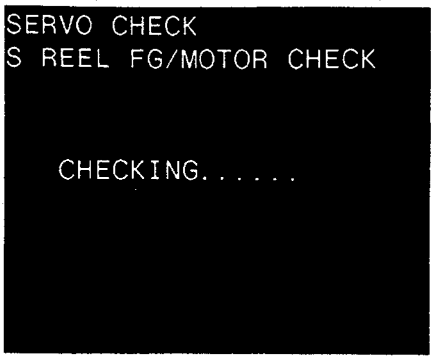
1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Confirm that the cleaning roller solenoid is set to ON, and the cleaning roller is pressed to drum.
2. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the cleaning roller solenoid is set to OFF, and the cleaning roller is separated from the drum. And the monitor picture returns to the sub menu picture.

In case of NG
If the cleaning roller is not pressed to the drum, check the cleaning roller solenoid and solenoid drive circuit (DR-118 board).

B04 : REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR & FG CHECK

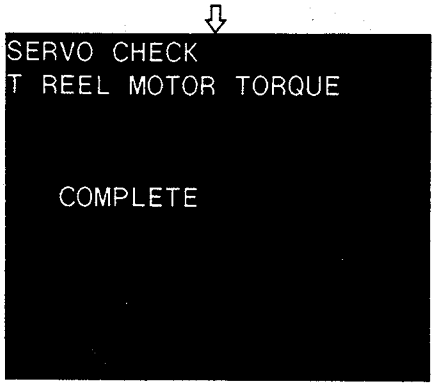
When pressig S302 on the SS-48 board, the following check is performed automatically.

- S REEL FG/MOTOR CHECK
- T REEL FG/MOTOR CHECK
- CAPSTAN FG/MOTOR CHECK
- S REEL FRICTION/OFFSET
- T REEL FRICTION/OFFSET
- S REEL MOTOR TORQUE
- T REEL MOTOR TORQUE



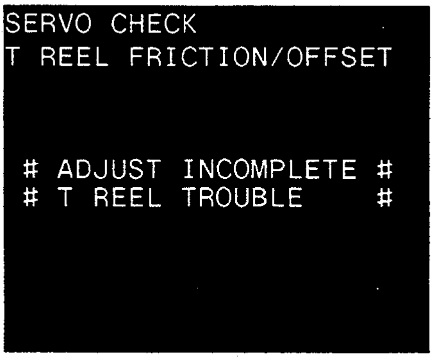
```
SERVO CHECK
S REEL FG/MOTOR CHECK


   CHECKING......
```

When all the check are performed, and all are normal, "COMPLETE" is displayed in the monitor picture.



```
SERVO CHECK
T REEL MOTOR TORQUE


   COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If the contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the relative circuit of the trouble.



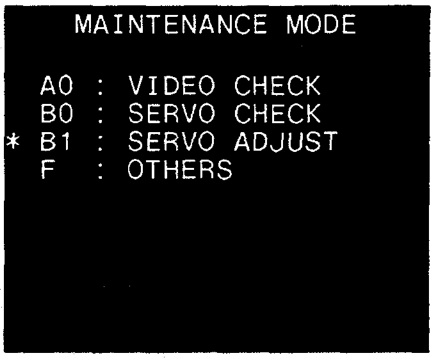
```
SERVO CHECK
T REEL FRICTION/OFFSET


 # ADJUST INCOMPLETE #
 # T REEL TROUBLE     #
```

3-3. SERVO SYSTEM ADJUSTMENT MODE (B1 : SERVO ADJUST)

Servo system is adjusted automatically or semiautomatically in this mode.

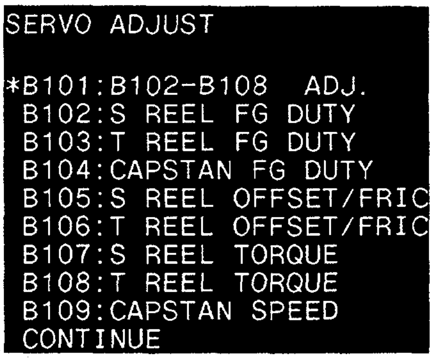
• Procedure

1. Turn OFF the POWER, and set S601-4 switch on the SS-48 board to ON (CLOSE).
2. Turn ON the POWER.
3. Press the EJECT button to put the unit into the EJECT mode.
   NOTE : If the unit is not set to the EJECT mode, the servo system adjustment mode does not run.
4. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the unit enters into the maintenance mode. Modes of four kinds are displayed on the monitor.
5. Press the search dial to put the unit into the jog mode, and move the ∗ mark to "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" which is a mode displayed on the monitor.

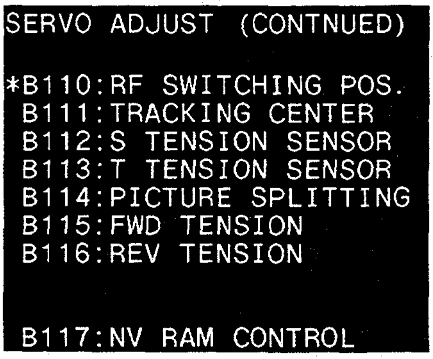


```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0 : VIDEO CHECK
  B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
  F  : OTHERS
```

6. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" mode is selected, and menus are displayed on the monitor.



```
SERVO ADJUST

*B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```



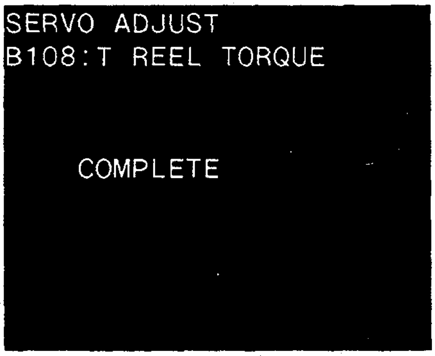
```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

*B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

7. Move the * mark to a desired menu by the search dial (jog mode).
8. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board, and execute the * marked menu.
   (Refer to each page of menu about a method of adjustment.)
9. When all the adjustments are performed, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the menu picture.
   NOTE : To have the NV RAM memorize the adjustment data after an adjustment is performed, execute the "B117 : NV RAM control".
   Also it is possible to have the NV RAM memorize all the adjustment data after multi adjustments are performed. At that time, execute the "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" after all adjustments are performed.
10. If there are other menus wishing to be adjusted, repeat the step 7 to 9.
11. When all the adjustments are performed, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the mode picture.
    NOTE : Have NV RAM memorize the adjustment data.
12. Turn OFF the POWER, and reset S601-4 on the SS-48 board to OFF (OPEN).

B101 : B102-B108 ADJ

Adjustments of B102 to B108 menus are performed automatically.

Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.

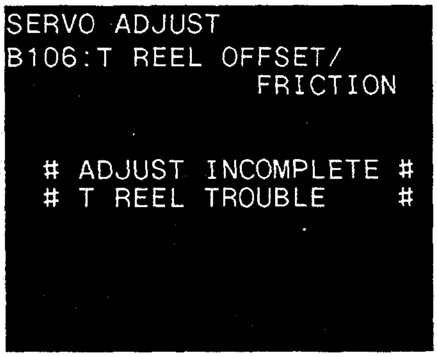


```
SERVO ADJUST
B108:T REEL TORQUE


    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG

"ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor.

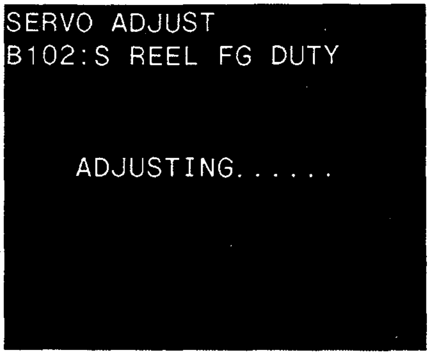
In this case, check the relative circuit of the trouble.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B106:T REEL OFFSET/
                FRICTION

  # ADJUST INCOMPLETE #
  # T REEL TROUBLE    #
```

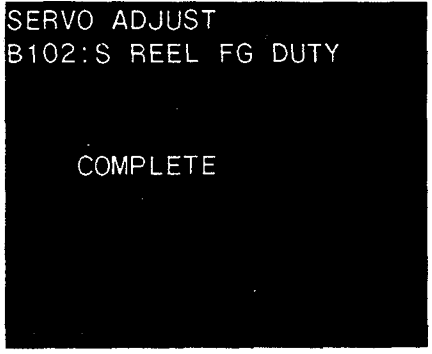
B102 : S REEL FG DUTY

This mode adjusts the S reel FG duty.
Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B102:S REEL FG DUTY


    ADJUSTING......
```

⇩

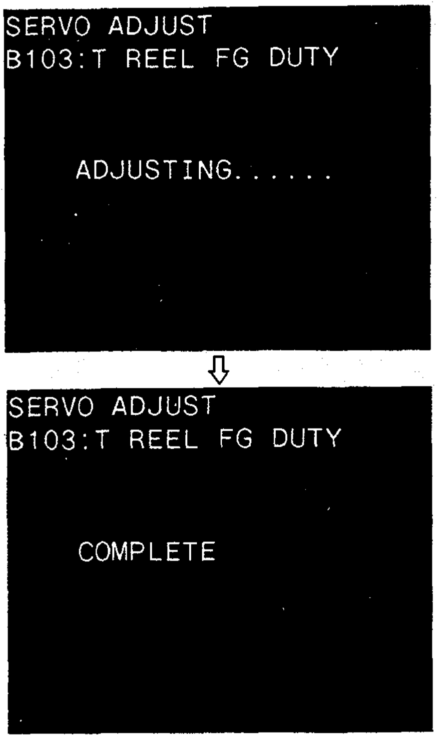


```
SERVO ADJUST
B102:S REEL FG DUTY


    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the reel FG amplifier circuit and the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board, SS-48 board).

B103 : T REEL FG DUTY

This mode adjusts the T reel FG duty.
Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B103:T REEL FG DUTY

    ADJUSTING......
```

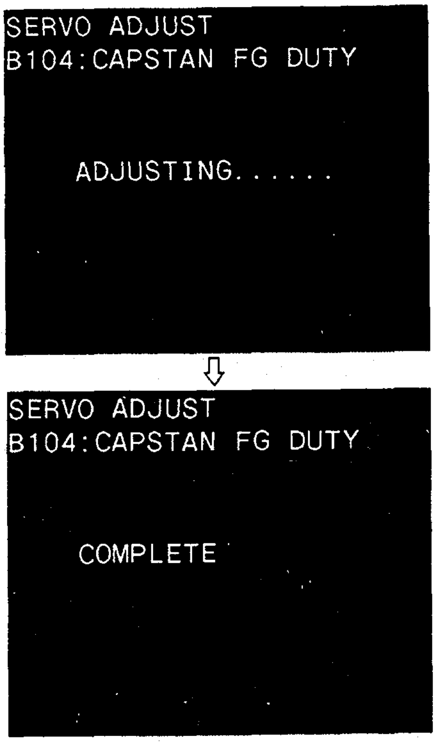
⇩

```
SERVO ADJUST
B103:T REEL FG DUTY

    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the reel FG amplifier circuit and the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board, SS-48 board).

B104 : CAPSTAN FG DUTY

This mode adjusts the capstan FG duty.
Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY

    ADJUSTING......
```

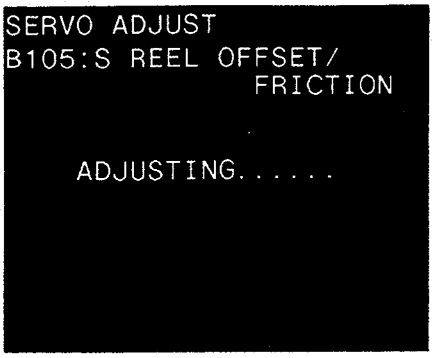
⇩

```
SERVO ADJUST
B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY

    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the capstan motor driver circuit (DR-118 board) and the capstan FG amplifier circuit (SS-48 board).

B105 : S REEL OFFSET/FRIC

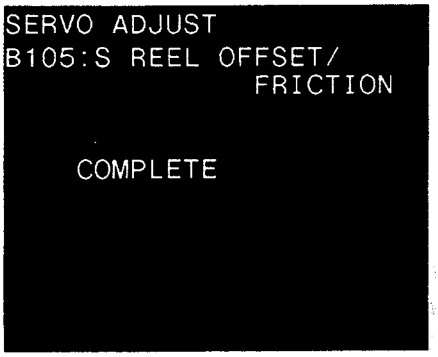
This mode adjusts the S reel offset/friction.
Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



SERVO ADJUST
B105:S REEL OFFSET/
FRICTION

ADJUSTING......

⇩



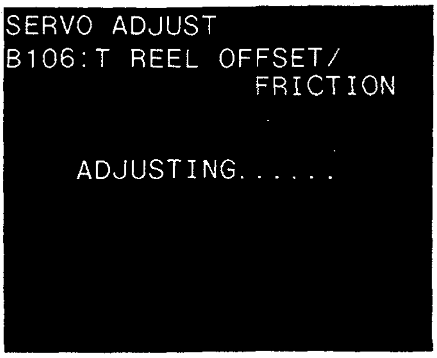
SERVO ADJUST
B105:S REEL OFFSET/
FRICTION

COMPLETE

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, adjust the S reel FG duty again (B102 : S REEL FG DUTY). And check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

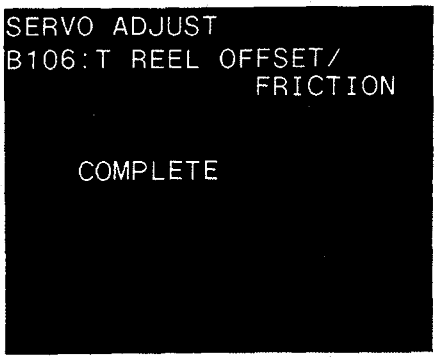
B106 : T REEL OFFSET/FRIC

This mode adjusts the T reel offset/friction. Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B106:T REEL OFFSET/
              FRICTION

    ADJUSTING......
```

⇩

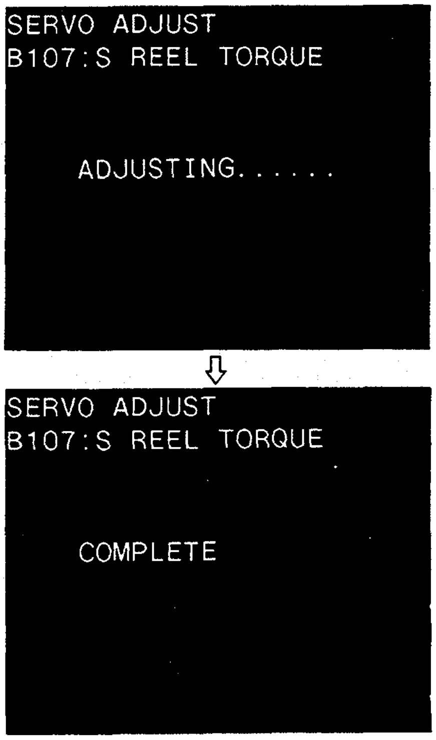


```
SERVO ADJUST
B106:T REEL OFFSET/
              FRICTION

    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, adjust the T reel FG duty again (B103 : T REEL FG DUTY). And check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

B107 : S REEL TORQUE

This mode adjusts the S reel torque.
Confirm that adjustment is performed and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B107:S REEL TORQUE

    ADJUSTING......
```

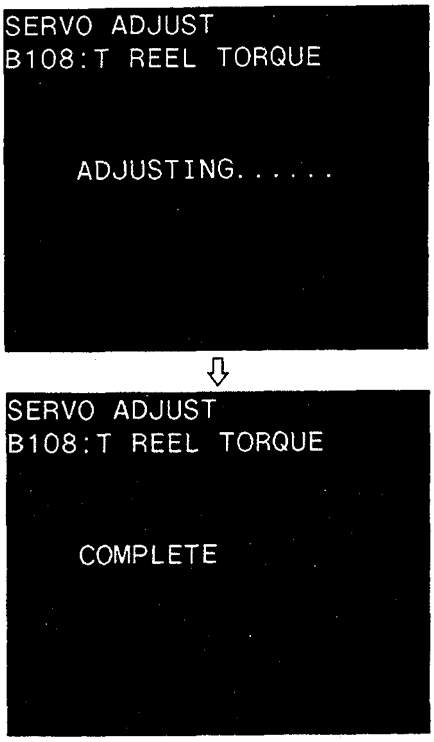
⇩

```
SERVO ADJUST
B107:S REEL TORQUE

    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, adjust the S reel FG duty again (B102 : S REEL FG DUTY). And check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

B108 : T REEL TORQUE

This mode adjusts the T reel torque.
Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B108:T REEL TORQUE

    ADJUSTING......
```

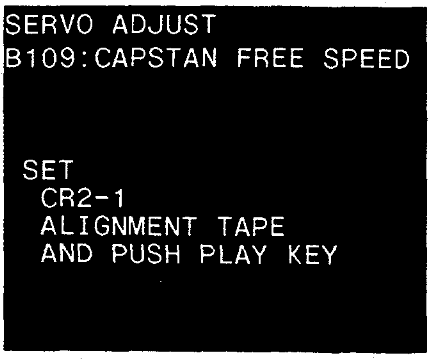
⇩

```
SERVO ADJUST
B108:T REEL TORQUE

    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, adjust the T reel FG duty again (B103 : T REEL FG DUTY). And check the reel motor driver circuit (DR-118 board).

B109 : CAPSTAN SPEED

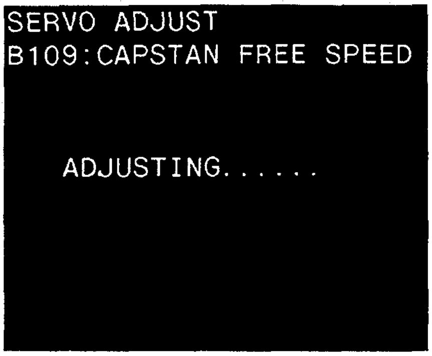
This mode adjusts the capstan free speed.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B109:CAPSTAN FREE SPEED


 SET
  CR2-1
  ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS, and press the play button.

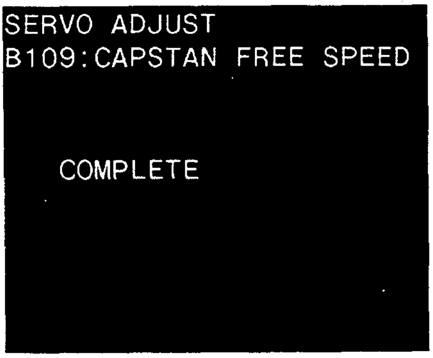
NOTE : Be sure to use an alignment tape CR2-1B PS.
It may display "COMPLETE" even after the adjustment which is playbacked by other alignment tape. But when not using the alignment tape which is regulated tape speed strictly, it is impossible to get correct adjustment data.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B109:CAPSTAN FREE SPEED


   ADJUSTING......
```

⇩

Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.
The cassette tape is ejected automatically.

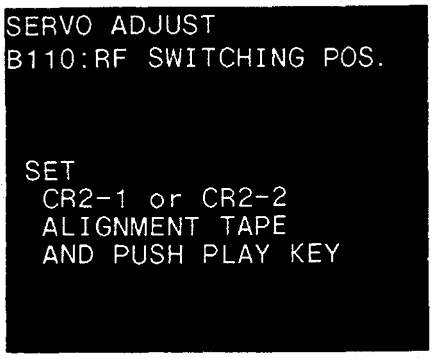


```
SERVO ADJUST
B109:CAPSTAN FREE SPEED


   COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the capstan FG amplifier, capstan motor drive and CTL amplifier circuit (DR-118 borad).

B110 : RF SWITCHING POS.

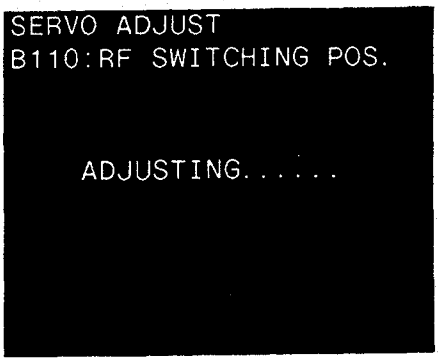
This mode adjusts the RF switching position.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.


 SET
  CR2-1 or CR2-2
  ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS, and press the play button.

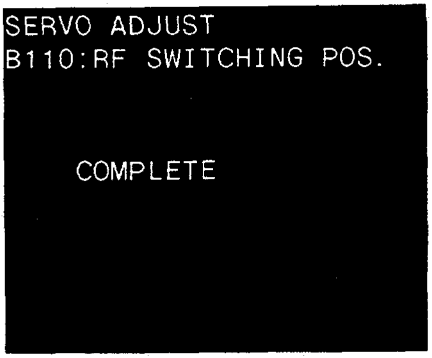
NOTE : Be sure to use an alignment tape CR2-1B PS.
Do not use other alignment tape.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.


     ADJUSTING......
```

⇩

Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.
The cassette tape is ejected automatically.

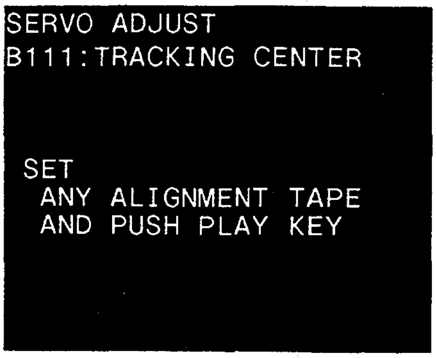


```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.


    COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check that the playbacked alignment tape was CR2-1B PS or not. And check the DO pulse circuit.

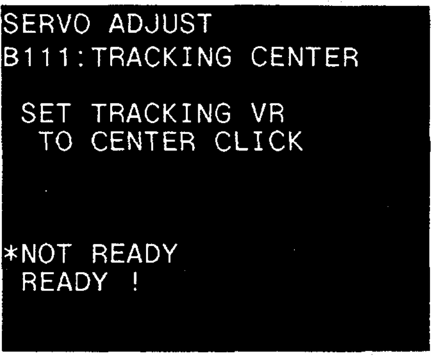
B111 : TRACKING CENTER

This mode adjusts the tracking center.



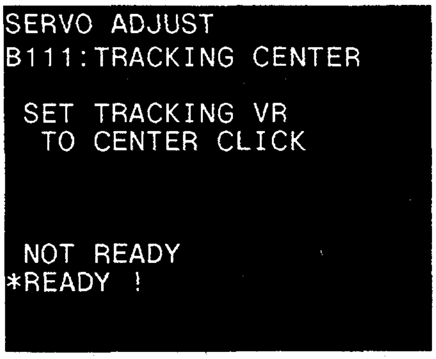
```
SERVO ADJUST
B111:TRACKING CENTER


 SET
  ANY ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

1. Insert an alignment tape CR5-1B PS, and playback the color bars signal portion (0:00-4:55).



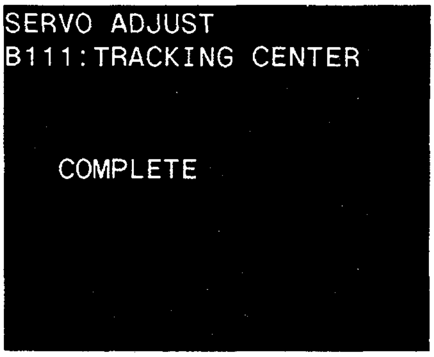
```
SERVO ADJUST
B111:TRACKING CENTER

 SET TRACKING VR
  TO CENTER CLICK


*NOT READY
 READY !
```

2. Set the tracking adjustment control on the control panel to FIXED.
3. Move the * mark to "READY!" in the monitor picture with the search dial.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B111:TRACKING CENTER

 SET TRACKING VR
  TO CENTER CLICK


 NOT READY
*READY !
```

4. Press S302 on the SS-48 board.
5. Confirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.

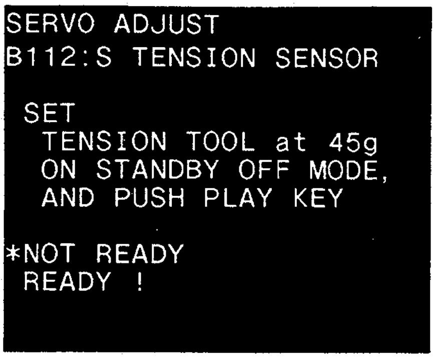


```
SERVO ADJUST
B111:TRACKING CENTER


   COMPLETE
```

In case of NG
If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the tracking volume circuit.

B112 : S TENSION SENSOR

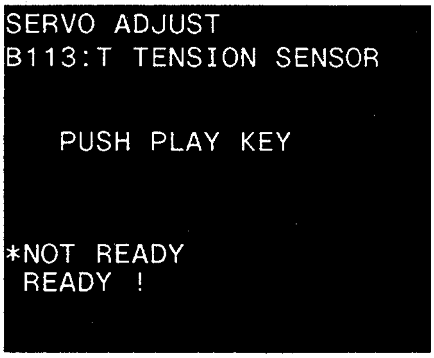
This mode adjusts the sensor of the S tension regulator.
Use fixtures in this adjustment.
Refer to section 5-19-2 about a method of adjustment.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 SET
  TENSION TOOL at 45g
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY

*NOT READY
 READY !
```

B113 : T TENSION SENSOR

This mode adjusts the sensor of the T tension regulator.
Use fixtures in this adjustment.
Refer to section 5-20-2 about a method of adjustment.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR


   PUSH PLAY KEY


*NOT READY
 READY !
```

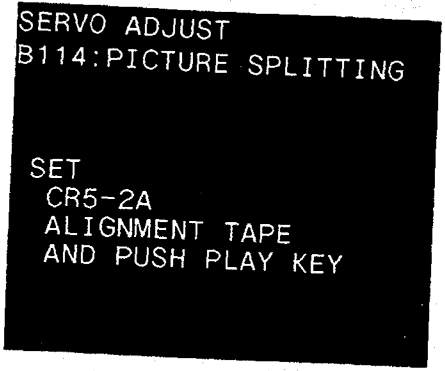
B114: PICTURE SPLITTING

This mode adjusts the picture splitting.

NOTE: This mode is performed only when the picture splitting is serious.

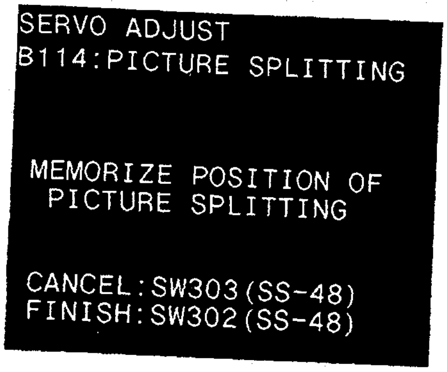
1. Connect the video monitor to TP202 (D-2) on the VP-33 board using the BNC clip cable.
2. Set the monitor as following.
   - H DELAY
   - AFC FAST
   - INT SYNC

   NOTE: It is impossible to observe with the video monitor which captured the H sync strongly by the AFC circuit in the monitor.
3. Insert an alignment tape CR5-2A PS, and playback the monoscope signal portion. (13:00-15:00).


SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING

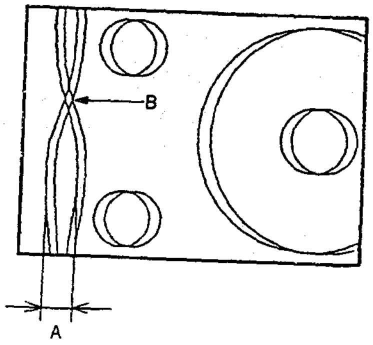
SET
CR5-2A
ALIGNMENT TAPE
AND PUSH PLAY KEY

4. Press S302 on the SS-48 board and measure the picture splitting portion (A portion of the figure) in the monitor. If the A is 1.5 μs or more (2.4 scales in H direction on the monoscope), the following steps should be performed.


SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING

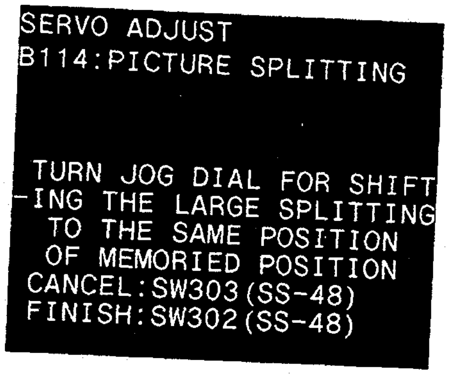
MEMORIZE POSITION OF
PICTURE SPLITTING

CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
FINISH:SW302(SS-48)



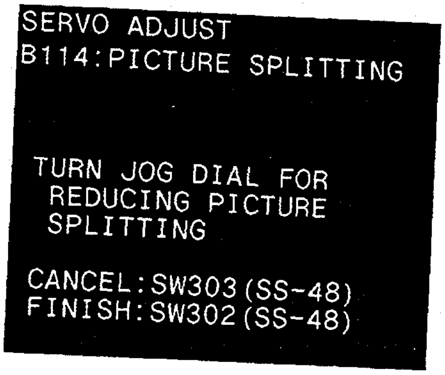
5. Memorize the closs point of the picture splitting portion (B portion of the above figure) in the monitor, and press S302 on the SS-48 board.

   NOTE: It is easy to memorize by putting a adhesive tape on the monitor.


SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING

TURN JOG DIAL FOR SHIFT
-ING THE LARGE SPLITTING
TO THE SAME POSITION
OF MEMORIED POSITION
CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
FINISH:SW302(SS-48)

6. Turn the search dial, and position the closs point at the memorized position in step 5, and press S302 on the SS-48 board.
7. Turn the search dial to make least the picture splitting, and press S302 on the SS-48 board.


SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING

TURN JOG DIAL FOR
REDUCING PICTURE
SPLITTING

CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
FINISH:SW302(SS-48)

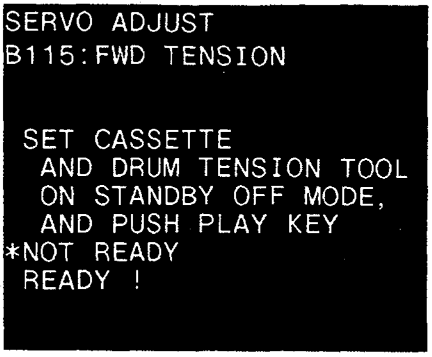
8. Cofirm that adjustment is performed, and "COMPLETE" is displayed.

In case of NG

If "ADJUST INCOMPLETE" and contents of the trouble are displayed on the monitor, check the drum FG amplifier circuit and drum motor drive circuit.

B115 : FWD TENSION

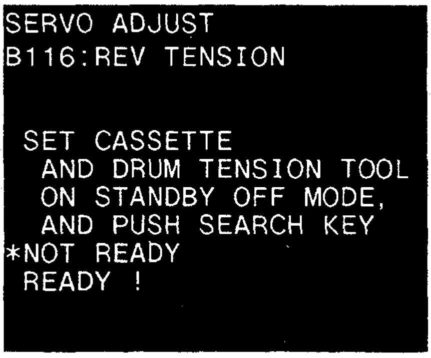
This mode adjusts the FWD back tension.
Use fixtures in this adjustment.
Refer to section 5-19-3 about a method of adjustment.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B115:FWD TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
*NOT READY
 READY !
```

B116 : REV TENSION

This mode adjusts the REV back tension.
Use fixtures in this adjustment.
Refer to section 5-19-4 about a methed of adjustment.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B116:REV TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
  AND PUSH SEARCH KEY
*NOT READY
 READY !
```

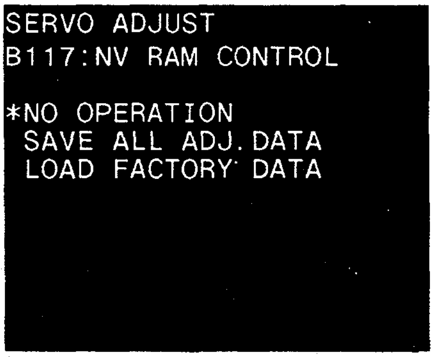
B117 : NV RAM CONTROL

This mode installs the adjustment data to NVRAM.

When having all the adjustment data installed
Move the * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with search dial, and press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.

When returning all the adjustmented data to the condition that the unit is shipped
Move the * mark to "LOAD FACTORY DATA" with search dial, and press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.

"SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor after the data is installed.
After "SAVE COMPLETE" was displayed, press S303 on the SS-48 board to return to the menu picture. Or press S303 twice to return to the mode picture.



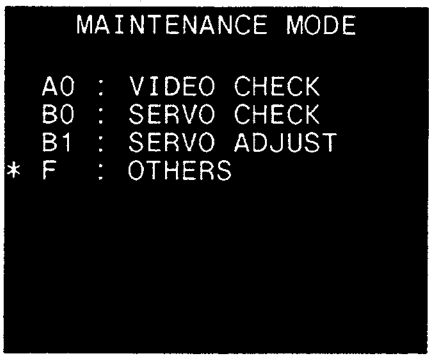
```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

*NO OPERATION
 SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

3-4. OTHER CHECK MODE (F : OTHERS)

In this mode, it is able to check the ROM version, switch of the control panel/sub control panel and CF data.

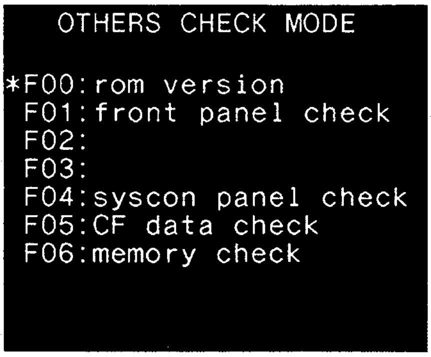
• Procedure

1. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then the unit enters into the maintenance mode.
   Modes of four kinds are displayed on the monitor.
2. Press the search dial to put the unit into the jog mode, and move the * mark to "F : OTHERS" which is a mode displayed on the monitor.



```
    MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVO CHECK
 B1 : SERVO ADJUST
* F  : OTHERS
```

3. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board.
   Then "F : OTHERS" mode is selected, and menus are displayed on the monitor.



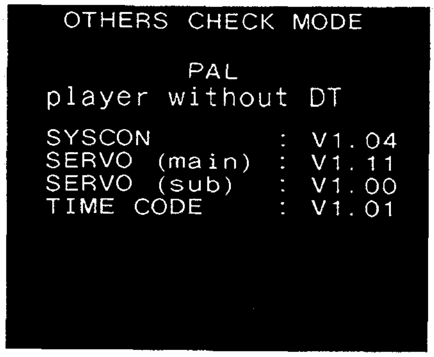
```
  OTHERS CHECK MODE

*F00:rom version
 F01:front panel check
 F02:
 F03:
 F04:syscon panel check
 F05:CF data check
 F06:memory check
```

4. Move the * mark to a desired menu with the search dial (jog mode).
5. Press S302 switch on the SS-48 board, and execute the * marked menu.
6. When check is performed, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the menu picture.
7. If there are other menus wishing to be checked, repeat the step 4 to 6.
8. When all the checks are performed, press S303 switch on the SS-48 board to return to the mode picture.

F00 : rom version

In this mode, rom version is displayed.

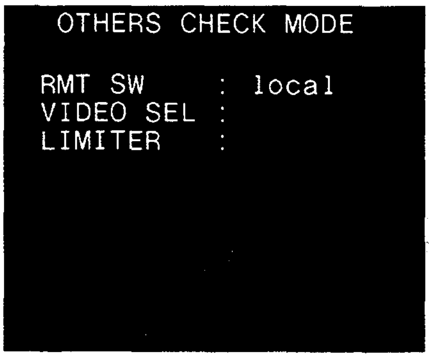
SYSCON : IC7 on the SS-48 board
SERVO (main) : IC604 on the SS-48 board
SERVO (sub) : IC710 on the SS-48 board
TIME CODE : IC403 on the SS-48 board



```
 OTHERS  CHECK  MODE

         PAL
player without DT

SYSCON          :  V1.04
SERVO  (main)   :  V1.11
SERVO  (sub)    :  V1.00
TIME  CODE      :  V1.01
```

F01 : front panel check

This mode checks the function of the switch which is on the control panel.

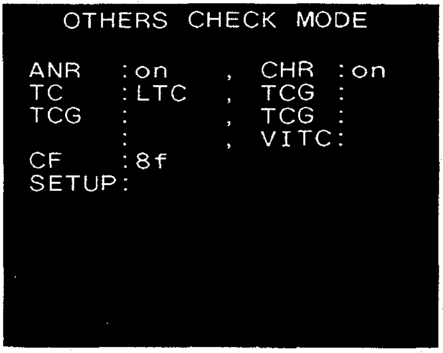


```
 OTHERS CHECK MODE

RMT SW     :  local
VIDEO SEL  :
LIMITER    :
```

RMT SW : Operate the LOCAL/REMOTE switch, and confirm that the monitor display changes to the set position.

F04 : syscon panel check

This mode checks the function of the switch which is on the sub control panel.



```
 OTHERS CHECK MODE

ANR   :on    ,  CHR :on
TC    :LTC   ,  TCG :
TCG   :      ,  TCG :
      :      ,  VITC:
CF    :8f
SETUP:
```

ANR : Operate the DOLBY NR switch, and confirm that the monitor display changes to the set position.

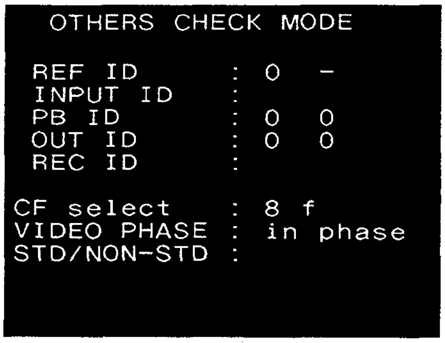
CHR : Operate the CHARACTER switch, and confirm that the monitor display changes to the set position.

TC : Operate the TC switch, and confirm that the monitor display changes to the set position.

CF : Operate the CAPSTAN LOCK switch, and confirm that the monitor display changes to the set position.

SETUP: Press the SETUP SET switch, and confirm that its mode is displayed on the monitor.

F05 : CF data check



```
 OTHERS CHECK MODE

 REF ID       :  0  -
 INPUT ID     :
 PB ID        :  0  0
 OUT ID       :  0  0
 REC ID       :

CF select     :  8 f
VIDEO PHASE   :  in phase
STD/NON-STD   :
```

REF ID : The field number for reference TBC is displayed.

PB ID : The field number of play back video signal in play back mode is displayed, and the difference between the field number and REF ID is displayed. (field number : 0 through 7)

OUT ID : The field number of the coomposite video signal from the VTR is displayed, and the difference between the field number and REF ID is displayed. (field number : 0 through 7)

CF select : The CF select of the VTR is displayed.

VIDEO PHASE : Whether the video phase by CF ID is IN phase or OUT phase is displayed. When the video phase is OUT phase, the output video signal is shifted H by 70 ns. (VISC has nothing to do with this display.)

F06 : memory check

factory use

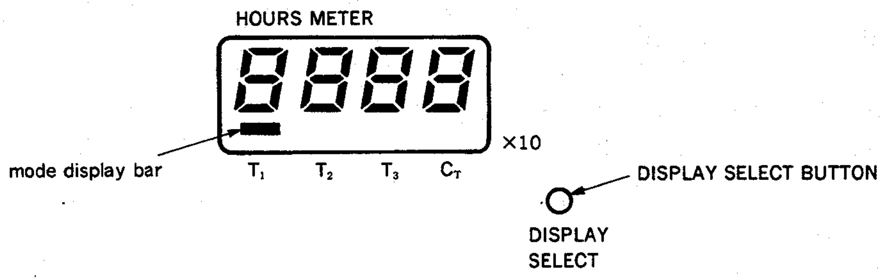
PERIODIC CHECK

SECTION 4
INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

4-1. HOURS METER

The Hours Meter is installed on the sub control panel.
It is recommended to perform inspection and maintenance based on the Hours Meter.

NOTE : The Hours Meter has a built-in battery. The Hours Meter should be replaced every five years.
When replacing the Hours Meter, it is recommended to note down the total hours and times displayed for inspection and maintenance later.

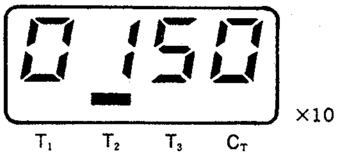


The Hours Meter has four kinds of display modes. The total operation hours or total times of operations is displayed in each mode.
To select the display mode, push the DISPLAY SELECT button at the side of the Hours Meter.

NOTE : The actual operation hours or times are equal to the displayed value multiplied by 10.

mode	contents	The unit operation status in every mode.	
		light a mode display bar	**blink a mode display bar**
T_1 : OPERATION	Displays the total hours that the power of the unit has been turned on.	POWER OFF	POWER ON
T_2 : DRUM RUNNING	Displays the total rotation hours of the drum in threading end mode.	• POWER OFF • POWER ON in mode other than threading end.	Drum is rotating in threading end mode.
T_3 : TAPE RUNNING	Displays the total running hours of the tape in fast forward, rewind, playback and search modes (except for stop and standby).	• POWER OFF • POWER ON in mode other than fast forward, rewind, playback or search.	Tape is running in fast forward, rewind, playback or search.
C_T : THREADING	Displays the total times of threading and unthreading operations.		Every time if the POWER is ON or OFF.

Example : This display indicates that the total rotation hours of the drum is 1500 hours in threading end mode.



4-2. MAINTENANCE AFTER REPAIRS

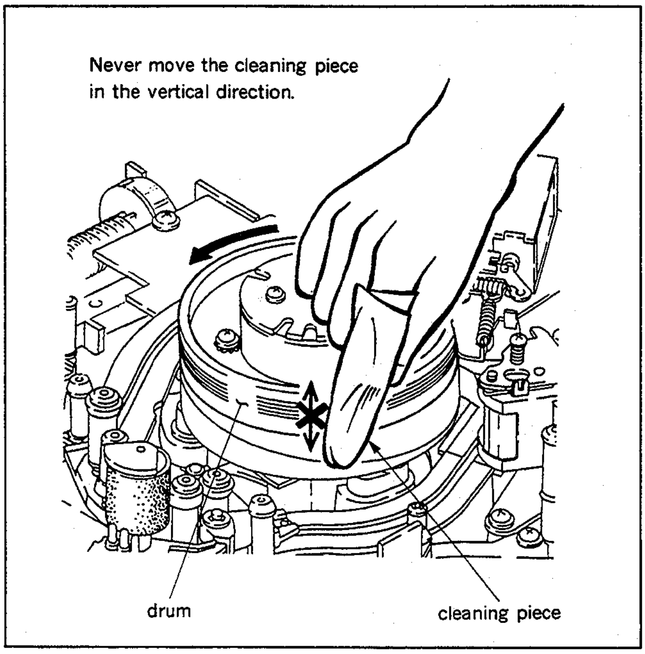
Perform the following maintenance after repairs regardless of the unit operating hours.

1. Video heads and stationary heads cleaning. (Refer to Section 4-2-1. and 4-2-2.)
2. Tape movement area cleaning. (Refer to Section 4-2-3.)

NOTE: Wait until the cleaning fluid evaporates completely before inserting a cassette tape.

4-2-1. Cleaning Procedure of Video Head

Press a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid and turn a drum slowly with hand.



NOTE:
- Never move the cleaning piece in the vertical direction of a head tip.
- Clean the head with the power off.

4-2-2. Cleaning Procedure of Stationary Heads

Clean with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

4-2-3. Cleaning Procedure of Tape Movement Areas

Wipe the tape bearing surfaces (of a tape guide, drum, capstan and pinch roller) with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

4-3. PERIODIC MAINTENANCE TABLE

It is recommended to perform the periodic maintenance in order to obtain correct function and higher performance, and also to extend the life of tape and unit.

○ mark : Execute
△ mark : Confirm. if not, replace or adjust

Perform the periodic maintenance referring to T2 : DRUM RUNNING mode shown in hours meter.

Item	1000H	2000H	3000H	4000H	5000H	6000H	Replacement	Q'ty	Remarks
Tape running system									
Tape running surface cleaning	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Tape running confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Cleaning roller replacement	○	○	○	○	○	○	X-3675-858-1 ROLLER SUB ASSY, C	1pc	
Upper drum assembly replacement	○	○	—	○	○	—	A-6762-463-A UPPER DRUM ASSY, DBR-28-R	1pc	(Note 1)
Servo automatic adjustment (B110) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo automatic adjustment (B111) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Video tracking confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Drum assembly replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	A-6050-841-A DRUM ASSY, DBH-28A-R	1pc	
Tape guide roller rotation confirmation/ replacement	△	△	△	△	△	△	X-3166-431-1 ROLLER (TG-6) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-037-1 ROLLER (M) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-052-1 ROLLER (S-T) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-320-1 TG-5 ASSY X-3166-386-1 TG-4 (IP) ASSY	1pc 4pcs 2pcs 1pc 1pc	
Tape guide flange wearing confirmation/ replacement	△	△	△	△	△	△	3-173-172-01 FLANGE, LOWER 3-173-176-01 NUT, ADJUSTMENT 3-174-315-01 FLANGE (UPPER) 3-174-316-01 FLANGE (LOWER)	2pcs 4pcs 5pcs 4pcs	
Bearing for cleaning roller replacement	—	○	—	○	—	○	3-669-443-01 BEARING, BALL	2pcs	
Audio/TC head replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	8-825-776-61 HEAD, EPS244-2103E	1pc	
CTL head replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	8-825-776-41 HEAD, PS244-21C	1pc	
Drive system									
Pinch roller replacement	○	○	○	○	○	○	X-3166-040-3 ARM ASSY, PINCH	1pc	
Brake shoe replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	X-3717-205-1 LINING ASSY, C	2pcs	
Drum ground shaft replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	X-3166-376-1 GROUND ASSY, SHAFT	1pc	
Pinch solenoid replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	1-454-338-00 SOLENOID	1pc	
Cleaning solenoid replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	1-454-372-11 SOLENOID	1pc	
Brake solenoid replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	1-454-417-41 SOLENOID	2pcs	
Reel motor replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	A-6737-207-A RM ASSY	2pcs	
Capstan motor replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	8-835-445-01 MOTOR, DC SCV-0301A	1pc	
Threading motor replacement	—	—	○	—	—	○	8-835-179-01 MOTOR, DC MCB2B15	1pc	
Mechanical operation confirmation									
Abnormal noise	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Servo automatic adjustment (B101) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo automatic adjustment (B109) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo check menu execute	○	○	○	○	○	○			
FWD back tension confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△			
REV back tension confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Cassette compartment operation confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Reel brake clearance confirmation	—	—	△	—	—	△			
Reel brake release amount confirmation	—	—	△	—	—	△			
Electrical confirmation									
System control operation confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Audio specifications confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Video specifications confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△			

Note 1 : The video head life is greatly affected by operating ambient condition and tape.

Note 2 : It is recommended to replace the fun motor on the connector panel every 10,000 hours is operation mode shown in hours meter.

SONY®

VIDEOCASSETTE PLAYER

PVW-2600P

SERVICE MANUAL

SUPPLEMENT-1

Please replace your manual with this SUPPLEMENT-1.

SUBJECT

SECTION 4 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE
(Revised the periodic maintenance table of Inspection and Maintenance to obtain correct function and higher performance, and also to extend the life of tape and unit.)

BETACAM SP
2000PRO

4-3. PERIODIC MAINTENANCE TABLE

It is recommended to perform the periodic maintenance in order to obtain correct function and higher performance, and also to extend the life of tape and unit.

○ mark : Execute
△ mark : Confirm. if not, replace or adjust

Perform the periodic maintenance referring to T2 : DRUM RUNNING mode shown in hours meter.

Item	750H	1500H	2250H	3000H	3750H	4500H	5250H	6000H	Replacement	Q'ty	Remarks
Tape running system											
Tape running surface cleaning	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Tape running confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Cleaning roller replacement	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	X-3675-858-1 ROLLER SUB ASSY, C	1pc	
Upper drum assembly replacement	○	○	○	—	○	○	○	—	A-6762-463-A UPPER DRUM ASSY, DBR-28-R	1pc	(Note 1)
Servo automatic adjustment (B110) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo automatic adjustment (B111) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Video tracking confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Drum assembly replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	A-6050-841-A DRUM ASSY, DBH-28A-R	1pc	
Tape guide roller rotation confirmation/ replacement	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	X-3166-431-1 ROLLER (TG-6) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-037-1 ROLLER (M) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-052-1 ROLLER (S-T) ASSY, TAPE X-3166-320-1 TG-5 ASSY X-3166-386-1 TG-4 (IP) ASSY	1pc 4pcs 2pcs 1pc 1pc	
Tape guide flange wearing confirmation/ replacement	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	3-173-172-01 FLANGE, LOWER 3-173-176-01 NUT, ADJUSTMENT 3-174-315-01 FLANGE (UPPER) 3-174-316-01 FLANGE (LOWER)	2pcs 4pcs 5pcs 4pcs	
Bearing for cleaning roller replacement	—	○	—	○	—	○	—	○	3-669-443-01 BEARING, BALL	2pcs	
Audio/TC head replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	8-825-776-61 HEAD, EPS244-2103E	1pc	
CTL head replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	8-825-776-41 HEAD, PS244-21C	1pc	
Drive system											
Pinch roller replacement	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	X-3166-040-3 ARM ASSY, PINCH	1pc	
Brake shoe replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	X-3717-205-1 LINING ASSY, C	2pcs	
Drum ground shaft replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	X-3166-376-1 GROUND ASSY, SHAFT	1pc	
Pinch solenoid replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	1-454-338-00 SOLENOID	1pc	
Cleaning solenoid replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	1-454-372-11 SOLENOID	1pc	
Brake solenoid replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	1-454-417-41 SOLENOID	2pcs	
Reel motor replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	A-6737-207-A RM ASSY	2pcs	
Capstan motor replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	8-835-445-01 MOTOR, DC SCV-0301A	1pc	
Threading motor replacement	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	○	8-835-179-01 MOTOR, DC MCB2B15	1pc	
Mechanical operation confirmation											
Abnormal noise	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Servo automatic adjustment (B101) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo automatic adjustment (B109) execute	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Servo check menu execute	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
FWD back tension confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
REV back tension confirmation/adjustment	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Cassette compartment operation confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Reel brake clearance confirmation	—	—	—	△	—	—	—	△			
Reel brake release amount confirmation	—	—	—	△	—	—	—	△			
Electrical confirmation											
System control operation confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Audio specifications confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			
Video specifications confirmation	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△			

Note 1 : The video head life is greatly affected by operating ambient condition and tape.

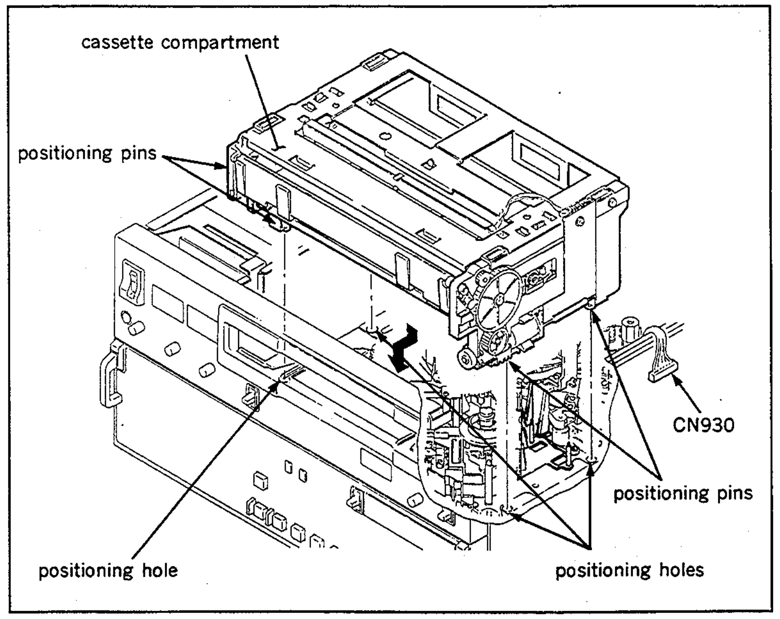
Note 2 : It is recommended to replace the fun motor on the connector panel every 10,000 hours is operation mode shown in hours meter.

REPLACEMENT/ADJ.

SECTION 5
REPLACEMENT OF MAJOR PARTS

5-1. GENERAL INFORMATION FOR PART REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1. Cassette Compartment
   When performing part replacement and mechanical adjustment, remove a cassette compartment from the unit unless otherwise specified.



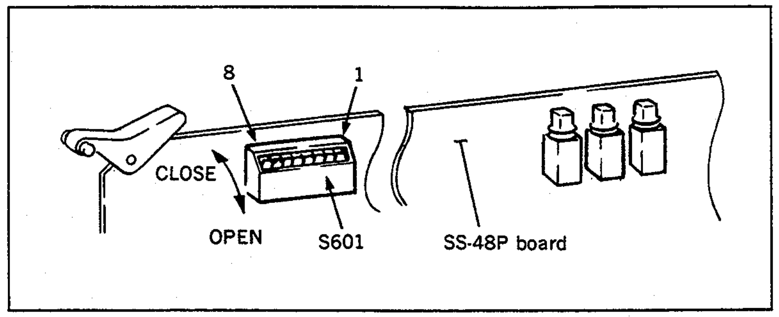
Removing procedure :

1) Remove three fixing screws of an upper panel, and remove the upper panel.
2) Disconnect a connector of a cassette compartment.
3) Loosen two fixing screws of a cassette compartment stay. These fixing screws have retainers, then they can not remove from the cassette compartment stay.
4) Remove the cassette compartment from the unit.

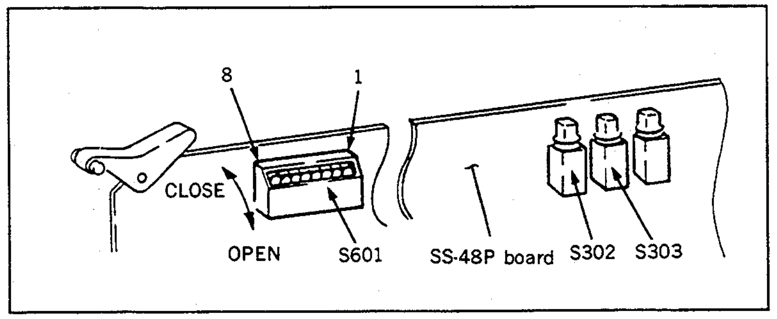
2. To Operate the Unit without Installing Cassette Compartment
   When disconnect a connector of the cassette compartment, the protection circuit operates. However the unit can operate by performing the following procedures, even if the cassette compartment is removed from the unit.

1) Turn the POWER to OFF.
2) Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
   By this operation, the protection circuit stops its operation, and the unit can operate normaly without inserting a cassette tape or without installing the cassette comprtment.

Note : After adjustment is completed, be sure to put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



3. Maintenance Menu
   This unit has a Maintenance Menu mode for video system and servo system operation check and adjustment.
   Check and adjustment procedures are described in this manual, perform according to this procedures.
   In maintenance menu mode, the following switches are mainly used.



Bit4 of S601 :
This switch is used in SERVO ADJUST mode.
Before performing the SERVO ADJUST mode, put this switch in CLOSE state.
After the SERVO ADJUST mode is completed, put it in OPEN state.
When this switch is in CLOSE state, the protection circuit stops its operation.

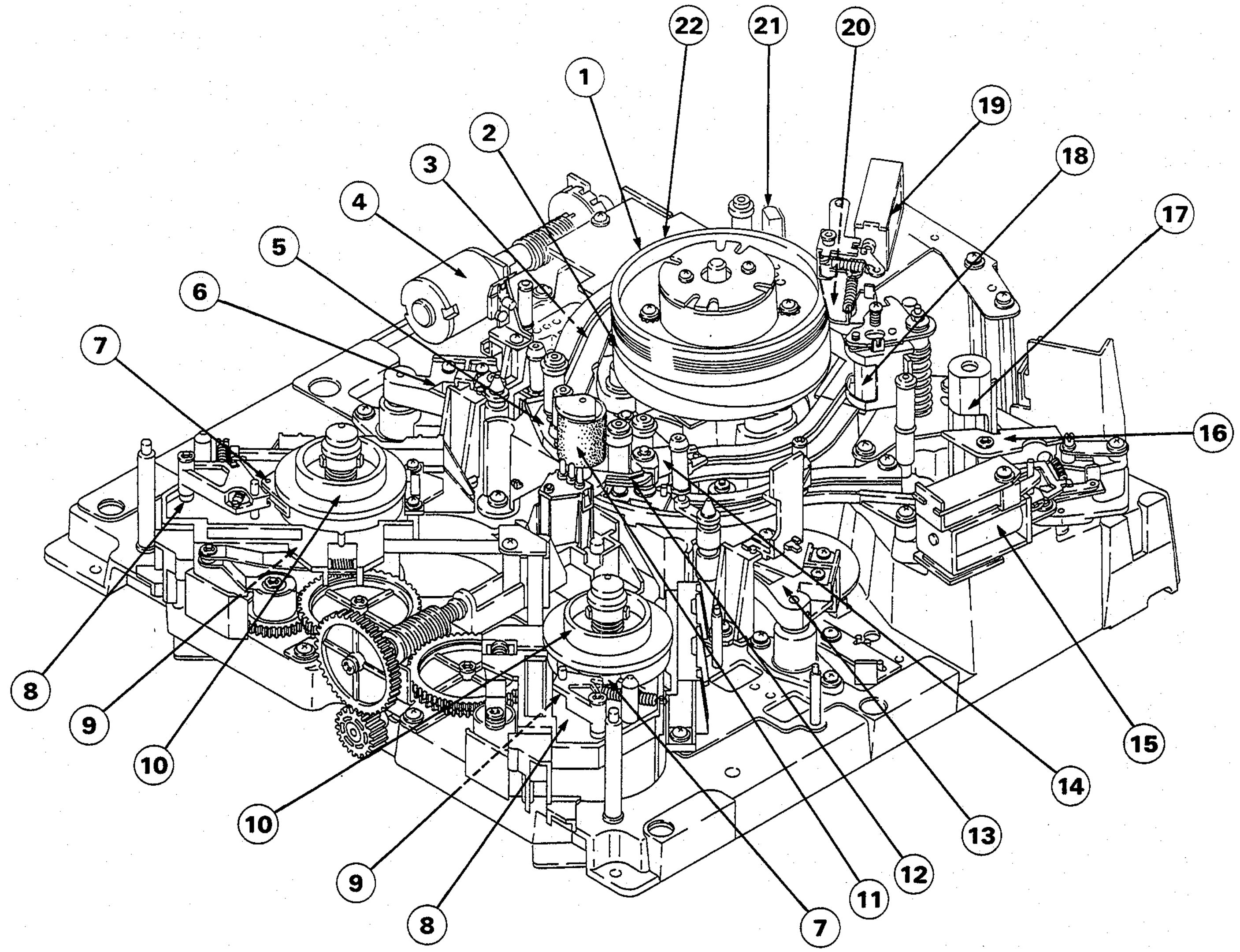
Bit7 of S601 :
This switch is used in SERVO CHECK mode.
Before performing the SERVO CHECK mode, put this switch in CLOSE state.
After the SERVO CHECK mode is completed, put it in OPEN state.

S302 :
Push this switch, then mode, menu or sub-menu of the SERVO CHECK/SERVO ADJUST is executed.

S303 :
Push this switch, then menu or sub-menu of the SERVO CHECK/SERVO ADJUST is returned to the previous state.

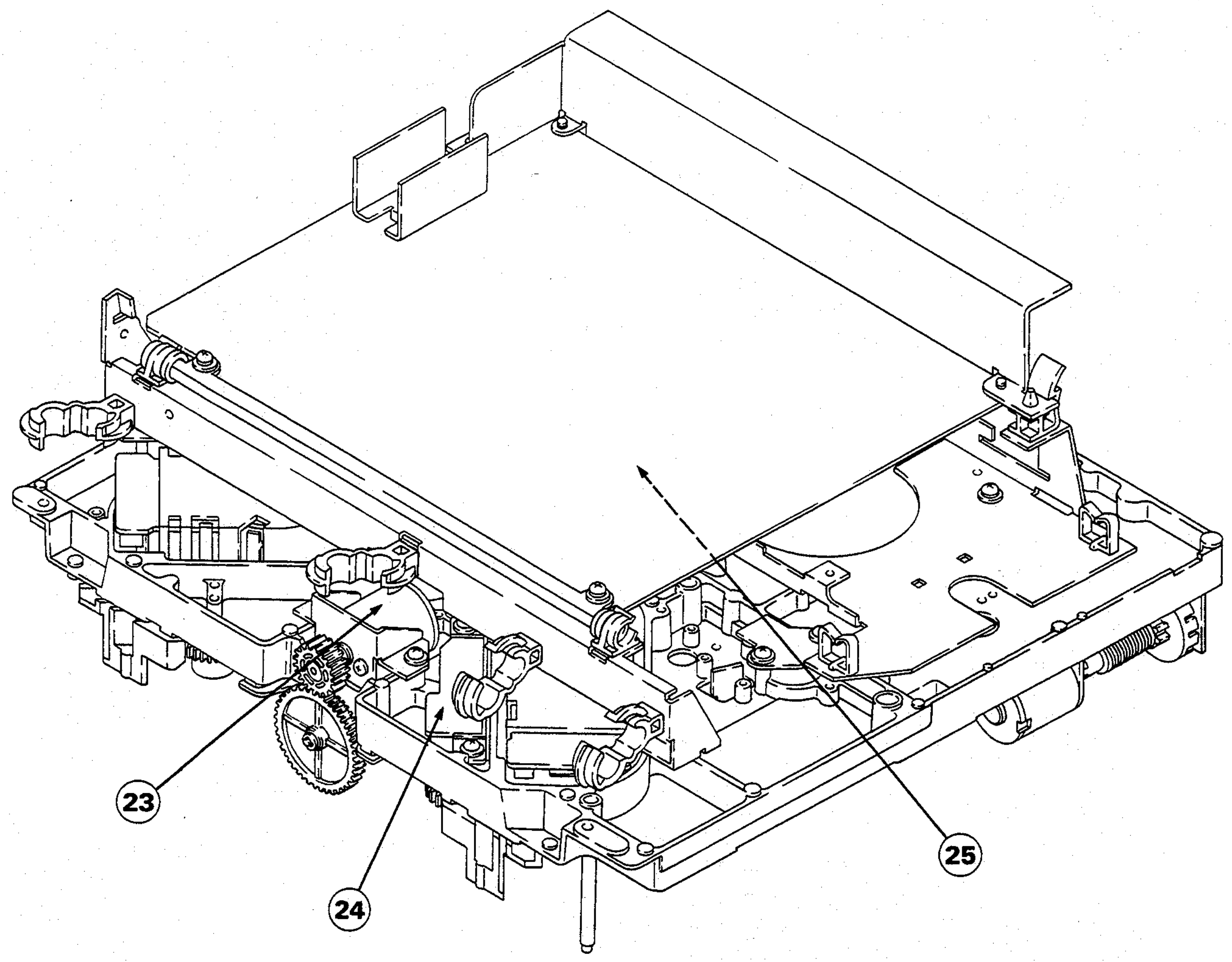
4. Index for Replacement Part (alphabetical order)

(Top portion of the unit)



No.	Description	Section No.	Page
18	Audio/TC head	5-26	5-117
7	Brake lining assembly	5-7	5-22
17	Capstan motor	5-27	5-120
20	Cleaning roller assembly	5-6	5-20
19	Cleaning solenoid	5-9	5-30
21	CTL head	5-25	5-115
2	Drum assembly	5-3	5-11
16	Pinch press block	5-21	5-100
11	Pinch roller assembly	5-5	5-18
15	Pinch solenoid	5-22	5-101
12	P slider assembly	5-18	5-69
9	Reel motor	5-12	5-41
8	Reel motor plate	5-11	5-38
10	Reel table	5-10	5-31
5	S slider assembly	5-16	5-68
6	S tension regulator arm assembly	5-19	5-72
—	Tape guide	5-8	5-26
22	Threading gear	5-24	5-110
4	Threading motor	5-15	5-59
3	Threading ring	5-23	5-106
14	T slider assembly	5-17	5-65
13	T tension regulator arm assembly	5-20	5-91
1	Upper drum assembly	5-2	5-5

(Bottom portion of the unit)



No.	Description	Section No.	Page
25	Drum ground shaft assembly	5-4	5-17
23	Reel position motor	5-13	5-56
24	Reel position sensor	5-14	5-58

5. Oil

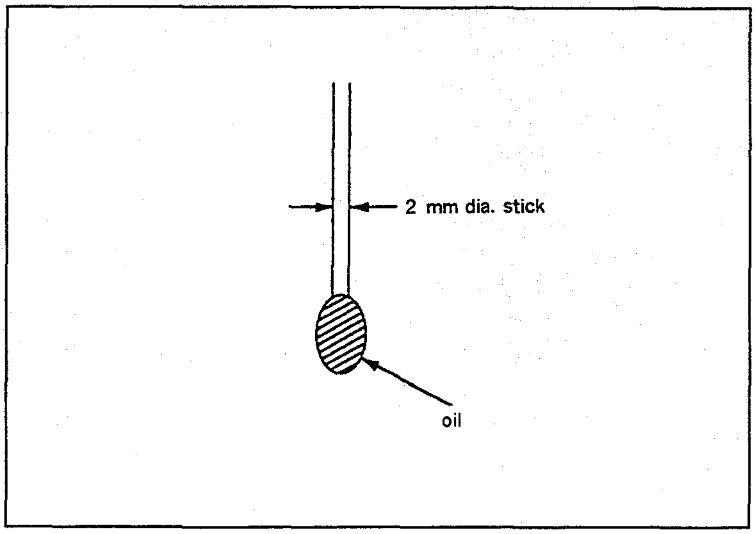
   Apply only the specified oil when oiling is required for replacing parts and/or adjustment. If a different oil is used, major malfunctions may be caused due to differences in oil viscosity and ingredients.

   SONY part number : 7-661-018-18

   If oil is used that has been mixed with dust, shafts and bearings may be damaged, causing major malfunctions.

   One drop of oil is defined as follows :

   About the amount that will adhere to the end of a stick 2 mm in diameter, as shown in the figure.



6. Grease

   Smear only the specified grease product to sliding part. If a different grease is used, major malfunctions may be caused due to differences in viscosity and ingredients.

   Major malfunctions may also be caused by using grease that has been mixed with dust.

   Amounts of grease to smear

   Smear just enough grease to create a thin film on the surface of the part. Any grease that adheres to other surrounding parts must be removed with gauze or soft cloth.

7. Tension measurement tape

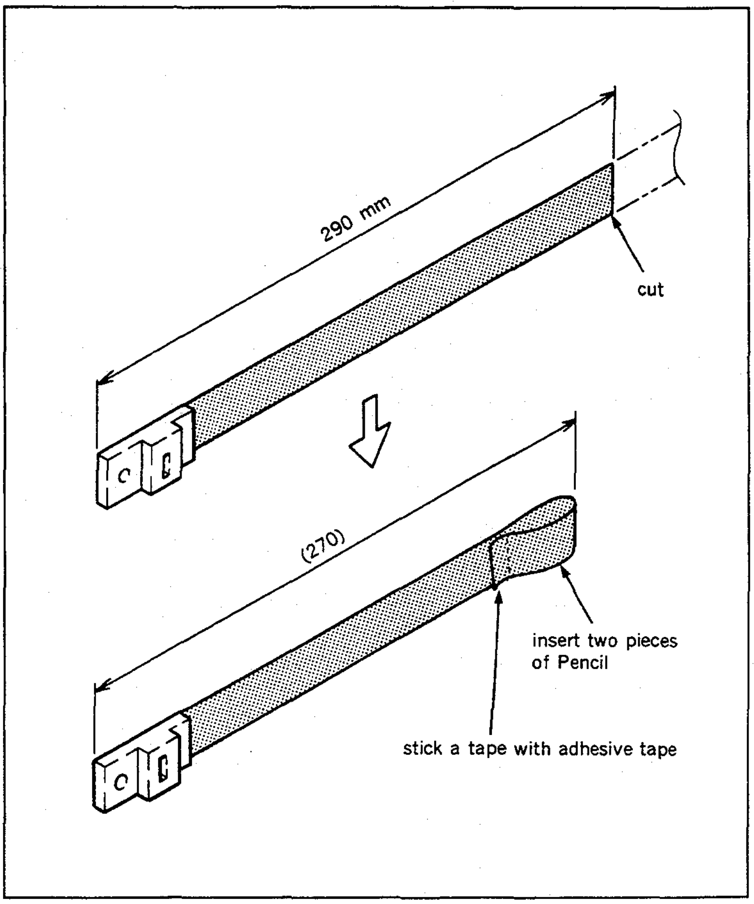
   Prepare the following tool :

   J-6327-930-A

   This tension measurement tape uses a S tension regulator arm operating position adjustment, T tension regulator arm operating position adjustment and S tension sensor sensitivity adjustment.

   How to create the tension measurement tape.

   1) Cut a video tape as shown in the figure.
   2) Make a loop while inserting two pieces of pencil as shown in the figure, and stick a video tape.



5-1-1. Index for Adjustment Item

(alphabetical order)
(except tape path system alignment)

Adjustment Item	Section No.	Page
Audio/TC head zenith adjustment	6-2	6-4
Capstan FG duty adjustment	5-27-2	5-123
Capstan speed adjustment	5-27-3	5-125
Capstan motor operation check	5-27-1	5-122
Cassette pillar (S) height adjustment	5-10-1	5-32
Cleaning roller block position adjustment	5-6-1	5-21
Drum motor operation check	5-3-1	5-15
FWD back tension adjustment	5-19-3	5-84
Pinch solenoid position adjustment	5-22-1	5-104
Reel brake clearance check	5-7-1	5-24
Reel brake release amount adjustment	5-7-2	5-25
Reel FG duty adjustment	5-12-3	5-47
Reel motor operation check	5-12-2	5-46
Reel motor shaft slantness adjustment	5-12-1	5-44
Reel position motor operation check	5-13-1	5-57
Reel rotation detector position adjustment	5-10-3	5-36
Reel table height adjustment	5-10-2	5-34
REV back tension adjustment	5-19-4	5-87
S reel offset/friction adjustment	5-12-4	5-48
S reel torque adjustment	5-12-5	5-50
S tension regulator arm operating position adjustment	5-19-1	5-74
S tension sensor sensitivity adjustment	5-19-2	5-78
Threading motor operation check	5-15-1	5-60
T reel offset/friction adjustment	5-12-6	5-52
T reel torque adjustment	5-12-7	5-54
T tension sensor sensitivity adjustment	5-20-2	5-97
T tension regulator arm operating position adjustment	5-20-1	5-93
Upper drum eccentricity adjustment	5-2-1	5-9

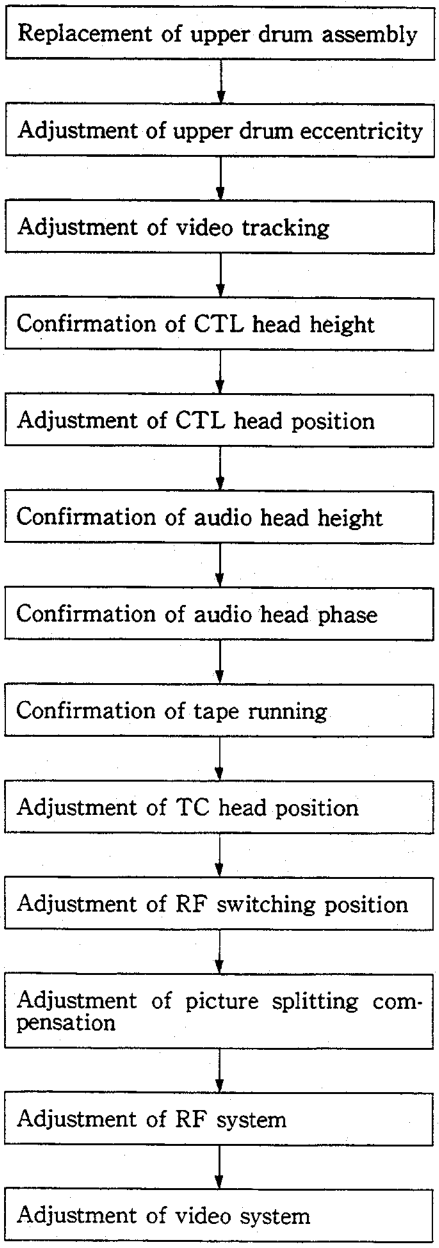
5-2. UPPER DRUM ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- The upper drum assembly is a periodic replacement part. It is recommended to replaced periodically based on the periodic maintenance table.
- When the video heads are worn or damaged, replace an upper drum assembly.
- When the upper drum assembly is removed, if a spacer is placed on the flange, be sure to leave it in place on the flange. If the spacer is lost or replaced with one of a difference thickness, the height of the video head from its reference surface will be changed, making it impossible to get interchangiability.

Tools

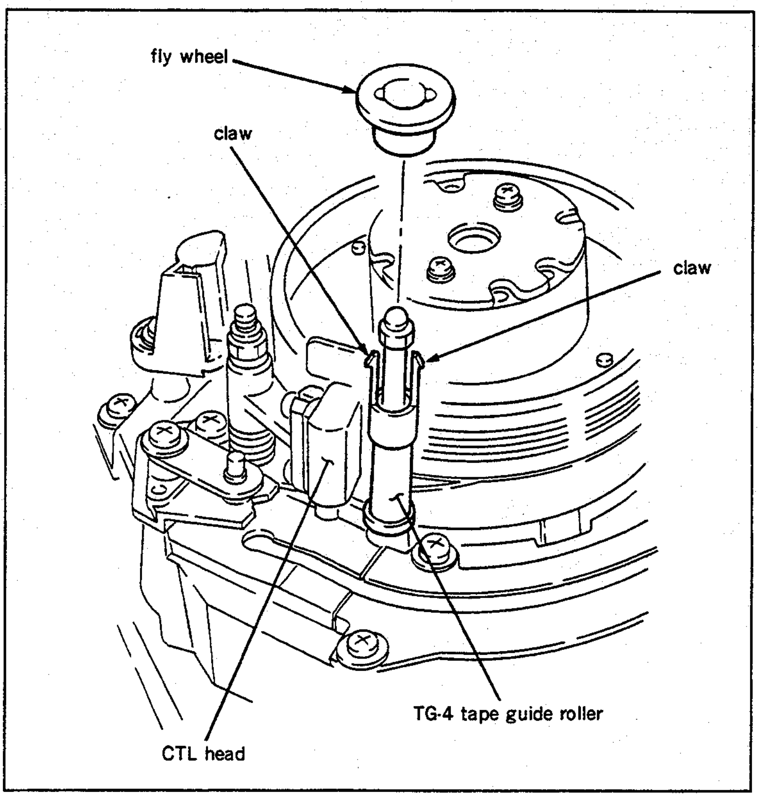
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart

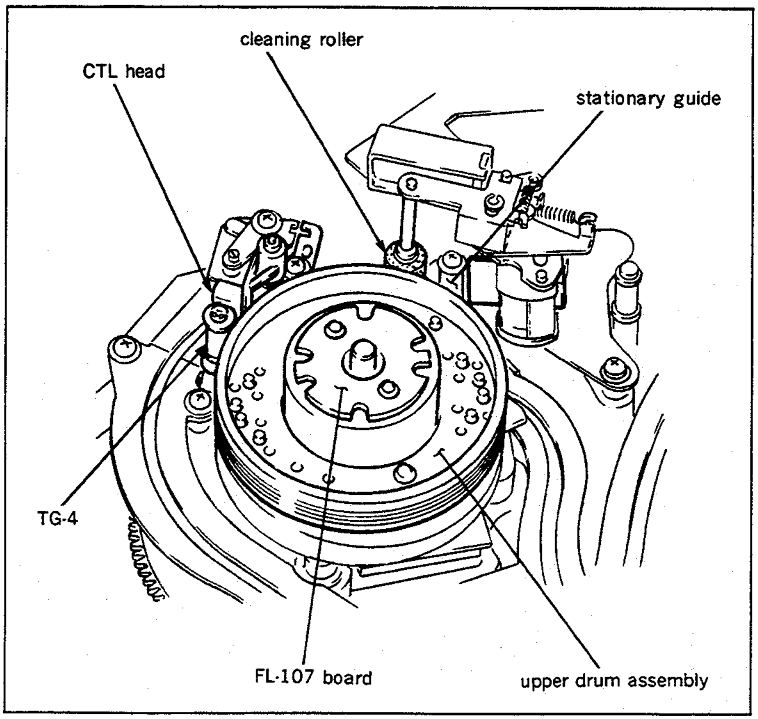

Replacement of upper drum assembly
Adjustment of upper drum eccentricity
Adjustment of video tracking
Confirmation of CTL head height
Adjustment of CTL head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Confirmation of tape running
Adjustment of TC head position
Adjustment of RF switching position
Adjustment of picture splitting compensation
Adjustment of RF system
Adjustment of video system

Removal

1. Hold claws of the upper part of a TG-4 tape guide roller using tweezers, and remove a fly wheel.

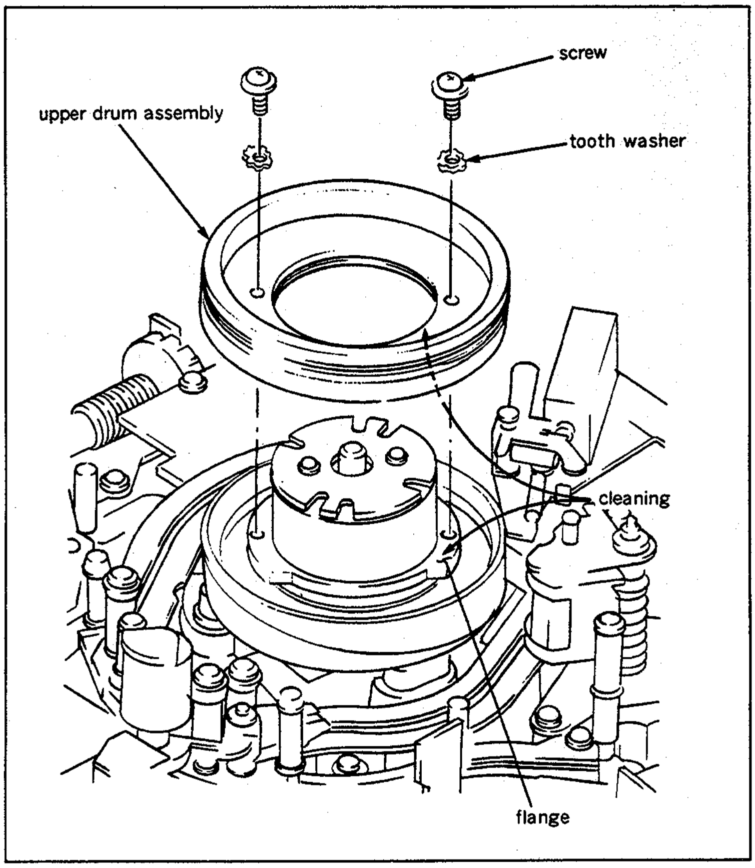

fly wheel
claw
claw
TG-4 tape guide roller
CTL head

2. Unsolder eight leads of the video heads soldered to FL-107 board in the drum,s center.
3. Rotate an upper drum assembly by hand, and set the video heads away from TG-4, CTL head, stationary guide and cleaning roller.


cleaning roller
CTL head
stationary guide
TG-4
FL-107 board
upper drum assembly

4. Remove two screws holding the upper drum assembly, and lift the upper drum assembly straight up to remove. At this time the washers with tooth also come off together.

Note : Never contact the upper drum assembly to the TG-4, CTL head, stationary guides and cleaning roller when removing the upper drum assembly.



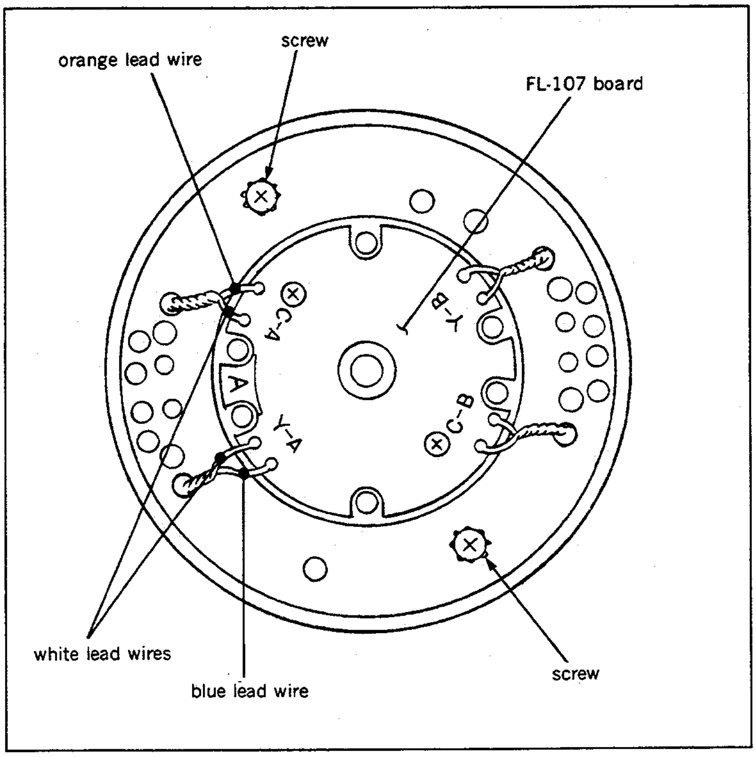
Installation

5. Clean the flange surface of a lower drum and the installation surface of a new upper drum assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
6. As shown in the figure, place orange and white lead wires of the upper drum assembly as the C-A indicated side of the printed A" side on FL-107 board and put it on the flange, then secure it with two screws snugly, but do not tighten.

Note 1 : When placing the upper drum assembly on the lower drum, never make a scratch or otherwise damage on the tape surface and video heads of the upper drum assembly.

Note 2 : Never contact the upper drum assembly to the TG-4, CTL head, stationary guides and cleaning roller when installing the upper drum assembly on the flange.

Note 3 : When placing the upper drum assembly on the flange, pay particular attention to install in the correct position.



7. Solder eight lead wires of the upper drum assembly to FL-107 board.

Reference :

Marking on FL-107 board	Color of wire of the upper drum assembly
C-A-O	orange
C-A-W	white
Y-A-W	white
Y-A-B	blue
C-B-O	orange
C-B-R	red
Y-B-R	red
Y-B-B	blue

Adjustments after replacement

8. Perform upper drum eccentricity adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-2-1.)
9. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
10. Perform confirmation of CTL head height. (Refer to Section 6-5.)
11. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
12. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
13. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
14. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
15. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
16. Align two claws of the upper part of the TG-4 tape guide roller and two grooves of the fly wheel, then install the fly wheel to the TG-4 tape guide roller.
    Make sure that the fly wheel is surely locked, after the installation.
17. Perform RF switching position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-12.)
18. Perform picture splitting compensation adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-14.)
19. Perform RF system adjustment.
20. Perform video system adjustment.

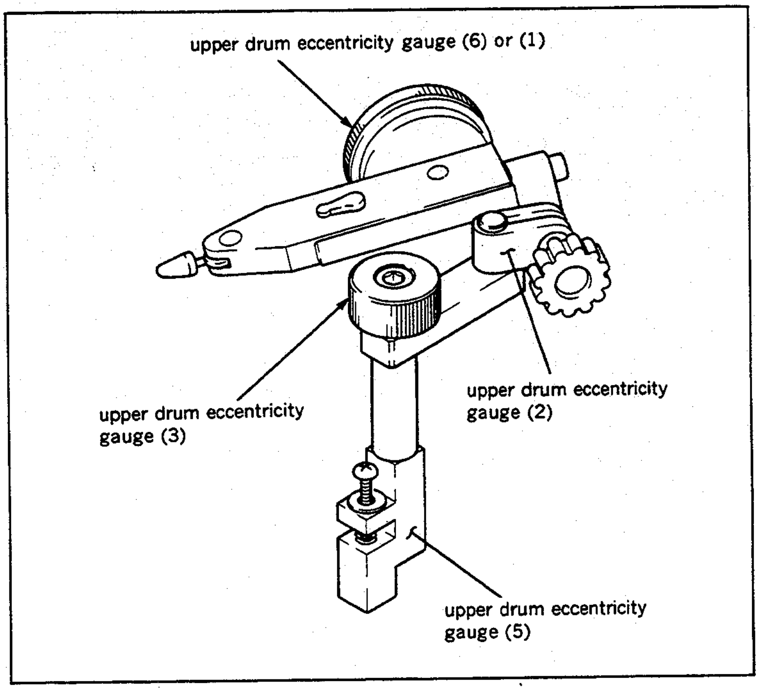
5-2-1. Upper Drum Eccentricity Adjustment

- Be sure to perform an upper drum eccentricity adjustment, when the upper drum is replaced.

Tools

Upper drum eccentricity gauge(2)	: J-6001-830-A
Upper drum eccentricity gauge(3)	: J-6001-820-A
Upper drum eccentricity gauge(5)	: J-6087-000-A
Upper drum eccentricity gauge(6)	: J-6325-530-A
or(1):	J-6001-840-A
Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01

Assemble the upper drum eccentricity gauges as shown in the figure.


upper drum eccentricity gauge (6) or (1)
upper drum eccentricity gauge (3)
upper drum eccentricity gauge (2)
upper drum eccentricity gauge (5)

For reference :

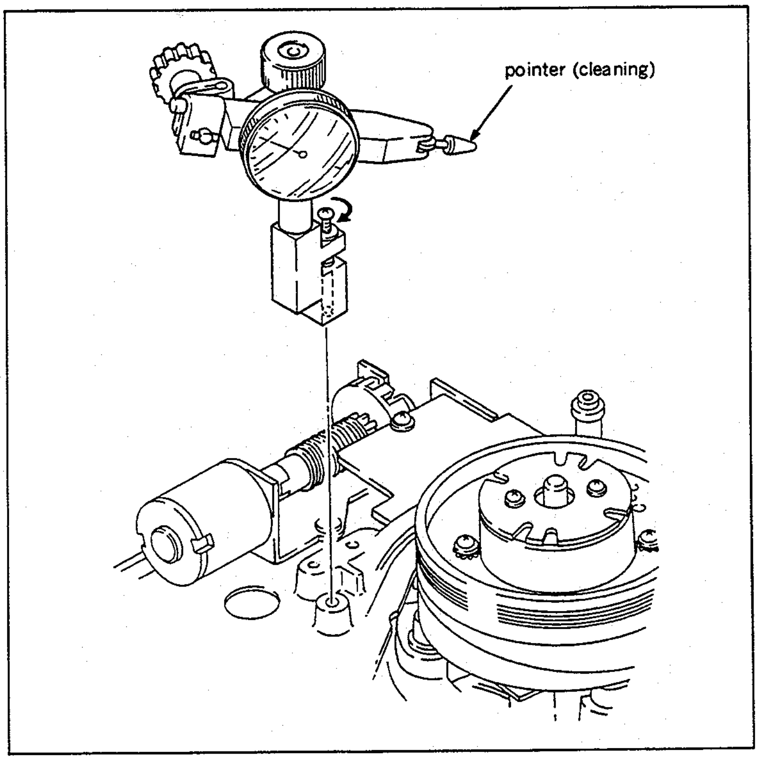
Drum eccentricity adjustment gauge (J-6080-038-A) and dial gauge holder (J-6080-039-A) are able to use for the upper drum eccentricity adjustment instead of to use drum eccentricity gauges (2), (3) and (5).

Adjustment

1. Clean the pointer of the assembled upper drum eccentricity gauges with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

Note : The tape running surface of the upper drum may be damaged if the gauge is used with dirt or dust adhering to the pointer.

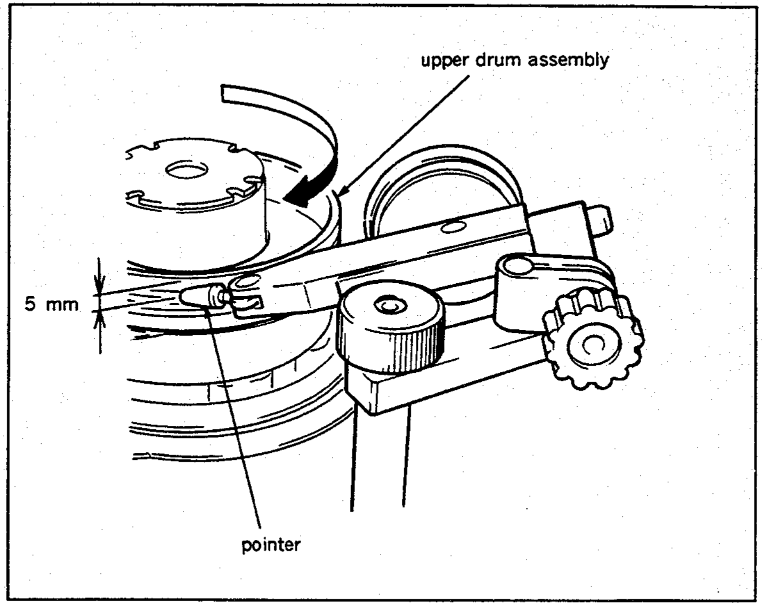
2. Install the assembled upper drum eccentricity gauges to the screw hole shown in the figure.


pointer (cleaning)

3. Adjust the position of the gauge so that the pointer is positioned about 5 mm away from the upper edge of the upper drum assembly.

Note : Pay particular attention not to touch the pointer to the video heads.

4. Turn the upper drum slowly in the clockwise direction. Make sure that the pointer deviation indicated in one full turn of the upper drum satisfies the specification.



Specification : 3 μm or less.

If the specification is satisfied, perform step (6) and later.
If the specification is not satisfied, perform step (5) and later.

5. Perform if the specification is not satisfied :
   (1) Turn the upper drum slowly in the clockwise direction, and make sure that the amount of the pointer deviation.
   (2) Turn the upper drum slowly in the clockwise direction, and stop the turning at the place where the least pointer deviation is indicated.
   (3) Adjust the position of the upper drum to about one-half the amount of the pointer deviation by pressing with finger against the upper edge of the upper drum assembly at a point 180 degrees opposed to the contact point of pointer. If no movement is produced by this adjustment, slightly loosen two screws of the upper drum assembly. If the movement occurs too readily, tighten two screws slightly.
   (4) Make sure that the deviation of the eccentricity again to satisfies the specification.
6. Tighten two screws alternately and gradually (tightening torque : 78.5 N•cm {8 kgf•cm}).
7. Make sure that the eccentricity of the upper drum to satisfiy the specification.
8. Remove the upper drum eccentricity gauges.

Note : Take care not to contact the pointer with the video heads.

9. Clean the video heads and tape running surface of the upper drum assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluld. After cleaning, be sure to wipe the cleaned surface two to three times with a dry cloth.

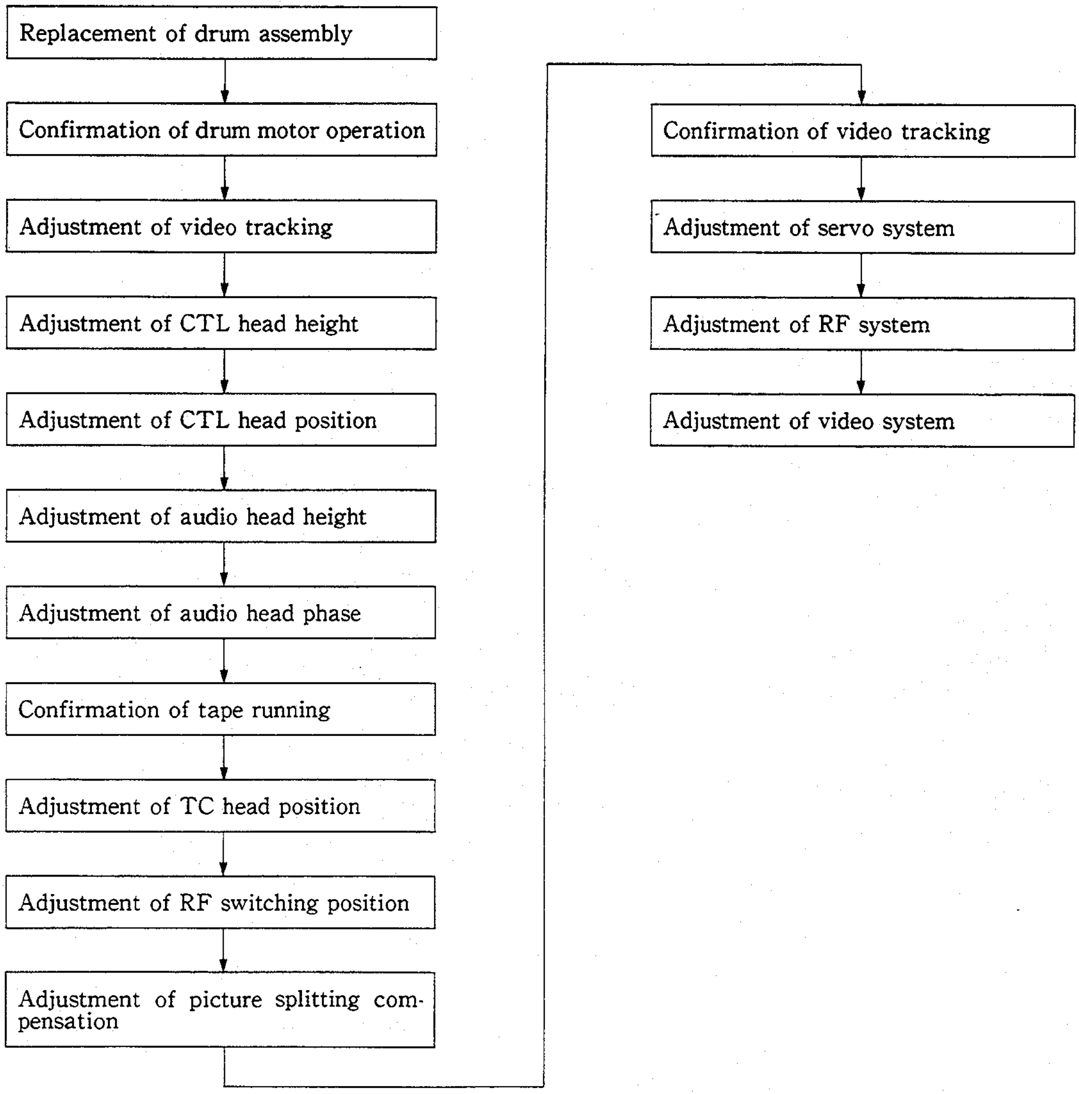
5-3. DRUM ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- A drum assembly is a periodic replacement part. It is recommended to replace periodically based on the periodic maintenance table.
- It is necessary to replace the drum assembly in the following cases :
  (1) The lead surface of a lower drum is worn, and a correct RF waveform cannot be obtained even when tracking adjustment is performed.
  (2) The lower drum's lead surface and tape running surface of the lower drum are scratched and cannot be repaired.
  (3) The drum shaft bearings are out of life, resulting in noise or jitter that makes it impossible to maintain the performance of the unit.
- When replacing the drum assembly, replace an upper drum assembly at the same time.

Tools

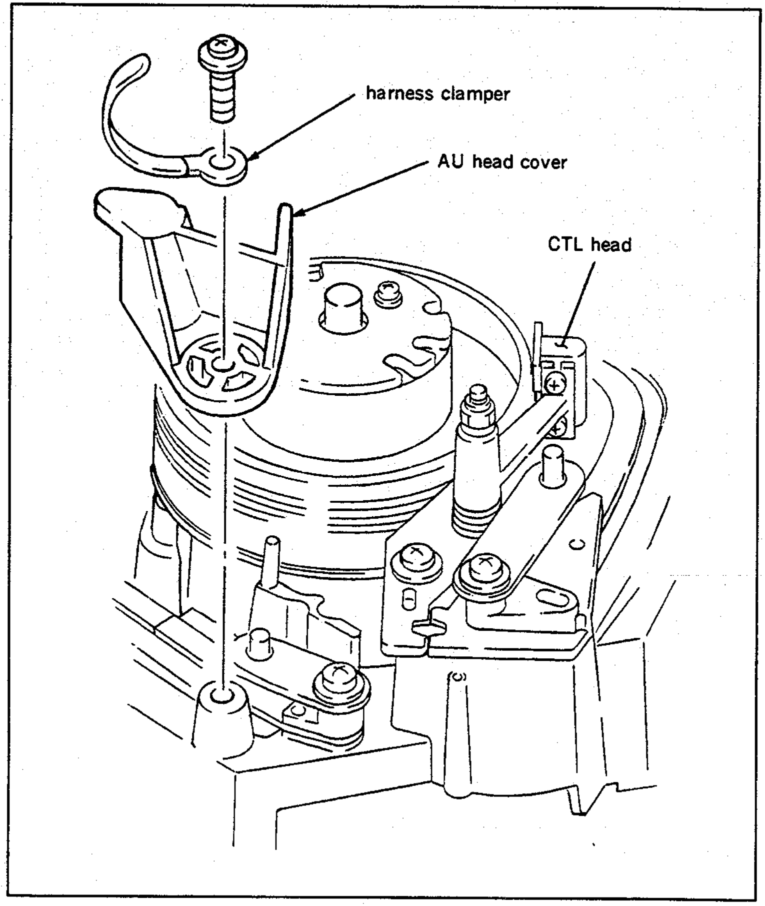
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart


Replacement of drum assembly
Confirmation of drum motor operation
Adjustment of video tracking
Adjustment of CTL head height
Adjustment of CTL head position
Adjustment of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Confirmation of tape running
Adjustment of TC head position
Adjustment of RF switching position
Adjustment of picture splitting compensation
Confirmation of video tracking
Adjustment of servo system
Adjustment of RF system
Adjustment of video system

Removal

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove a fly wheel of the upper part of a TG-4 tape guide roller. (Refer to step (1) in Section 5-2.)
3. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together.

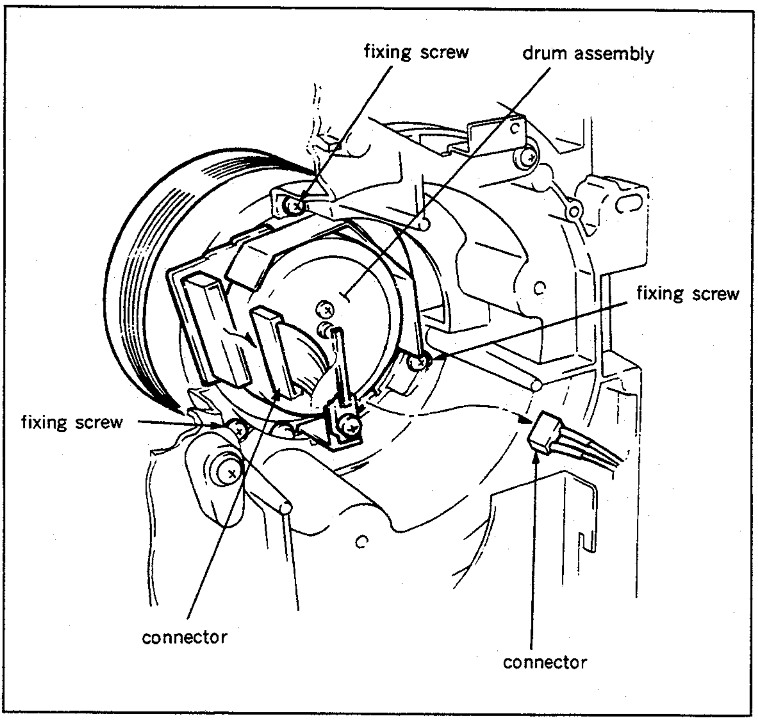

harness clamper
AU head cover
CTL head

4. Open DR-118A board.
5. Disconnect two connectors CN968 and CN969 connected to a drum assembly.
6. Hold the drum assembly from the unit surface by hand, and remove three screws from back side of the unit which are installing the drum assembly.

Note 1 : Hold the drum assembly with hands to prevent it from dropping.

Note 2 : Be careful not to damage the guides and other parts surrounding the drum assembly.

7. Remove the drum assembly from the unit.


fixing screw
drum assembly
fixing screw
fixing screw
connector
connector

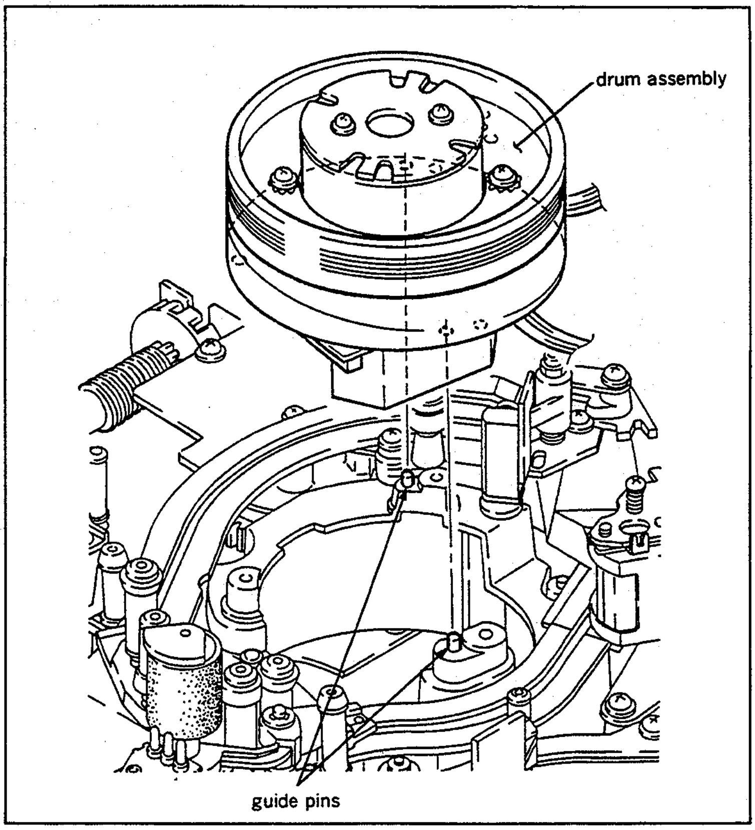
Installation

8. Clean the new drum assembly mounting surface and the chassis with cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
9. Install the drum assembly to the chassis while putting two guide pins of the chassis into the guide holes which are on the lower side of the new drum assembly.

Note 1: Pay particular attention not to cause damages to the tape running surface of the upper drum, video heads, lower drum's tape running surface and lead of the lower drum.

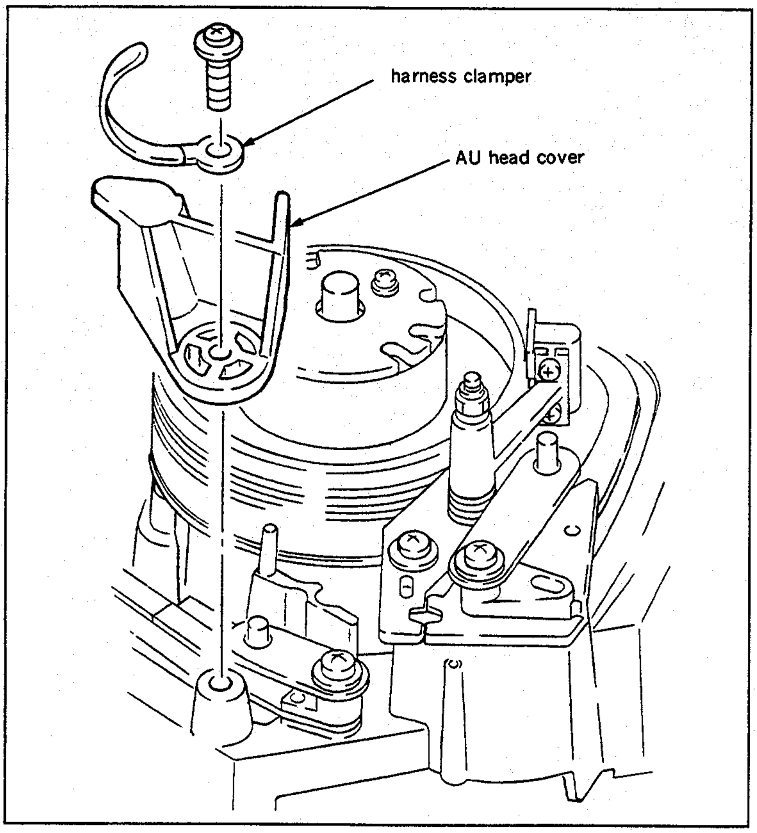
Note 2: Pay particular attention not to cause damages by contacting the guides and other parts surrounding the drum assembly.

10. Tighten the drum assembly with three screws.
11. Connect two connectors CN968 and CN969 to drum assembly.
12. Clean the tape running surface of the drum assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid. After cleaning, be sure to clean the cleaned surface two or three times with a soft dry cleaning piece.



Adjustments after replacement

13. Perform confirmation of drum motor operation. (Refer to Section 5-3-1.)
14. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
15. Perform CTL head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-5.)
16. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
17. Perform audio head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
18. Perform audio head phase adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
19. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
20. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
21. Install the AU head cover together with the drum harness clamper.
22. Install the fly wheel to the upper part of the TG-4 tape guide roller. (Refer to step (15) in Section 5-2.)
23. Install the cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
24. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
25. Perform RF switching position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-12.)
26. Perform picture splitting compensation adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-14.)
27. Perform confirmation of video tracking. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
28. Perform servo system adjustment.
29. Perform RF system adjustment.
30. Perform video system adjustment.



5-3-1. Drum Motor Operation Check

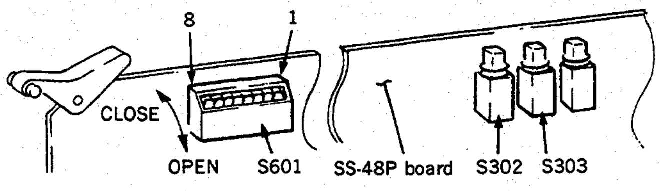
- Be sure to perform the drum motor operation check when a drum assembly is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

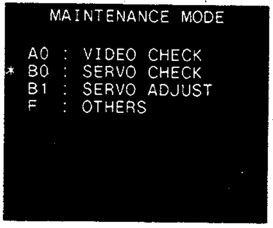
Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state, and turn the POWER to ON.
2. Press S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move ＊ mark to "BO: SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select " SERVO CHECK" mode.
5. Move ＊ mark to "BO2: MOTOR CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select " MOTOR CHECK" menu.
7. Move ＊ mark to "BO26: DRUM MOTOR" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board and to execute "DRUM MOTOR" sub-menu.
9. Check the followings appears on the monitor screen :
   "SPEED : OK"
   "PHASE : LOCK"
   "PG : EXIST"
   If above messages are not displayed, check that four connectors connected with the drum assembly are inserted surely.
   If above messages are still not displayed, check the drum driver circuit, drum FG amplifier circuit and drum PG amplifier circuit (on DR-118A board).
10. Press S303 on SS-48P board, and check that the drum rotation stops.
11. Press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
12. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



S601-7/SS-48P : CLOSE

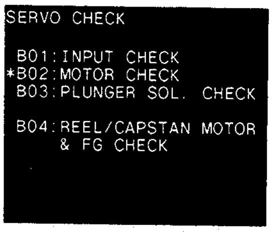
press S302



```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
*B0 : SERVO CHECK
 B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

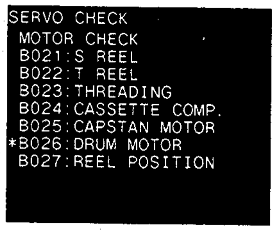
press S302



```
SERVO CHECK

 B01:INPUT CHECK
*B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

select with search dial

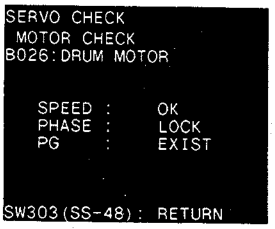
press S302



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
 B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
 B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
 B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
*B026:DRUM MOTOR
 B027:REEL POSITION
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B026:DRUM MOTOR


  SPEED :    OK
  PHASE :    LOCK
  PG    :    EXIST


SW303(SS-48) : RETURN
```

press S303

drum motor stops its rotation

press S303 twice

S601-7/SS-48P : OPEN

5-4. DRUM GROUND SHAFT ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- The drum ground shaft assembly is a periodic replacement part. It is recommended to replace periodically based on the periodic maintenance table.
- When a drum ground shaft becomes worn, white noise may appear on the monitor screen. In this case, replace the drum ground shaft.
- Do not apply excessive force or try to bend the drum ground shaft assembly.

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

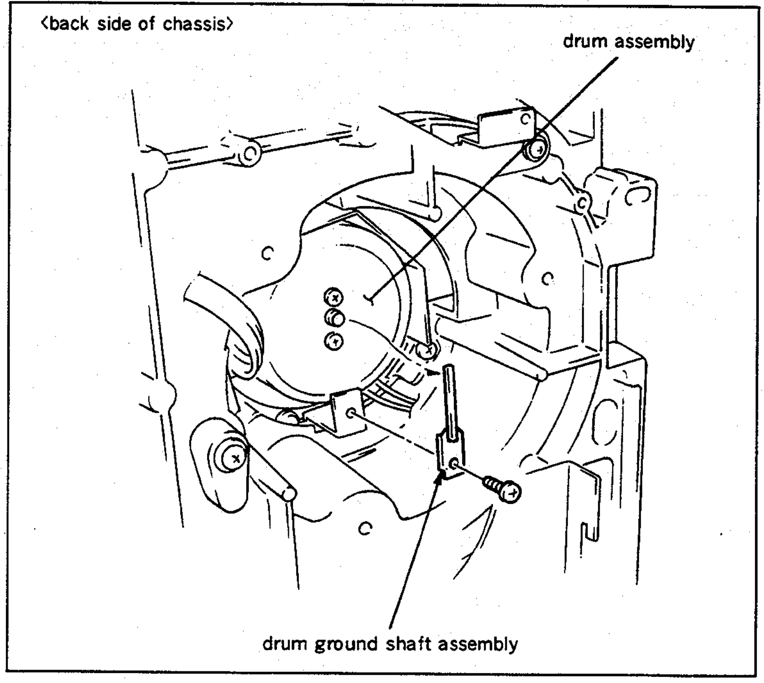
Removal

1. Remove a fixing screw of a drum ground shaft assembly, and remove the drum ground shaft assembly.

Installation

2. Clean a projection of a new drum ground shaft assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid. After cleaning, be sure to clean the cleaned surface two or three times with a soft dry cleaning piece.

Note : When cleaning the drum ground shaft assembly, never apply excessive force or try to bend the drum ground shaft assembly.



3. Clean the mounting place of the drum and the installation surface on the new drum ground shaft assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
4. Install the new drum ground shaft assembly as the projection on its end to be located in the center of the drum ground shaft touching the surface of the lower part of the drum.

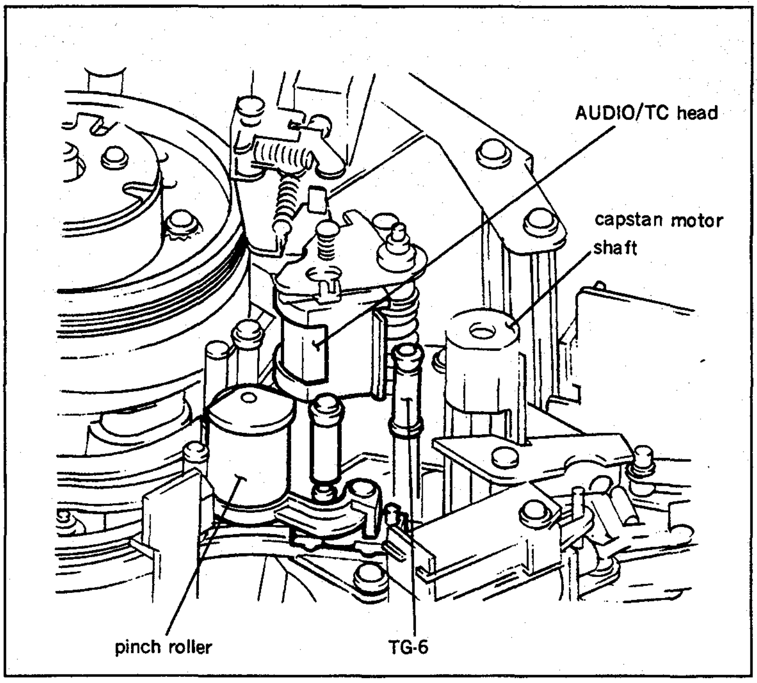
Note: When installing the drum ground shaft assembly, never apply excessive force or try to bend it.

5-5. PINCH ROLLER ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- The pinch roller assembly is a periodic replacement part. It is recommended to replaced periodically based on the periodic maintenance table.
- When a pinch roller assembly is worn or damaged, replace the pinch arm assembly.

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of pinch arm assembly
↓
Confirmation of tape running
↓
Confirmation of audio head height
↓
Confirmation of audio head phase


AUDIO/TC head
capstan motor shaft
pinch roller
TG-6

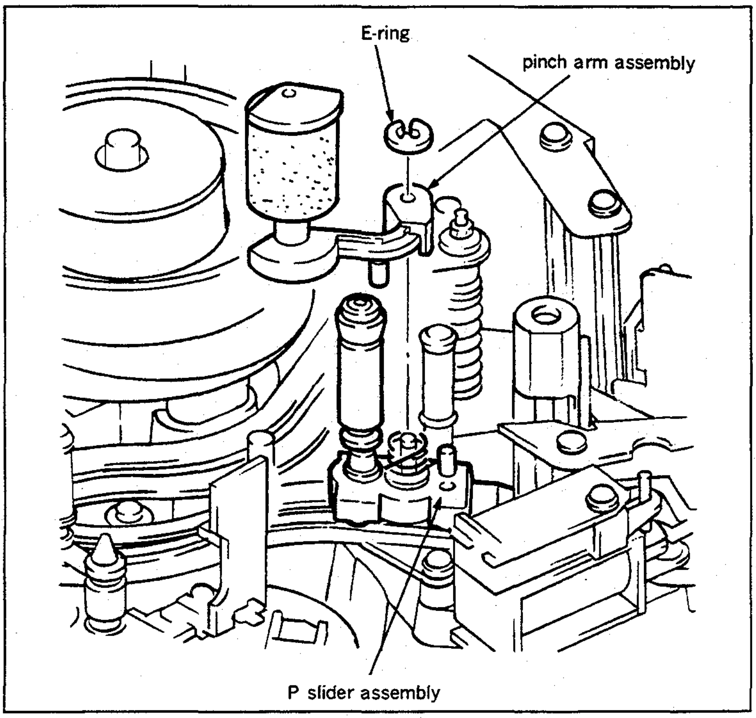
Tool

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Removal

1. Remove a cassette compartment.
2. Turn the POWER to ON.
3. Turn the POWER to OFF when a pinch roller comes to a position in front of a TG-6 tape guide.
4. Remove an E-ring on the upper part of a pinch arm assembly, and remove the pinch arm assembly from a P slider assembly.

Note : Do not remove a polyslider washer and spring at the bottom of the pinch arm assembly.


E-ring
pinch arm assembly
P slider assembly

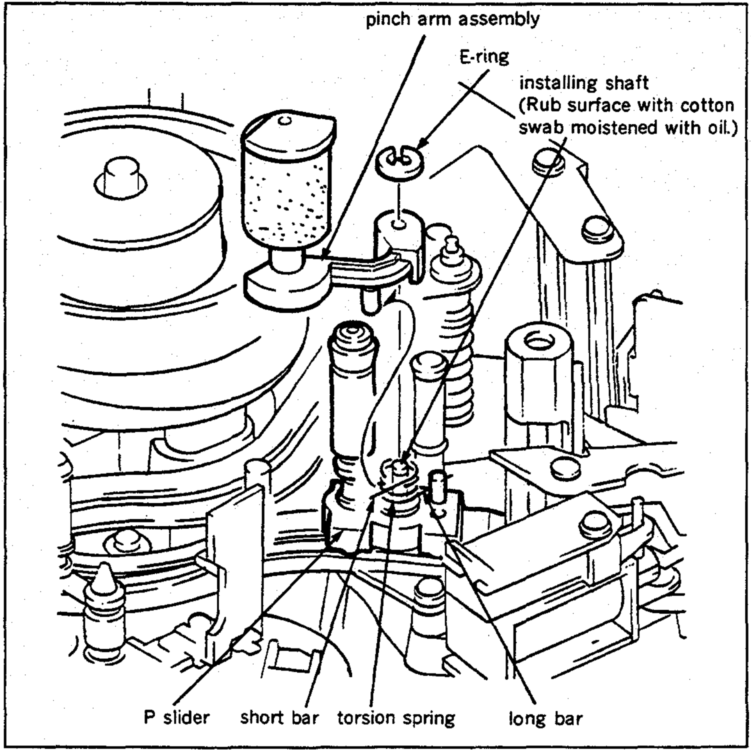
Installation

5. Rub surface of the installing shaft of the pinch arm assembly with cotton swab moistened with oil, in other words, apply about a half of drop oil to the shaft.
6. Set a spring as shown in the figure, and install a new pinch arm assembly and fasten it to the P slider assembly with E-ring.

Note 1: Install a spring so that the long bar is to the shaft on the P slider assembly, and the short bar is to the pinch arm assembly.

Note 2: Using tweezers to install the spring will help to easy installation.

7. Push the pinch arm assembly toward the TG-6 tape guide with finger, then release the finger and make sure that it returns smoothly to its original position.
   Clean the new pinch roller with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.


pinch arm assembly
E-ring
installing shaft
(Rub surface with cotton swab moistened with oil.)
P slider
short bar
torsion spring
long bar

Adjustment after replacement

8. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
9. Perform confirmation of video tracking. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
11. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to Section 6-8.)

5-6. CLEANING ROLLER ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- The the cleaning roller assembly is a periodic replacement part. It is recommended to replaced periodically based on the periodic maintenance table.

Replacement flow chart

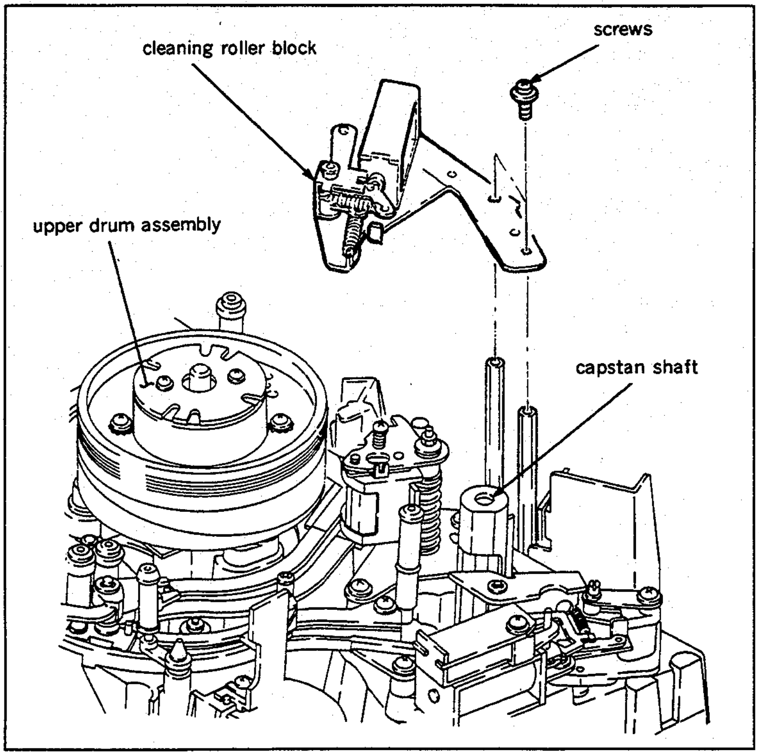
Replacement of cleaning roller assembly

↓

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Removal

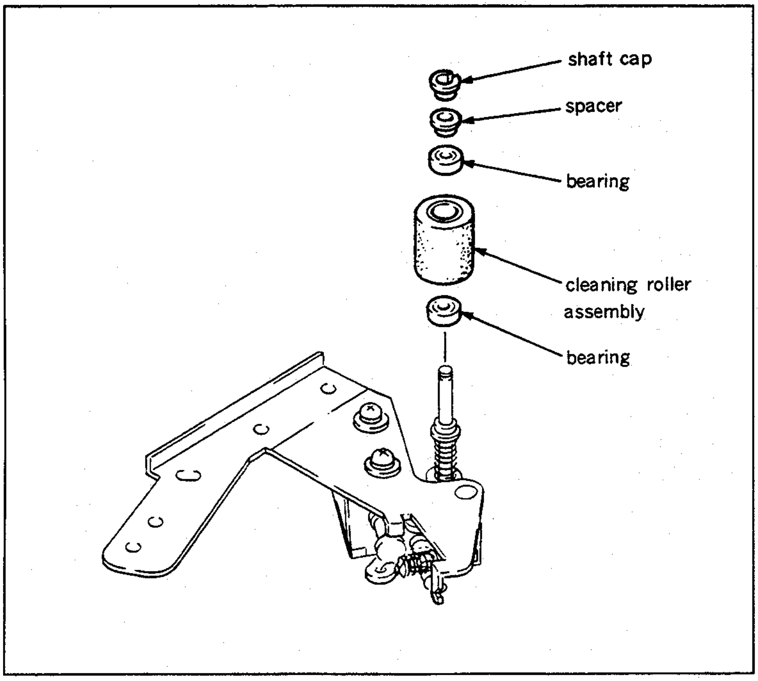
1. Disconnect a connector of a cleaning solenoid from CN916 on PD-56 board which is positioned on a pinch solenoid block.
2. Remove two screws holding a cleaning roller block, and remove it.



3. Remove a shaft cap of a cleaning roller, and remove a cleaning roller assembly.

Installation

4. Install bearings to the both side of a new cleaning roller assembly, and insert the assembled cleaning roller assembly and a spacer to the shaft in the order as shown in the figure.
5. Install the shaft cap to the top of the shaft.
6. Make sure that the cleaning roller rotates smoothly when rotating the cleaning roller with hand.
7. Install the cleaning roller block to the shafts with two screws snugly, but do not tighten.
8. Connect connector CN916 of the cleaning solenoid on PD-56 board.



Adjustment after replacement

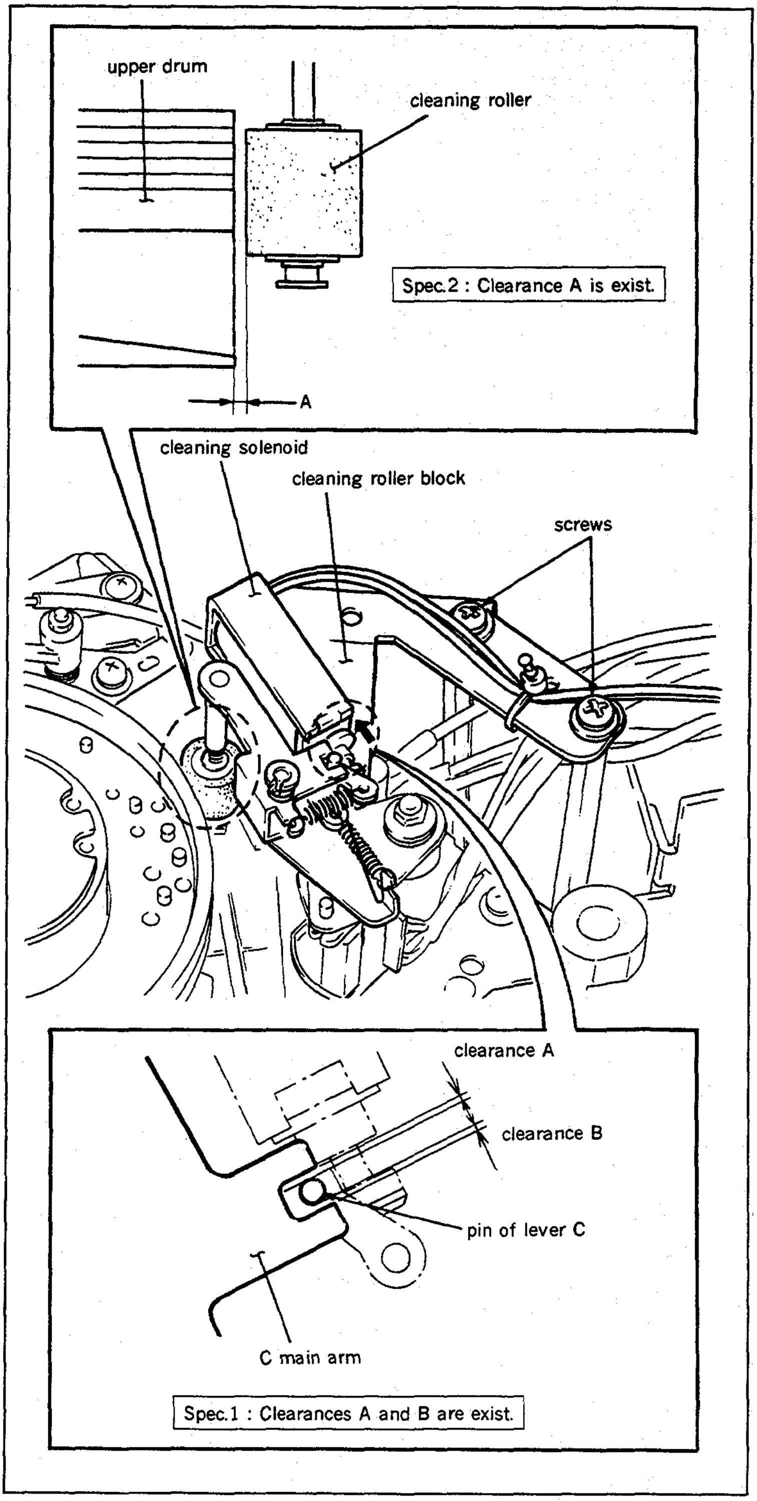
9. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)

5-6-1. Cleaning Roller Block Position Adjustment

- Be sure to perform a cleaning roller block position adjustment, when the cleaning roller block is removed.

Adjustment

1. Install a cleaning roller block to the shafts with two screws snugly, but do not tighten.
2. While pushing an iron core of a cleaning roller solenoid in the direction of arrow (energized position), adjust the position of the cleaning roller block so that the clearances between a pin of a lever C and C main arm satisfy the specification 1. Then tighten it with two screws.
3. Visually check the clearance between a drum and cleaning roller satisfy the specification 2.
4. Turn the POWER to ON, then the unit put into threading mode automatically.
   While the cleaning solenoid is energized in threading mode, visually check that the clearances between the pin of the lever C and C main arm satisfy the specification 1.
   If the specification is not satisfied, readjust the cleaning roller block position so that the specification 1 is satisfied.


upper drum
cleaning roller
A
cleaning solenoid
cleaning roller block
screws
clearance A
clearance B
pin of lever C
C main arm

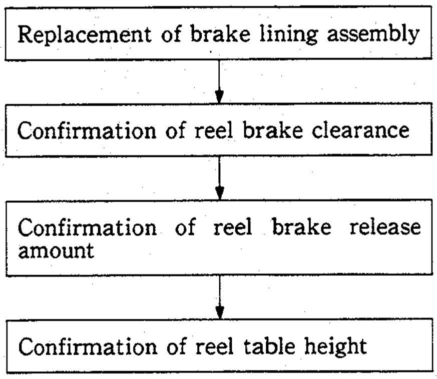
Spec.2 : Clearance A is exist.

Spec.1 : Clearances A and B are exist.

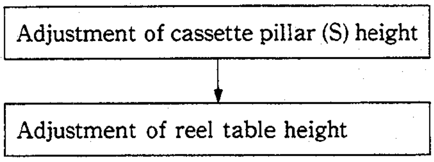
5-7. BRAKE LINING ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

- When the POWER is OFF, T reel brake lining and S reel brake lining are pressed against the take-up reel table and supply reel table.
  When the POWER is turned ON, the S and T reel brake linings are released.
  The reel brake linings still released even at PLAY, STOP, REW, F.FWD, SEARCH and REV modes.
  Press the EJECT button to put into the EJECT mode. Few seconds later after the EJECT mode is completed, the S and T reel brake linigs are pressed against the reel tables.

Replacement flow chart


Replacement of brake lining assembly
Confirmation of reel brake clearance
Confirmation of reel brake release amount
Confirmation of reel table height

If the reel brake release amount does not satisfy the specification, and then reel brake release amount adjustment is performed, be sure to perform the following adjustments:


Adjustment of cassette pillar (S) height
Adjustment of reel table height

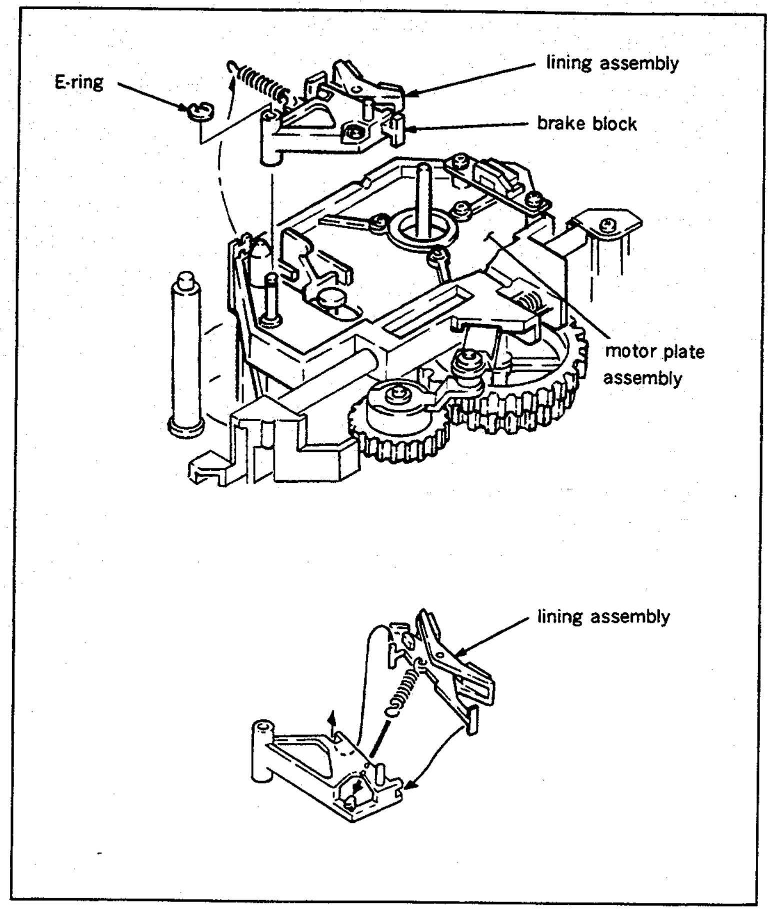
Removal and installation

1. Remove a reel table. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10.)
2. Unhook a spring of a brake block as shown in the figure from a motor plate assembly.
3. Remove an E-ring that holds the brake block, and remove it.
4. Unhook a spring in the brake block as shown in the figure and remove a lining assembly.
5. Assemble a new lining assembly in the reversing the order of steps (2) to (4).
6. Install the reel table to the reel shaft.

Note : Two fixing screws must be fasten after the reel table height check is completed.

Adjustment after replacement

7. Perform confirmation of reel brake clearance. (Refer to Section 5-7-1.)
8. Perform confirmation of brake release amount. (Refer to steps from (1) to (3) in Section 5-7-2.)
9. Perform confirmation of reel table height. (Refer to stps from (1) to (8) in Section 5-10-2.)

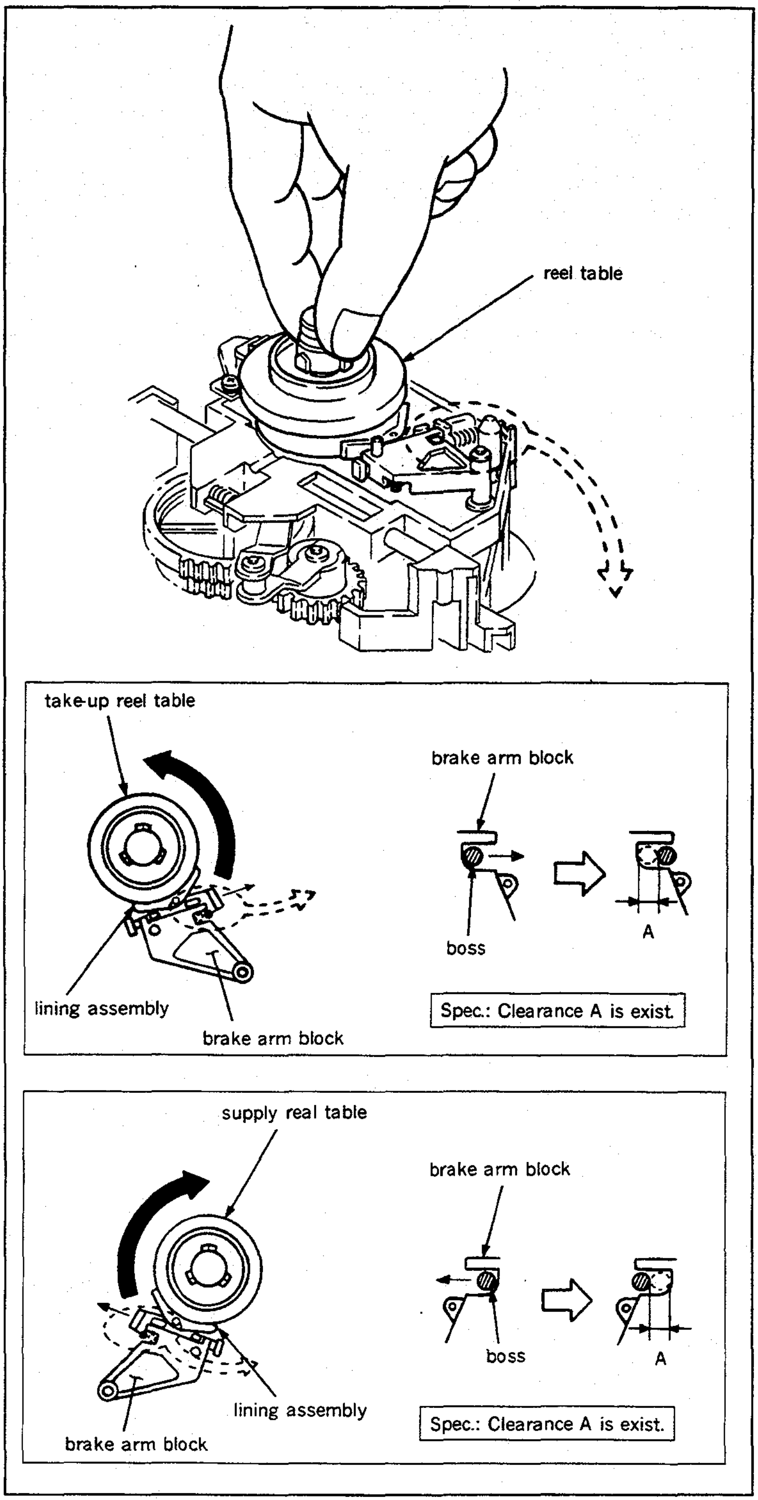


5-7-1. Reel Brake Clearance Check

- Be sure to perform a reel brake clearance check, when the brake lining assembly is removed.

Check

1. Make sure that there is a clearance between a brake arm block and boss when a take-up reel table is turned counterclockwise direction by fingers.
   If there is no clearance, replace the lining assembly.
2. Make sure that there is a clearance between a brake arm block and boss when a supply reel table is turned clockwise direction by fingers.
   If there is no clearance, replace the lining assembly.


reel table
take-up reel table
brake arm block
boss
A
lining assembly
brake arm block
supply real table
brake arm block
boss
A
lining assembly
brake arm block

Spec.: Clearance A is exist.

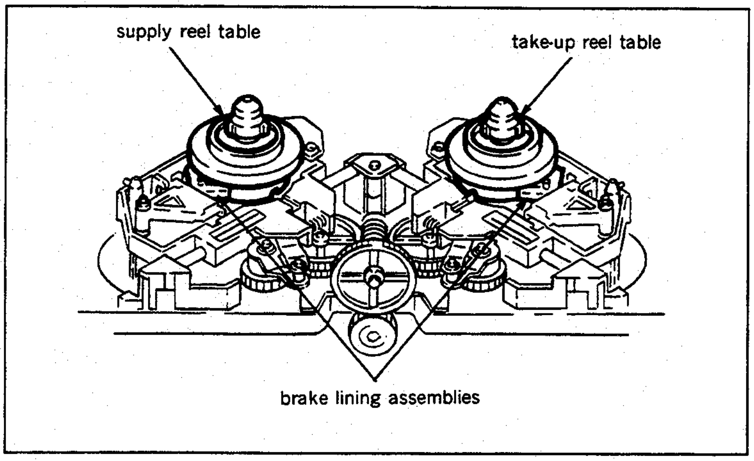
Spec.: Clearance A is exist.

5-7-2. Reel Brake Release Amount Adjustment

- Be sure to perform a reel brake release amount check, when the brake lining assembly is replaced.
- Be sure to perform a reel brake release amount adjustment, after the brake solenoid is replaced or removed.

Check

1. Turn the POWER to ON.
2. Make sure that a T brake lining assembly doesn't touch a take-up reel table while the take-up reel table is rotating. (Specification 1) (For reference : clearance is 0.6 to 1.8 ㎜.) If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment step (4) and later.
2. Make sure that a S brake lining assembly doesn't touch a supply reel table while the supply reel table is rotating. (Specification 2) (For reference : clearance is 0.6 to 1.8 ㎜.) If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment step (4) and later.

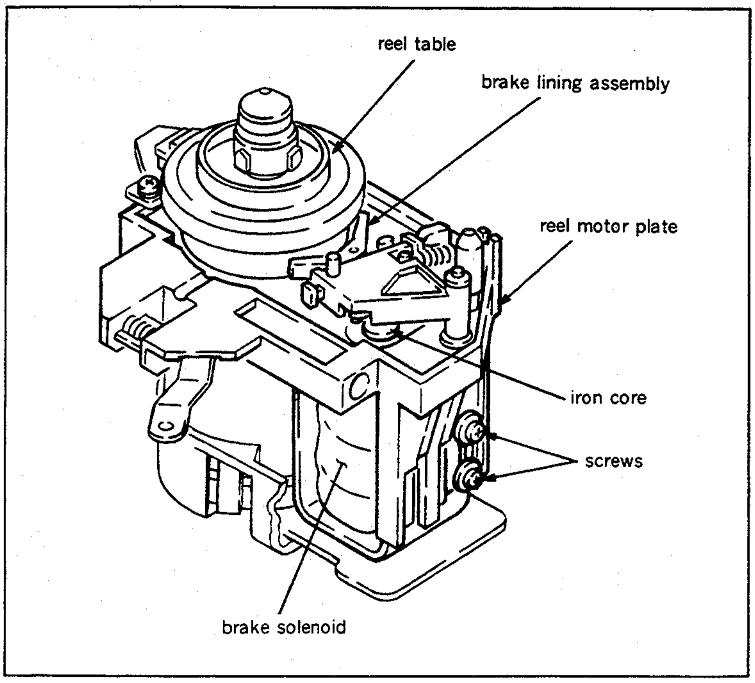


Adjustment

4. Turn the POWER to OFF.
5. Remove a reel motor plate. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-11.)
6. Loosen two screws which hold a brake solenoid ½ to 1 turn.
7. Adjust the brake solenoid position by pushing down an iron core of the brake solenoid to energized position so that there is a clearance between the reel table and brake liningassembly.

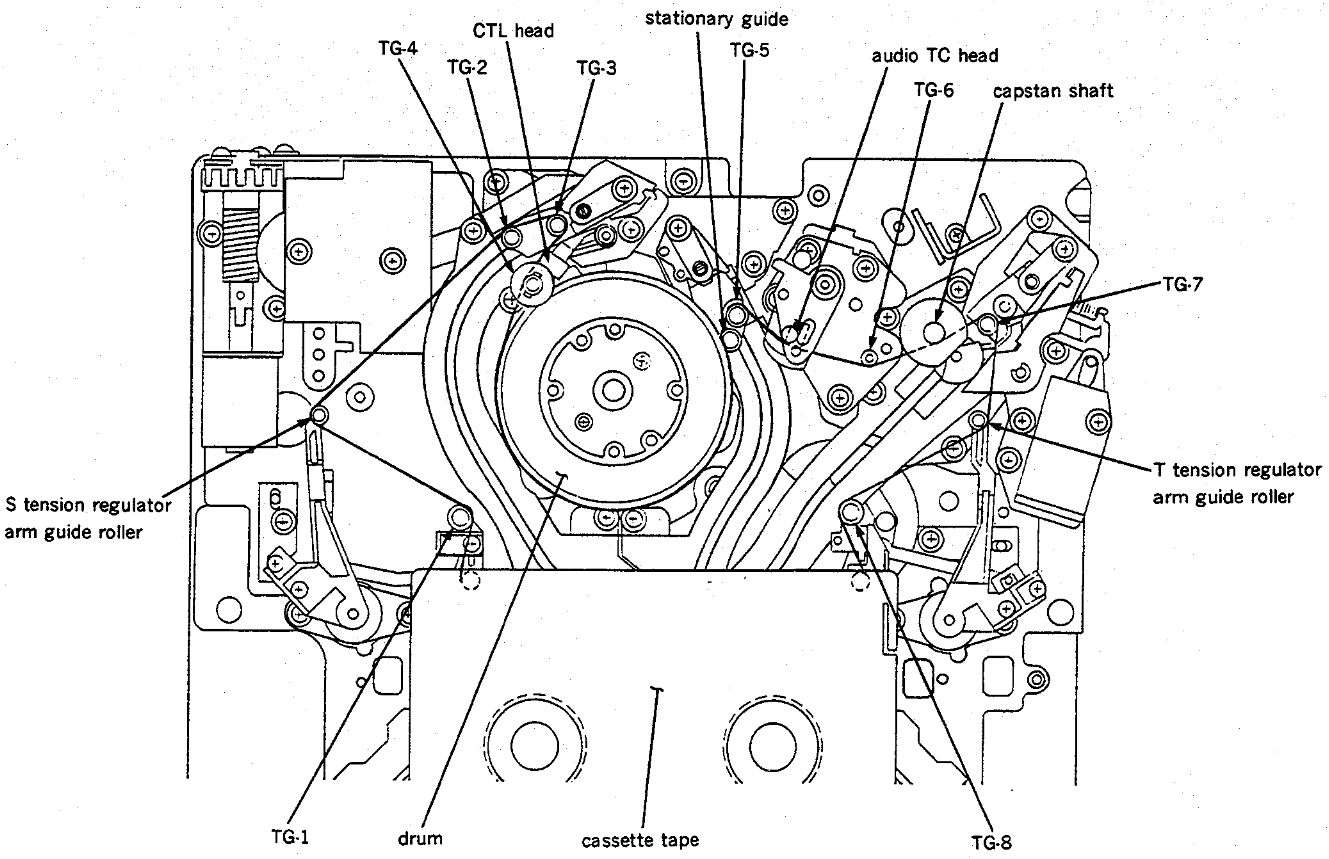
Specification : There is a clearance (0.6 to 1.8 ㎜) between the reel table and brake linig assembly when the solenoid is energized position.

8. Tighten two fixing screws of the brake solenoid.
9. Reconfirm that there is a clearance between the reel table and brake lining assembly when pushing down the iron core of the break solenoid to energized position.
10. Assemble the reel motor plate in the reversing the order of steps (1) to (6) in Section 5-11.
11. Perform the following adjustment afteradjustment :
    Perform cassette pillar (S) height check. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10-1.)
    Perform reel table height check. (Refer to steps from (1) to (8) in Section 5-10-2.)



5-8. TAPE GUIDE REPLACEMENT

- This section describes the replacement procedure for the tape guide roller.
  All the replacement procedures for the tape guide rollers are the same except TG-4 tape guide roller.
- Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the tape guide roller as the tape guide roller touches the tape.



TG-4
CTL head
TG-2
TG-3
stationary guide
TG-5
audio TC head
TG-6
capstan shaft
TG-7
T tension regulator arm guide roller
S tension regulator arm guide roller
TG-1
drum
cassette tape
TG-8

⟨This figure shows that the unit is in the threading end state.⟩

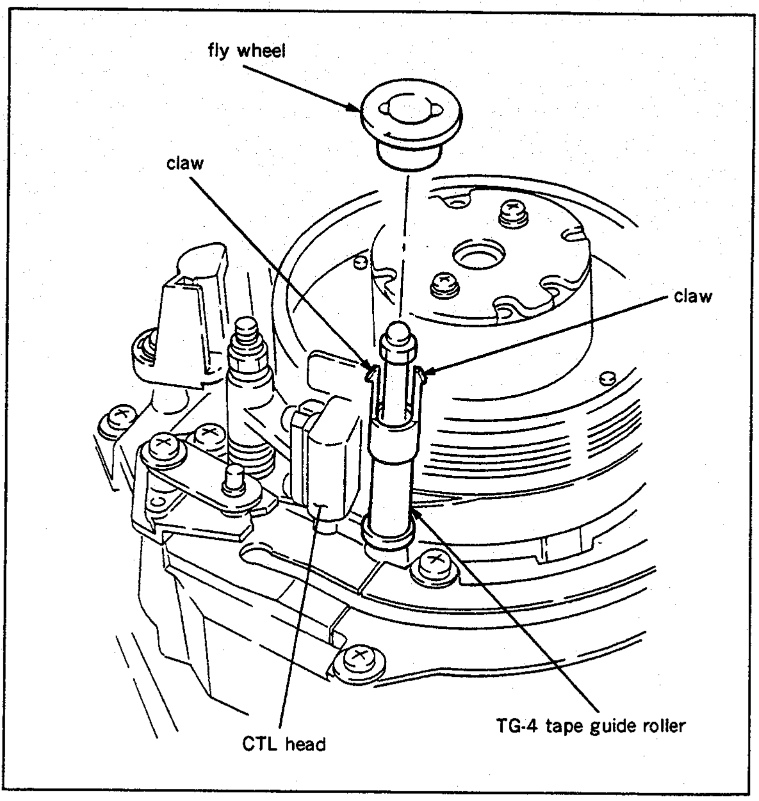
5-8-1. TG-4 Tape Guide Roller Replacement

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of TG-4 tape guide roller
↓
Adjustment of Tape running
↓
Adjustment of video tracking
↓
Adjustment of CTL head height
↓
Adjustment of CTL head position
↓
Adjustment of TC head position
↓
Adjustment of RF switching position

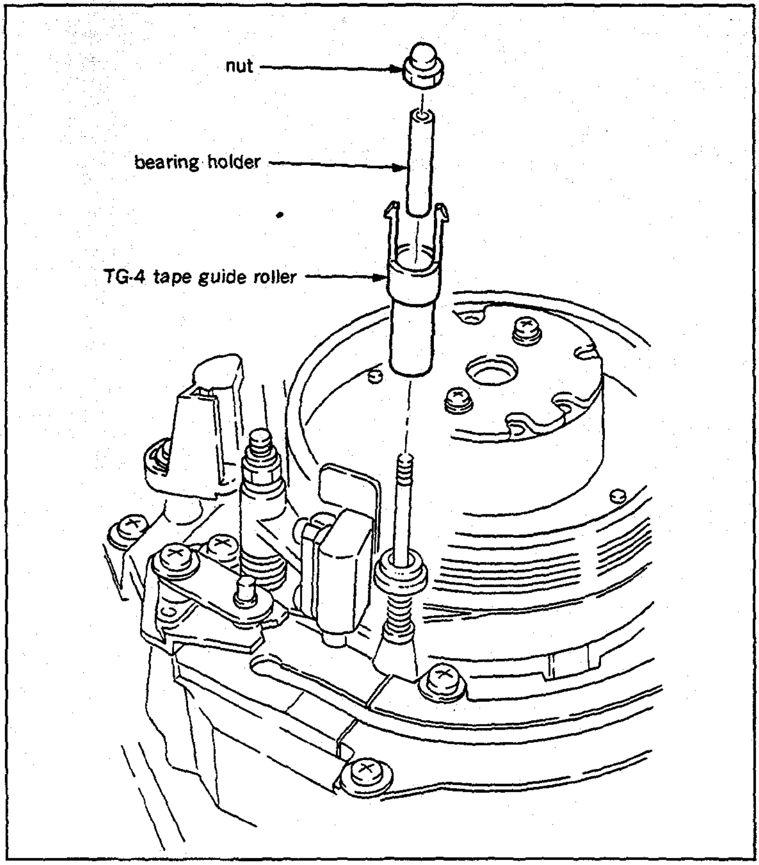


Removal

1. Rotate an upper drum assembly by hand, and set the video heads away from a TG-4 tape guide roller.
2. Hold claws of the upper part of the TG-4 tape guide roller using tweezers, and remove a fly wheel.

3. Unscrew a nut on the upper part of the TG-4 tape guide roller, and remove a bearing holder and TG-4 tape guide roller.

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the upper drum assembly during removal.


nut
bearing holder
TG-4 tape guide roller

Installation

4. Install a new TG-4 tape guide roller and bearing holder, and then tighten the nut.
5. Make sure that the TG-4 tape guide roller rotates smoothly when rotating it by hand.
6. Clean the TG-4 tape guide roller with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
7. Align two claws of the upper part of the TG-4 tape guide roller and the two grooves of the fly wheel, then install the fly wheel to the TG-4 tape guide roller.
   Make sure that the fly wheel is surely locked, after the installation.

Adjustment after replacement

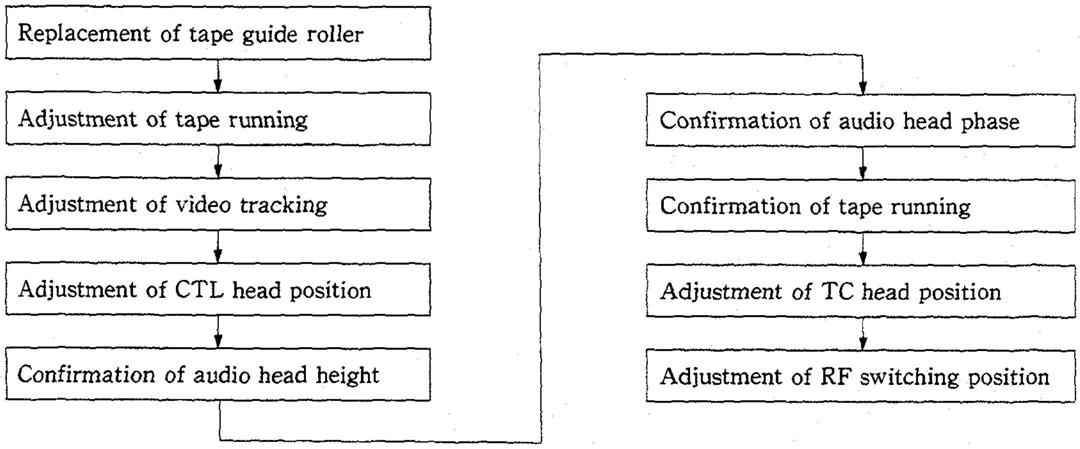
8. Perform tape running adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-3.)
9. Perform video tracking adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-4.)
10. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
11. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
12. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)
13. Perform RF switching position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-12.)

5-8-2. Other Tape Guide Rollers Replacement

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Tape guide adjustment driver	: J-6321-500-A

Replacement flow chart


Replacement of tape guide roller
Adjustment of tape running
Adjustment of video tracking
Adjustment of CTL head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Confirmation of tape running
Adjustment of TC head position
Adjustment of RF switching position

Removal

1. Make sure that the unit is in unthreading end mode.
2. Loosen locking screw of the upper part of the tape guide roller for one to two turns with a tape guide adjustment driver.

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to other tape guide rollers.

3. Rotate an upper flange of the tape guide, and remove it from a tape guide shaft.
4. Remove a tape guide roller.

Installation

5. Install a new tape guide roller and upper flange.

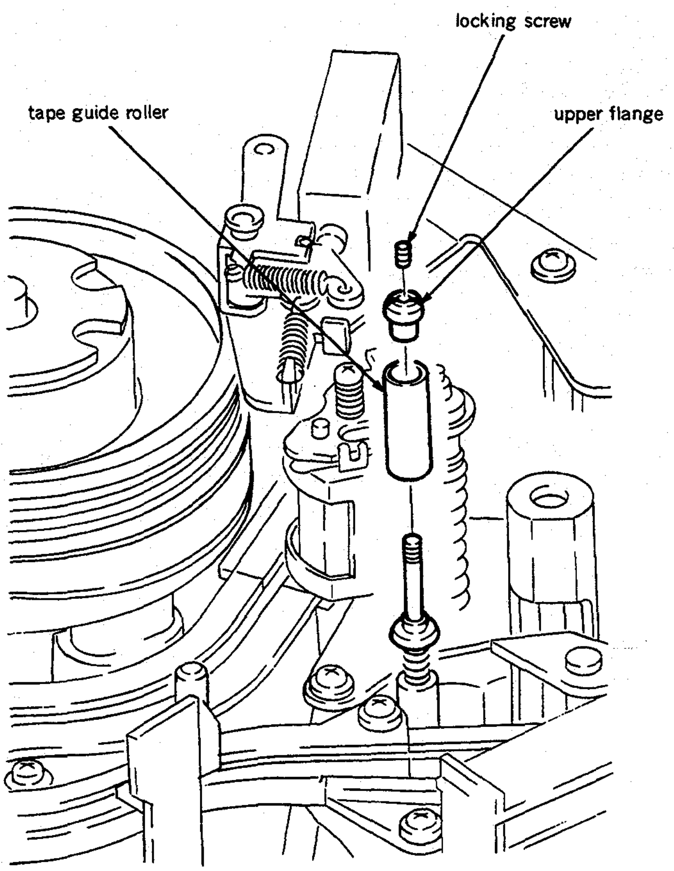
Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to other tape guide rollers during installation.

6. Tighten tentatively the locking screw of the upper part of the tape guide with the tape guide adjustment driver.
7. Make sure that the tape guide roller rotates smoothly when rotating the tape guide roller with hand.
8. Clean the tape guide roller, upper flange and lower flange with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

Adjustment after replacement

9. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
10. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
11. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
12. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
13. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
14. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
15. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
16. Perform RF switching position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-12.)

<Illustration shows TG-6 tape guide>



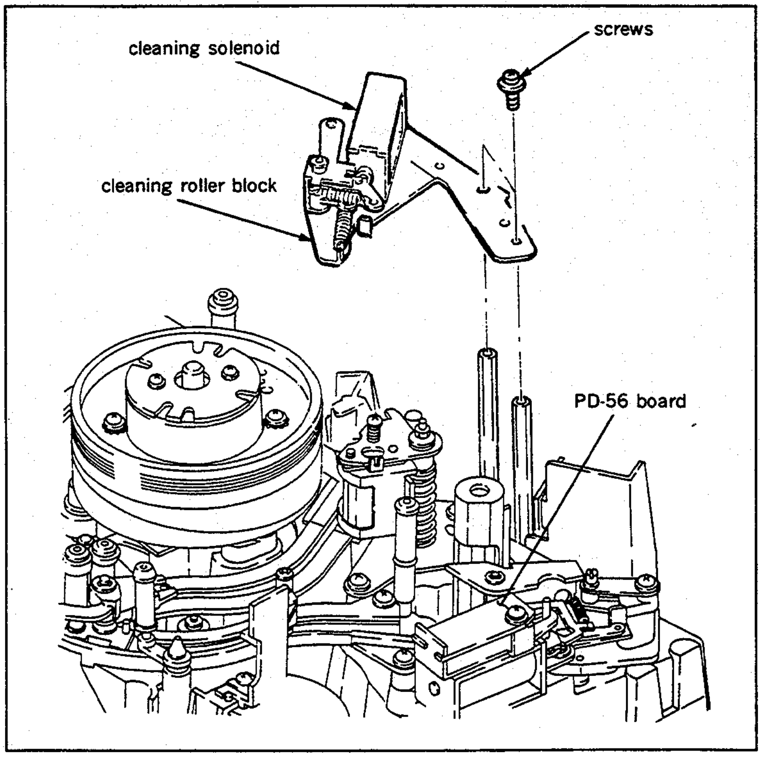
5-9. CLEANING SOLENOID REPLACEMENT

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of cleaning solenoid

↓

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

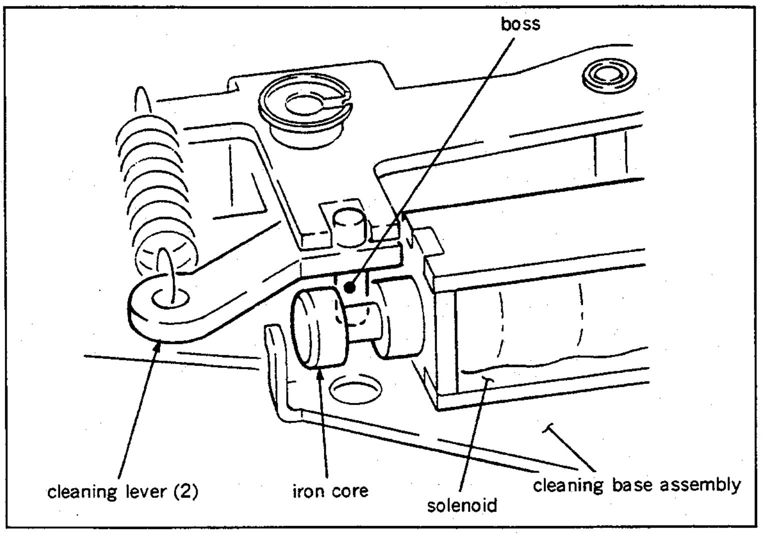

cleaning solenoid
screws
cleaning roller block
PD-56 board

Removal

1. Disconnect connector of a cleaning solenoid from CN916 on PD-56 board which is positioned on a pinch solenoid block.
2. Remove two screws holding a cleaning roller block, and remove the cleaning roller block.
3. Remove two screws holding the cleaning solenoid, and remove the cleaning solenoid.

Installation

4. Install a new solenoid to a cleaning base assembly with two washers and screws while inserting a boss of a cleaning lever (2) into the groove of an iron core of the solenoid.


boss
cleaning lever (2)
iron core
solenoid
cleaning base assembly

5. Tighen the cleaning roller block to the studs with two screws, but do not tighten.
6. Connect the connector CN916 of the cleaning solenoid to PD-56 board.

Adjustment after replacement

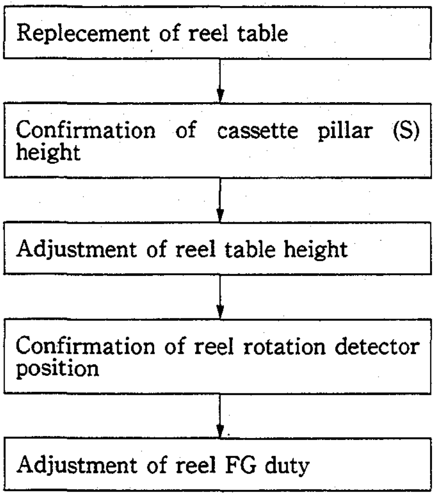
7. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)

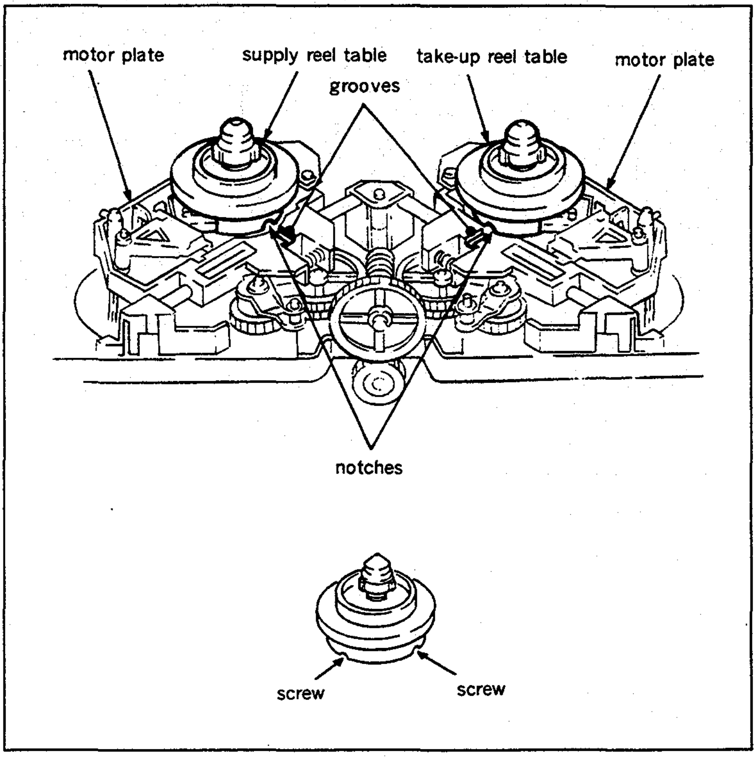
5-10. REEL TABLE REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.5 ㎜)
: 7-700-736-05

Replacement flow chart


Replecement of reel table
Confirmation of cassette pillar (S) height
Adjustment of reel table height
Confirmation of reel rotation detector position
Adjustment of reel FG duty


motor plate
supply reel table
take-up reel table
motor plate
grooves
notches
screw
screw

Removal

1. Align one of the notch at the lower part of a reel table to a groove of a motor plate by rotating the reel table by hand.
2. Insert the L shaped wrench along with the groove of the motor plate, and put it into the screw hole at the lower part of the reel table.
3. Loosen a fixing screw of the reel table for two to three turns.
4. Rotate the reel table more, and align the other notch at the lower part of the reel table to the groove of the motor plate.
5. Repeat the above steps (2) and (3) in order to loosen the fixing screw of the reel table.
6. Remove the reel table from the motor plate assembly.

Note :A polyslider washer for reel table height adjustment is inserted at the lower part of the bearing of the reel table.
Pay particular attention not to lose the polyslider washer when removing the reel table as the polyslider washer may be stuck with the lower part of the reel table.

Installation

7. Clean a new reel table with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid, and install it to a reel motor shaft.

Note :Tighten two fixing screws after the reel table height check is performed.

Adjustment after replacement

8. Perform confirmation of cassette pillar (S) height. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10-1.)
9. Perform reel table height adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-10-2.)
10. Perform reel rotation detector position adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (5) in Section 5-10-3.)
11. Perform reel FG duty adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-3.)

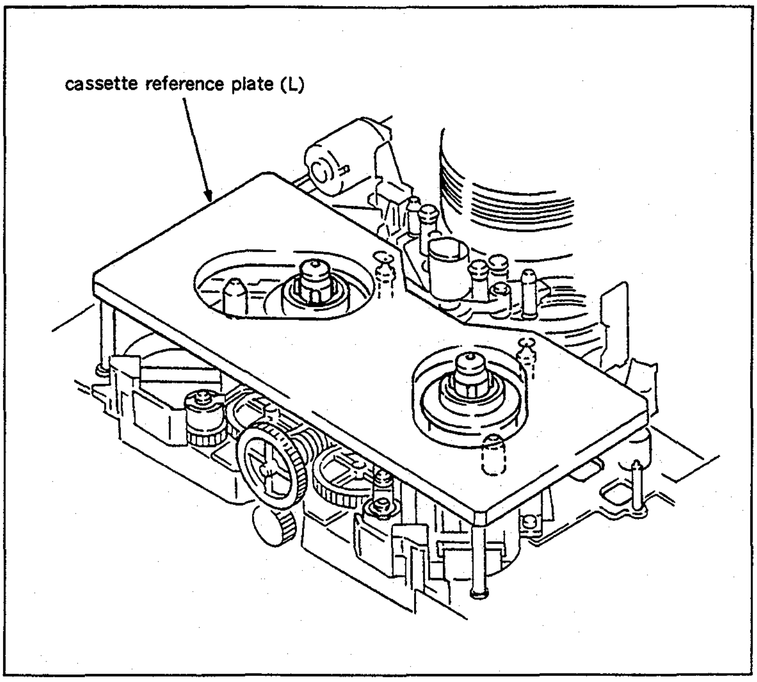
5-10-1. Cassette Pillar (S) Height Adjustment

Tools

Cassette reference plate (L) : J-6320-880-A
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
Adjustment mirror : J-6080-029-A
L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.5 mm) : 7-700-736-05

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in unthreading end mode.
2. Clean surface of the cassette reference plate (L) with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
3. Place the cassette reference plate (L) on four cassette pillars.



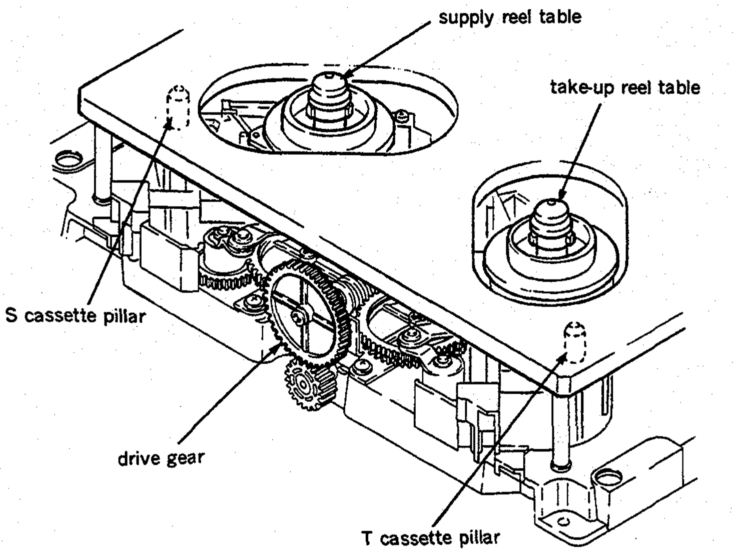
4. Place the supply and take-up reel tables to the intermediate position between S cassette position and L cassette position by rotating a drive gear by fingers as shown in the figure. Make sure that the S cassette pillar and T cassette pillar are positioned under the cas sette reference plate (L) as shown in the figure. (The S cassette pillar and T cassette pillar should not be seen from the upper part of the unit.)
5. Turn over the cassette reference plate (L) and place it on four cassette pillars.
6. Check with adjustment mirror that there are no clearances between the cassette reference plate (L) and S cassette pillar, and T cassette pillar.

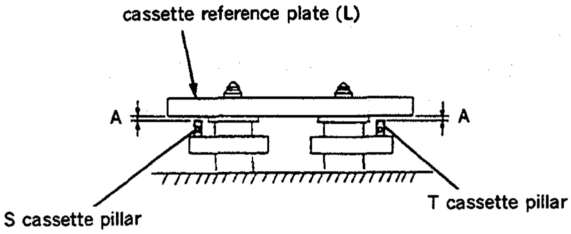
   If the specifications are not satisfied, perform the following adjustment.

Adjustment

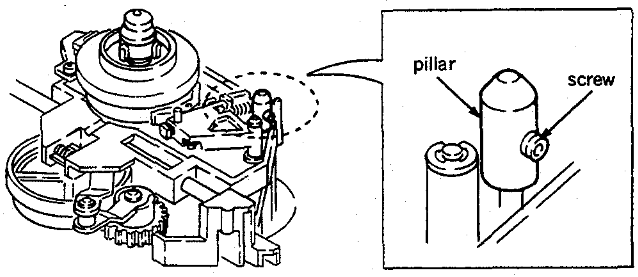
7. Loosen a fixing screw of the S cassette pillar and/or T cassette pillar 1/2 to one turn with the L shaped wrench.
8. Lift the S cassette pillar and/or T cassette pillar, and contact it with the cassette reference plate (L).

   Tighten a fixing screw with L shaped wrench under this condition.
9. Make sure that the specification is satisfied.


supply reel table
take-up reel table
S cassette pillar
drive gear
T cassette pillar


cassette reference plate (L)
A
A
S cassette pillar
T cassette pillar

Spec.: Clearance A is not exist


pillar
screw

5-10-2. Reel Table Height Adjustment

- This adjustment is not necessary in general, however, perform when a reel motor is replaced or a reel table is removed or replaced.
- In order to obtain stabilized tape running, supply reel table should be placed in the position 0.13㎜ higher than the reel table height adjusted with a gauge.
- Pay particular attention to perform this adjustment as it is to be the reference for the tape running system.

Tools

Cassette reference plate (L)	: J-6320-880-A
Reel table height gauge	: J-6320-680-A
Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.5 ㎜)	: 7-700-736-05

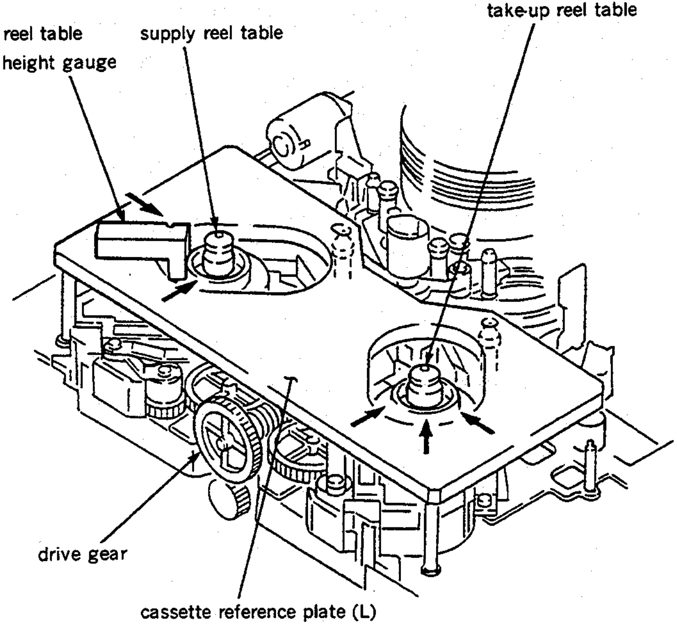
Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in unthreading end mode.
2. Rotate a drive gear by fingers so that a reel table is placed to the L cassette position.
3. Clean the surface of the cassette reference plate (L) with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
4. Place the cassette reference plate (L) on four cassette pillars.
5. Clean the surface of the reel table height gauge with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
6. Move the reel table heigh gauge from three directions of arrows towards supply reel table or take-up reel table, and make sure that the specificaions are satisfied.

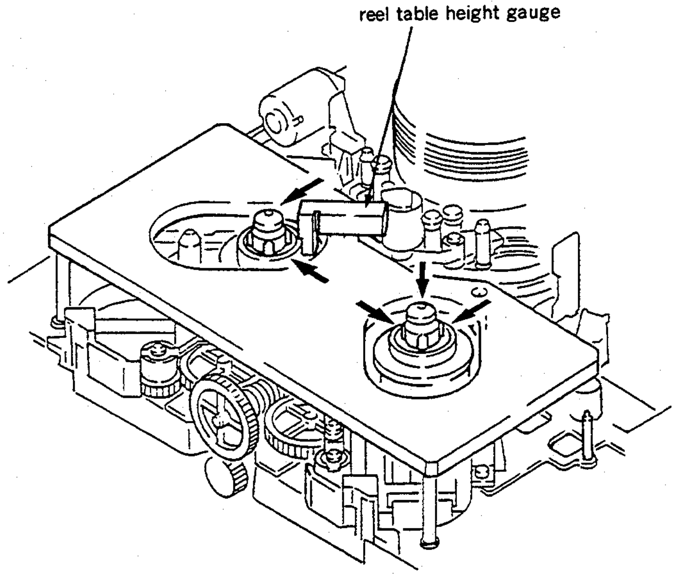
Specification 1 : ∗ marked portion (passing side) as shown in the figure of the gauge runs over the flange of the reel table.

Specification 2 : ∗ ∗ marked portion (no passing side) as shown in the figure of the gauge is blocked at the flange of the reel table.

7. Rotate the drive gear by fingers so that the reel table is placed to the S cassette position.
8. Perform step (6) and make sure that the specifications are satisfied.
   If any specification is not satisfied, perform step (9) and later, and repeat the adjustment at both L cassette position and S cassette position until the specifications are satisfied.
   If the specification is satisied, at both positions, perform step (11) and later.



<L cassette position>

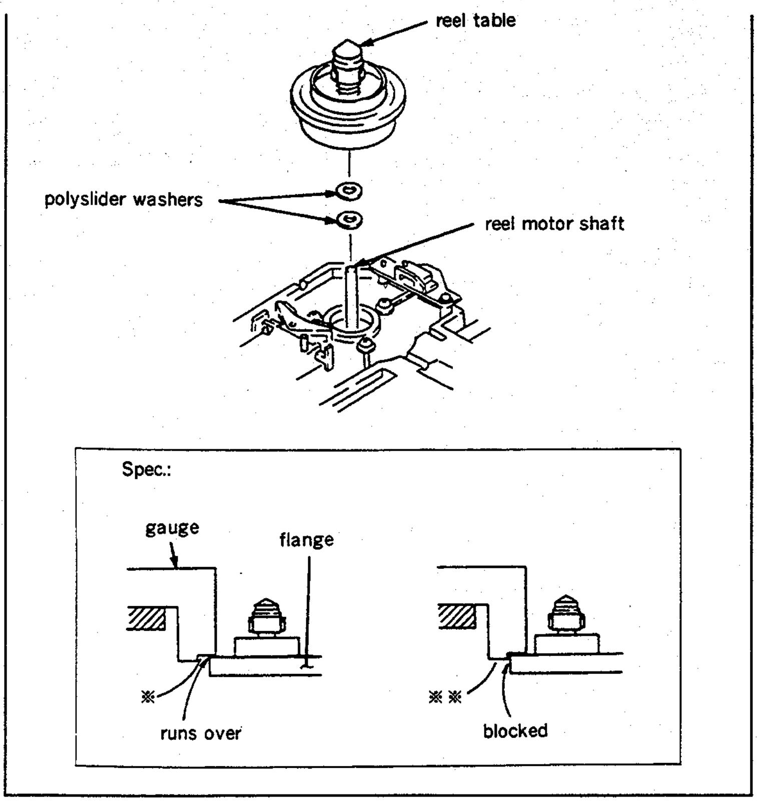


<S cassette position>

Adjustment

9. Remove the reel table.
10. Adjust the height of the reel table with polyslider washer installed into the reel motor shaft until the specifications are satisied at both L cassette position and S cassette position.

    Polyslider washer for adjustment use:
    4 ㎜ dia. 0.13 ㎜ thick : Part No. 3-701-441-01
    4 ㎜ dia. 0.25 ㎜ thick : Part No. 3-701-441-11
    4 ㎜ dia. 0.5 ㎜ thick : Part No. 3-701-441-21
11. After step ⑩ is completed, remove the supply reel table tentatively, and add one 0.13 ㎜ thick polyslider washer below the reel table.
12. Tighten two fixing screws of the reel table with the L shaped wrench while pressing the supply reel table and/or take-up reel table slightly towards down. (Refer to steps from (1) to (5) in Section 5-10.)


reel table
polyslider washers
reel motor shaft
Spec.:
gauge
flange
※
runs over
※※
blocked

5-10-3. Reel Rotation Detector Position Adjustment

- Be sure to perform this adjustment when a reel rotation detector is replaced.
- Be sure to perform the confirmation when a reel motor and/or reel table is replaced.
- Adjustment of a supply reel rotation detector and take-up reel rotation detector take the same procedure.

Tools

Oscilloscope
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A

Check

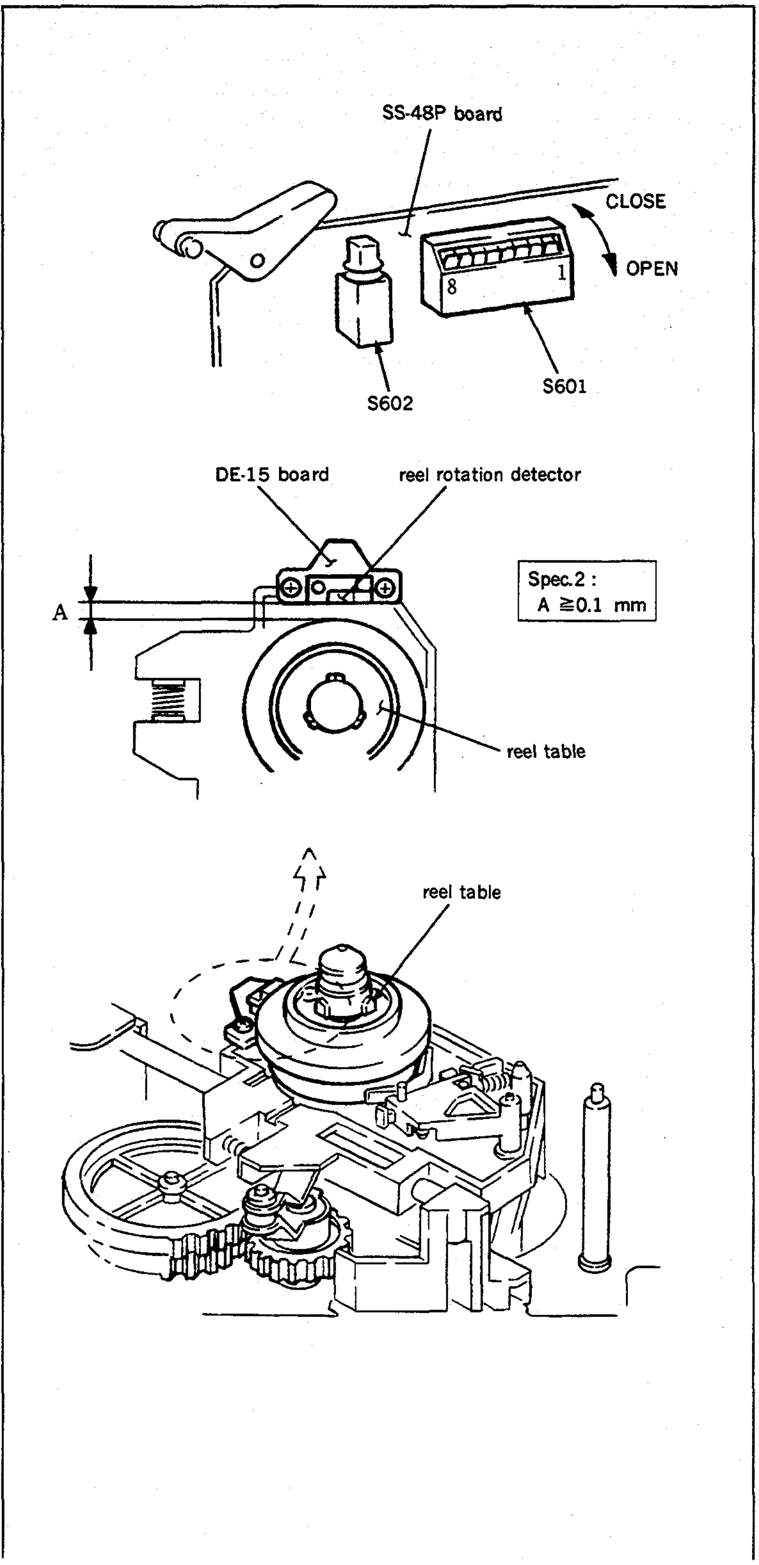
1. Connect the oscilloscope to PD-56 board on a pinch solenoid block as follows :
   S : TP1/PD-56 board
   T : TP2/PD-56 board
2. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
3. Turn the POWER to ON.
4. Press S602 on SS-48P board. (Reel table begins to rotate.)
5. Make sure that the test point output satisfies the specification 1.
   Make sure that a clearance between a reel table and reel rotation detector satisfies the specification 2.

Specification 1 : No distortion in the waveform as well as 0.4 Vp-p or more.

Specification 2 : A clearance between the reel table and reel rotation detector is more than 0.1 mm.

When both specifications 1 and 2 are satisfied, perform step (6) and later.
When either specifications 1 or 2 is not satisfied, perform step (17) and later.

6. Turn the POWER to OFF.
7. Turn the POWER to ON again, and press S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
8. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B0: SERVO CHECK" which is dispalying on the monitor screen.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO CHECK" mode.
10. Move * mark to "B02: MOTOR CHECK" which is dispalying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "MOTOR CHECK" menu.
12. Move * mark to "B021 : S REEL" or "B022 : T REEL" which is dispalying the sub-menu on the monitor screen with the search dial.



13. Press S302 on SS-48P board and execute S REEL" or T REEL" sub-menu.
14. When the search dial rotates in the jog mode, make sure that the test point output satisfies the specification 3.

Specification 3 : 0.4 V p-p or more (no distortion)

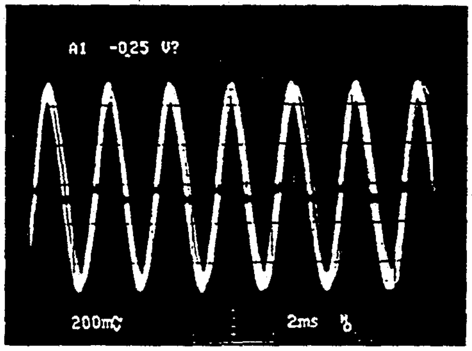
If the specification 3 is satisfied, perform step (15) and later.
If the specification 3 is not satisfied, perform step (17) and later.

15. Turn the POWER to OFF.
16. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.

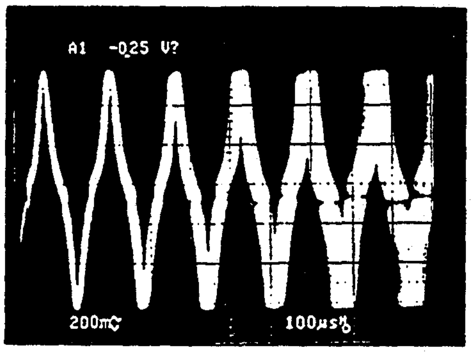
Adjustment

17. Loosen a fixing screw of DE-15 board holding the reel rotation detector for one to two turns.
18. Insert the paper which two folded such as of this service manual between the reel table and reel rotation detector, and press the reel rotation detector slightly towards the reel table. Then tighten a fixing screw.
19. Pull out the folded paper, and make sure that a sheet of paper is easily inserted in this space.
20. Perform the check procedures and make sure that all of the three specifications 1 to 3 are satisfied.
    If all of the three specifications are not satisfied, adjust the position of DE-15 board again.
21. Perform reel FG duty adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 5-12-3.)

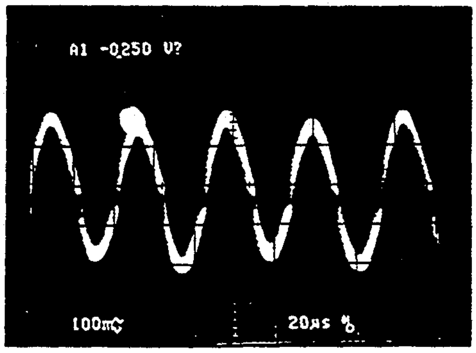
OK



NG
narrower
clearance



NG
wider
clearance



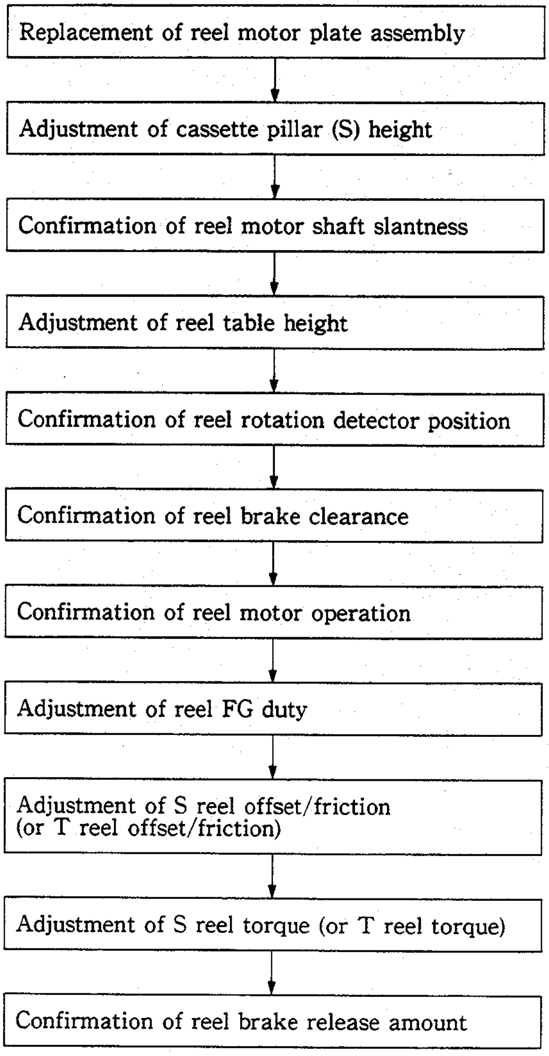
5-11. REEL MOTOR PLATE REPLACEMENT

- Replacement of supply reel motor plate and take-up reel motor plate take the same procedure.

Tools

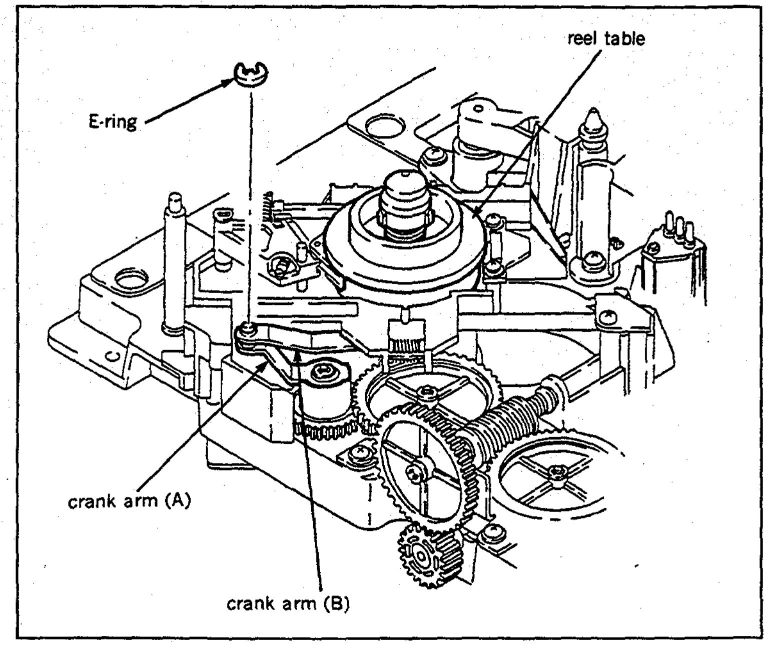
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.5 mm)
: 7-700-736-05
Grease (SGL-505) : 7-662-010-04

Replacement flow chart


Replacement of reel motor plate assembly
Adjustment of cassette pillar (S) height
Confirmation of reel motor shaft slantness
Adjustment of reel table height
Confirmation of reel rotation detector position
Confirmation of reel brake clearance
Confirmation of reel motor operation
Adjustment of reel FG duty
Adjustment of S reel offset/friction (or T reel offset/friction)
Adjustment of S reel torque (or T reel torque)
Confirmation of reel brake release amount

Removal

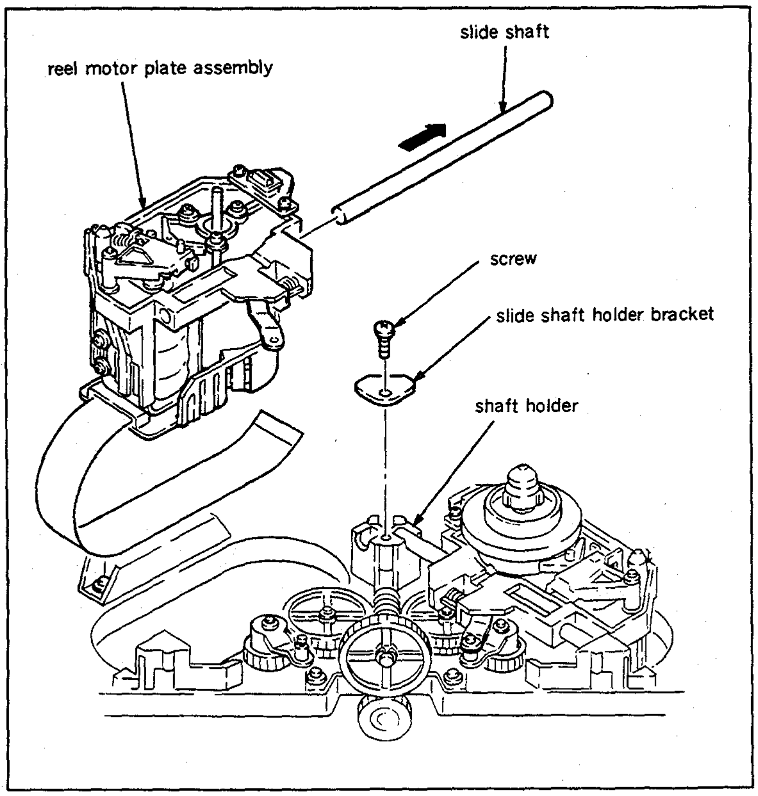
1. Disconnect a flat cable of a reel motor board (RM-82 board) connected with DR-118A board.
2. Remove an E-ring holding a crank arm (B) of a reel motor plate assembly.


reel table
E-ring
crank arm (A)
crank arm (B)

3. Remove a reel table. (Refer to the steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10.)
4. Remove a screw shown in the figure, and remove a slide shaft holder bracket.
5. Push a slide shaft towards the direction of arrow and remove it from the reel motor plate assembly.

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the slide shaft during removal.

6. Lift the reel motor plate assembly, and disconnect the flat cable of the reel motor board (RM-82 board).


slide shaft
reel motor plate assembly
screw
slide shaft holder bracket
shaft holder

Installation

7. Clean the hole where the slide shaft to be inserted of a new reel motor plate assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
8. Clean the slide shaft with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

9. Connect the flat cable to the connector of RM-82 board of the new reel motor plate assembly.
10. Insert the slide shaft to the reel motor plate assembly and install it to the unit.

Note :Pay particular attention not cause damage to the slide shaft during installation.

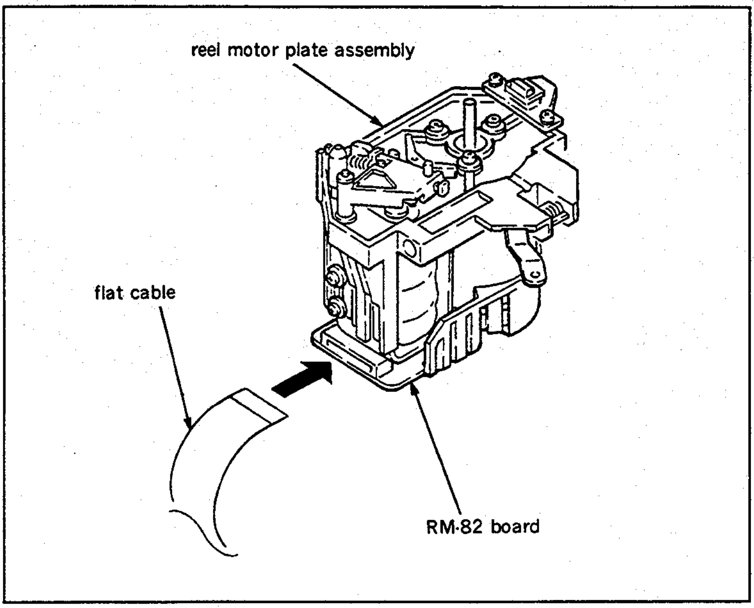
11. After putting the slide shaft into a shaft holder, install the slide shaft bracket with a screw.
    Smear grease very lightly to the place of the slide shaft shown in the figure.
13. Make sure that the reel motor plate assembly moves smoothly when moving it by hand towards S cassette and L cassette positions.
14. Install the crank arm (B) to a crank arm (A) on the chassis with an E-ring.
15. Install the reel table to a reel shaft.

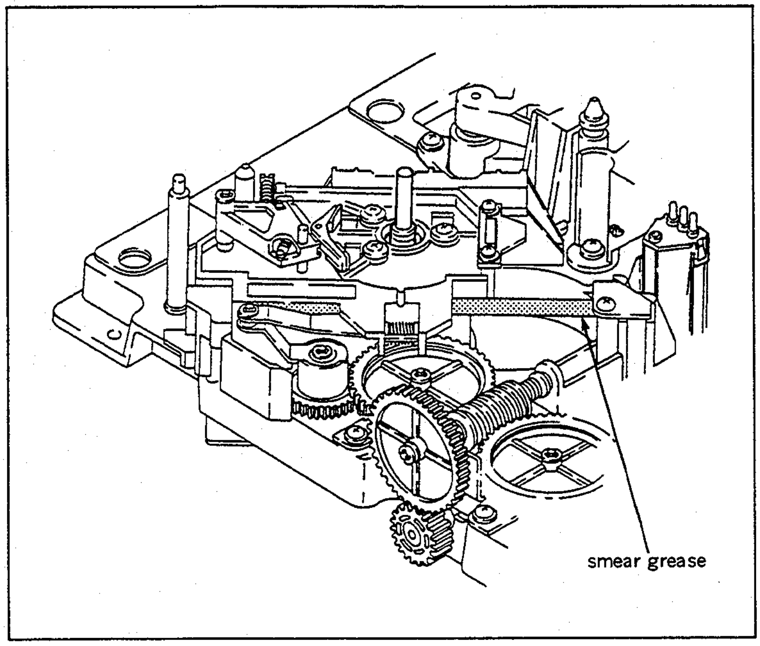
Note :Tighten two fixing screws after the adjustment of reel table height.

16. Connect the flat cable of the reel motor board (RM-82 board) with DR-118A board.

Adjustment after replacement

17. Perform cassette pillar (S) height adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-10-1.)
18. Perform confirmation of reel motor shaft slantness adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (7) in Section 5-12-1.)
19. Perform reel table height adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-10-2.)
20. Perform confirmation of reel rotation detector position adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (5) in Section 5-10-3.)
21. Perform confirmation of reel brake clearance adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-7-1.)
22. Perform confirmation of reel motor operation. (Refer to Section 5-12-2).
23. Perform reel FG duty adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-3.)
24. Perform S reel offset/friction (or T reel offset/friction) adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-4 or 5-12-6.)
25. Perform S reel torque (or T reel torque) adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-5 or 5-12-7.)
26. Perform confirmation of reel brake release amount adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (3) in Section 5-7-2.)





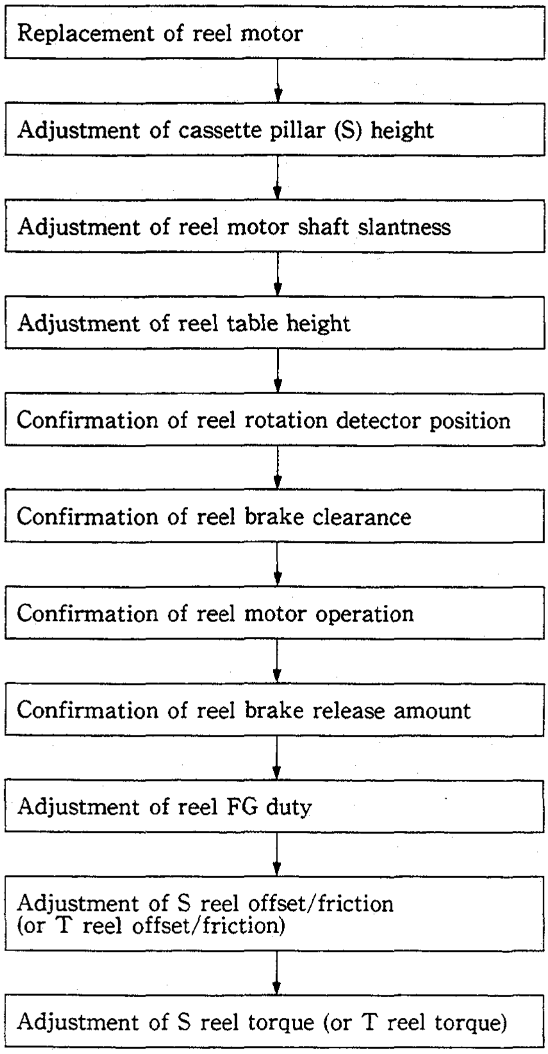
5-12. REEL MOTOR REPLACEMENT

- Replacement of supply reel motor and take-up reel motor take the same procedure.
- Perform the replacement of a reel motor as an assembled part instead of as a component part.

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.5 mm)
: 7-700-736-05

Replacement flow chart


Replacement of reel motor
Adjustment of cassette pillar (S) height
Adjustment of reel motor shaft slantness
Adjustment of reel table height
Confirmation of reel rotation detector position
Confirmation of reel brake clearance
Confirmation of reel motor operation
Confirmation of reel brake release amount
Adjustment of reel FG duty
Adjustment of S reel offset/friction (or T reel offset/friction)
Adjustment of S reel torque (or T reel torque)

Removal

1. Remove a reel table. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10.)
2. Disconnect a flat cable of a reel motor board (RM-82 board) connected with DR-118 board.
3. Disconnect three connectors CN923, CN926 and CN927 of the reel motor board (RM-82 board).
4. Remove three screws shown in the figure, and remove a reel motor assembly.

Note 1 : Hold the reel motor assembly to avoid dropping.

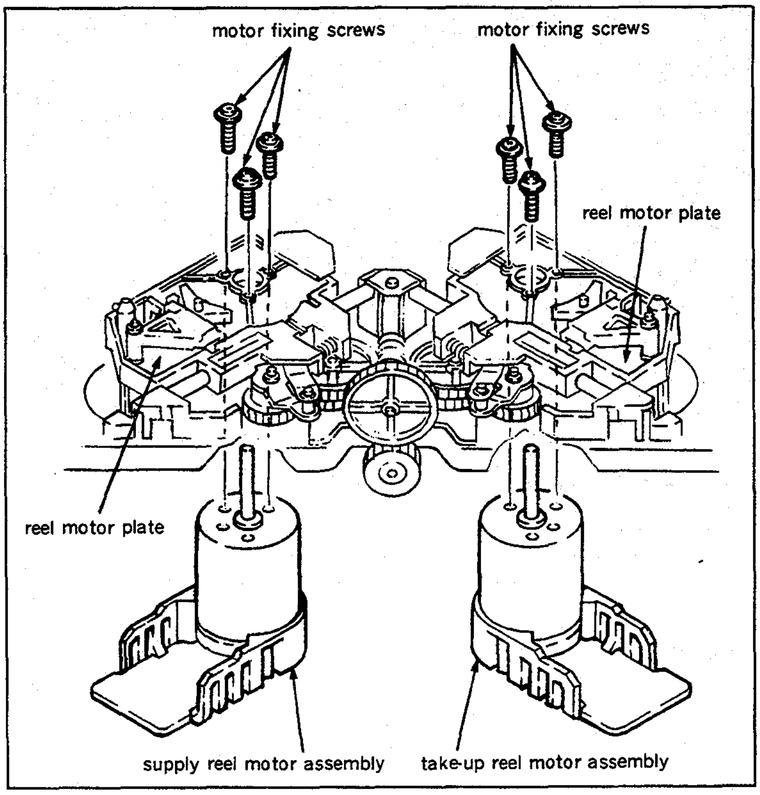
Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to lose the spacer using for slantness adjustment since it comes off with the reel motor assembly when its removal.

5. Remove a polyslider washer which is used for the reel table height adjustment from the reel motor shaft.

Installation

6. Clean the surfaces of a new reel motor assembly and reel motor plate assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
7. Install the new reel motor assembly as in the direction shown in the figure with three screws.
8. Connect three connectors CN923, CN926 and CN927 to RM-82 board.
9. Insert the flat cable to RM-82 board.
10. Install the reel table to the reel motor shaft.

Note : Tighten two screws after adjustment of the reel table height.


motor fixing screws
motor fixing screws
reel motor plate
reel motor plate
supply reel motor assembly
take-up reel motor assembly

Adjustment after replacement

11. Perform confirmation of cassette pillar (S) height adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (6) in Section 5-10-1.)
12. Perform reel motor shaft slantness adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-1.)
13. Perform reel table height adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-10-2.)
14. Perform confirmation of reel rotation detector position adjustment. (Refer to steps from (1) to (5) in Section 5-10-3).
15. Perform confirmation of reel brake clearance. (Refer to Section 5-7-1.)
16. Perform confirmation of reel motor operetion. (Refer to Section 5-12-2.)
17. Perform confirmation of reel brake release amount.
    (Refer to steps (1) to (3) in Section 5-7-2.)
18. Perform reel FG duty adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 5-12-3.)
19. Perform S reel offset/friction (or T reel offset/friction) adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 5-12-4 or 5-12-6.)
20. Perform S reel torque (or T reel torque) adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-12-5 or 5-12-7.)

5-12-1. Reel Motor Shaft Slantness Adjustment

- Supply reel motor shaft slantness adjustment and take-up reel motor shaft slantness adjustment take the same procedure.
- This adjustment is not necessary in general, however, be sure to perform it when a reel motor and reel motor plate assembly are replaced.
- If this adjustment is not performed correctly, it may cause the occurance of noise due to a cantact of reel hub to a case in a cassette tape, or damage to the tape due to the incorrect tape running.
- In the following adjustment, it is described under the condition that a reel table is already removed from a reel motor shaft.

Tools

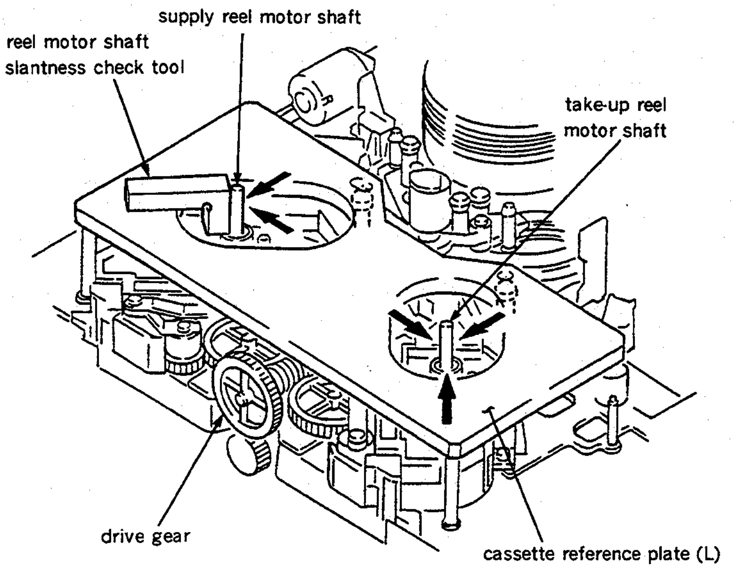
Cassette reference plate (L): J-6320-880-A
Reel motor shaft slantness check tool
: J-6320-870-A
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A

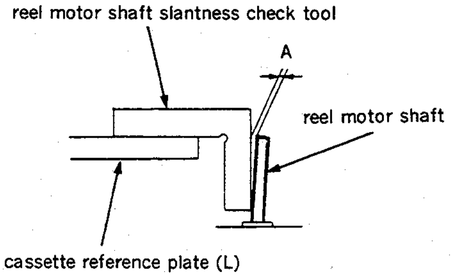
Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in unthreading end mode.
2. Clean the surfaces of the cassette reference plate (L) and reel motor shaft slantness check tool with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
3. Rotate a drive gear by fingers so that a reel table is placed to the L cassette position.
4. Place the cassette reference plate (L) on four cassette pillars.
5. Move the reel motor shaft slantness check tool from three directions of arrows towards supply reel motor shaft or take-up reel motor shaft, and make sure that the clearance between the reel motor shaft and slantness check tool satisfies the specification 1 using the wire clearance gauge.

Specification 1 : Upper or lower clearance between the reel motor shaft and slantness check tool is 0.03 mm or less.

<L cassette position>


supply reel motor shaft
reel motor shaft slantness check tool
take-up reel motor shaft
drive gear
cassette reference plate (L)


reel motor shaft slantness check tool
A
reel motor shaft
cassette reference plate (L)

Spec.1 : (L cassette position)
$A \leqq 0.03$ mm

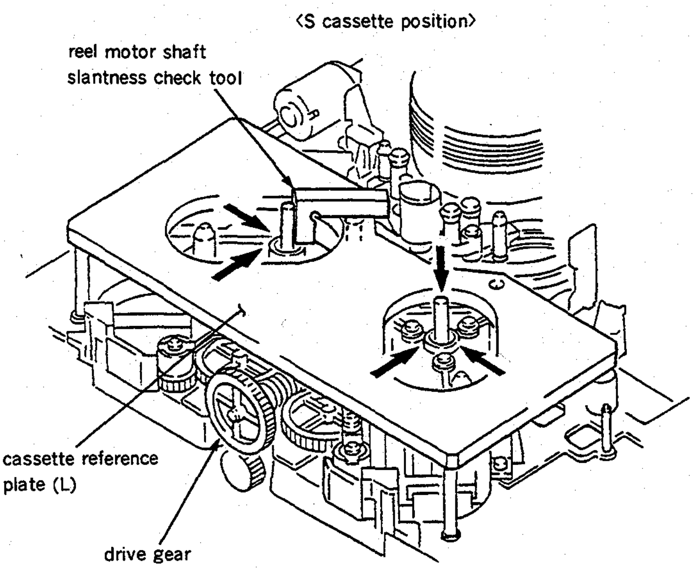
6. Rotate the drive gear by fingers so that the reel table is placed to the S cassette position.
7. Perform step (5), and make sure that the clearance between the reel motor shaft and slantness check tool satisfies the specification 2.

Specification 2 : Upper or lower clearance between the reel motor shaft and slantness check tool is 0.1 mm or less.

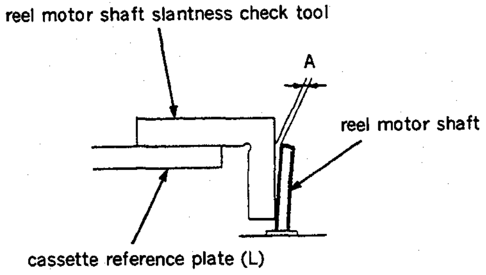
If any specification is not satisfied, perform step (8) and later until the specifications are satisfied at the both positions of the L cassette and S cassette.

Adjustment

8. Bend an adjustment spacer as shown in the figure.
   Adjustment spacer : 3-717-625-01
9. Loosen screws that hold the reel motor for one to two turns.
10. Pick the adjustment spacer with tweezers, and insert it between the chassis at the fixing screw and motor through a square hole by a screw on the reel motor plate assembly.
11. Tighten screws which hold the reel motor, and make sure that the specification is satisfied.
    Repeat the steps from (9) to (11) until the specification is satisfied.
12. Perform the following adjustment after the adjustment:
    Reel table heigh adjustment (Refer to Section 5-10-2.)

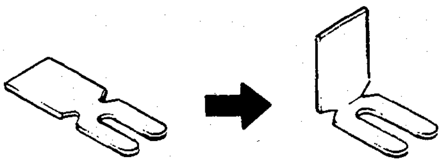


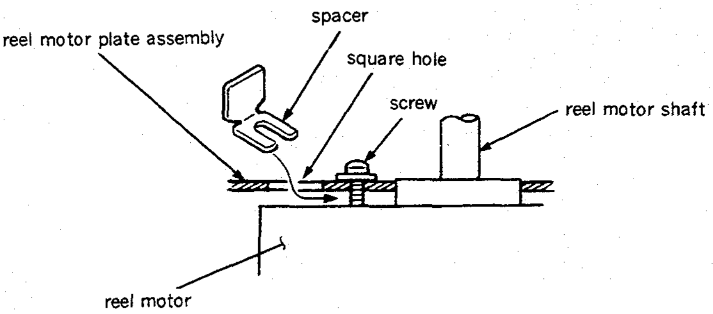
<S cassette position>
reel motor shaft slantness check tool
cassette reference plate (L)
drive gear



reel motor shaft slantness check tool
A
reel motor shaft
cassette reference plate (L)

Spec.2 : (S cassette position)
A≦0.1 mm





spacer
reel motor plate assembly
square hole
screw
reel motor shaft
reel motor

5-12-2. Reel Motor Operation Check

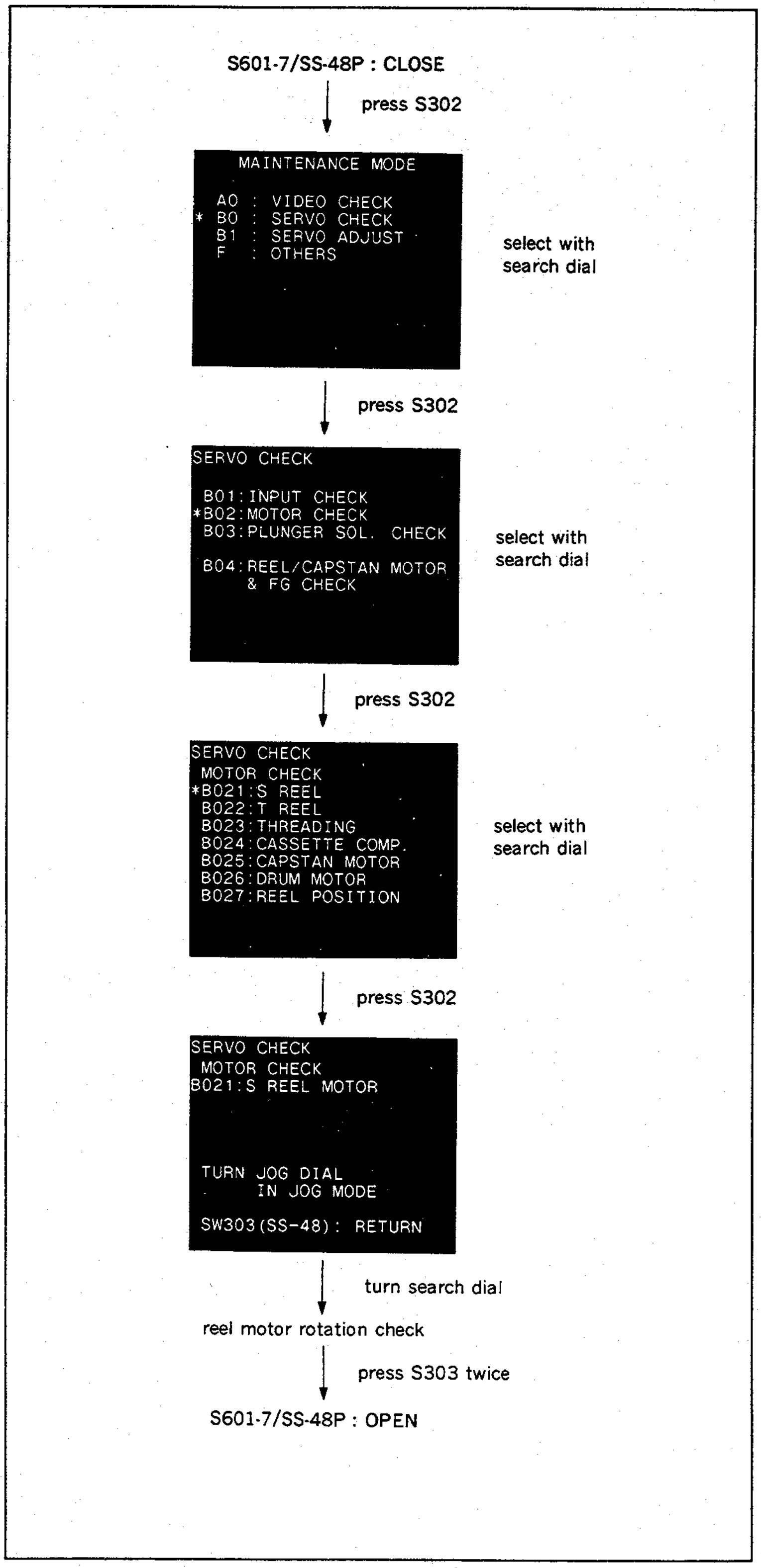
- Be sure to perform the reel motor operation check when a reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Turn the POWER to ON. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "BO : SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select " SERVO CHECK" mode.
5. Move * mark to "BO2 : MOTOR CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select " MOTOR CHECK" menu.
7. Move * mark to "BO21: S REEL" or "BO22: T REEL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board and to execute "BO21 : S REEL" or "BO22 : T REEL" sub-menu.
9. The message "TURN JOG DIAL IN JOG MODE" will appear on the monitor screen. When rotating the search dial at jog mode, make sure that the reel brake is released, and the reel table rotates in the same direction with the search dial.
   If the reel table does not rotate correctly, check the reel motor driver circuit (on DR-118A board).
   After confirming the correct reel table rotation, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
10. After confirmation, turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.


S601-7/SS-48P : CLOSE
press S302

```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 AO  :  VIDEO CHECK
* BO  :  SERVO CHECK
 B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
 F   :  OTHERS
```

select with search dial
press S302

```
SERVO CHECK

 B01:INPUT CHECK
*B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

select with search dial
press S302

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
*B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
 B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
 B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
 B026:DRUM MOTOR
 B027:REEL POSITION
```

select with search dial
press S302

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B021:S REEL MOTOR


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

turn search dial
reel motor rotation check
press S303 twice
S601-7/SS-48P : OPEN

5-12-3. Reel FG Duty Adjustment

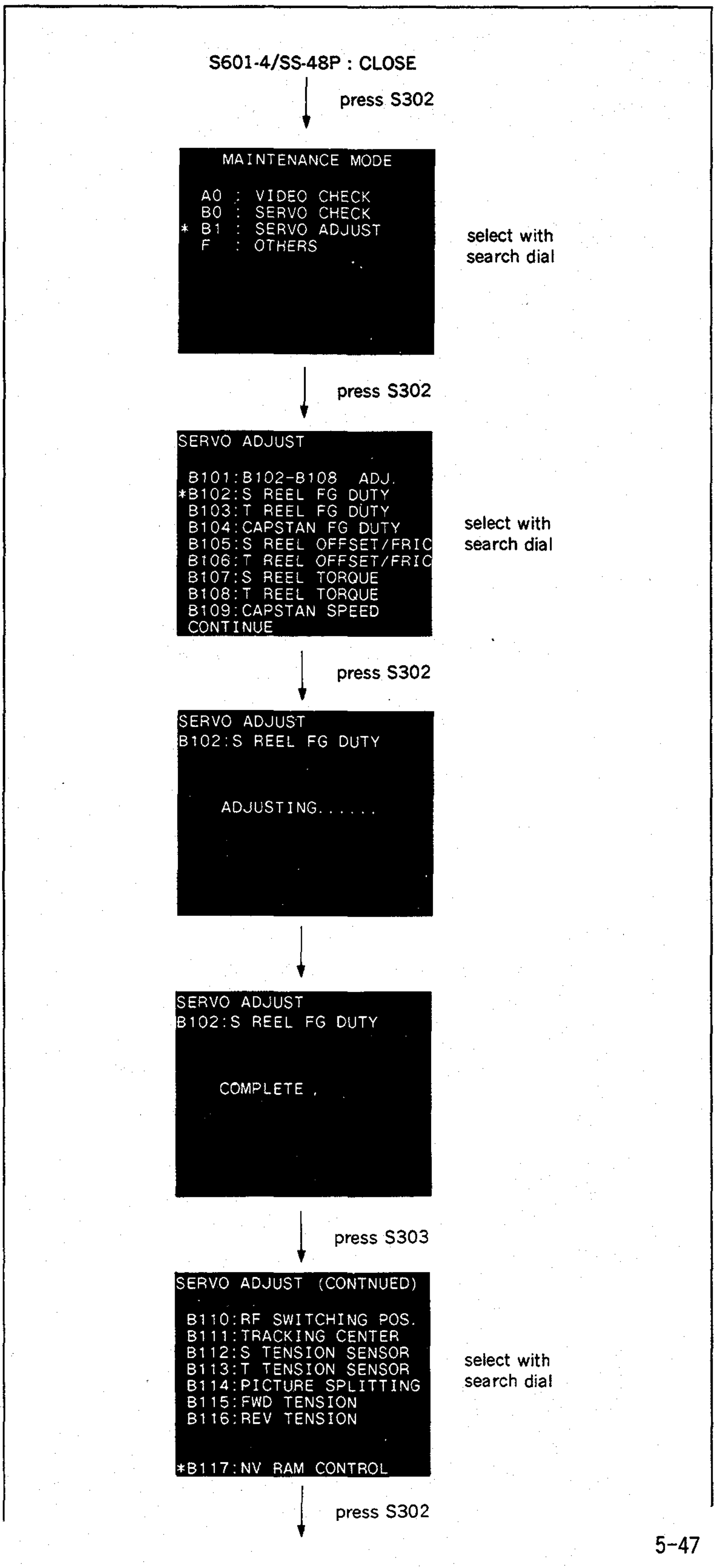
- Be sure to perform the reel FG duty adjustment when a supply or take-up reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select " SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to the following menu which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
   When a S reel motor is replaced, move * mark to "B102 : S REEL FG DUTY."
   When a T reel motor is replaced, move * mark to "B103 : T REEL FG DUTY."
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "S REEL FG DUDY" or "T REEL FG DUTY" menu.
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
8. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.



S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

press S302

```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
*B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B102:S REEL FG DUTY

    ADJUSTING......
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B102:S REEL FG DUTY

    COMPLETE .
```

press S303

```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

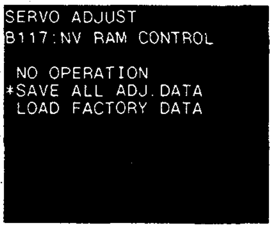
select with search dial

press S302

9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
10. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note 1: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48 board to return to the menu screen. Check the reel rotation detector, reel FG amplifier circuit and reel motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board and SS-48P board).

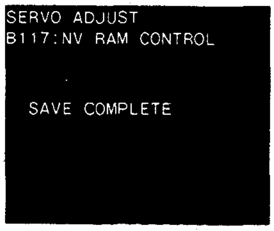
Note 2: When the "SERVO ADJUST" mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-12-4. S Reel Offset/Friction Adjustment

- Be sure to perform the S reel offset/friction adjustment when a supply reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

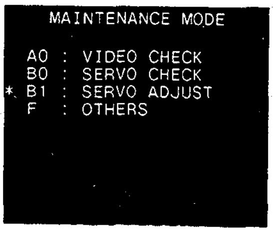
Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B105: S REEL OFFSET/FRIC" which is displaying on monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "S REEL OFFSET/FRIC".

S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

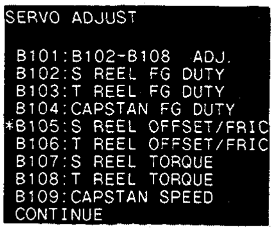
press S302



```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0  :  VIDEO CHECK
 B0  :  SERVO CHECK
*B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
 F   :  OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
*B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

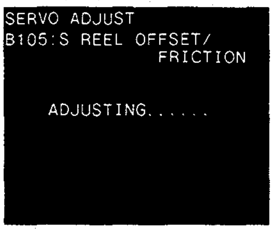
select with search dial

press S302

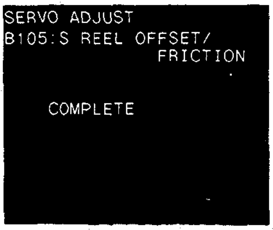
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
8. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
10. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note 1: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
Check the reel motor, reel FG duty adjustment and reel motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board).

Note 2: When the "SERVO ADJUST" mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.

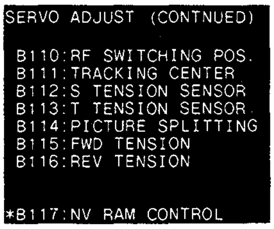


```
SERVO ADJUST
B105:S REEL OFFSET/
            FRICTION

   ADJUSTING......
```



```
SERVO ADJUST
B105:S REEL OFFSET/
            FRICTION

   COMPLETE
```

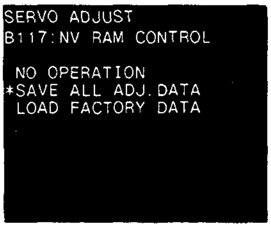
press S303



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

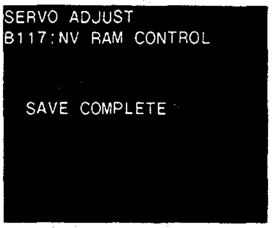
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-12-5. S Reel Torque Adjustment

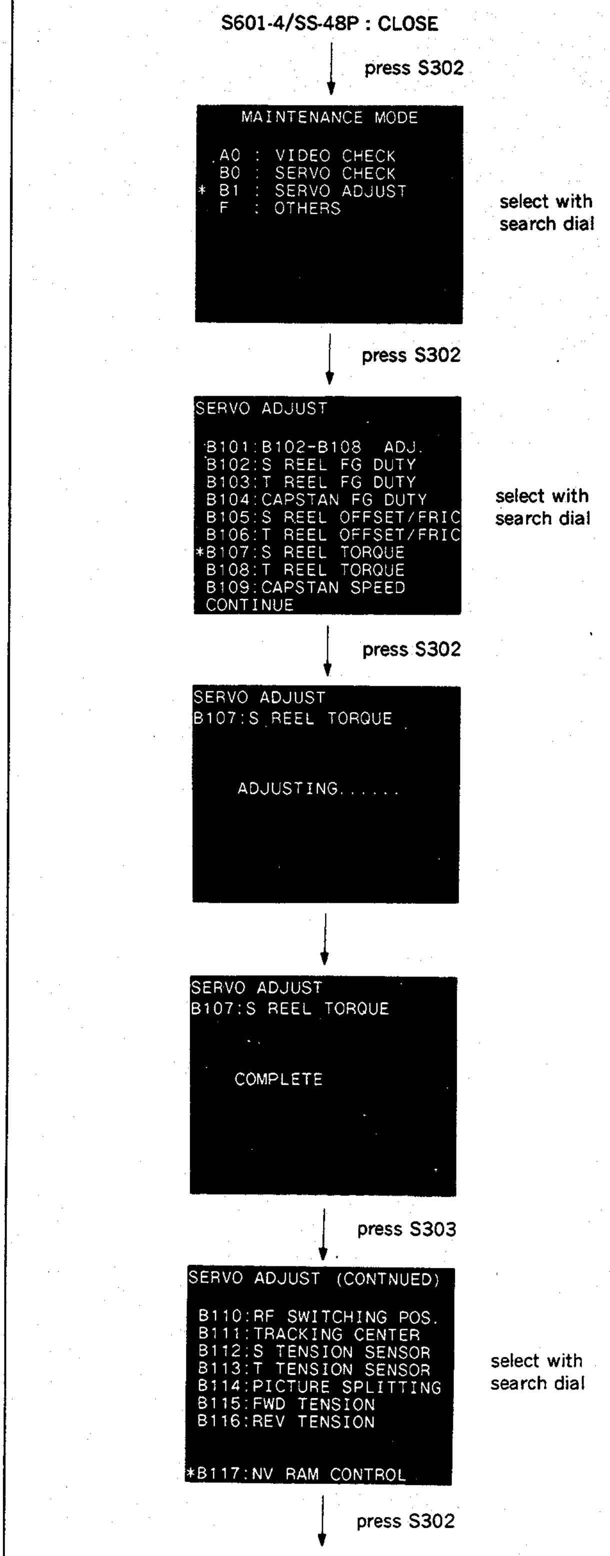
- Be sure to perform the S reel torque adjustment when a supply reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B107: S REEL TORQUE" which is displaying on monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "S REEL TORQUE".
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
8. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.



```
        MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
*B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B107:S REEL TORQUE


    ADJUSTING......
```

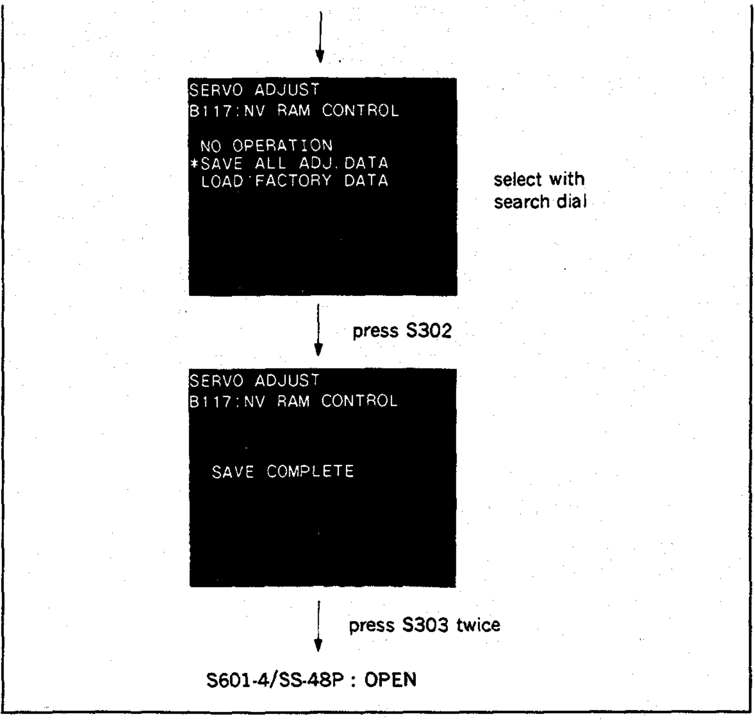
```
SERVO ADJUST
B107:S REEL TORQUE


    COMPLETE
```

```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

10. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note 1: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen. Perform reel FG duty adjustment. Check the reel motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board).

Note 2: When the "SERVO ADJUST" mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

  SAVE COMPLETE
```

5-12-6. T Reel Offset/Friction Adjustment

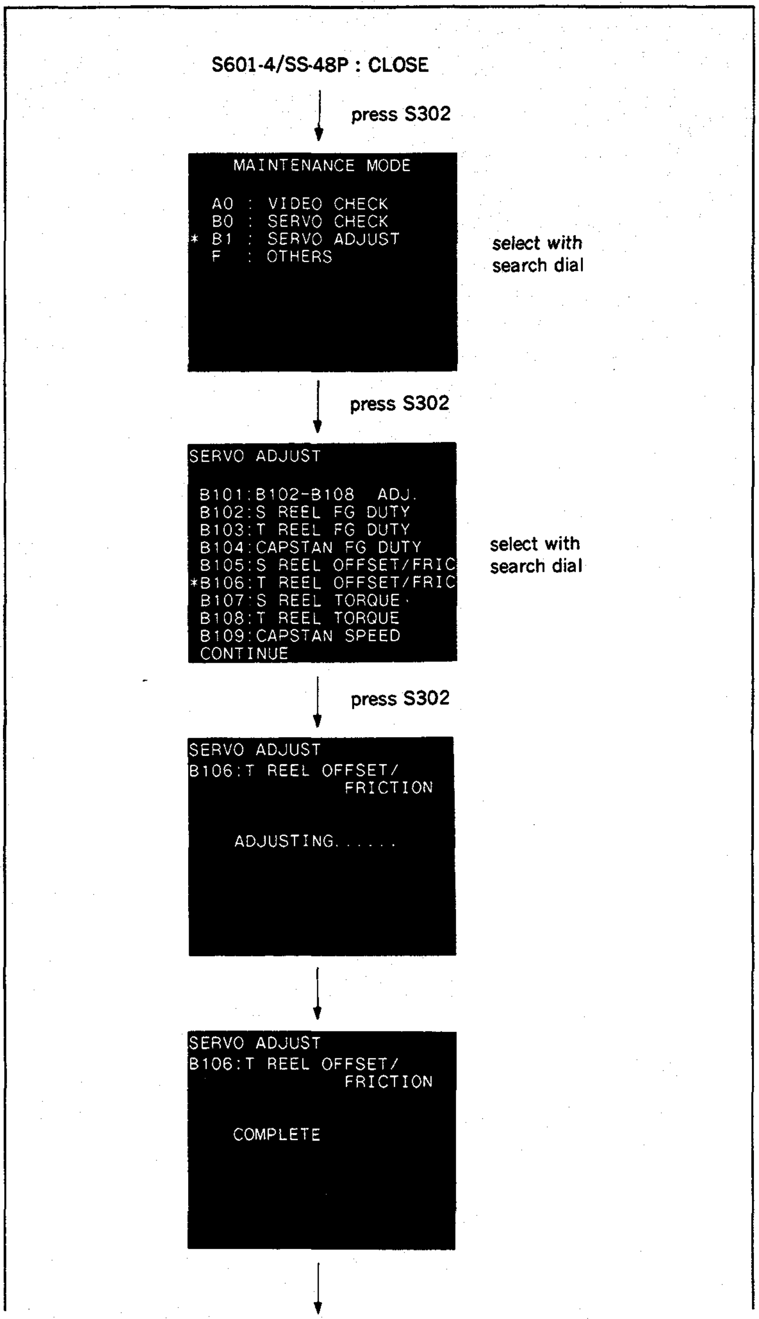
- Be sure to perform the T reel offset/friction adjustment when a take-up reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B106: T REEL OFFSET/FRIC" which is displaying on monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "T REEL OFFSET/FRIC".
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen. When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
8. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
10. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.



```
MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0 : VIDEO CHECK
  B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
  F  : OTHERS
```

```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
*B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

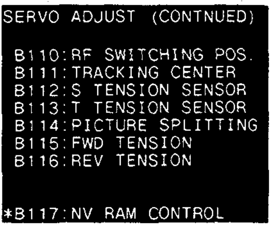
```
SERVO ADJUST
B106:T REEL OFFSET/
               FRICTION

    ADJUSTING......
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B106:T REEL OFFSET/
               FRICTION

    COMPLETE
```

Note 1: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
Check the reel motor, reel FG duty adjustment and reel motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board).

Note 2: When the "SERVO ADJUST" mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.

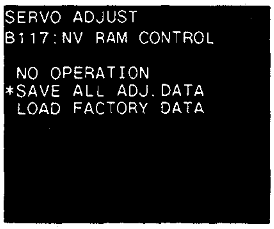
press S303



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search Dial

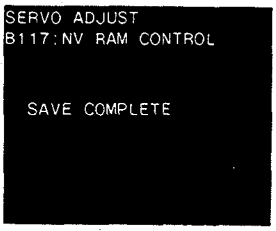
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-12-7. T Reel Torque Adjustment

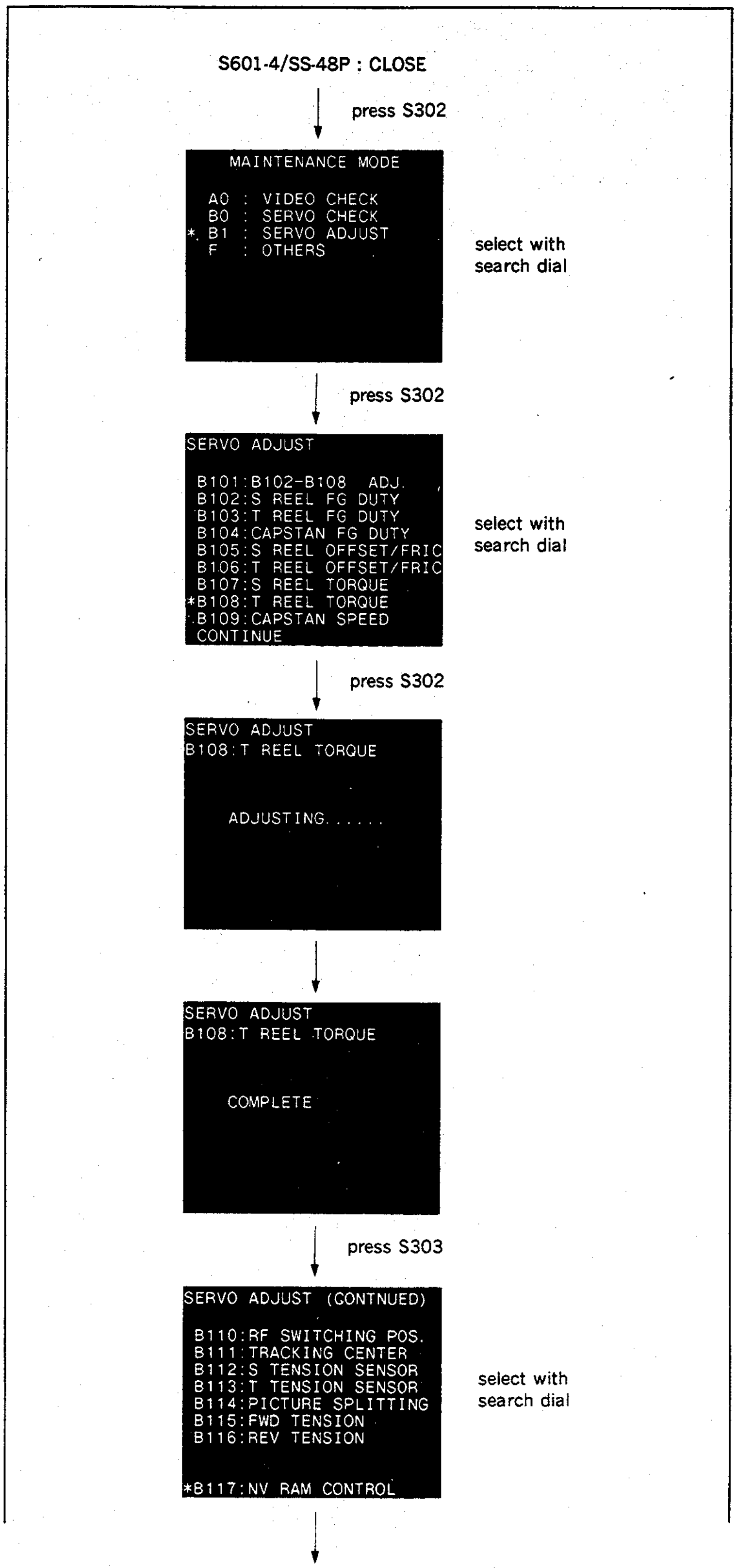
- Be sure to perform the T reel torque adjustment when a take-up reel motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move ∗ mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move ∗ mark to "B108: T REEL TORQUE" which is displaying on monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "T REEL TORQUE".
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
8. Move ∗ mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.



S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

press S302

```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVO CHECK
*B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108 ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
*B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B108:T REEL TORQUE

    ADJUSTING......
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B108:T REEL TORQUE

    COMPLETE
```

press S303

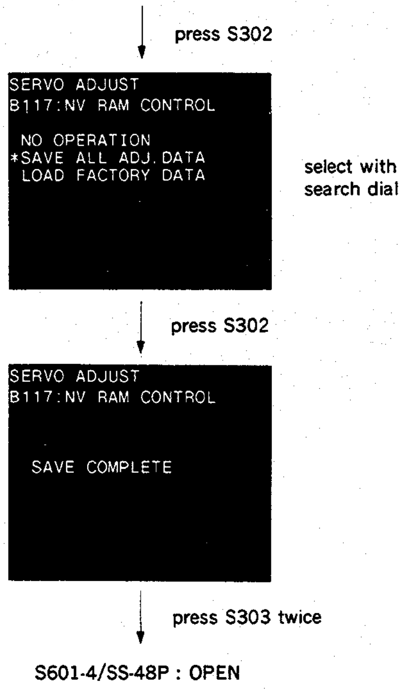
```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
10. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note 1: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen. Perform reel FG duty adjustment. Check the reel motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board).

Note 2: When the "SERVO ADJUST" mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

5-13. REEL POSITION MOTOR REPLACEMENT

Tools

L shaped wrench (across flat has 0.89 mm)
: 7-700-736-06
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A

Replacement flow chart

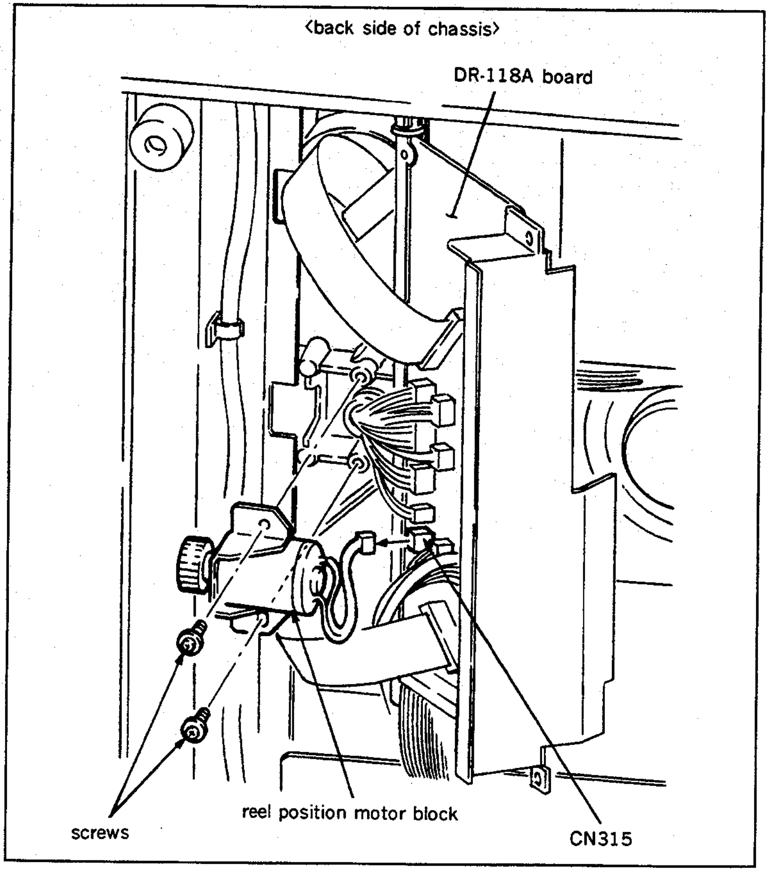
Replacement of reel position motor

↓

Confirmation of reel position motor operation

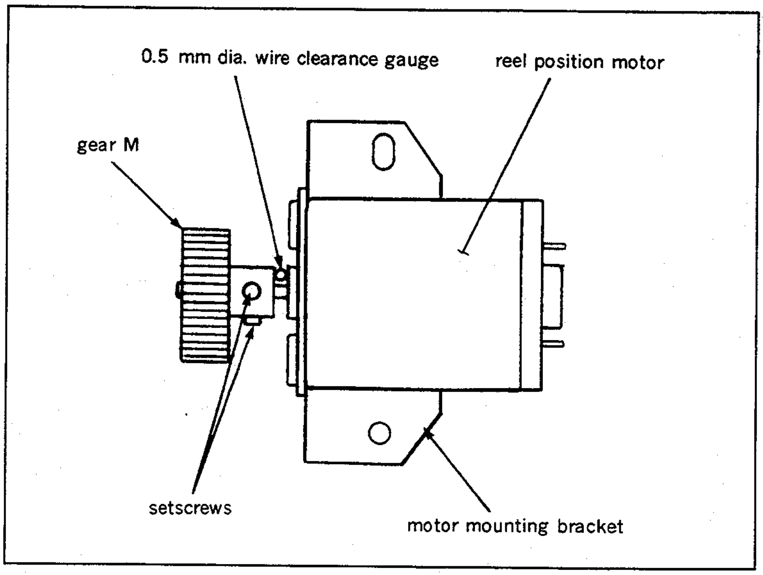
Removal

1. Open DR-118A board.
2. Disconnect a connecter CN315 of the reel position motor from DR-118A board.
3. Remove two screws shown in the figure, and remove a reel position motor block.
4. Loosen two setscrews of a gear M, and remove the gear M from the reel position motor shaft.
5. Remove two screws, and remove a reel position motor.
6. Unsloder two lead wires of the reel position motor.



Installation

7. Solder two lead wires unsoldered in step (6) to a new reel position motor.
   Solder a yellow leed wire to + terminal
8. Install the new reel position motor to a motor mounting bracket as the yellow lead wire faces in the direction of a S reel table.
9. Insert the gear M to the reel position motor shaft.
10. Put the wire clearance gauge (0.5 mm) between the gear M and boss of the motor, and tighen two setscrews while pressing the gear M towards the motor side.
11. Install the reel position motor block to the chassis with two screws.
12. Connect the reel position motor connector to CN315 on DR-118A board.



Adjustment after replacement

13. Perform confirmation of reel position motor operation. (Refer to Section 5-13-1.).

5-13-1. Reel Position Motor Operation Check

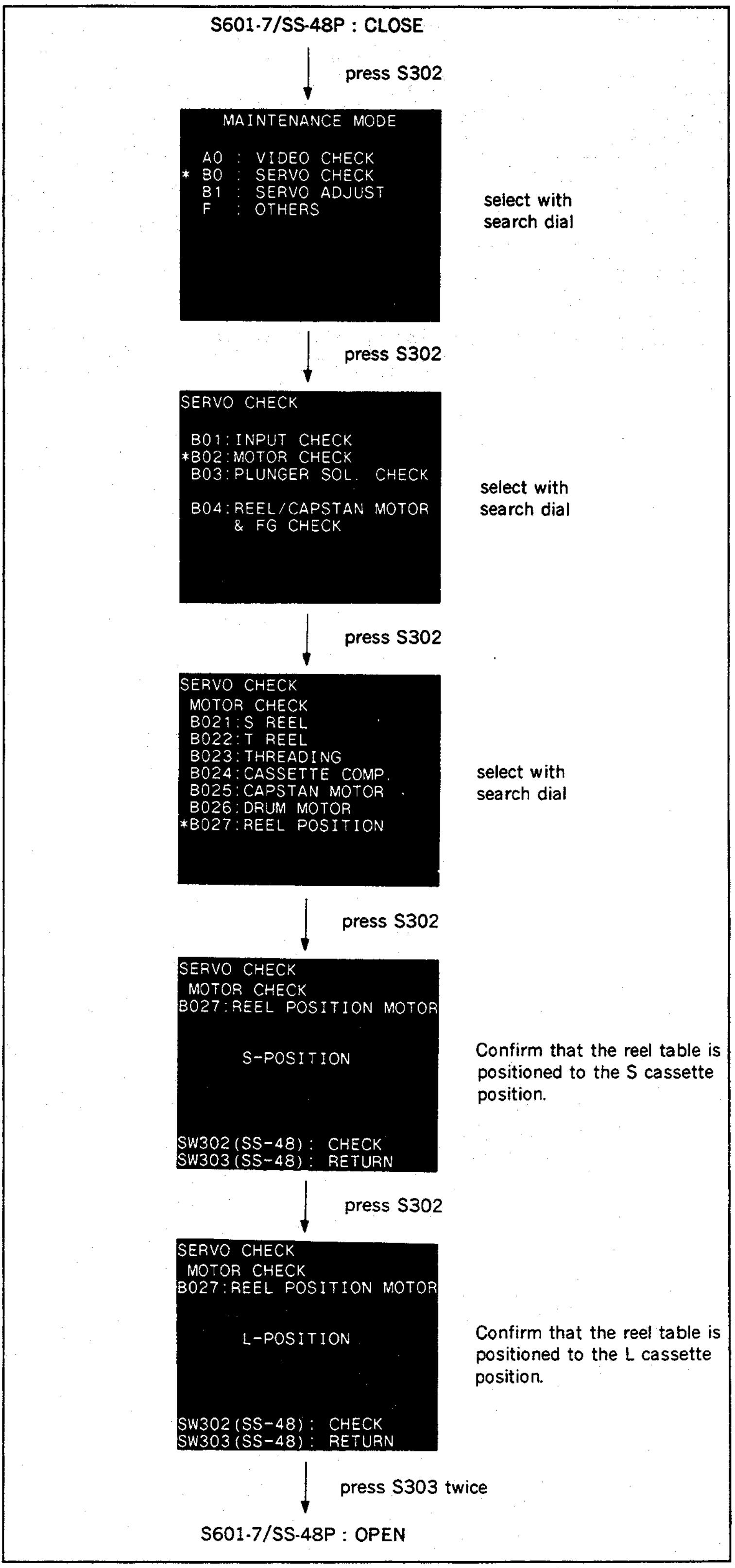
- Be sure to perform the reel position motor operation check when a reel position motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Turn the POWER to ON. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "BO: SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO CHECK" mode.
5. Move * mark to "BO2: MOTOR CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "MOTOR CHECK" menu.
7. Move * mark to "BO27: REEL POSITION" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "REEL POSITION" sub-menu.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board, make sure that a reel table moves.
   When the reel table is positioned to the S cassette position, confirm that the message "S-POSITION" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When the reel table is positioned to the L cassette position, confirm that the message "L-POSITION" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   If the message does not apper on the monitor screen, check the reel position motor driver circuit (on DR-118A board) and reel position switch operates normally.
10. Press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
11. After confirmation, turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
* B0 : SERVO CHECK
 B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

```
SERVO CHECK

 B01:INPUT CHECK
*B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
 B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
 B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
 B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
 B026:DRUM MOTOR
*B027:REEL POSITION
```

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B027:REEL POSITION MOTOR

      S-POSITION


SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

Confirm that the reel table is positioned to the S cassette position.

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B027:REEL POSITION MOTOR

      L-POSITION


SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

Confirm that the reel table is positioned to the L cassette position.

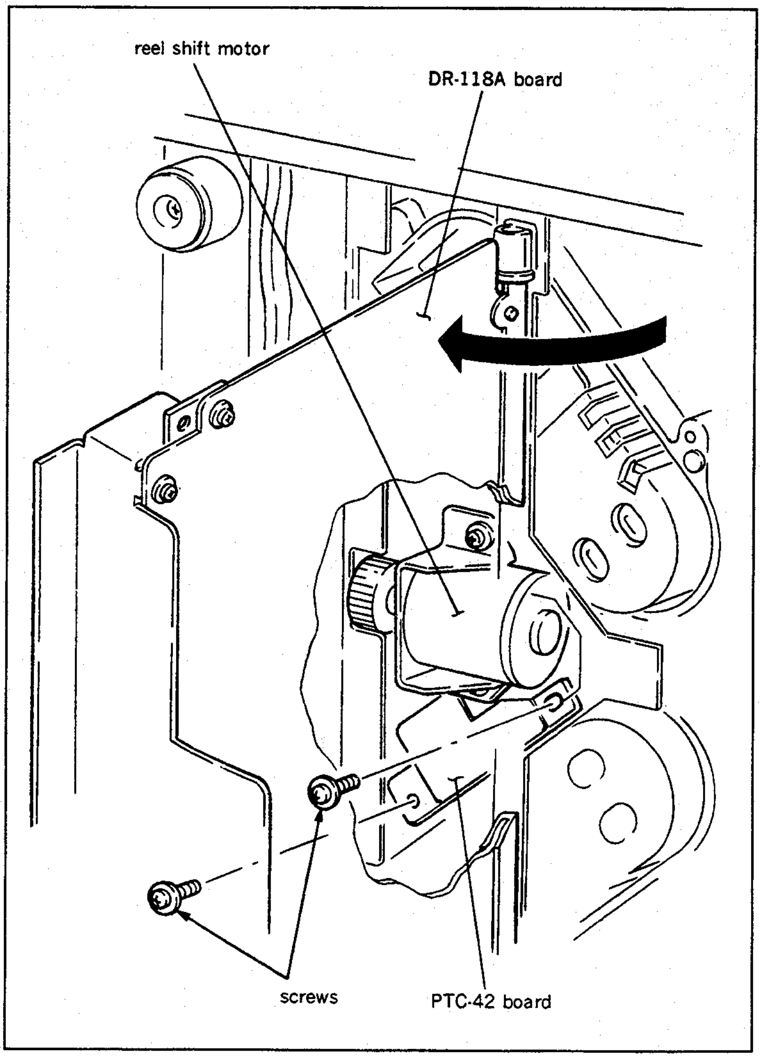
5-14. REEL POSITION SENSOR REPLACEMENT

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of reel position sensor

↓

Confirmation of reel position motor operation



Removal

1. Open DR-118A board.
2. Remove two screws that holds PTC-42 board where a reel position sensors are mounted.
3. Disconnect connector CN924 while lifting PTC-42 board.

Installation

4. Mount a new reel position sensor to match a polarity that is silk screened on the printed circuit board.
5. Connect connector CN924 to PTC-42 board, and install it to the chassis.

Adjustment after replacement

6. Perform reel position motor operation check. (Refer to Section 5-13-1.)

5-15. THREADING MOTOR REPLACEMENT

Tools

L shaped wrench (across flat has 1.27 mm)
: 7-700-736-01
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A

Replacement flow chart

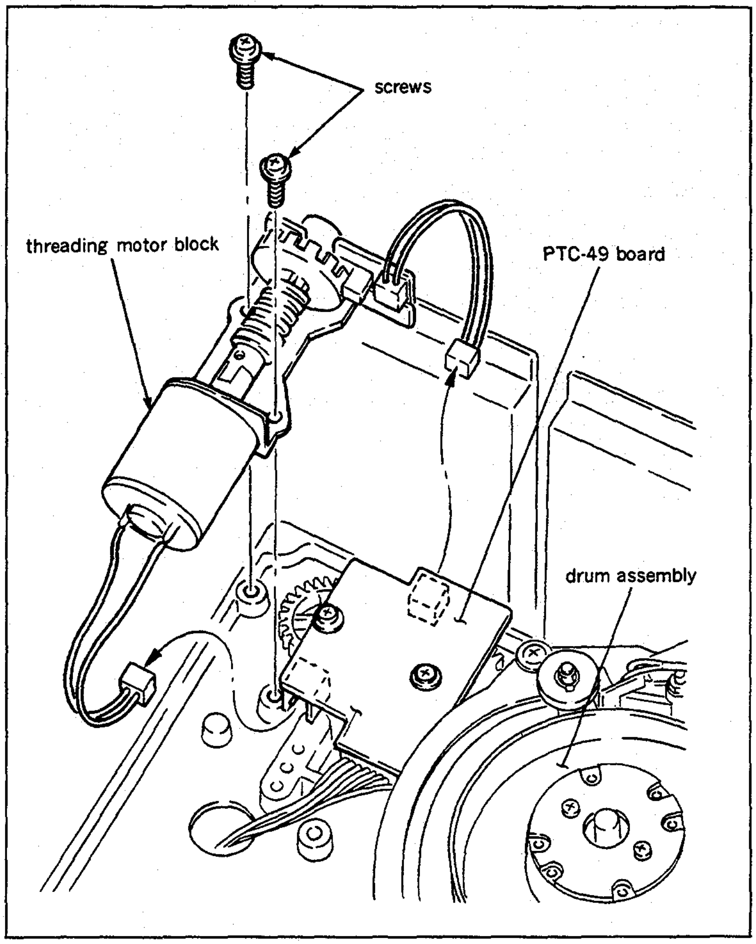
Replacement of threading motor

↓

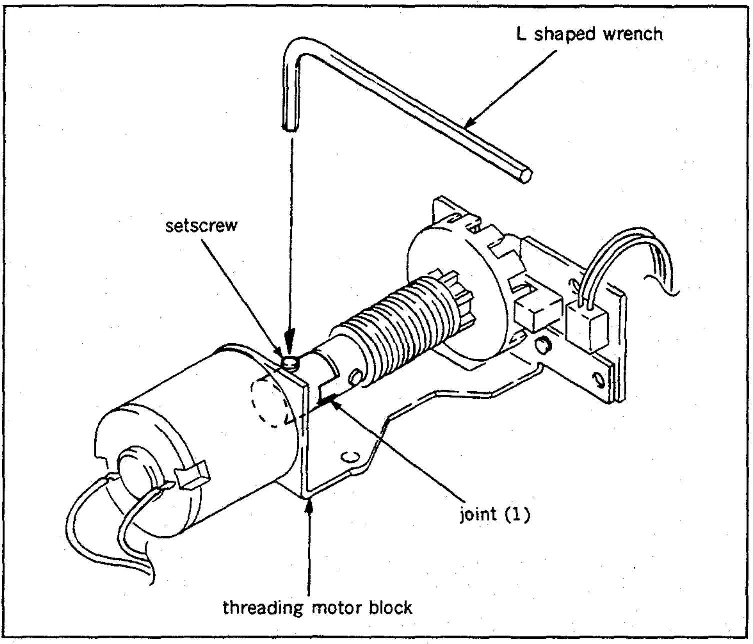
Confirmation of threading motor operation

Removal

1. Disconnect connectors CN903 and CN902 from PTC-49 board.
2. Remove two screws shown in the figure, and remove a threading motor block.


screws
threading motor block
PTC-49 board
drum assembly

3. Loosen a setscrew of a joint (1) with L shaped wrench.
4. Remove two screws, and remove a threading motor.
5. Unsolder two lead wires from the threading motor.

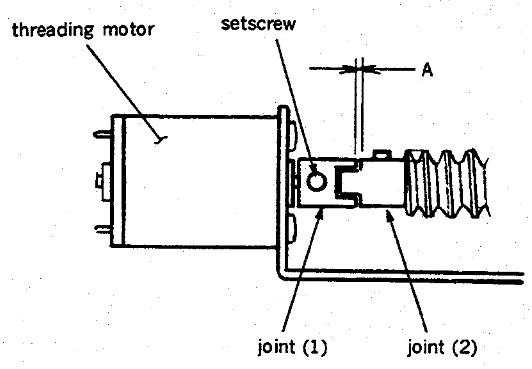

L shaped wrench
setscrew
joint (1)
threading motor block

Installation

6. Solder two lead wires which are unsoldered in step (5) to a new threading motor.

Note :Solder brown lead wire to plus terminal.

7. After a threading motor shaft is pass through a hole of the threading motor bracket, and insert the joint (1) to the motor shaft.
8. Install the threading motor to the threading motor bracket with two screws so that the following two requirements are satisfied:
    - The brown lead wire must face in the direction of the drum when installing to the threading motor bracket.
    - Engage the joint (1) with the joint (2) of the worm assembly.
9. Install the joint (1) to the motor shaft with a setscrew so that the clearance between the joints (1) and (2) satisfies the specification.
10. Make sure that the threading motor rotation detection ring rotates smoothly when it is turned by fingers.
11. Install the threading motor block to chassis with two screws.
12. Connect the connectors CN903 and CN902 to PTC-49 board.



Spec.: 0.5 mm≦A≦0.8 mm

Adjustment after replacement

13. Perform threading motor operation check. (Refer to Section 5-15-1.)

5-15-1. Threading Motor Operation Check

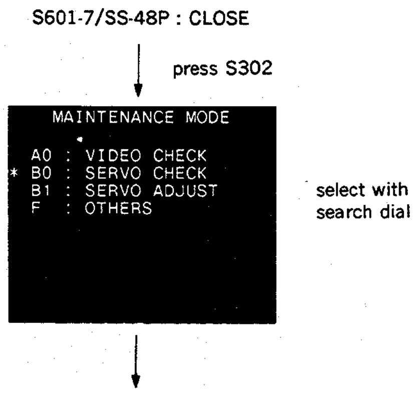
- Be sure to perform the theading motor operation check when a threading motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

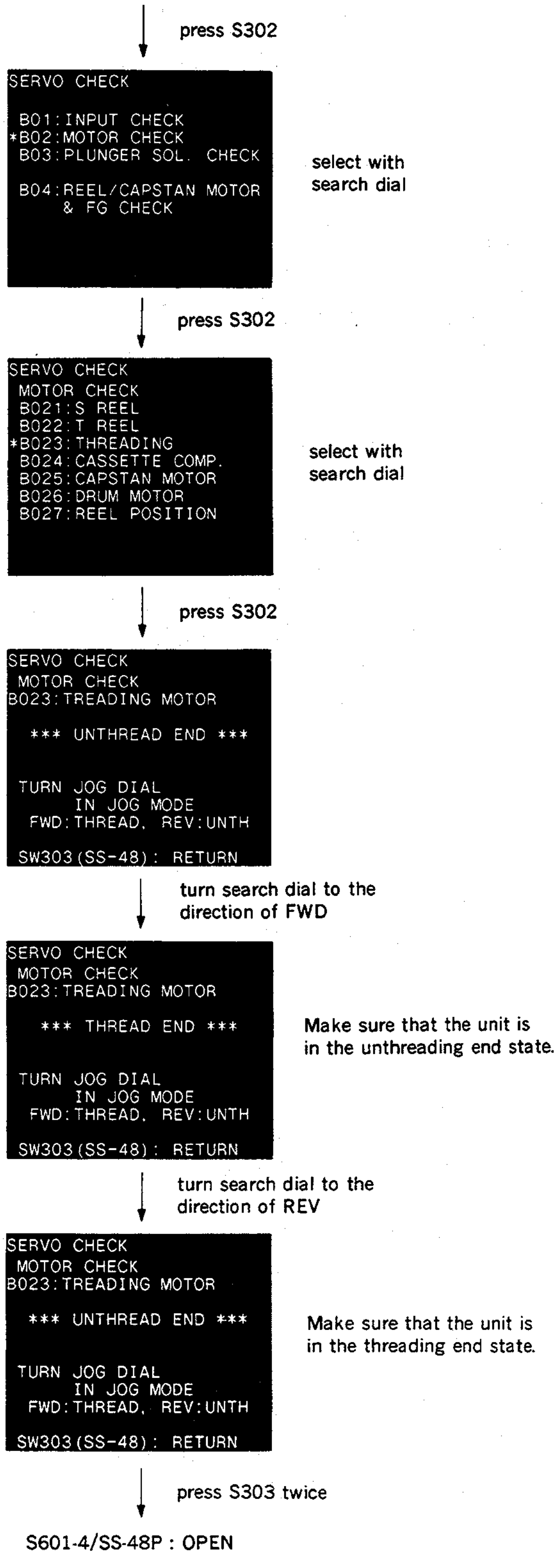
Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Turn the POWER to ON. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move ＊ mark to "BO: SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.



```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
*B0 : SERVO CHECK
 B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO CHECK" mode.
5. Move ∗ mark to "BO2: MOTOR CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "MOTOR CHECK" menu.
7. Move ∗ mark to "BO23: THREADING" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "THREADING" sub-menu.
9. Message "TURN JOG DIAL IN JOG MODE, FWD : THREAD, REV : UNTH" will appear on the monitor screen.
   Then turn the search dial to the direction of FWD according to the message, make sure that the threading motor rotates in the threading direction, and message on the screen changes into "THREAD END".
10. Turn the search dial to the direction of REV. Make sure that the threading motor rotates in the unthreading direction, and message on the screen changes into "UNTHREAD END".
    If the message does not appear, check the loading motor drive circuit, loading FG amplifier (on DR-118A board) and to make sure that the loading TOP/END switch operates normally.
11. Press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
12. After confirmation, turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



press S302

```
SERVO CHECK

 B01:INPUT CHECK
*B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
 B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
*B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
 B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
 B026:DRUM MOTOR
 B027:REEL POSITION
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

  *** UNTHREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

turn search dial to the direction of FWD

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

   *** THREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

Make sure that the unit is in the unthreading end state.

turn search dial to the direction of REV

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B023:TREADING MOTOR

  *** UNTHREAD END ***


 TURN JOG DIAL
      IN JOG MODE
  FWD:THREAD, REV:UNTH

 SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

Make sure that the unit is in the threading end state.

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-16. S SLIDER ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

Tools

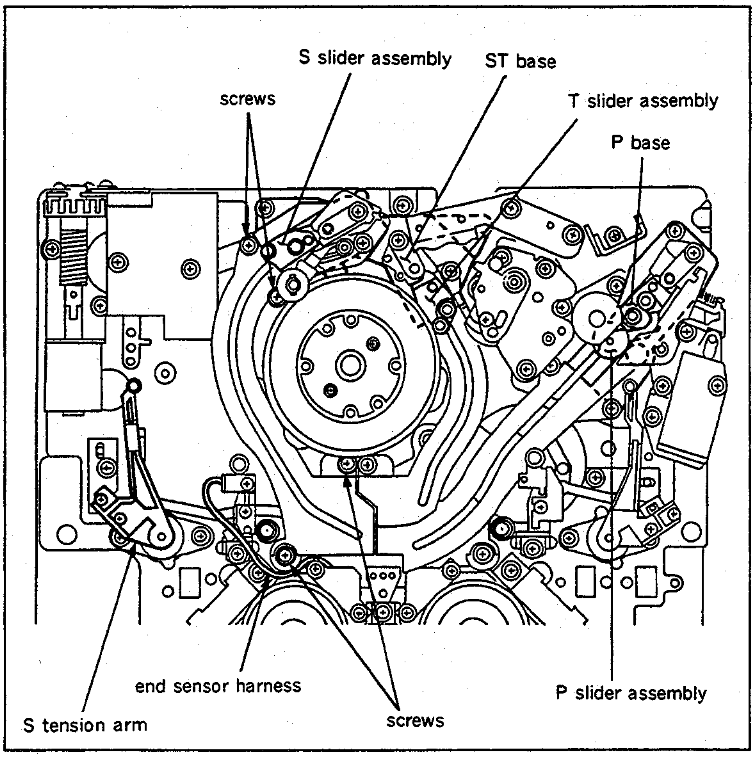
Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Molyton grease	: 7-662-001-41

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of S slider assembly
↓
Adjustment of tape running

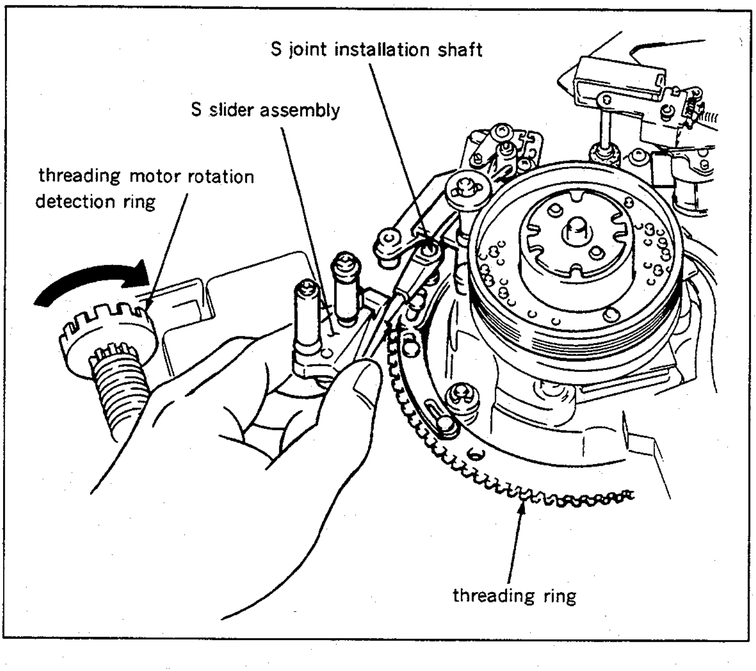
Removal

1. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put a S slider assmbly to 5 mm back from the threading completion mode. At this time S, T and P slider assemblies are moved on ST base and P base.
2. Unhook an end sensor harness as shown in the figure from a clamper of a S rail.
3. Remove four screws that holds the S rail, and remove the S rail.


S slider assembly
ST base
screws
T slider assembly
P base
end sensor harness
P slider assembly
S tension arm
screws

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to a drum and tape guide during removal.

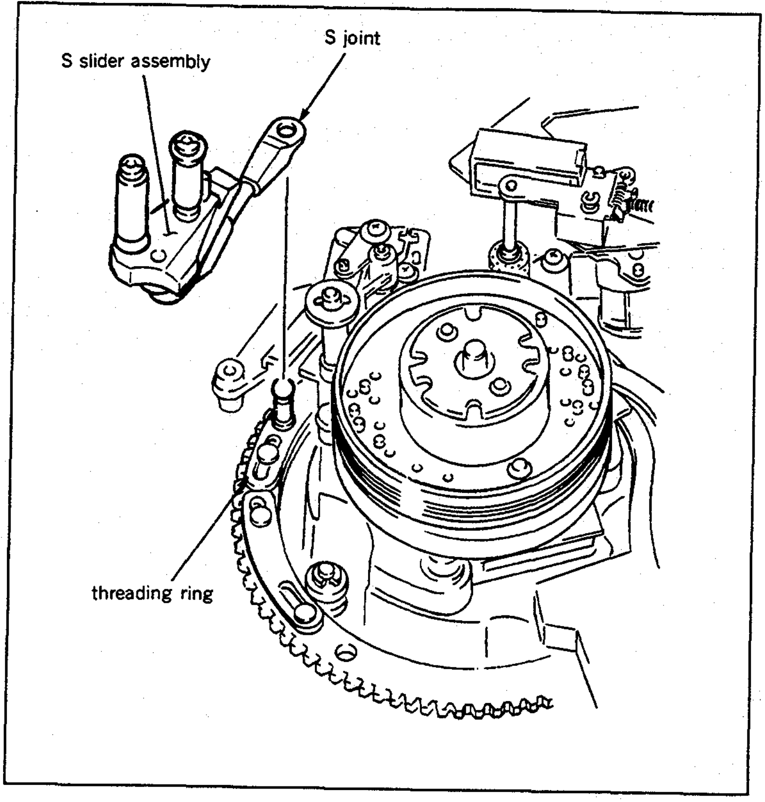
4. Hold the S slider assembly with hand and turn the motor rotation detection ring of the threading motor block in the counterclockwise direction by fingers until the S joint installation shaft on a threading ring comes to the position as shown in the figure.


S joint installation shaft
S slider assembly
threading motor rotation
detection ring
threading ring

5. Remove the S joint from a shaft on the threading ring, and remove the S slider assembly from the unit.

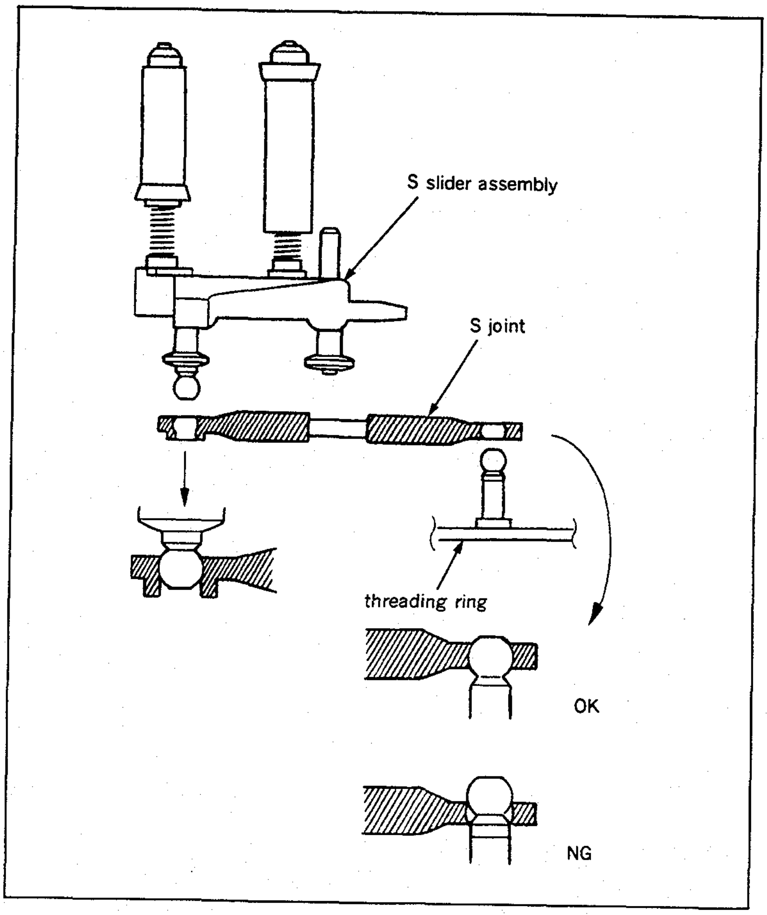
Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the drum during removal.

6. Remove the S joint from the S slider assembly.

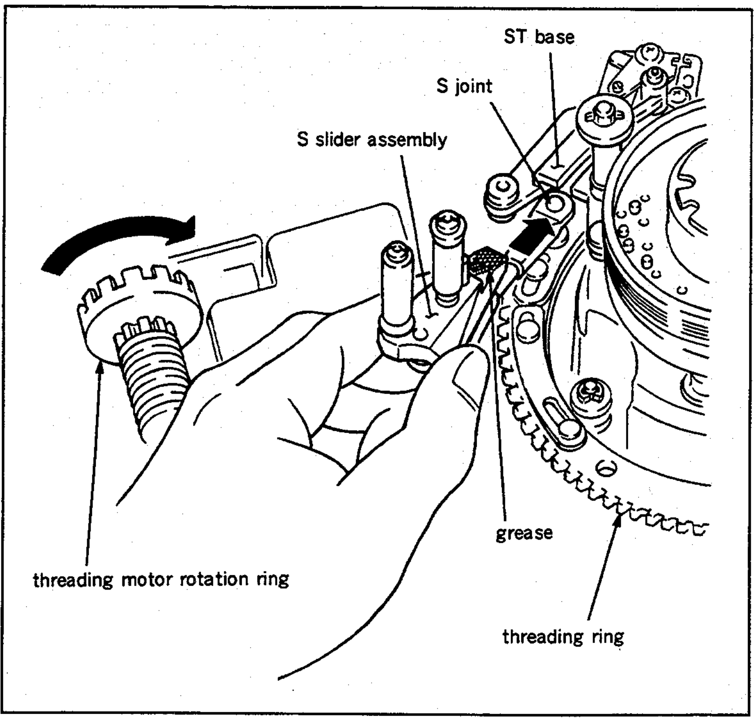

S joint
S slider assembly
threading ring

Installation

7. Clean the contacting surfaces of the S rail with the S slider assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
8. Clean the contacting surfaces of a new S slider assembly with the S rail with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
9. Insert the S joint to the S slider assembly as show in the figure.


S slider assembly
S joint
threading ring
OK
NG

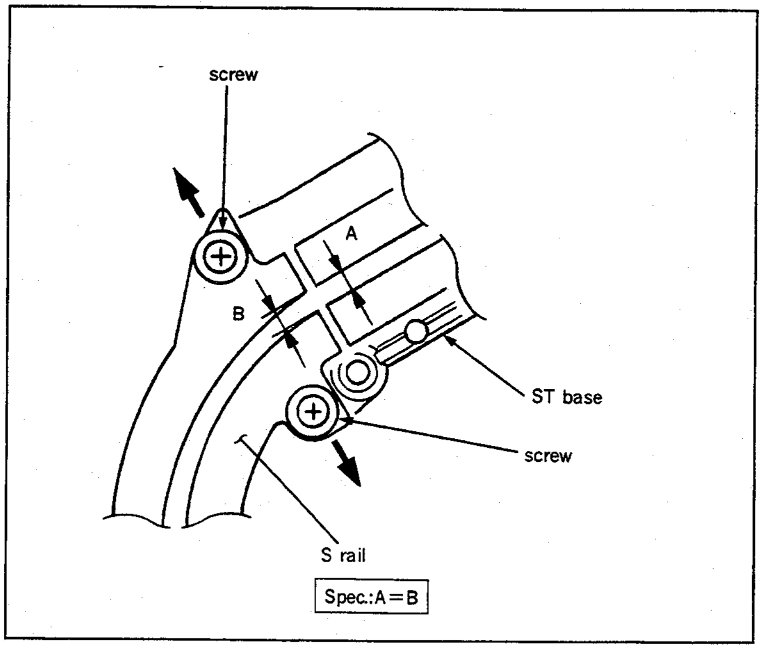
10. Insert the other end of the S joint into the shaft on the threading ring.
11. Hold the S slider assembly with hand and turn the motor rotation detection ring of the threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers, and insert the S slider assembly into the groove of the ST base.
12. Install the S rail to the chassis with four screws.



Note 1 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the drum and the tape guide.

Note 2 : When installing the S rail, push the S rail in the direction of the arrors so that align the width of groove of the ST base and S rail.

13. After turning the motor rotation detection ring in the counterclockwise direction with fingers, and smear a molyton grease slighly to the part as shown in the figure.



Note 1 : Do not smear the grease to the rail.

Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to smear grease to the tape guide and drum, etc. when smearing grease. If it is smeared by mistake, wipe it off completely with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

14. Turn the motor rotation detection ring in the clockwise and counterclockwise directions by fingers, and make sure that the S slider assembly moves smoothly.

Adjustment after replacement

15. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)

5-17. T SLIDER ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Molyton grease	: 7-662-001-41

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of T slider assembly

↓

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

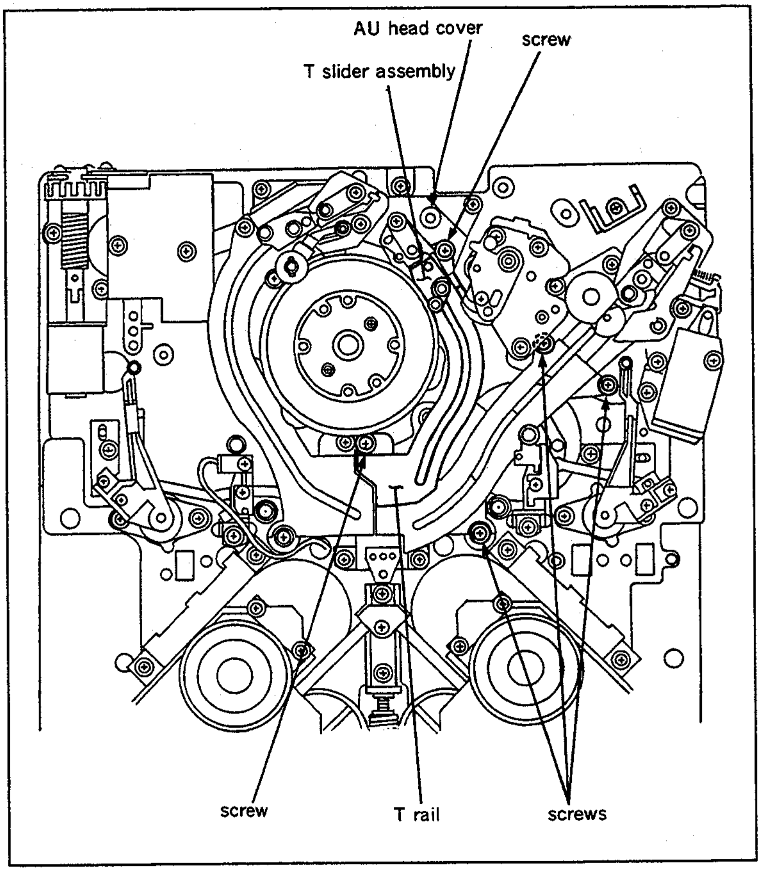
↓

Adjustment of tape running

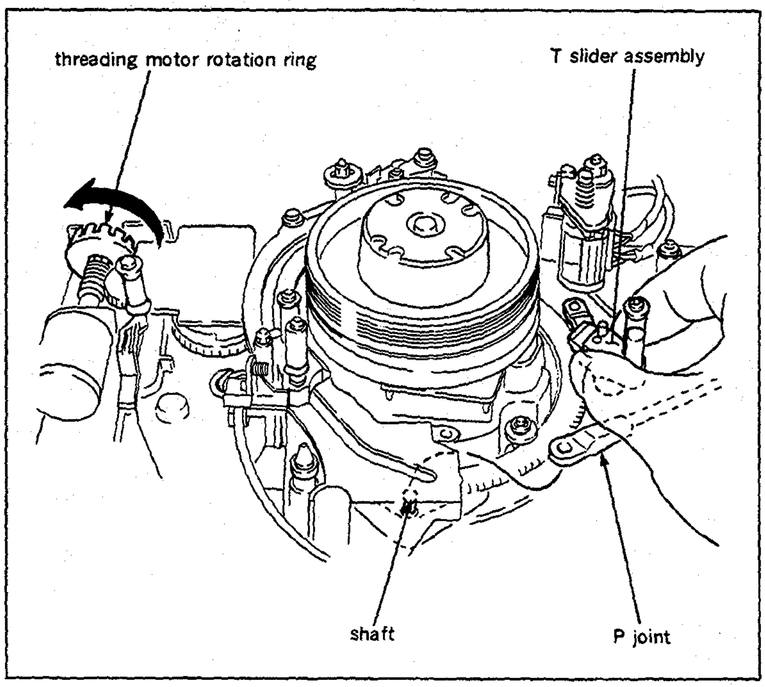
Removal

1. Remove a cleaning roller block. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)
3. Rotate a drive gear by fingers so that a reel table is placed to the L cassette position.
4. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put a T slider assmbly to 5 mm back from the threading completion mode. At this time S, T and P slider assemblies are moved on ST base and P base.
5. Unhook a tape beginning sensoe harness from a T rail.
6. Remove five screws that holds the T rail, and remove the T rail.

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to a drum and tape guide during removal.



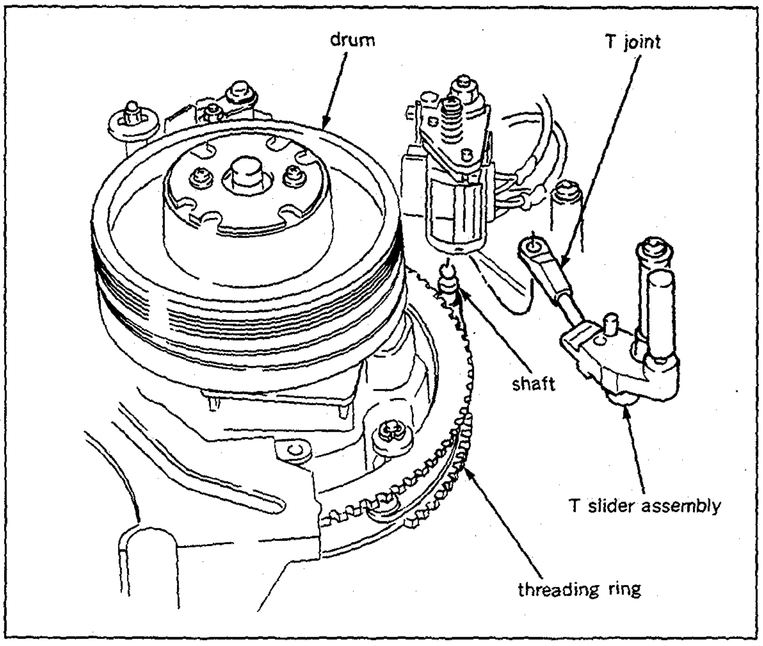
7. Remove the P joint of a P slider assembly from a shaft on the threading ring.
8. Hold the T slider assembly with hand and turn the motor rotation detection ring of the threading motor block in the counterclockwise direction by fingers until the T joint installation shaft on the threading ring comes to the position as shown in the figure.


threading motor rotation ring
T slider assembly
shaft
P joint

9. Remove the T joint from the shaft on the threading ring, and remove the T slider assembly from the unit.

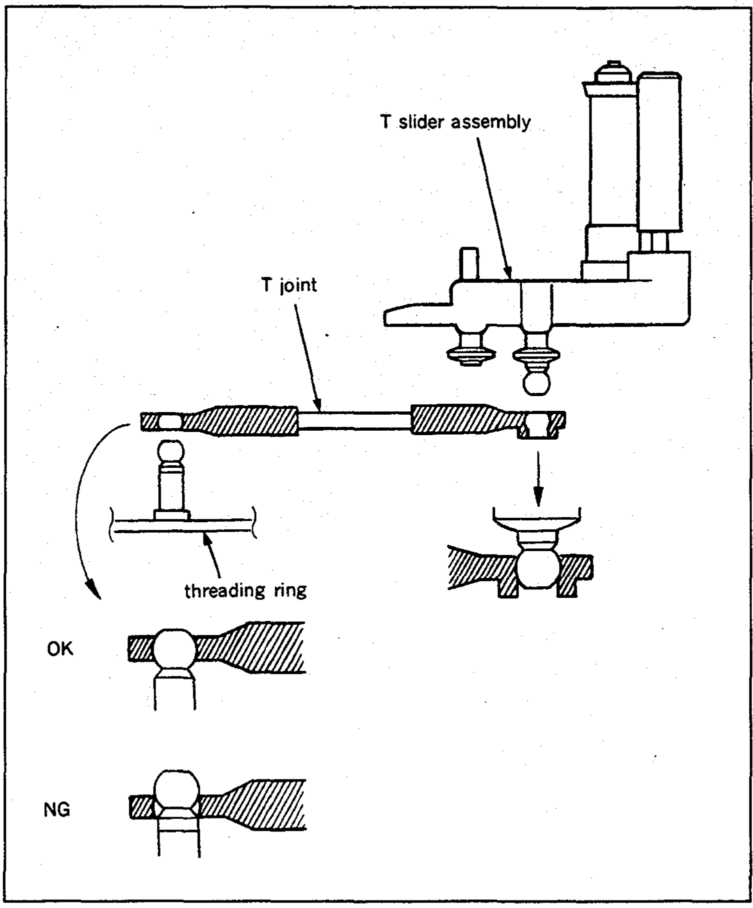
Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the drum during removal.

10. Remove the T joint from the T slider assembly.

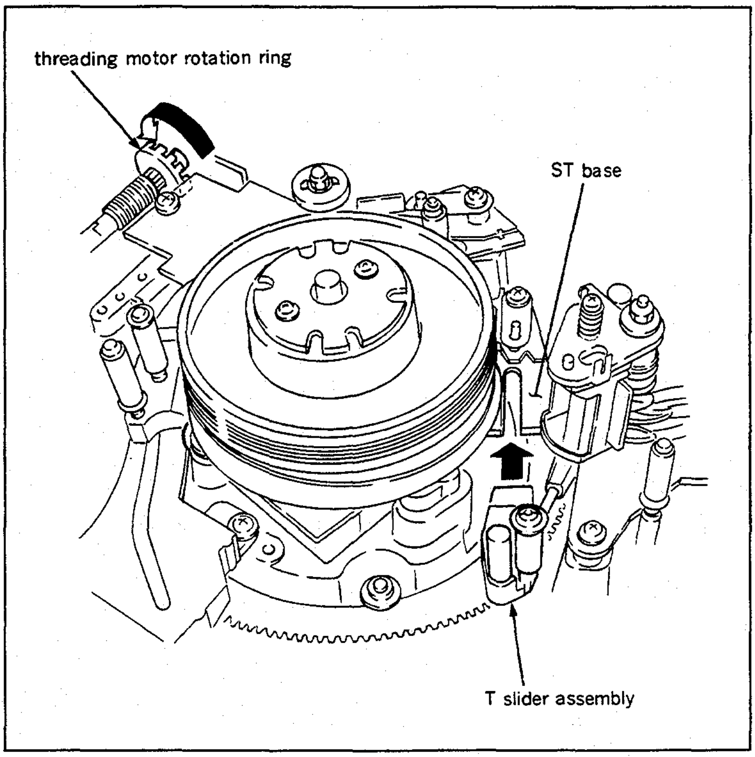

drum
T joint
shaft
T slider assembly
threading ring

Installation

11. Clean the contacting surfaces of the T rail with the T slider assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
12. Clean the contacting surfaces of a new T slider assembly with the T rail with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
13. Insert the T joint to the T slider assembly as show in the figure.


T slider assembly
T joint
threading ring
OK
NG

14. Insert the other end of the T joint into a shaft on the threading ring.
15. Hold the T slider assembly with hand and turn the motor rotation detection ring of the threading motor block in the counterclockwise direction by fingers, and insert the T slider assembly into the groove of the ST base.
16. Insert the P joint into the shaft on the threading ring.


threading motor rotation ring
ST base
T slider assembly

17. Install the T rail to the chassis with five screws.

Note 1 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the drum and the tape guide.
Note 2 : When installing the T rail, align the width of groove of the ST base and T rail.
Note 3 : When fastening the T rail with the screw shown in the figure, pay particular attention not to twist the T rail.

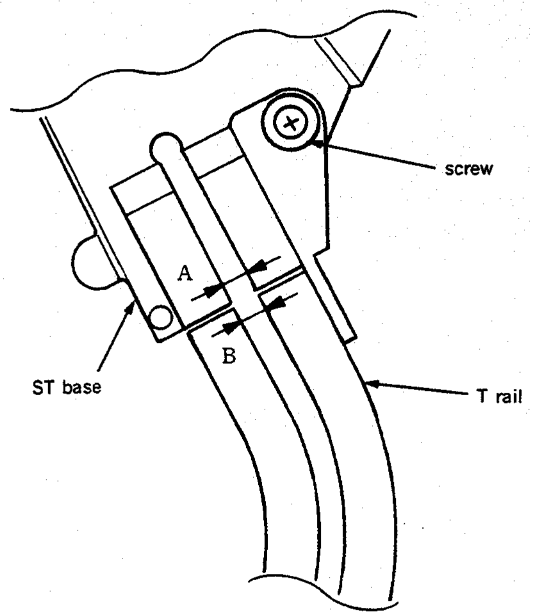
18. After turning the motor rotation detection ring in the counterclockwise direction with fingers, and smear a molyton grease slighly to the part as shown in the figure.

Note 1 : Do not smear the grease to the rail.
Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to smear grease to the tape guide and drum, etc. when smearing grease. If it is smeared by mistake, wipe it off completely with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

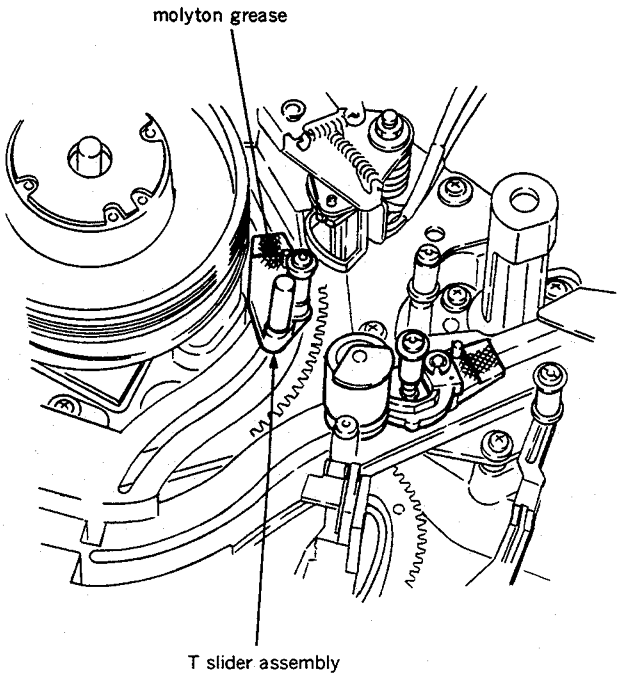
19. Turn the motor rotation detection ring in the clockwise and counterclockwise directions by fingers, and make sure that the T slider assembly moves smoothly.
20. Install the AU head cover together with the drum harness clamper.
21. Install the cleaning roller block. (Refer to steps(7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)

Adjustment after replacement

22. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
23. Perform tape running adjustment.
(Refer to Section 6-3.)



Spec.: A=B



5-18. P SLIDER ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Molyton grease	: 7-662-001-41

Replacement flow chart

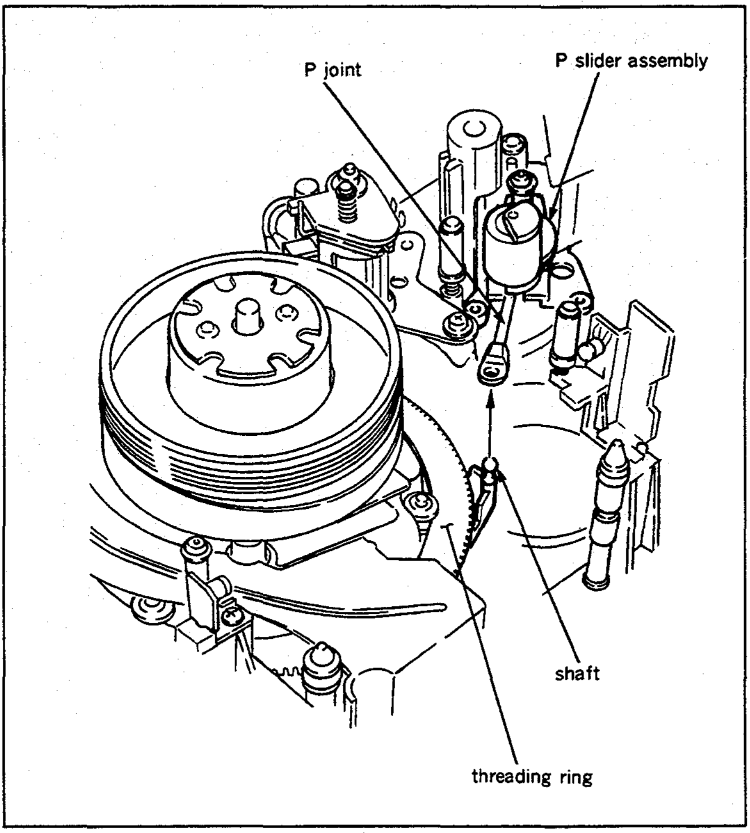
Replacement of P slider assembly

↓

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

↓

Adjustment of tape running



Removal

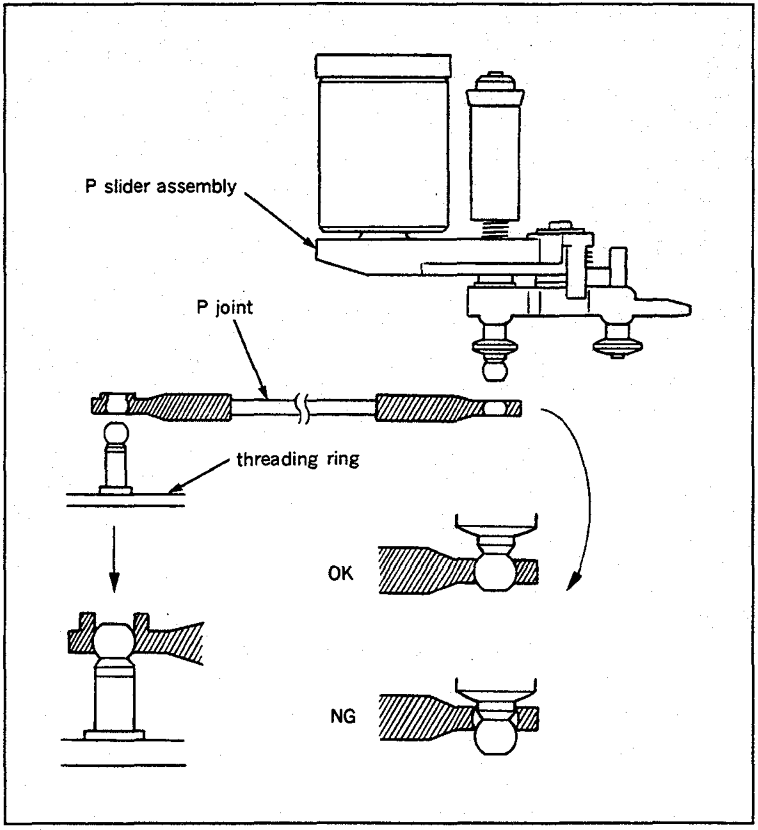
1. Remove a cleaning roller block. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)
3. Rotate a drive gear by fingers so that a reel table is placed to the L cassette position.
4. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put a P slider assmbly to 5 mm back from the threading completion mode. At this time S, T and P slider assemblies are moved on ST base and P base.
5. Unhook a tape beginning sensor harness from a T rail, and remove five screws that holds the T rail, and remove it. (Refer to step (6) in Section 5-17.)

Note :Pay particular attention not to cause damage to a drum and tape guide during removal.

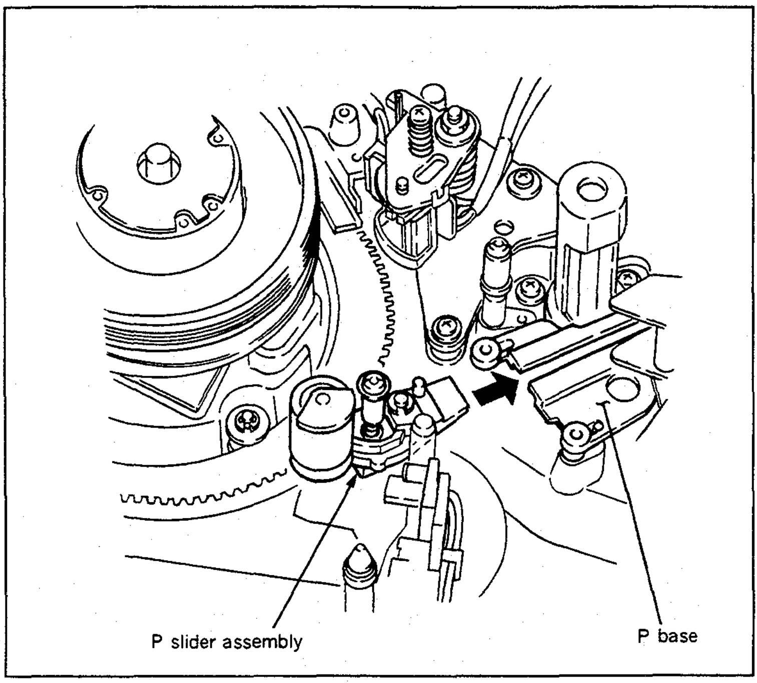
6. Remove a P joint which connects the P slider assembly with a threading ring from a shaft on the threading ring.
7. Remove the P joint from the P slider assembly.

Installation

8. Clean the contacting surfaces of the T rail with the T slider assembly and P slider assembly with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
9. Clean the contacting surfaces of a new P slider assembly with the T rail with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
10. Insert the P joint to the P slider assembly as shown in the figure.


P slider assembly
P joint
threading ring
OK
NG

11. Insert the P slider assembly into the groove of the ST base as shown in the figure.


P slider assembly
P base

12. Insert the P joint into the shaft on the threading ring.
13. Install the T rail to the chassis with five screws.

Note 1 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the drum and the tape guide.
Note 2 : When installing the T rail, align the width of groove of the ST base and T rail.
Note 3 : When fastening the T rail with the screw shown in the figure, pay particular attention not to twist the T rail.

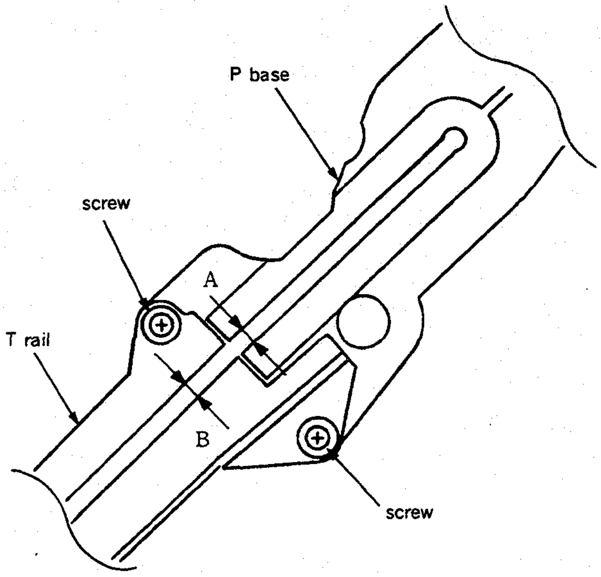
14. After turning the motor rotation detection ring in the counterclockwise direction with fingers, and smear a molyton grease slighly to the part as shown in the figure.

Note 1 : Do not smear the grease to the rail.
Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to smear grease to the tape guide and drum, etc. when smearing grease. If it is smeared by mistake, wipe it off completely with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

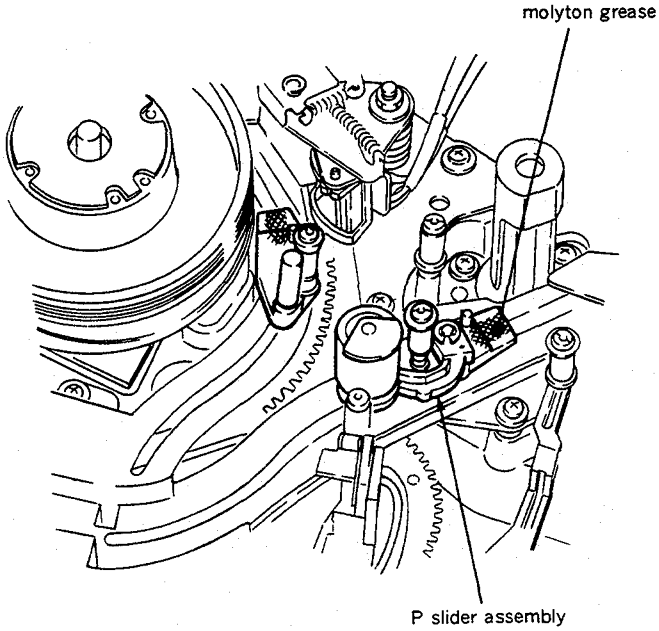
15. Turn the motor rotation detection ring in the clockwise and counterclockwise directions by fingers, and make sure that the P slider assembly moves smoothly.
16. Install the AU head cover together with the drum harness clamper.
17. Install the cleaning roller block. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)

Adjustment after replacement

18. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
19. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)



Spec.: A=B



5-19. S TENSION REGULATOR ARM ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

Tool

L shaped wrench (across flat has 0.89 mm)
: 7-700-736-06

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of S tension regulator arm assembly

↓

Adjustment of S tension regulator arm operating position

↓

Adjustment of S tension regulator sensor sensitivity

(Be sure to replace a T tension regulator arm and TR-73 board which places under the T tension regulator arm at the back side of the chassis in this step, if necessary.)

Adjustment of FWD back tension

↓

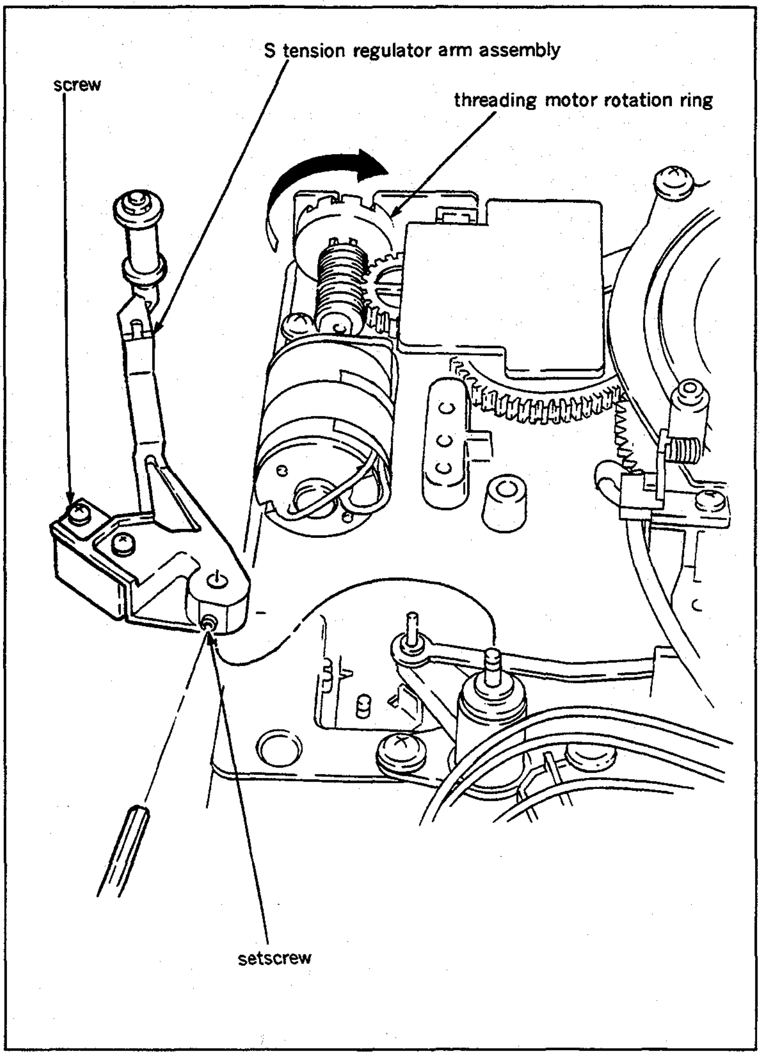
Adjustment of REV back tension

↓

Adjustment of tape running

↓

Confirmation of video tracking


S tension regulator arm assembly
screw
threading motor rotation ring
setscrew

Removal

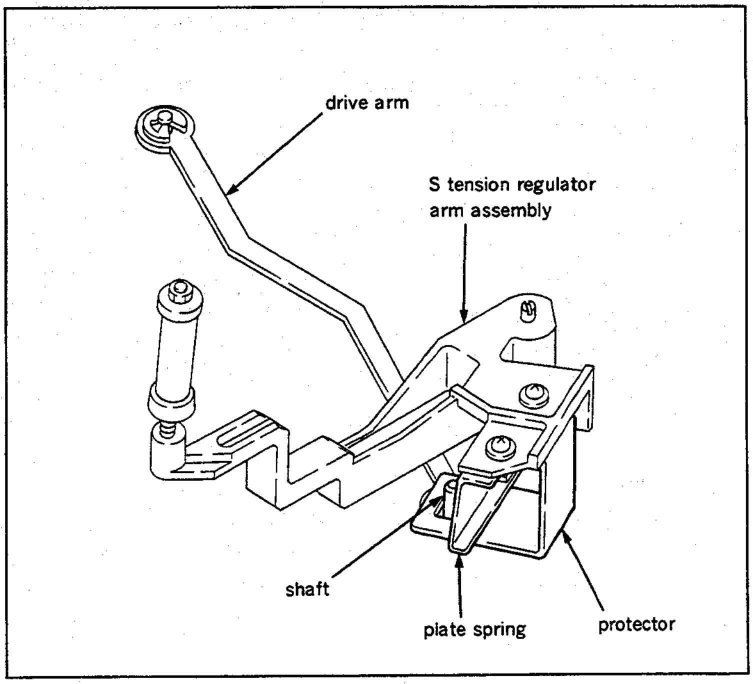
1. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking from the front, and put the unit into the threading completion mode.
2. Loosen a setscrew shown in the figure holding a S tension regulator arm assembly, and lift the S tension regulator arm assembly straight up to remove.

Installation

3. Install a new S tension regulator arm assembly to a shaft of a tension regulator base so that a protector, plate spring and shaft of a drive arm are assembled as shown in the figure, and tighten a setscrew.

Adjustment after replacement

4. Perform S tension regulator arm operating position adjustment. (Refer to step ⑿ and later in Section 5-19-1.)
5. Perform S tension sensor sensitivity adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-19-2.)
6. Perform FWD back tension adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-19-3.)
7. Perform REV back tension adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-19-4.)
8. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
9. Perform confirmation of video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)



5-19-1. S Tension Regulator Arm Operating Position Adjustment

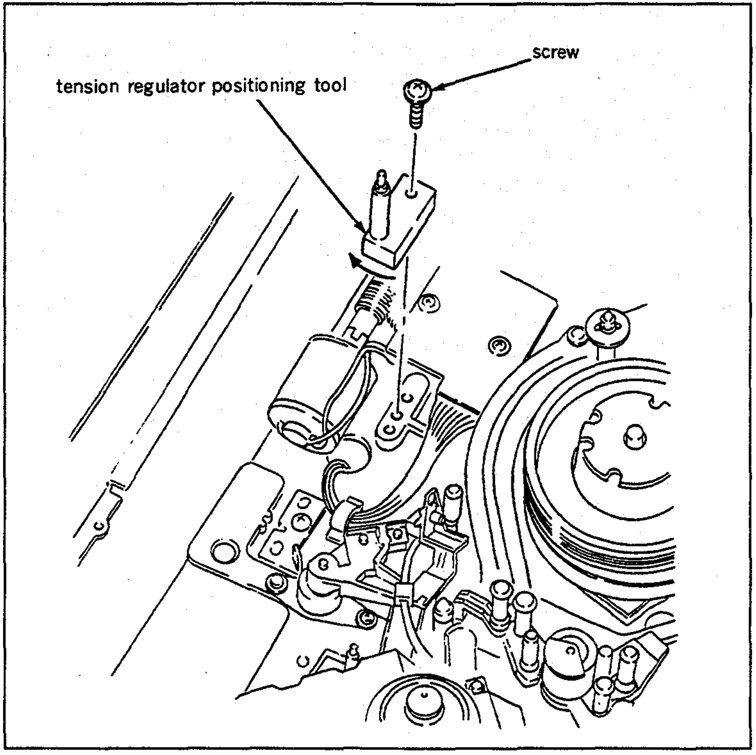
- Be sure to perform this adjustment without installing a cassette compartment.

Tools

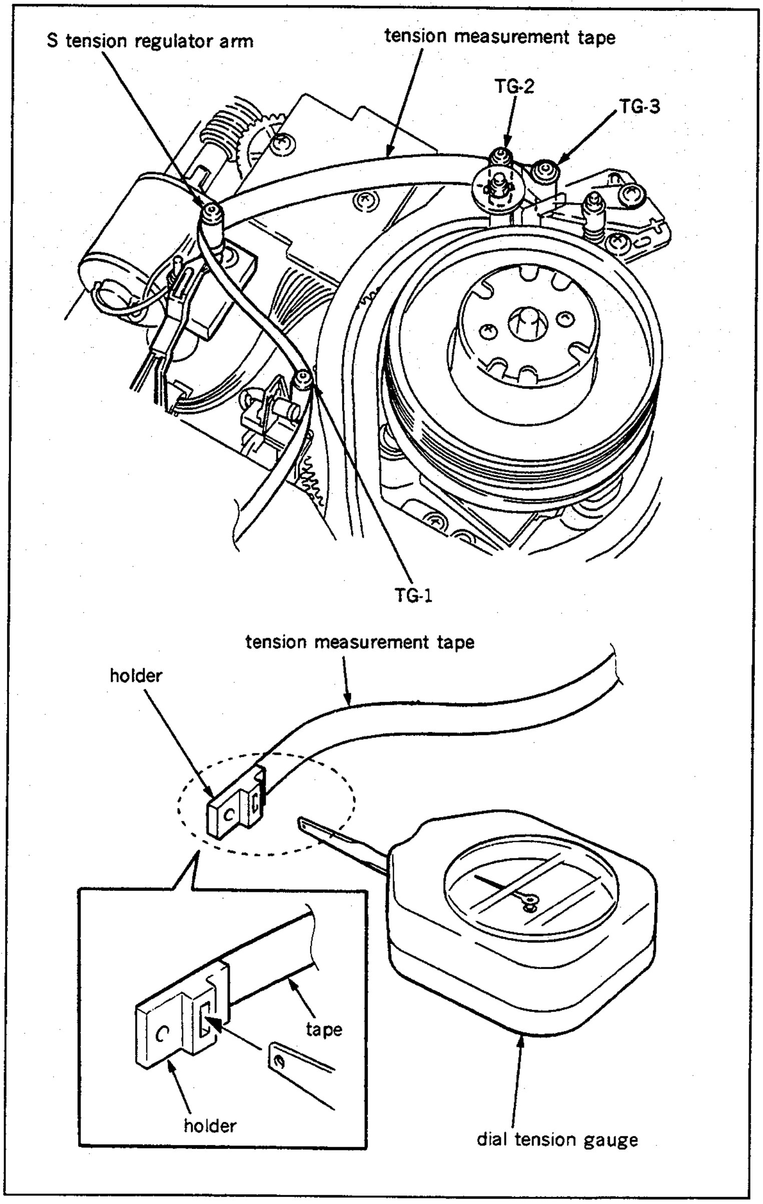
Cassette reference plate (L): J-6320-880-A
Tension regulator positioning tool
: J-6322-370-A
Dial tension gauge (50 g) : J-6327-850-A
Tension measurement tape : Refer to Secrion 5-1.
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Check

1. Install a tension regulator positioning tool onto the place, with its fixing screw while turning the tool in the direction of the arrow.



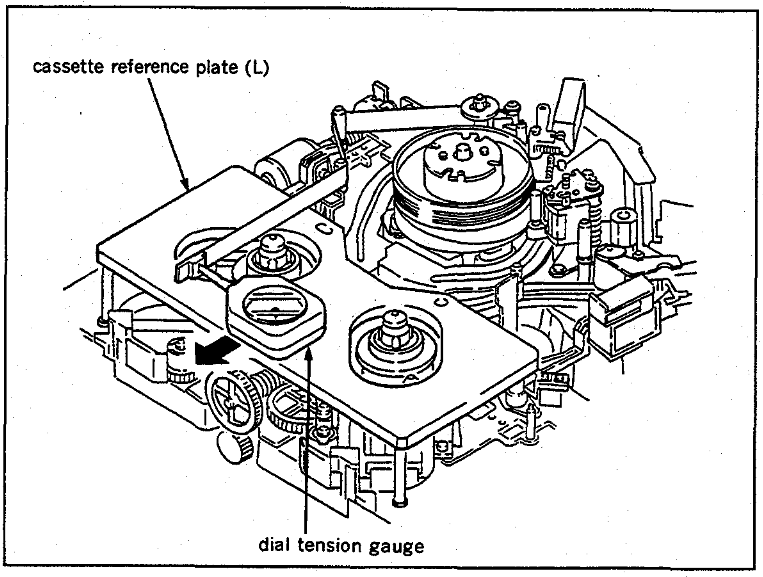
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
3. Confirm that a reel table is in S cassette position. When it is in L cassette position, turn the POWER to ON once, change it to S cassette position, according to the Maintenance Menu "B027: REEL POSITION"
4. Place the cassette reference plate (L) on four cassette pillars.
5. Turn the POWER to ON. A threading ring rotates automatically, and put the unit into the threading completion mode. Press STANDBY button to be in STANDBY OFF mode, and stop the rotation of a drum.
6. Put one end of the tension measurement tape into TG-3 tape guide on a S slider assembly as shown in the figure.
7. Thread the tension measurement tape as shown in the figure.
8. Put the tip of the dial tension gauge into the holder of the tension measurement tape.


S tension regulator arm
tension measurement tape
TG-2
TG-3
TG-1
tension measurement tape
holder
tape
holder
dial tension gauge

9. Place the dial tension gauge on the cassette reference plate (L), and move the gauge along the cassette reference plate (L) in the direction shown in the figure until the indication of the gauge shows 42 g.

Note 1 :Confirm that the tension measurement tape is placed on every tape guide roller properly.

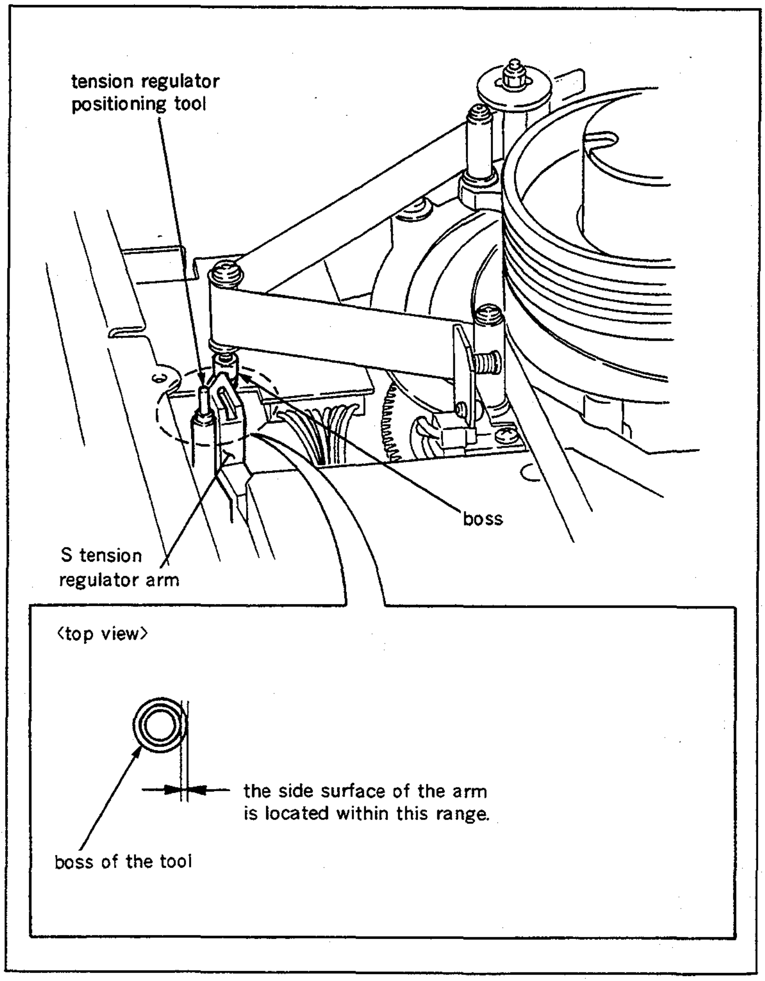
Note 2 :Pull the tension measurement tape in the parpendicular direction to the cassette reference plate (L).


cassette reference plate (L)
dial tension gauge

10. When the indication of the gauge is 42 g, confirm that the side surface of the S tension regulator arm is located within the range of the tension regulator positioning tool as shown in the figure.

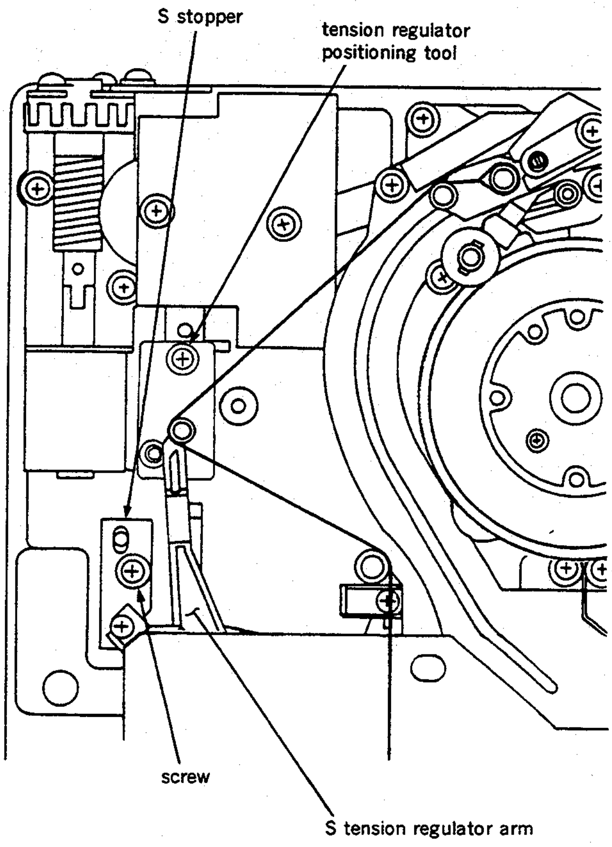
    If the specification is satisfied, perform step ⒃ and later.

    If the specification is not satisfied, perform step ⑾ and later.


tension regulator positioning tool
boss
S tension regulator arm
<top view>
the side surface of the arm is located within this range.
boss of the tool

Adjustment

11. Loosen a fixing screw of a S stopper for 1/3 to 1/2 turn.
12. Perform step (9).
13. While keeping the state of step (9), insert a 3 mm flatblade screwdriver into notch of the S stopper, and adjust position of the S stopper so that the specification is satisfied.
14. Tighten the fixing screw of the S stopper.
15. Reconfirm that the specificatin is satisfied according to the check procedure.
16. After adjustment, take out the tension measurement tape from the unit, and press EJECT button to put into the unthreading completion mode, then take out the cassette reference plate (L).
17. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48 board in OPEN state.
18. Remove the tension regulator positioning tool.
19. Clean the tape running surfaces of TG-1, TG-2, TG-3 and tension regulator roller with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.



5-19-2. S Tension Sensor Sensitivity Adjustment

- It is impossible to only confirm whether S tension sensor sensitivity is being properly adjusted. Be sure to adjust S tension sensor sensitivity as the following procedures below, and save the adjustment data in NOV RAM.
- Be sure to perform this adjustment after removing a cassette compartment.

Tools

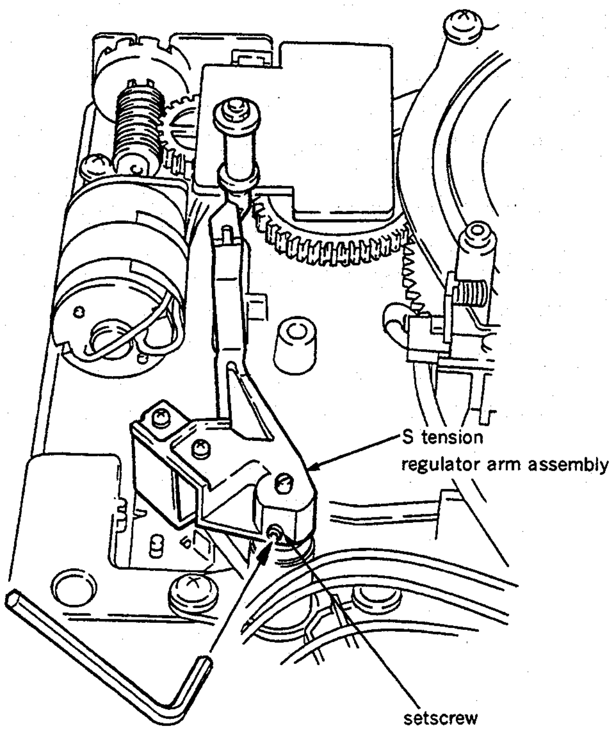
Cassette reference plate	: J-6080-008-A
Dial tension gauge (50 g)	: J-6327-850-A
Tension measurement tape	: Refer to Section 5-1.
L shaped wrench (across flat has 0.89 mm)	: 7-700-736-06

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

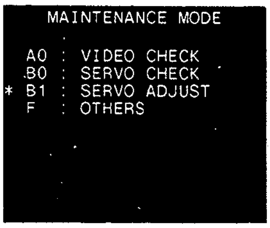
Adjustment

1. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Confirm that a reel table is in S cassette position. When it is in L cassette position, turn the POWER to ON once, change it to S cassette position, according to the Maintenance Menu "B027 : REEL POSITION"
3. Loosen a setscrew of a S tension regulator arm assembly for 1/4 to 1/3 turn.
4. Turn the POWER to ON. When the POWER is turned ON, threading automatically starts. Press EJECT button to put the unit in EJECT completion mode.
5. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
6. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
7. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
8. Move * mark to "B112: S TENSION SENSOR" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "S TENSION SENSOR" menu.
10. Place a cassette reference plate on four cassette pillars.



S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

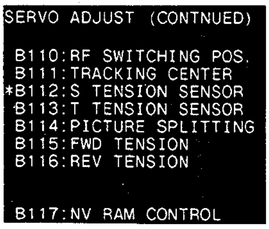
press S302



```
    MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0  :  VIDEO CHECK
  B0  :  SERVO CHECK
* B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
  F   :  OTHERS
```

select with search dial

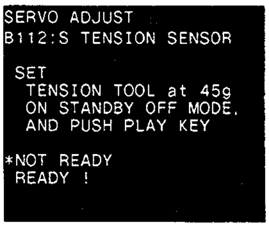
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST  (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
*B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

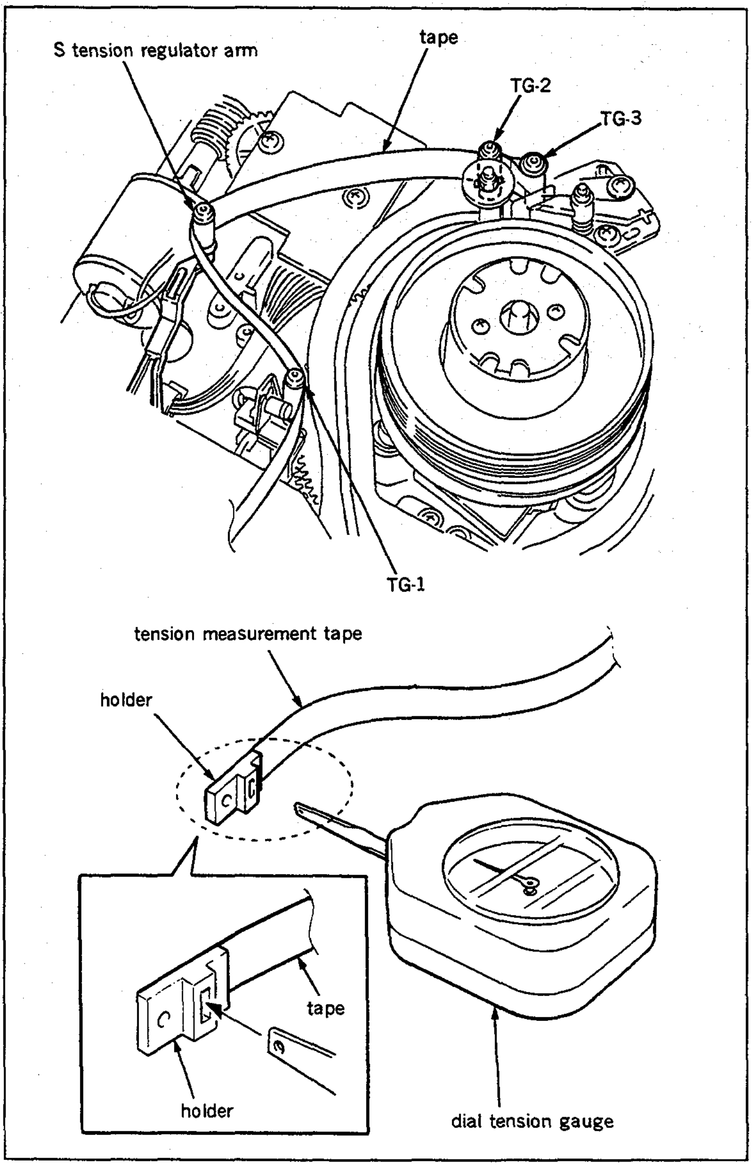
select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 SET
  TENSION TOOL at 45g
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY

*NOT READY
 READY !
```

11. Press STOP button to put the unit into the threading completion mode. Then press STANDBY button to be in STANDBY OFF mode, and stop the rotation of a drum.
12. Put one end of the tension measurement tape into TG-3 tape guide on a S slider assembly as shown in the figure.
13. Thread the special made tension measuring tape as shown in the figure.
14. Put the tip of the dial tension gauge into the holder of the special made tension measuring tape.

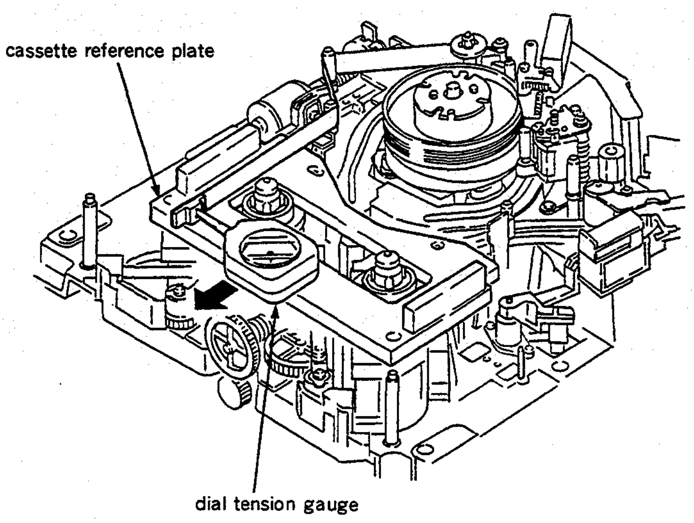

S tension regulator arm
tape
TG-2
TG-3
TG-1
tension measurement tape
holder
tape
holder
dial tension gauge

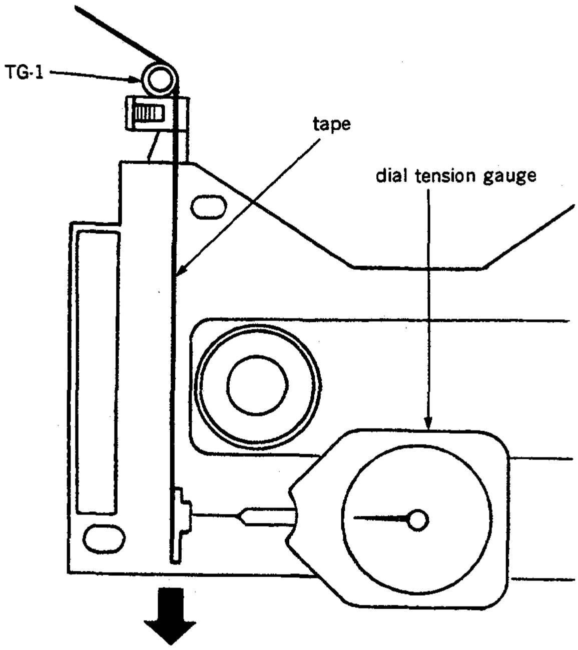
15. Place the dial tension gauge on the cassette reference plate, and move the gauge along the cassette reference plate in the direction shown in the figure until the indication of the gauge shows 45 g.

Note 1 : Confirm that the tension measurement tape is placed on every tape guide roller properly.

Note 2 : Pull the tension measurement tape in the parpendicular direction to the cassette reference plate.

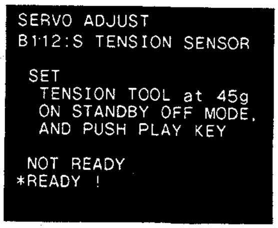
Note 3 : Keep the condition of step (15) when performing steps (16) through (20).





Pull the tape in the parpendicular direction to the cassette reference plate.

press PLAY button



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 SET
  TENSION TOOL at 45g
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY

 NOT READY
*READY !
```

select with search dial

press S302

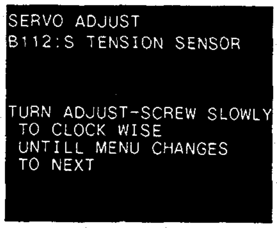
16. Press PLAY button.
17. Move * mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
18. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
19. First, use a flatblade screwdriver to rotate the adjusting screw of the S tension regulator arm assembly clockwise slowly until the display on the monitor screen changes (turn three to four rotation).
    Then rotate the adjusting screw slowly until data displayed on the monitor screen changes to values between -10 and 10, and the data must be kept in increasing state.

Note 1 : Make sure to rotate the flatblade screwdriver clockwise.

Note 2 : While adjusting screw is rotated, the data will keep on increasing and decreasing. In this adjustment, the data must be kept in increasing state and adjusted to meet the specification.

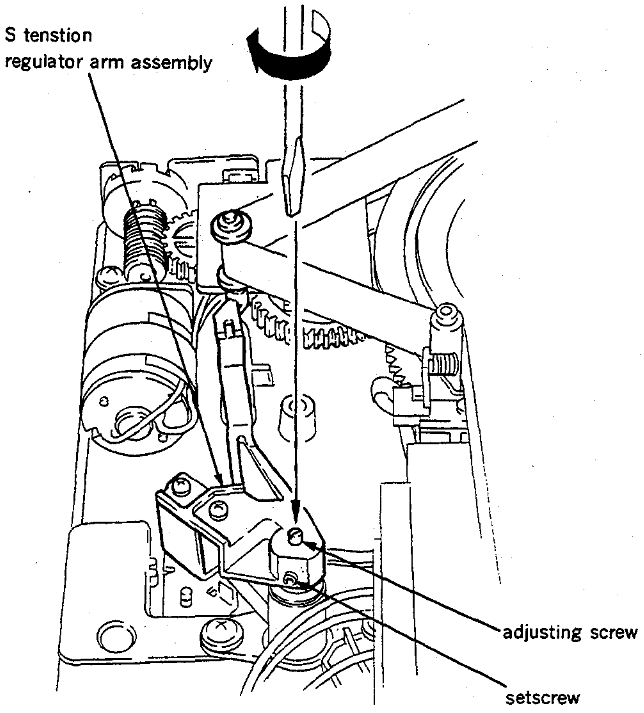
For example : 0001, 0002, 0003, 0004,... data shown in monitor screen is increasing.
0002, 0001, 0000, -0001,...data shown in monitor screen is decreasing.

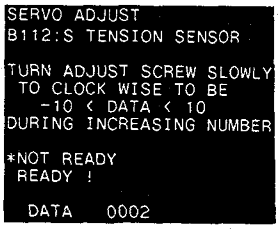
20. While the condition of step (15) is being kept, tighten a setscrew of the S tension regulator arm assembly.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR


TURN ADJUST-SCREW SLOWLY
 TO CLOCK WISE
 UNTILL MENU CHANGES
 TO NEXT
```

Turn adjusting screw clockwise direction





```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

TURN ADJUST SCREW SLOWLY
 TO CLOCK WISE TO BE
   -10 < DATA < 10
DURING INCREASING NUMBER

*NOT READY
 READY !

 DATA    0002
```

Rotate the adjusting screw until data displayed changes to value between −10 and 10, (must be kept in increasing state).

tighten a setscrew

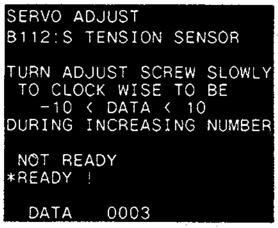
21. Move ∗ mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
22. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
23. After pressing STOP button, press STANDBY button to be in STANDBY OFF mode, and stop the rotation of a drum.
24. Place the dial tension gauge on the cassette reference plate, and move the gauge along the cassette reference plate in the direction shown in the figure until the indication of the gauge shows 25 g.

Note 1 : Confirm that the tension measurement tape is placed on every tape guide roller properly.

Note 2 : Pull the tension measurement tape in the parpendicular direction to the cassette reference plate.

Note 3 : Keep the condition of step (24) when performing steps ㉕ through ㉗.

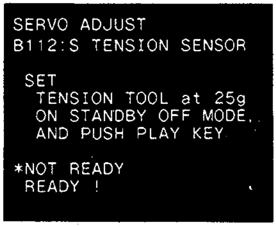
25. Press PLAY button.
26. Move ∗ mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
27. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
28. After pressing STOP button, press STANDBY button to be in STANDBY OFF mode, and stop the rotation of a drum.
29. Take out the dial tension gauge, tension measurement tape and cassette reference plate from the unit.
30. Press EJECT button to put into the unthreading completion mode.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

TURN ADJUST SCREW SLOWLY
 TO CLOCK WISE TO BE
   -10 < DATA < 10
DURING INCREASING NUMBER

 NOT READY
*READY !

  DATA    0003
```

select with search dial

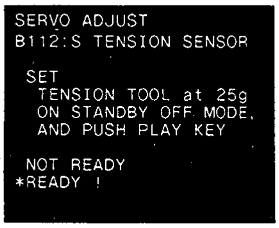
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 SET
  TENSION TOOL at 25g
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY

*NOT READY
 READY !
```

Indication of the gauge shows 25 g.

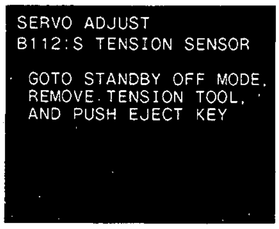
press PLAY button



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 SET
  TENSION TOOL at 25g
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY

 NOT READY
*READY !
```

select with search dial

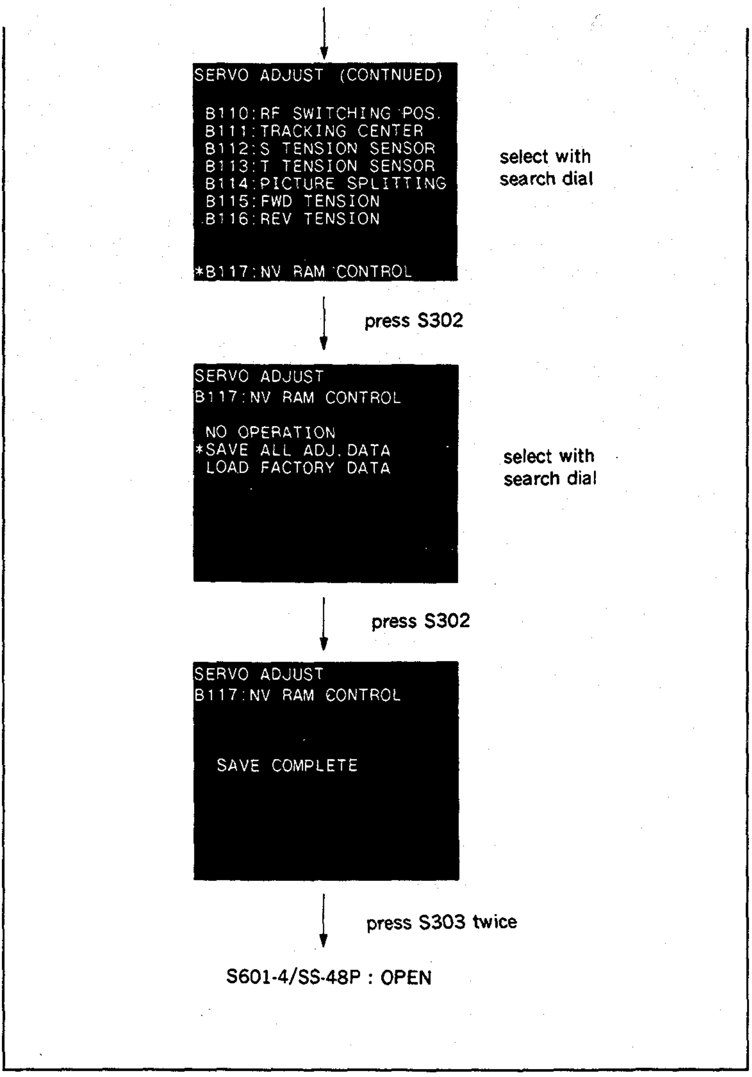
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B112:S TENSION SENSOR

 GOTO STANDBY OFF MODE.
 REMOVE TENSION TOOL,
 AND PUSH EJECT KEY
```

Take out the dial tension gauge, tension measurement tape, and cassette reference plate. Press EJECT button.

31. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
32. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
33. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
34. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
35. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
36. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with
search dial
press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with
search dial
press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice
S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-19-3. FWD Back Tension Adjustment

- Make sure to perform this adjustment with a cassette compartment is installed.

Tools

Cassette tape BCT-30M

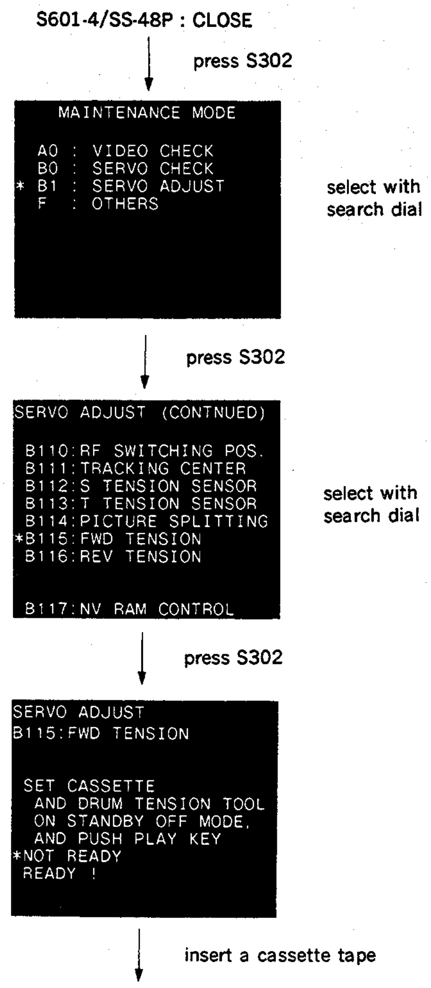
Drum tension tool (Recommended to use TENTELOMETER U2-H7-UMC).

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Put the unit into EJECT mode.
2. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
3. Turn the POWER to ON. Push S302 on SS-48P board and put the unit into maintenance mode.
4. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
5. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
6. Move * mark to "B115: FWD TENSION" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
7. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "FWD TENSION" menu.
8. Insert a BCT-30M cassette tape at about 3 minutes portion from the tape beginning.

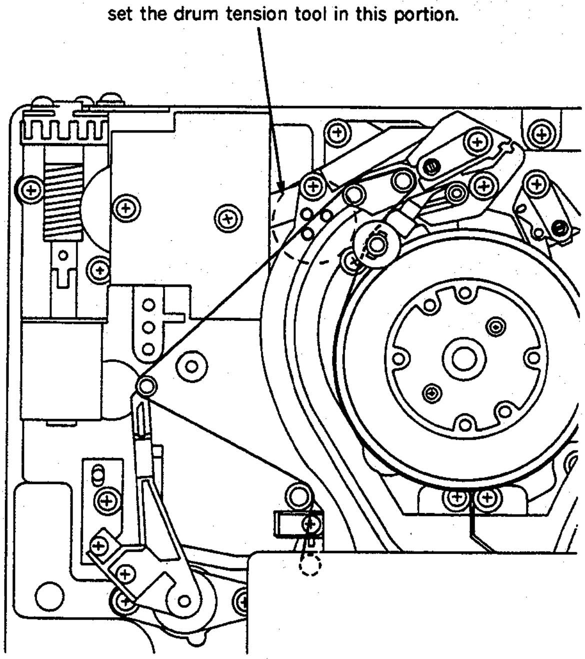


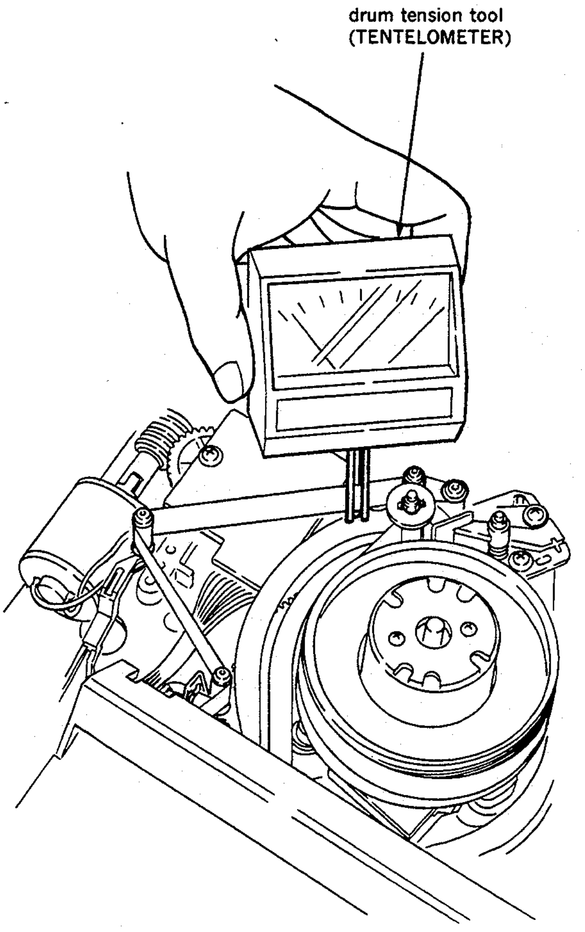
```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0  :  VIDEO CHECK
 B0  :  SERVO CHECK
* B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
 F   :  OTHERS
```

```
SERVO ADJUST  (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
*B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B115:FWD TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
*NOT READY
 READY !
```

9. Hold a drum tension tool (TENTELOMETER), and insert it into the appointed portion as shown in the figure.


set the drum tension tool in this portion.


drum tension tool
(TENTELOMETER)

10. Put the unit into Play mode.

Note : Adjust the slantness of the drum tension tool so that the tape runs smoothly without waveing between the S tension regulator arm and TG-2 tape guide.

11. Move * mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
12. Confirm that the values of the drum tension tool meet the specification.

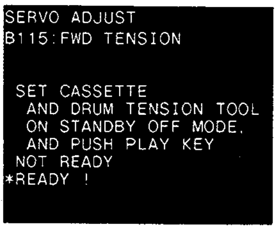
Specification : 41 g to 45 g.
(The value which is displaying on the monitor screen means the FWD back tension value at the drun entrance side.)

If not to meet the specification, parform step ⒀ and later.

Adjustment

13. Parform steps from (1) to ⑪.
14. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
15. Rotate search dial until the value of drum tension tool meets the specification.
16. If meet the specification, push S302 on SS-48P board.
17. Remove drum tension tool and then push EJECT button, take out the cassette tape.
18. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
19. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
20. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
21. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
22. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
23. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.

↓ press PLAY button



```
SERVO ADJUST
B115:FWD TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
 NOT READY
*READY !
```

select with search dial

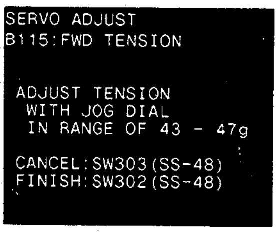
↓

Confirm the value meets the specification.

↓

if NG

↓ press S302

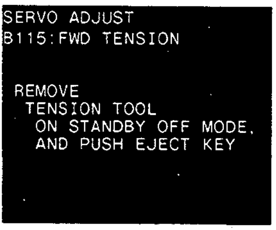


```
SERVO ADJUST
B115:FWD TENSION

 ADJUST TENSION
  WITH JOG DIAL
  IN RANGE OF 43 - 47g

 CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
 FINISH:SW302(SS-48)
```

↓

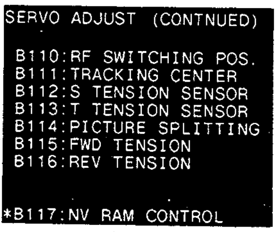
Rotate search dial until the value meets the specification.

↓ press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B115:FWD TENSION

 REMOVE
  TENSION TOOL
   ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
   AND PUSH EJECT KEY
```

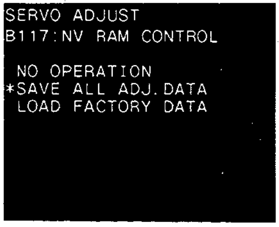
↓ press EJECT button



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

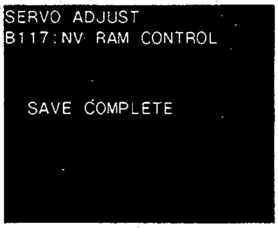
↓ press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-19-4. REV Back Tension Adjustment

- Make sure to perform this adjustment with a cassette compartment is installed.

Tools

Cassette tape BCT-30M
Drum tension tool (Recommended to use TENTELOMETER U2-H7-UMC).

Preparation

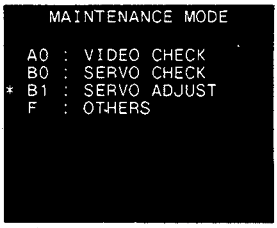
Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Put the unit into EJECT mode.
2. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
3. Turn the POWER to ON. Push S302 on SS-48P board and put the unit into maintenance mode.
4. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move ∗ mark to "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
5. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
6. Move ∗ mark to "B116: REV TENSION" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.

S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

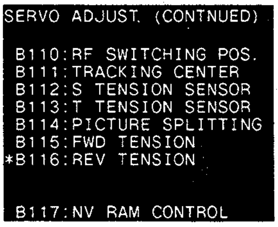
press S302



```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0 : VIDEO CHECK
  B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
  F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

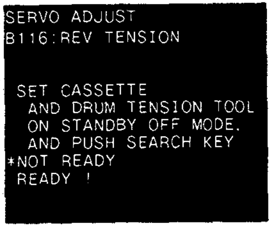


```
SERVO ADJUST. (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
*B116:REV TENSION

 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

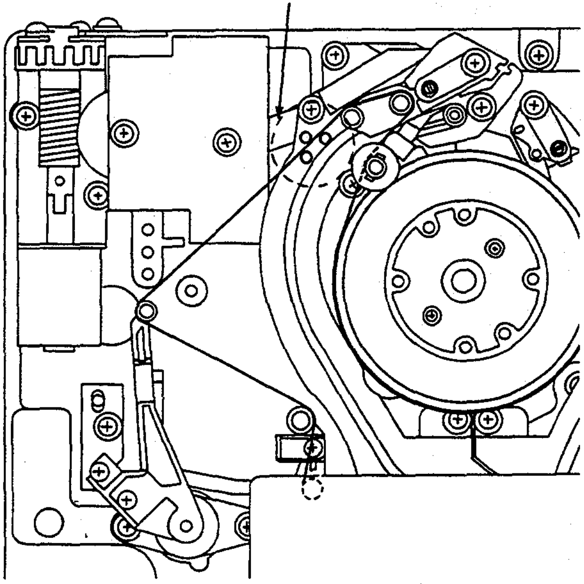
7. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "REV TENSION" menu.
8. Insert a BCT-30M cassette tape at about 3 minutes portion from the tape beginning.
9. Hold a drum tension tool, and insert it into the appointed portion as shown in the figure.

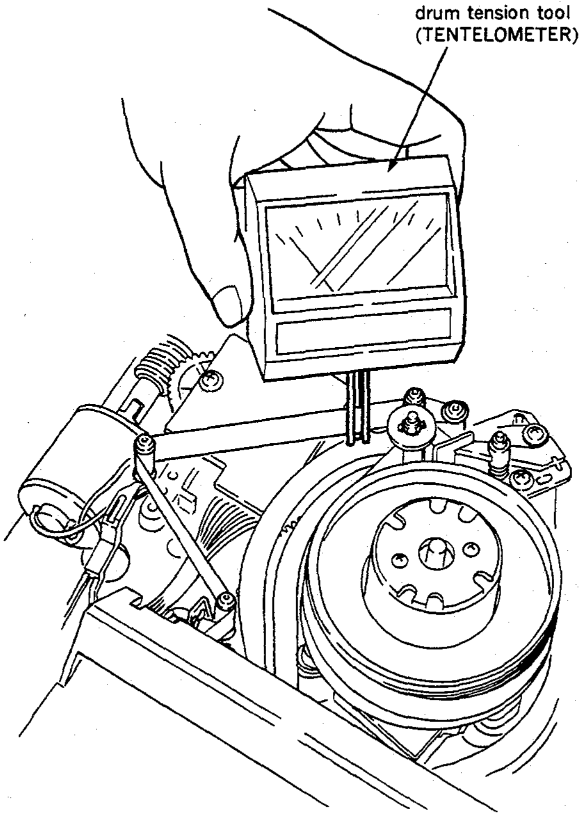
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B116:REV TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE.
  AND PUSH SEARCH KEY
*NOT READY
 READY !
```

insert a cassette tape


set the drum tension tool in this portion.


drum tension tool
(TENTELOMETER)

10. Press SEARCH button.

Note : Adjust the slantness of the drum tension tool so that the tape is placed without twistng between the S tension regulator arm and TG-2 tape guide.

11. Move * mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
12. Confirm that the values of the drum tension tool satisfiy the specification.

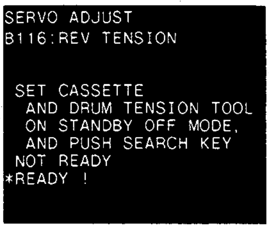
Specification : 28 g to 34 g.
(The value which is displaying on the monitor screen means the REV back tension value at the drun entrance side.)

If the specificationis not satisfied, parform step (13) and later.

Adjustment

13. Parform steps from (1) to (11).
14. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
15. Rotate search dial until the value of drum tension tool satisfies the specification.
16. If the specificationis is satisfied, press S302 on SS-48P board.
17. Remove drum tension tool and then press EJECT button, take out the cassette tape.
18. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
19. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
20. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
21. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
22. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
23. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.

press SEARCH button



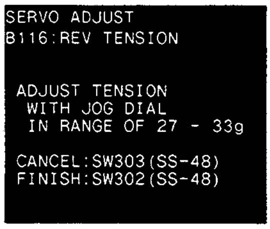
```
SERVO ADJUST
B116:REV TENSION

 SET CASSETTE
  AND DRUM TENSION TOOL
  ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
  AND PUSH SEARCH KEY
 NOT READY
*READY !
```

select with search dial

Confirm the value meets the specification.

if NG

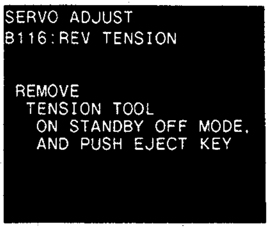
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B116:REV TENSION

 ADJUST TENSION
  WITH JOG DIAL
  IN RANGE OF 27 - 33g

 CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
 FINISH:SW302(SS-48)
```

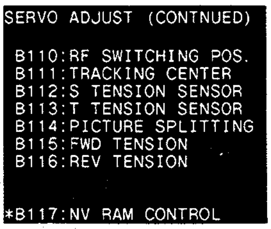
Rotate search dial unitl the value meets the specification.

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B116:REV TENSION

 REMOVE
  TENSION TOOL
   ON STANDBY OFF MODE,
   AND PUSH EJECT KEY
```

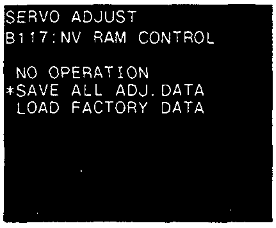
press EJECT button



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

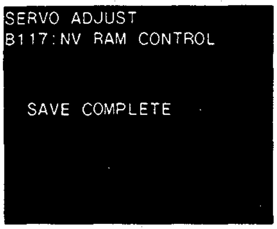
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-20. T TENSION REGULATOR ARM ASSEMBLY REPLACEMENT

Tool

L shaped wrench (across flat has 0.89 mm)
: 7-700-736-06

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of T tension regulator arm assembly

↓

Adjustment of T tension regulator arm operating position

↓

Adjustment of T tension sensor sensitivity

(Be sure to replace a S tension regulator arm and TR-73 board which places under the S tension regulator arm at the back side of the chassis in this step, if necessary.)

Adjustment of FWD back tension

↓

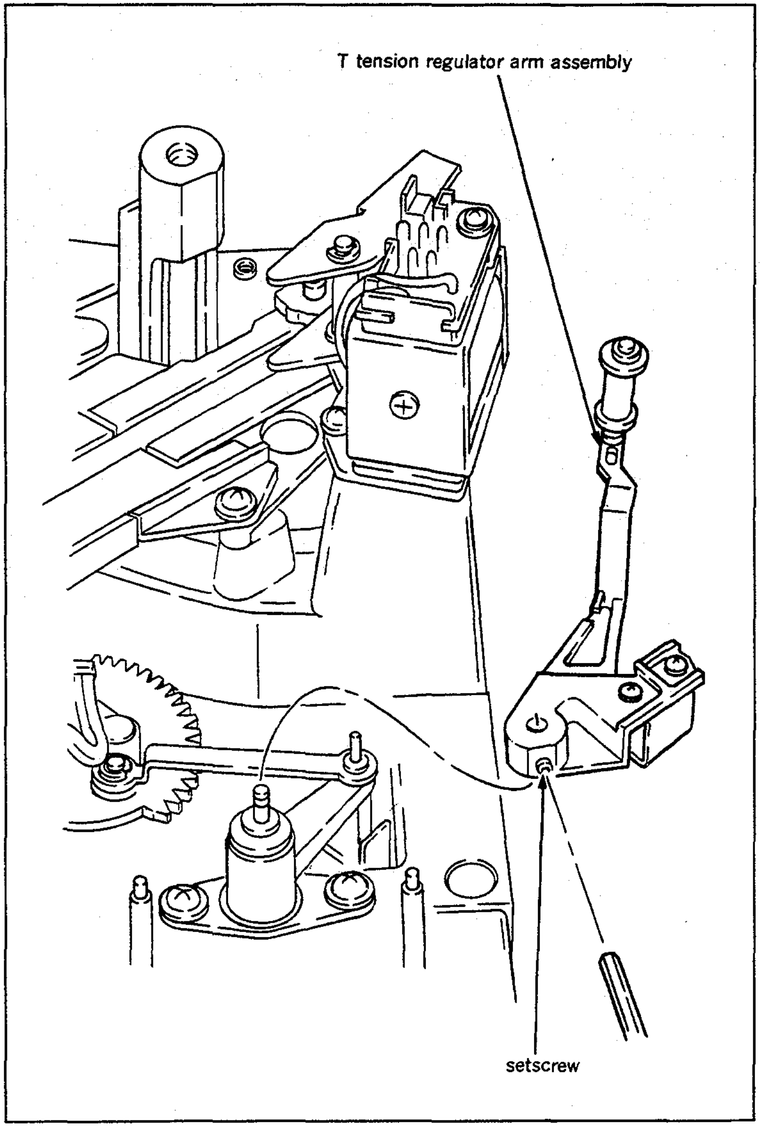
Adjustment of REV back tension

↓

Adjustment of tape running

↓

Confirmation of video tracking

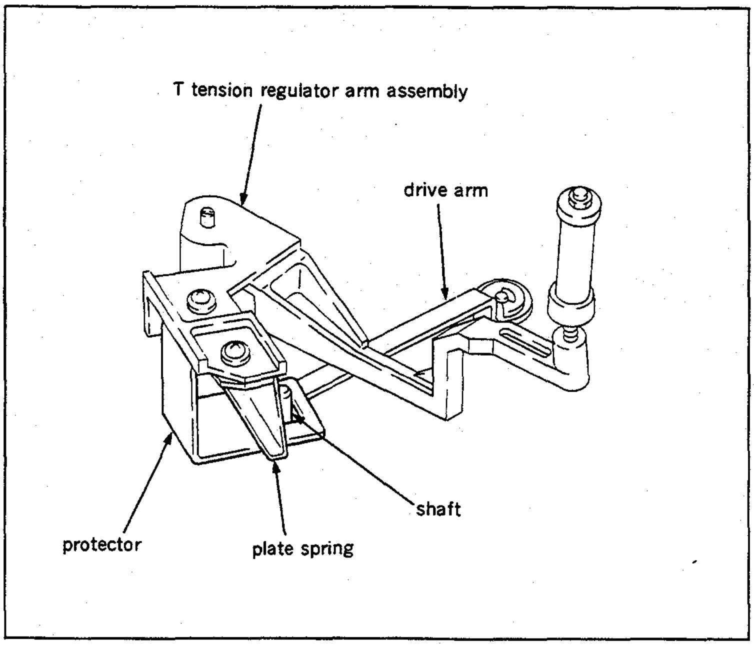


Removal

1. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking from thr front, and put the unit into the threading completion mode.
2. Loosen a setscrew shown in the figure holding a T tension regulator arm assembly, and lift the T tension regulator arm assembly straight up to remove.

Installation

3. Install a new T tension regulator arm assembly to a shaft of a tension regulator base so that a protector, plate spring and shaft of a drive arm are assembled as shown in the figure, and tighten a setscrew.



Adjustment after replacement

4. Perform T tension regulator arm operating position adjustment. (Refer to step ⑩ and later in Section 5-20-1.)
5. Perform T tension sensor sensitivity adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-20-2.)
6. Perform FWD back tension adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-19-3.)
7. Perform REV back tension adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-19-4.)
8. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
9. Perform confirmation of video tracking. (Refer to Section 6-4.)

5-20-1. T Tension Regulator Arm Operating Position Adjustment

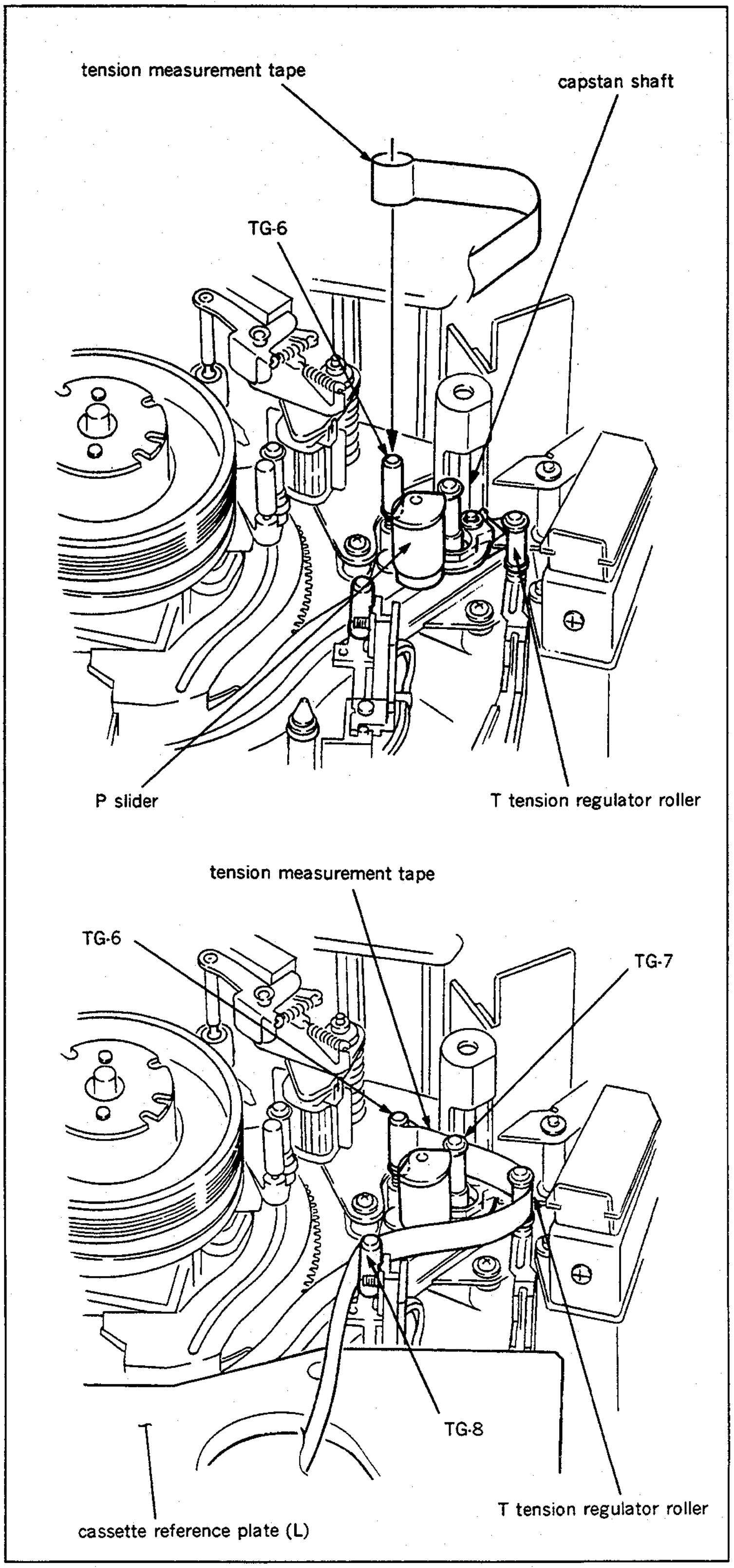
- Be sure to perform this adjustment without installing a cassette compartment.

Tools

Cassette reference plate (L): J-6320-880-A
Dial tension gauge (50 g) : J-6327-850-A
Tension measurement tape : Refer to Section 5-1.
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A
Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Check

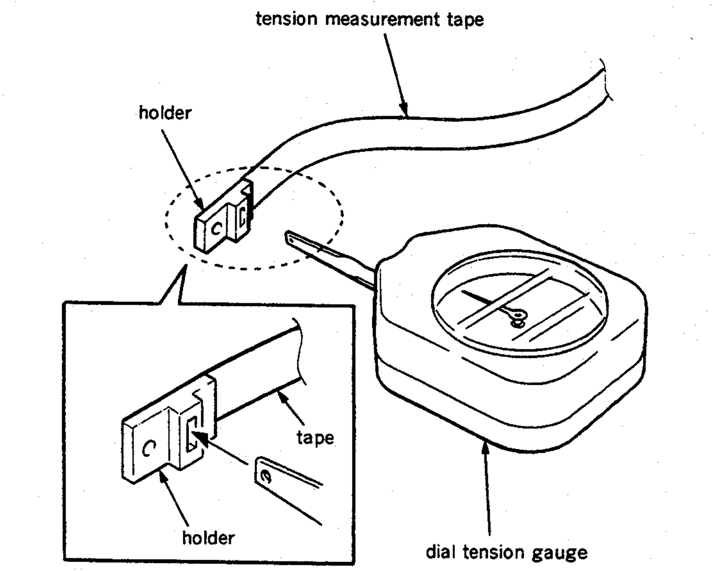
1. Confirm that a reel table is in S cassette position. When it is in L cassette position, turn the POWER to ON once, change it to S cassette position, according to the Maintenance Menu "B027: REEL POSITION"
2. Turn the POWER to OFF, and place the cassette reference plate (L) on four cassette pillars.
3. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put a P slider assmbly to 30 mm back from the threading completion mode.
4. Put one end of the tension measurement tape into TG-6 tape guide as shown in the figure.
5. Thread the tension measurement tape as shown in the figure.
6. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the clockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put a P slider assmbly to the threading completion mode.

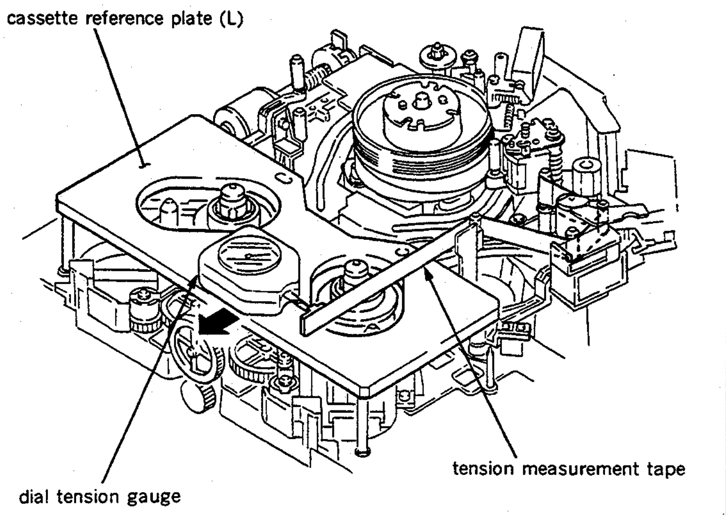

tension measurement tape
capstan shaft
TG-6
P slider
T tension regulator roller
tension measurement tape
TG-6
TG-7
TG-8
cassette reference plate (L)
T tension regulator roller

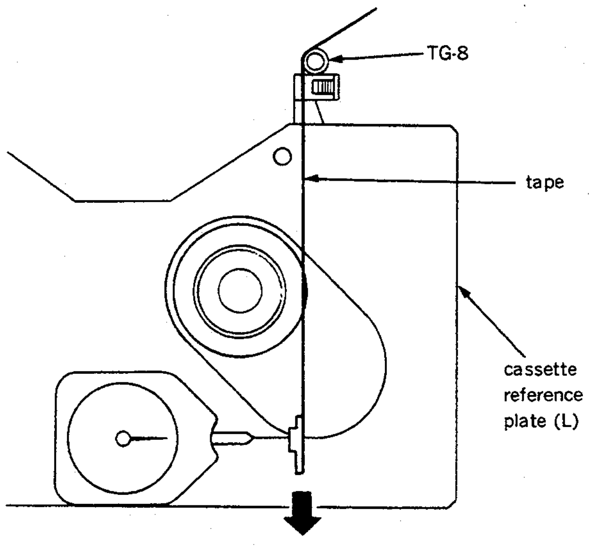
7. Put the tip of the dial tension gauge into the holder of the tension measurement tape.
8. Place the dial tension gauge on the cassette reference plate (L), and move the gauge along the cassette reference plate (L) in the direction shown in the figure until the indication of the gauge shows 20 g.

Note 1 :Confirm that the tension measurement tape is placed on every tape guide roller properly.

Note 2 :Pull the tension measurement tape in the parpendicular direction to the cassette reference plate (L).

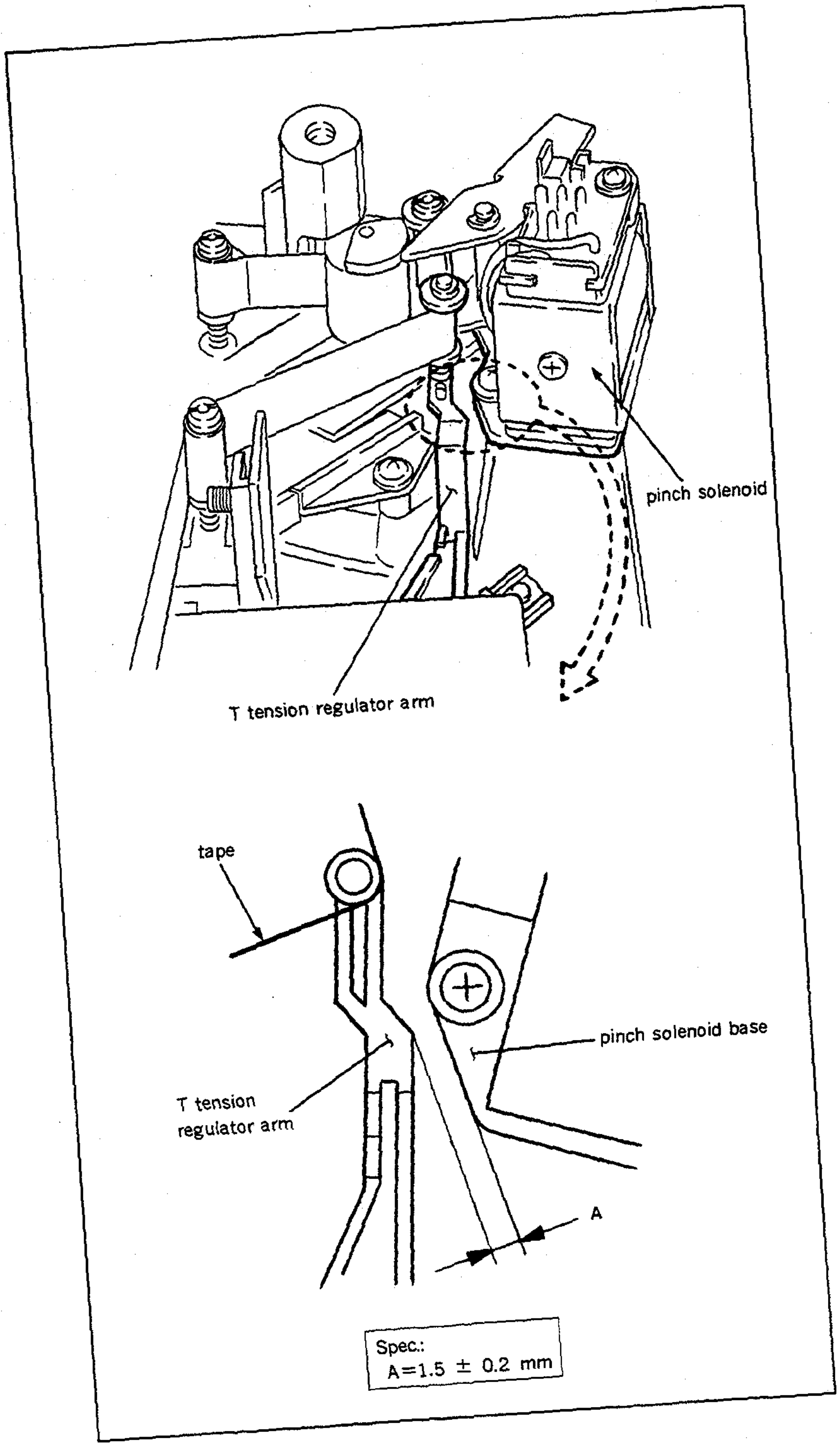

tension measurement tape
holder
tape
holder
dial tension gauge


cassette reference plate (L)
dial tension gauge
tension measurement tape


TG-8
tape
cassette reference plate (L)

9. When the indication of the gauge is 20 g, confirm that the clearance between a T tension regulator arm and pinch solenoid base satisfy the specification as shown in the figure.

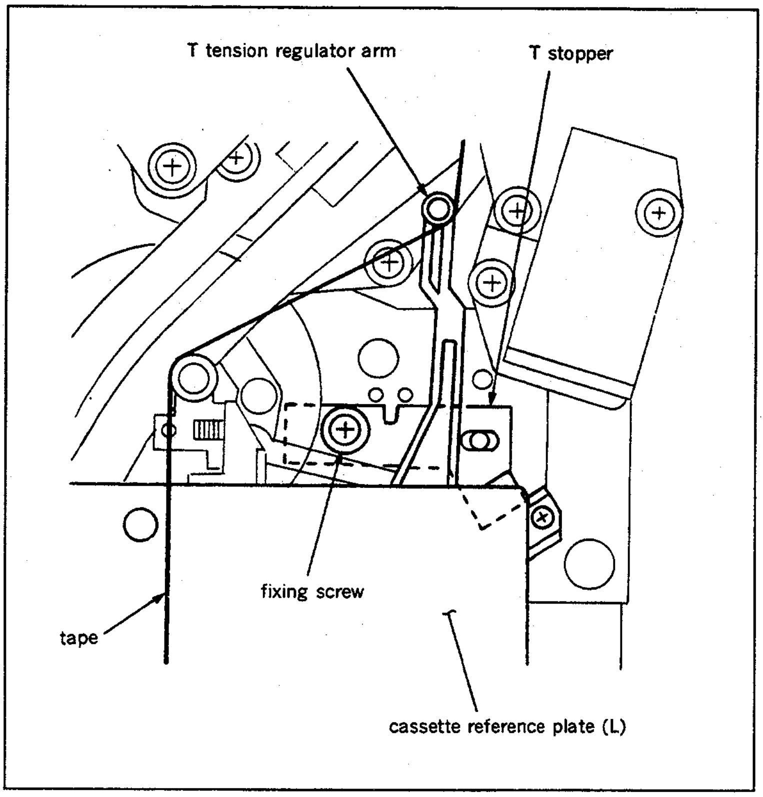
   If the specification is satisfied, perform step (15) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform step (10) and later.


pinch solenoid
T tension regulator arm
tape
pinch solenoid base
T tension regulator arm
A

Spec.:
A=1.5 ± 0.2 mm

Adjustment

10. Loosen a fixing screw of a T stopper for 1/3 to 1/2 turn.
11. Perform step (8).
12. While keeping the state of step (8), insert a 3 mm flatblade screwdriver into notch of the T stopper, and adjust position of the T stopper so that the specification is satisfied.
13. Tighten the fixing screw of the S stopper.
14. Reconfirm that the specificatin is satisfied according to the check procedure.
15. After adjustment, turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block in the counterclockwise direction by fingers looking it from the front, and put the P slider assmbly to 30 mm back from the threading completion mode.
16. Take out the tension measurement tape from the unit.
17. Turn the POWER to ON, and press EJECT button to put the unit into the unthreading end mode. Take out the cassette reference plate (L).



5-20-2. T Tension Sensor Sensitivity Adjustment

- It is impossible to only confirm whether T tension sensor sensitivity is being properly adjusted. Be sure to adjust T tension sensor sensitivity as the following procedures below, and save the adjustment data in NOV RAM.
- Be sure to perform this adjustment after removing a cassette compartment.

Tool

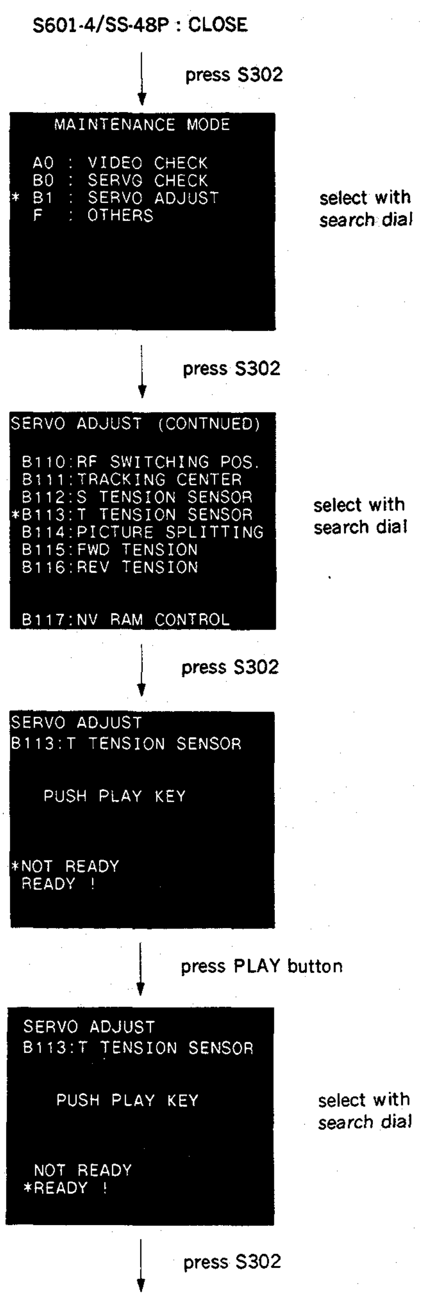
L shaped wrench (across flat has 0.89 mm)
: 7-700-736-06

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Adjustment

1. Turn the POWER to OFF, and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Turn the POWER to ON. When the POWER is turned ON, threading automatically starts. Press EJECT button to put the unit in EJECT completion mode.
3. Loosen a setscrew of a T tension regulator arm assembly for 1/4 to 1/3 turn.
4. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
5. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
7. Move * mark to "B113: T TENSION SENSOR" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "T TENSION SENSOR" menu.
9. Press PLAY button to put the unit in PLAY mode.
10. Move * mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board.


S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

press S302

```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVG CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
*B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR

   PUSH PLAY KEY


*NOT READY
 READY !
```

press PLAY button

```
 SERVO ADJUST
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR

    PUSH PLAY KEY


  NOT READY
 *READY !
```

select with search dial

press S302

12. First, use a flatblade screwdriver to rotate the adjusting screw of the T tension regulator arm assembly counterclockwise slowly until the display on the monitor screen changes (turn three to four rotation).
    Then rotate the adjusting screw slowly until data displayed on the monitor screen changes to values between -10 and 10, and the data must be kept in increasing state.

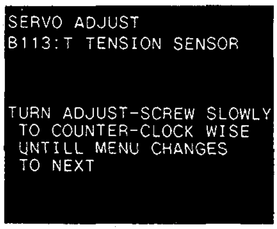
Note 1 : Make sure to rotate the flatblade screwdriver counterclockwise.

Note 2 : While adjusting screw is rotated, the data will keep on increasing and decreasing. In this adjustment, the data must be kept in increasing state and adjusted to meet the specification.
For example : 0001, 0002, 0003, 0004,... data shown in the monitor screen is increasing.
0002, 0001, 0000, -0001,...data shown in the monitor screen is decreasing.

13. Tighten a setscrew of the T tension regulator arm assembly.

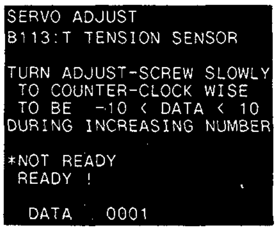
Note : Be extremely careful because of take-up reel table is rotating in high speed.

14. After tightening the setscrew, confirm that the data shown in the monitor screen remains within the range of the specification when the T tension regulator arm is moved right and left with fingers.
15. Move * mark to "READY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
16. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
17. Press EJECT button to put the unit into the unthreading completion mode.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR


TURN ADJUST-SCREW SLOWLY
 TO COUNTER-CLOCK WISE
 UNTILL MENU CHANGES
 TO NEXT
```

Turn adjusting screw counterclockwise direction.

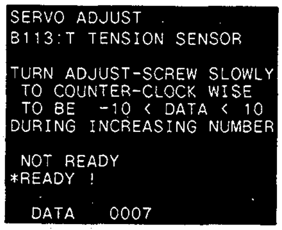


```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR

TURN ADJUST-SCREW SLOWLY
 TO COUNTER-CLOCK WISE
 TO BE  -10 < DATA < 10
DURING INCREASING NUMBER

*NOT READY
 READY !

  DATA    0001
```

Rotate the adjusting screw unitl data displayed changes to value between −10 and 10, (must be kept in increasing state).

tighten a setscrew

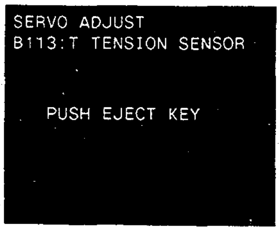
Confirm that the data remains within the range of the specification when the T tension regulator arm is moved right and left with fingers.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR

TURN ADJUST-SCREW SLOWLY
 TO COUNTER-CLOCK WISE
 TO BE  -10 < DATA < 10
DURING INCREASING NUMBER

 NOT READY
*READY !

  DATA    0007
```

select with search dial

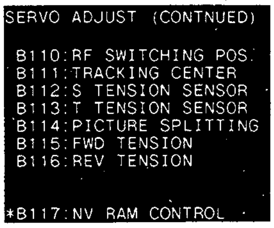
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B113:T TENSION SENSOR


   PUSH EJECT KEY
```

press EJECT button

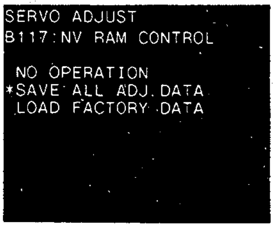
18. Press S303 on SS-48P board to menu screen.
19. Move ∗ mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
20. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
21. Move ∗ mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
22. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
23. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
24. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

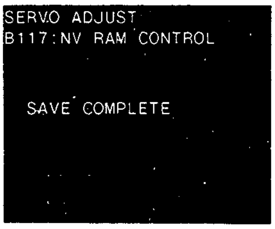
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

5-21. PINCH PRESS BLOCK REPLACEMENT

Replacement Flow Chart

Replacement of pinch press block

Confirmation of pinch solenold position

Confirmation of tape running

Removal

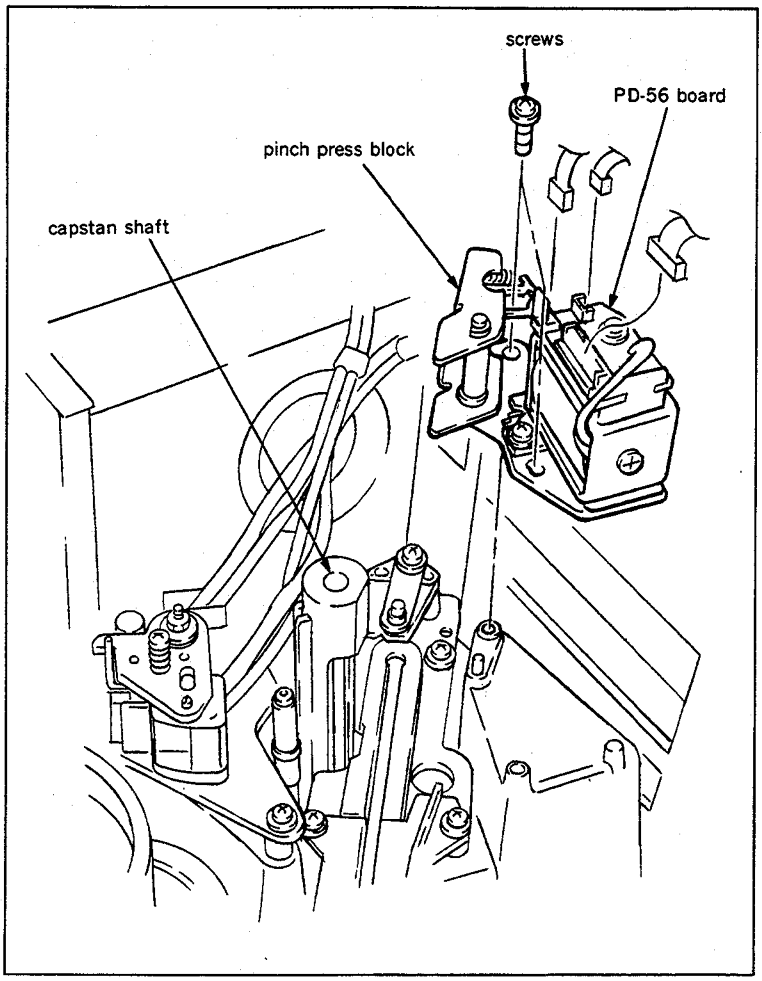
1. Put the unit into unthreading end mode.
2. Disconnect three connectors CN914, CN915 and CN916 from PD-56 board.
3. Remove two screws installing a pinch press block and remove it from the unit.

Installation

4. Install a new pinch press block with two screws to the unit.
5. Connect three connectors CN914, CN915 and CN916 to PD-56 board.

Adjustment after replacement

6. Perform confirmatiom of pinch solenoid position. (Refer to steps (1) to (9) in Section 5-22-1.)
7. Perform confirmatiom of tape running. (Refer to Sectin 6-3.)



5-22. PINCH SOLENOID REPLACEMENT

Replacement flow chart

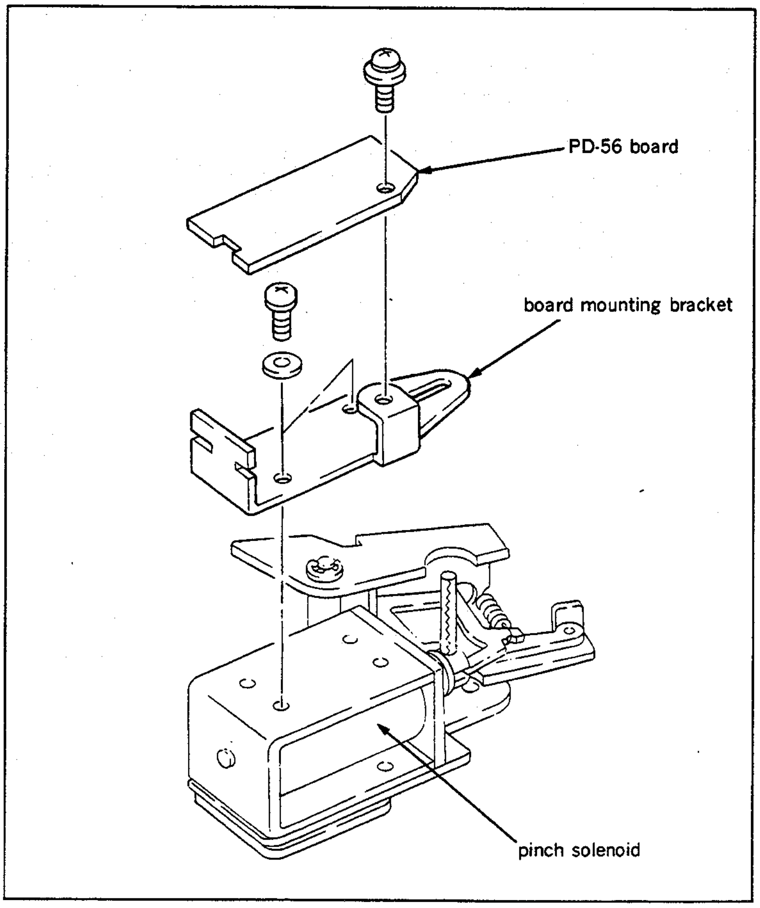
Replacement of pinch solenoid

↓

Adjustment of pinch solenoid position

↓

Confirmation of tape running


PD-56 board
board mounting bracket
pinch solenoid

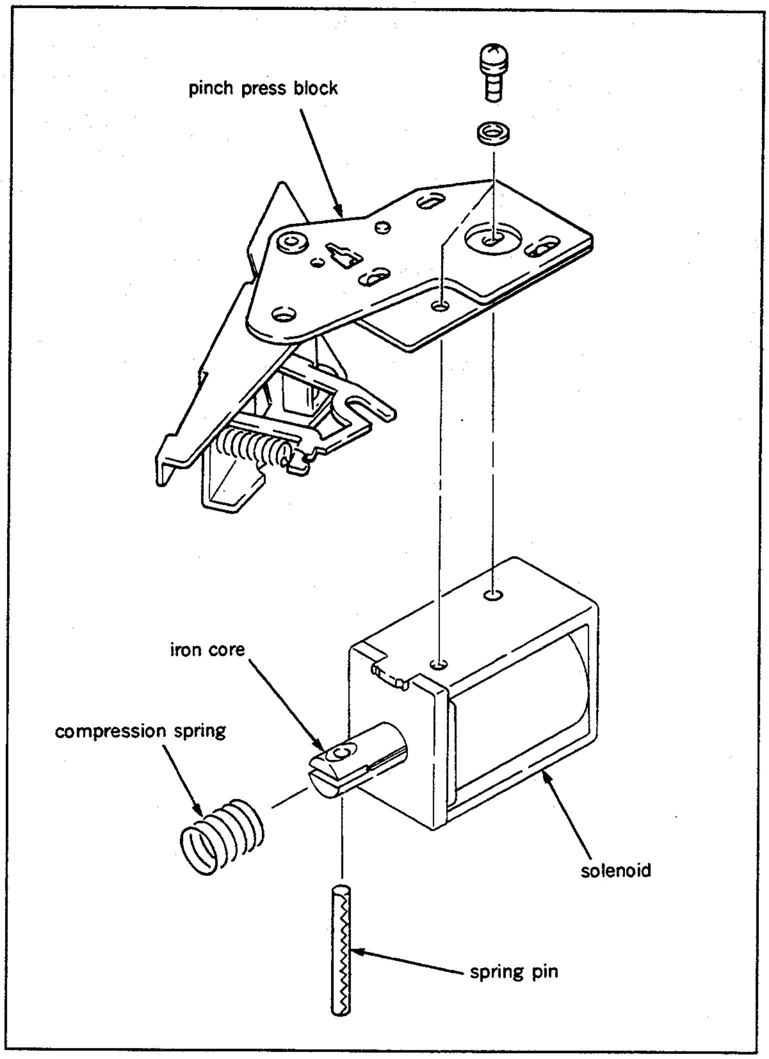
Removal

1. Put the unit into unthreading end mode.
2. Disconnect three connectors CN914, CN915 and CN916 from PD-56 board.
3. Remove two screws installing a pinch press block and remove it from the unit. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-21.)
4. Remove PD-56 board and board mounting bracket.

5. Remove a spring pin from an iron core of a solenoid.

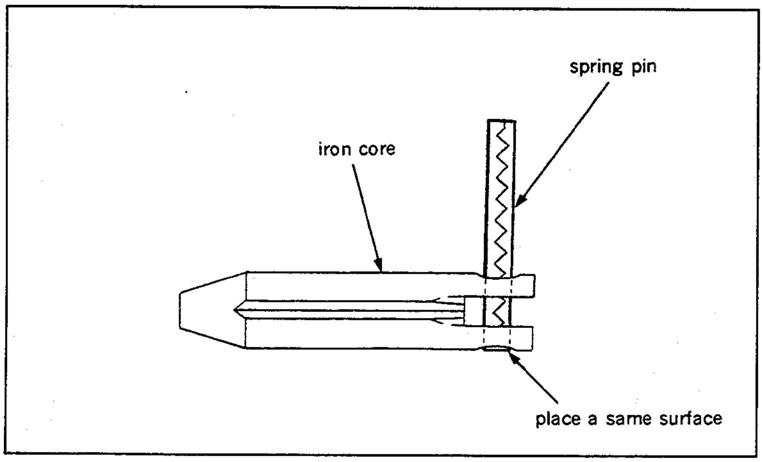
Note :A compression spring comes off at the same time. Be careful not to lose it.

6. Remove two screws shown in the figure on the botton side of the pinch press block and remove the solenoid.

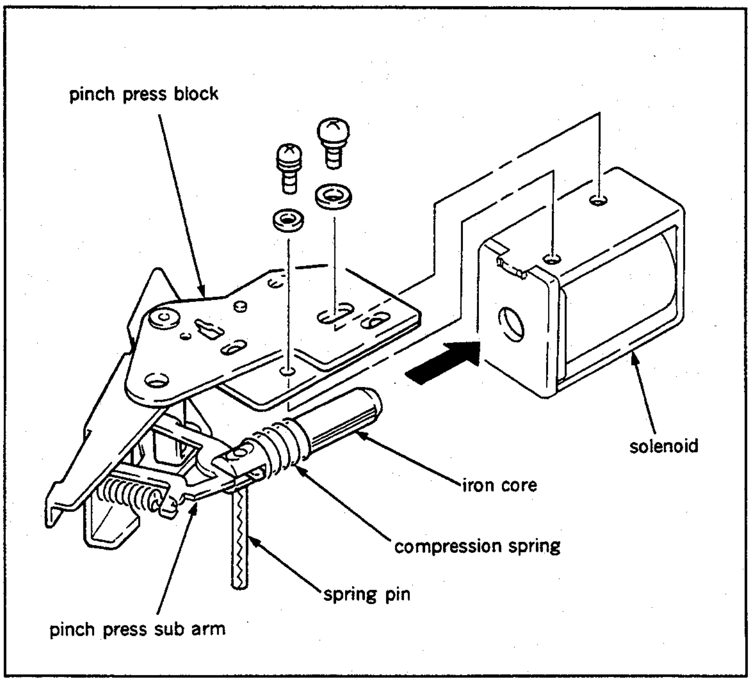

pinch press block
iron core
compression spring
solenoid
spring pin

Installation

7. Insert the spring pin into an new iron core so that the edge of the spring pin is the same positioned as outer surface of the iron core as shown in the figure.


spring pin
iron core
place a same surface

8. Insert the compression spring through longer part of the iron core as shown in the figure, and engage the groove of the pinch press sub arm with the spring pin shown in the fugure. Insert the assembled iron core into the hole of the solenoid.
9. Install the new pinch solenoid into the pinch press block with two screws and washers.
10. After putting the spring pin through the longitudinal hole of the board mounting bracket, install the board mounting bracket with two screws and washers.
11. Install PD-56 board.
12. Install the pinch press block to the unit with two screws.
13. Connect CN914, CN915 and CN916 to PD-56 board.


pinch press block
solenoid
iron core
compression spring
spring pin
pinch press sub arm

Adjustment after Replacement

14. Perform pinch solenoid position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-22-1.)
15. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)

5-22-1. Pinch Solenoid Position Adjustment

- Make sure to perform this adjustment when a pinch press block and/or pinch solenoid is removed or replaced.

Tool

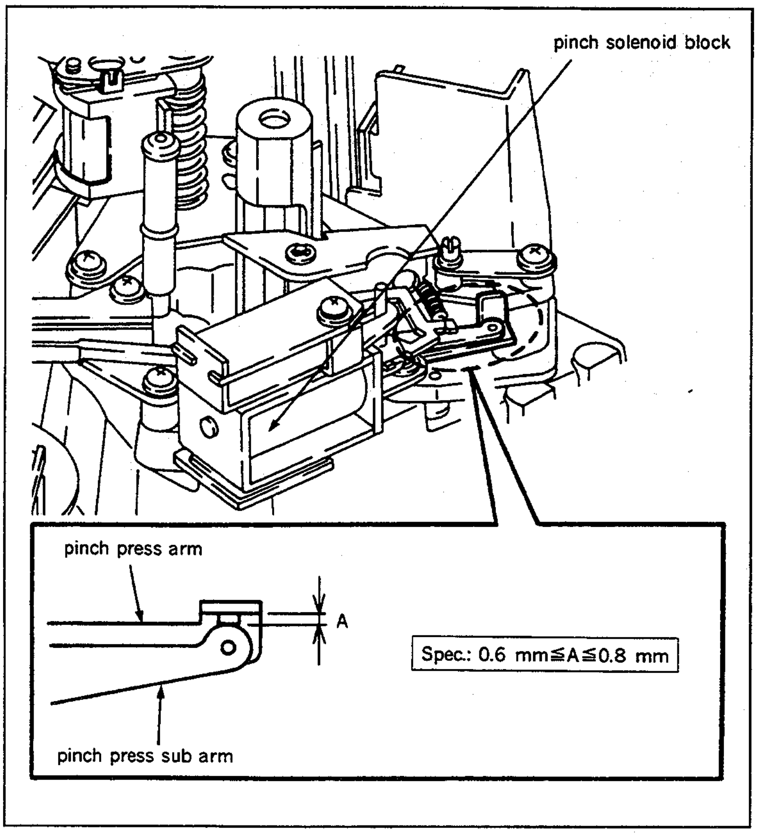
Wire clearance gauge : J-6152-450-A

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

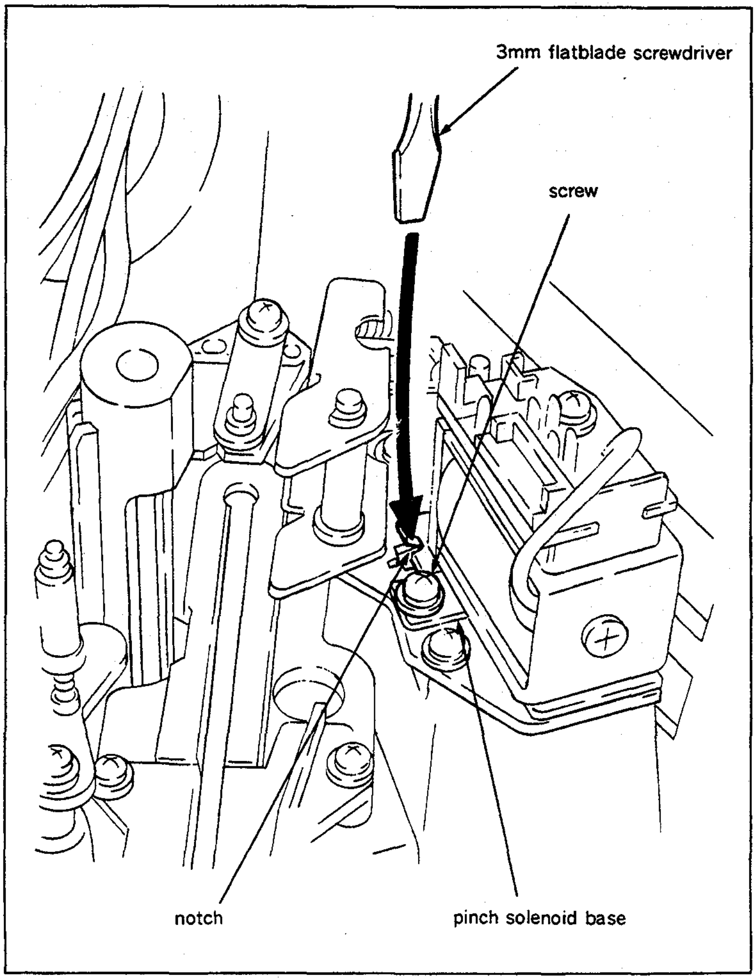
Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state.
2. Turn the POWER to ON, and push S302 to put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B0: SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO CHECK" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B03: PLUNGER SOL. CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "PLUNGER SOL. CHECK" menu.
7. Move * mark to "B031: PINCH ROLLER" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board to put the pinch solenoid into the energized state.
9. Confirm that the clearance between a pinch press arm and pinch press sub arm satisfy the specification as shown in the figure.
   If the specification is satisfied, perform step (13) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform step (10) and later.



Adjustment

10. Loosen a screw of the pinch solenoid base for 1/2 to 1 turn.
11. Insert a 3 mm flatblade screwdriver into the notch of the pinch solenoid base, and adjust the position of the pinch solenoid to satisfy the specification.
12. After tightening a screw, reconfirm the specification.
13. Press S302 on SS-48P board to put the pinch solenoid into off state.
14. Press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
15. Turn the POWER to OFF after adjustment, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.


3mm flatblade screwdriver
screw
notch
pinch solenoid base

5-23. THREADING RING REPLACEMENT

- It is quite rare to replace a threading ring. In case the replacement is necessary, be extremely careful with the gear engagement adjustment of the threading ring and threading gear described in step (13).
- If the adjustment is not done correctly, tape can't thread in the correct position.

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of threading ring
↓
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position
↓
Adjustment of tape running
↓
Adjustment of video tracking
↓
Adjustment of CTL head height
↓
Adjustment of CTL position
↓
Adjustment of audio head height
↓
Adjustment of audio head phase
↓
Confirmation of tape running
↓
Adjustment of TC head position

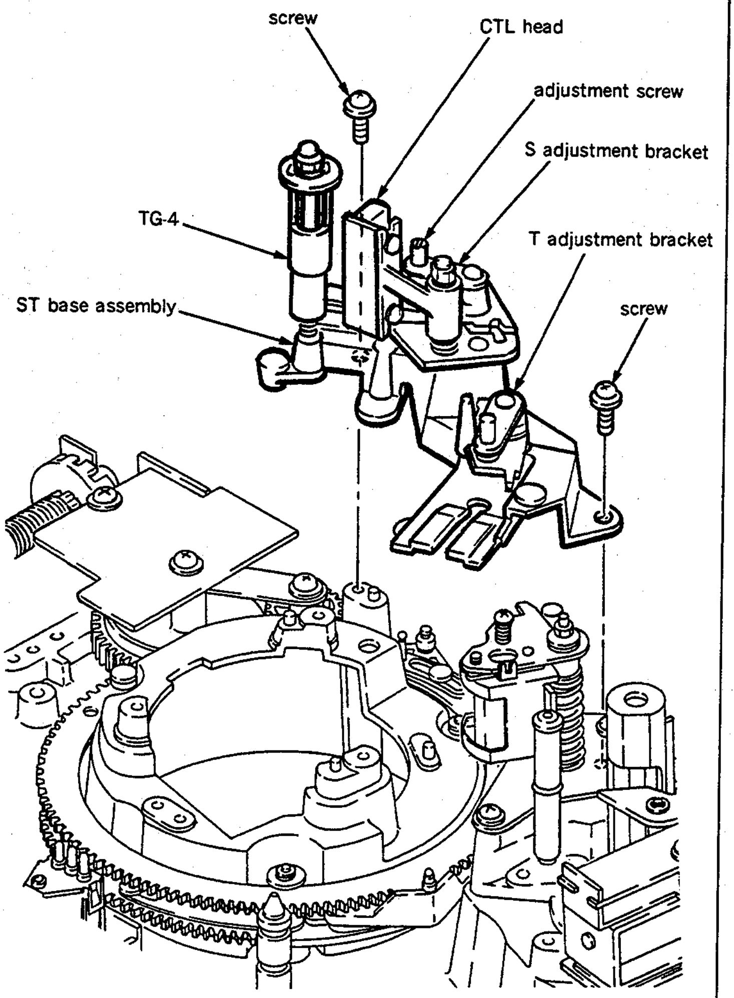
Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01

Removal

1. Remove a cleaning roller block.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)
3. Place a reel table to the L cassette position.
4. Remove a S rail and S slider assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) to (6) in Section 5-16.)
5. Remove a T rail and T slider assembly.
   (Refer to steps (5) to (9) in Section 5-17.)
6. Remove a P slider assembly. (Refer to step (6) in Section 5-18.)
7. Disconnect connectors from a drum which are connected to RP board.
8. Remove two screws of a ST base assembly, and place it on the power block.

Note :Be careful not to loose or tighten the adjustment screws of a S adjustment bracket and T adjustment bracket, and also not to change height of a CTL head and TG-4 tape guide on the ST base assembly.
It is recomended to cover the CTL head with gauze to prevent make damage of tape running surface of the CTL head.


screw
CTL head
adjustment screw
S adjustment bracket
TG-4
T adjustment bracket
ST base assembly
screw

<Drum assembly is omitted in this illustration.>

9. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block by fingers looking it from the front so that match hole "A" of a S threading ring, hole "B" of a T threading ring and in the concave "C" on the slant chassis.

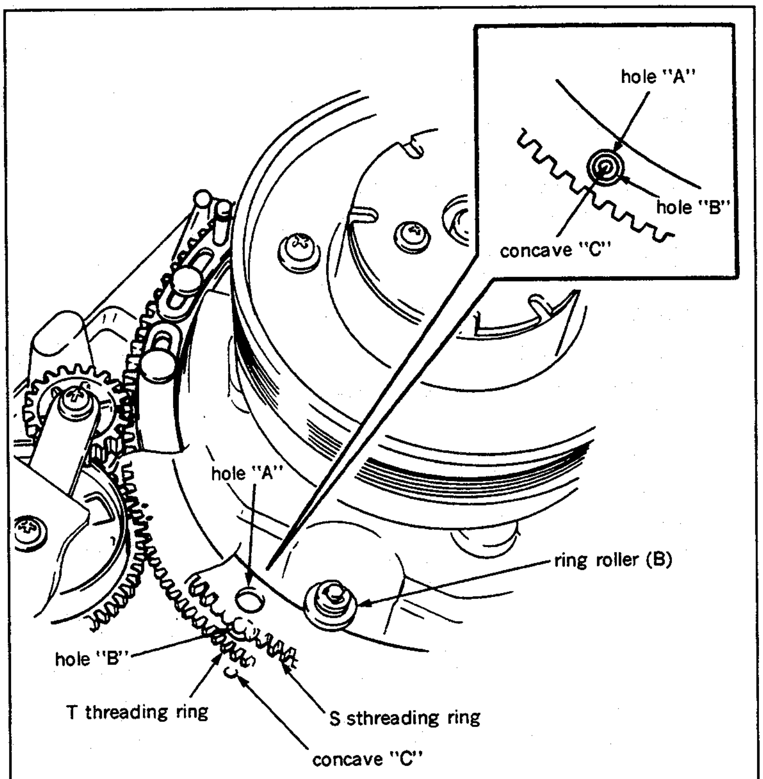
Note 1 : This operation is the important point when installing a new threading ring.

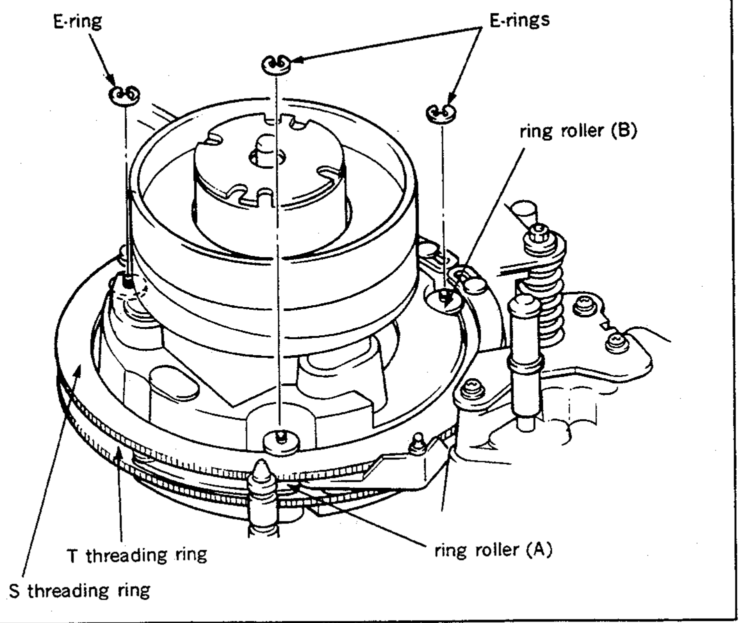
Note 2 : Be extremely careful not to move the threading gear of the threading gear block when performing following step (13).

10. Remove three E-rings on the upper part of a ring roller holding the threading ring.
11. When three ring roller (B)s are removed, then the S threading ring can be removed, and three ring roller (A)s are removed, the T threading ring can be removed.

Installation

12. Clean the inside of a new threading ring to be replaced with the cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

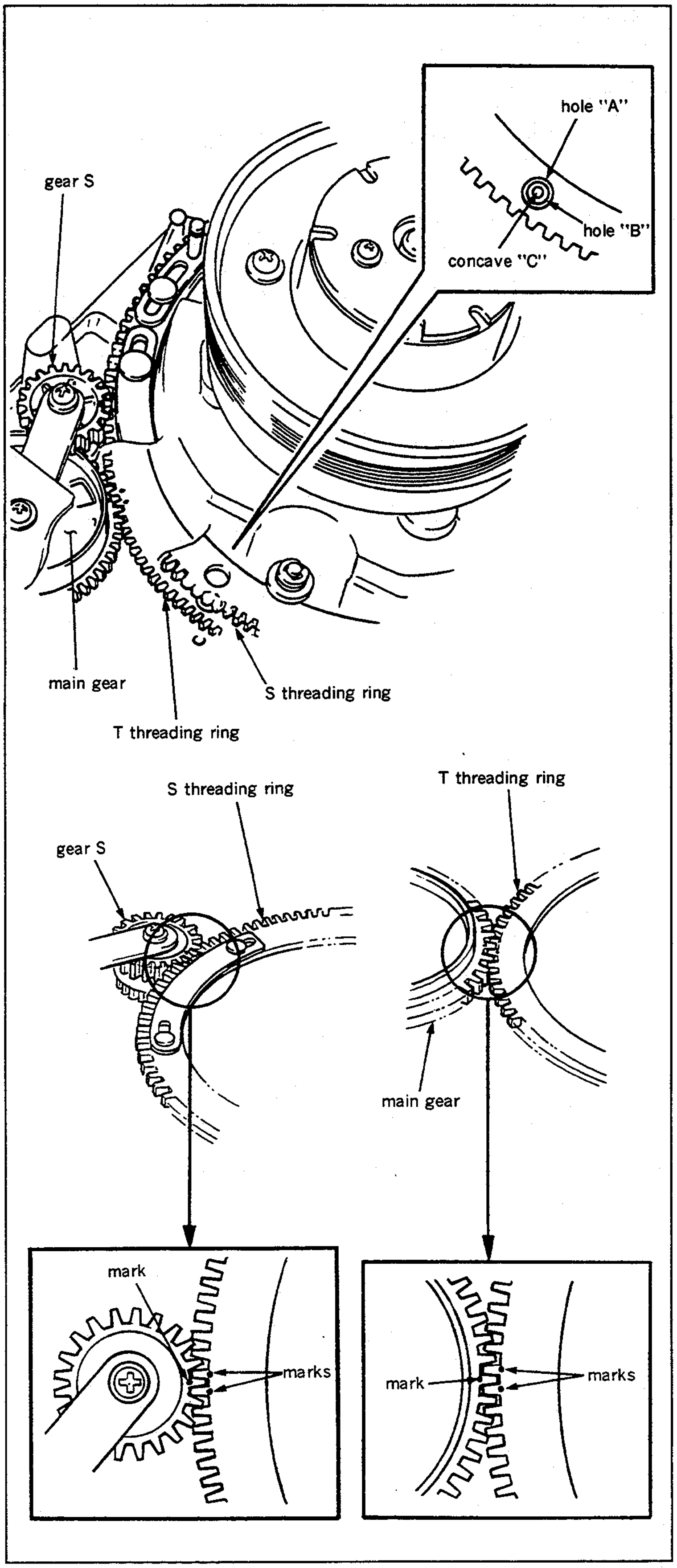

hole "A"
hole "B"
concave "C"
hole "A"
ring roller (B)
hole "B"
T threading ring
S sthreading ring
concave "C"


E-ring
E-rings
ring roller (B)
T threading ring
ring roller (A)
S threading ring

13. Install the T threading ring so that engage two marks on the teeth of the T threading ring with a mark on the tooth of the main gear as shown in the figure. Then insert the ring roller Ⓐ.
    Install the S threading ring so that engage two marks on the teeth of the S threading ring with a mark on the tooth of the gear S as shown in the figure. Then install the ring roller Ⓑ. Make sure that the hole "A" of the S threading ring, hole "B" of the T threading ring and in the concave "C" on the slant chassis are the same position.
14. Install three E-rings to each point on the shaft of the ring roller.
15. Make sure that the threading ring rotates smoothly, when turning the threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block by fingers.
16. Turn the threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block with finger, and place the threading ring to the point of 5 mm back from the threading completion mode.
17. Assemble the ST base assembly, P slider assembly, T slider assembly, T rail, S slider assembly and T rail in the reversing the order of steps (4) to (8).
18. Turn the POWER to ON, make sure that the threading operates properly and smoothly.
19. Insert a casette tape, and make sure that the tape threads to the normal position.

Adjustment after replacement

20. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
21. Perform tape running adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-3.)
22. Perform video tracking adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-4.)
23. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
24. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
25. Perform audio head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-7.)
26. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-8.)
27. Perform confirmation of tape running.
    (Refer to Section 6-3.)
28. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)



5-24. THREADING GEAR REPLACEMENT

- When a threading gear is replaced, be extremely careful with the gear engagement adjustment of the threading ring and threading gear.
- If this adjustment is not done correctly, tape can't thread in the correct position.

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Cassette tape (BCT 20M)	

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of threading gear

↓

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

↓

Adjustment of tape running

↓

Adjustment of video tracking

↓

Ajdustment of CTL head height

↓

Adjustment of CTL head position

↓

Adjustment of audio head height

↓

Adjustment of audio head phase

↓

Confirmation of tape running

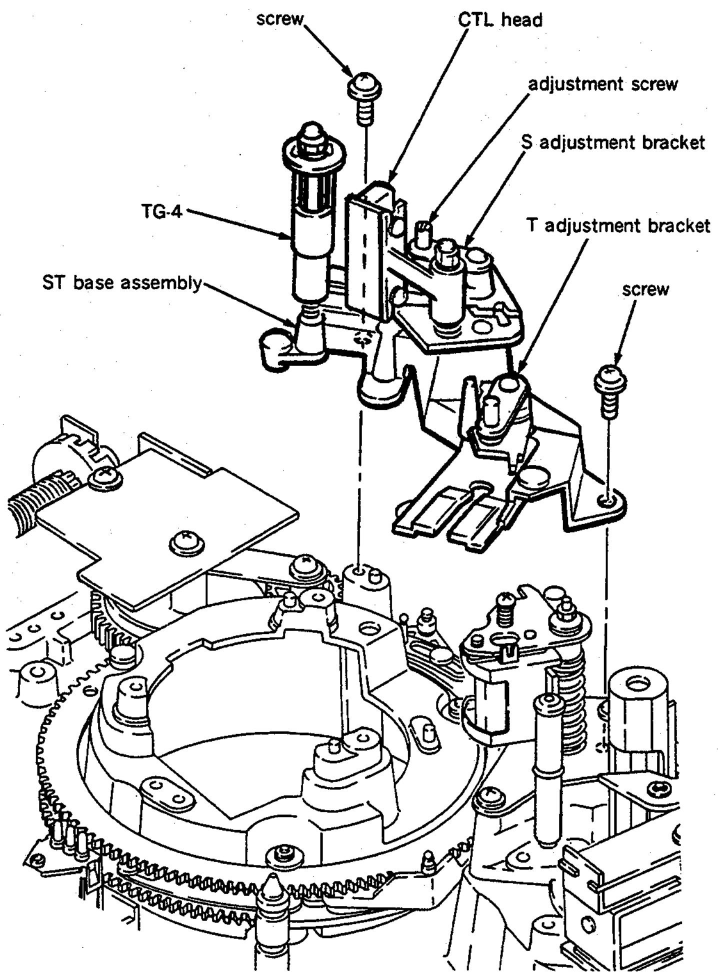
↓

Adjustment of TC head position

Removal

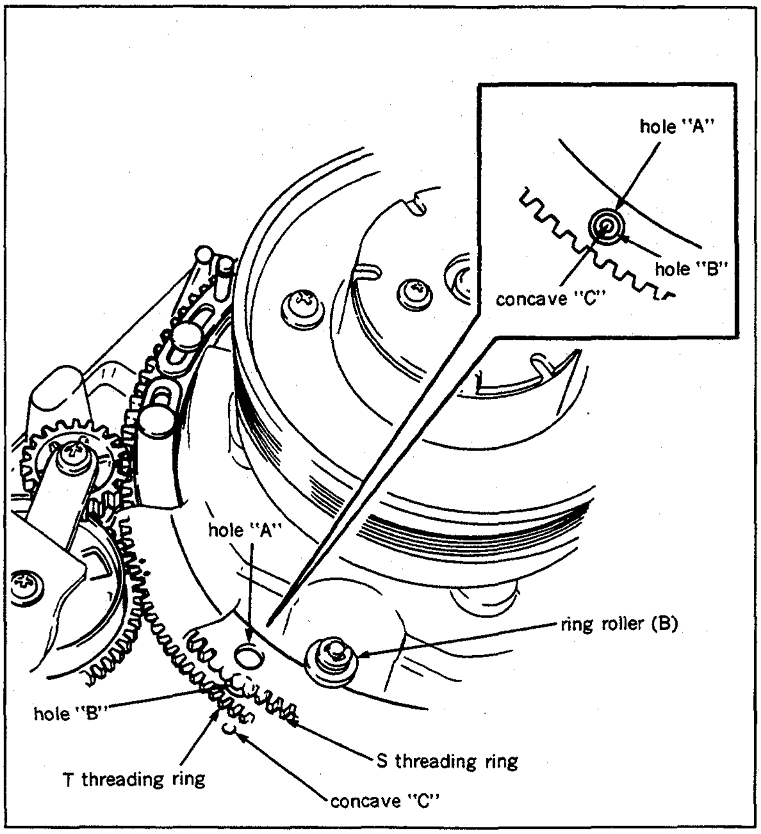
1. Remove a cleaning roller block. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)
3. Place a reel table to the L cassette position.
4. Remove a S rail and S slider assembly. (Refer to steps (1) to (6) in Section 5-16.)
5. Remove a T rail and T slider assembly. (Refer to steps (5) to (9) in Section 5-17.)
6. Remove a P slider assembly. (Refer to step (6) in Section 5-18.)
7. Disconnect connectors from a drum which are connected to RP board.
8. Remove two screws of a ST base assembly, and place it on the power block.

Note :Be careful not to loose or tighten the adjustment screws of a S adjustment bracket and T adjustment bracket, and also not to change height of a CTL head and TG-4 tape guide on the ST base assembly.
It is recomended to cover the CTL head with gauze to prevent make damage of tape running surface of the CTL head.

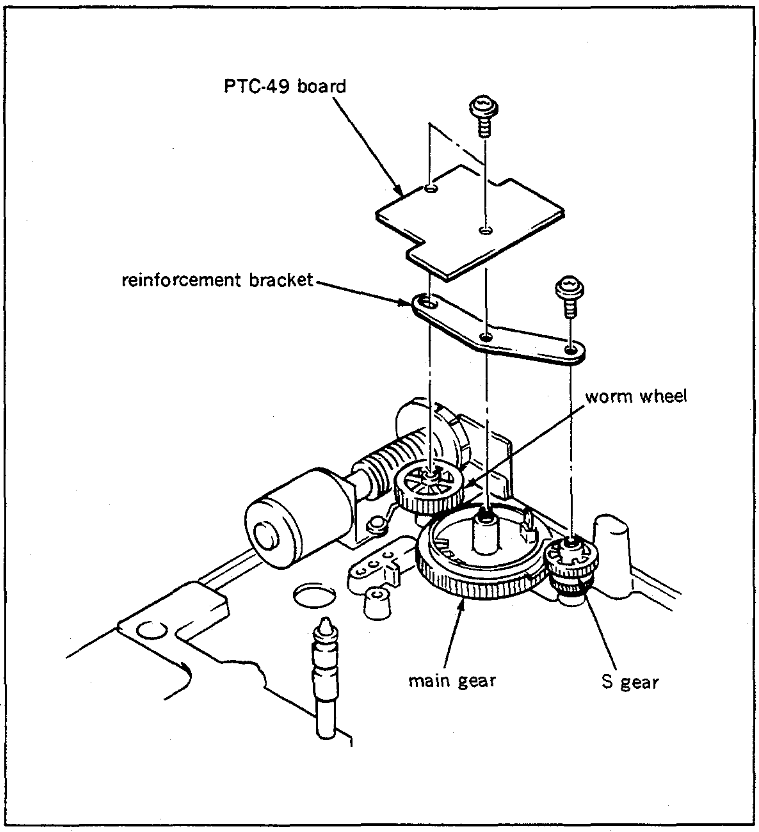

screw
CTL head
adjustment screw
S adjustment bracket
TG-4
T adjustment bracket
ST base assembly
screw

<Drum assembly is omitted in this illustration.>

9. Turn a threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block by fingers looking it from the front so that match hole "A" of a S threading ring, hole "B" of a T threading ring and in the concave "C" on the slant chassis.


hole "A"
hole "B"
concave "C"
hole "A"
ring roller (B)
hole "B"
S threading ring
T threading ring
concave "C"

10. Disconnect connectors CN901, CN902 and CN903 from PTC-49 board. Remove two screws of PTC-49 board and remove it from the unit.
11. Remove a screw of a reinforcement bracket, and remove it.
12. Remove a worm wheel, S gear and main gear from the unit.

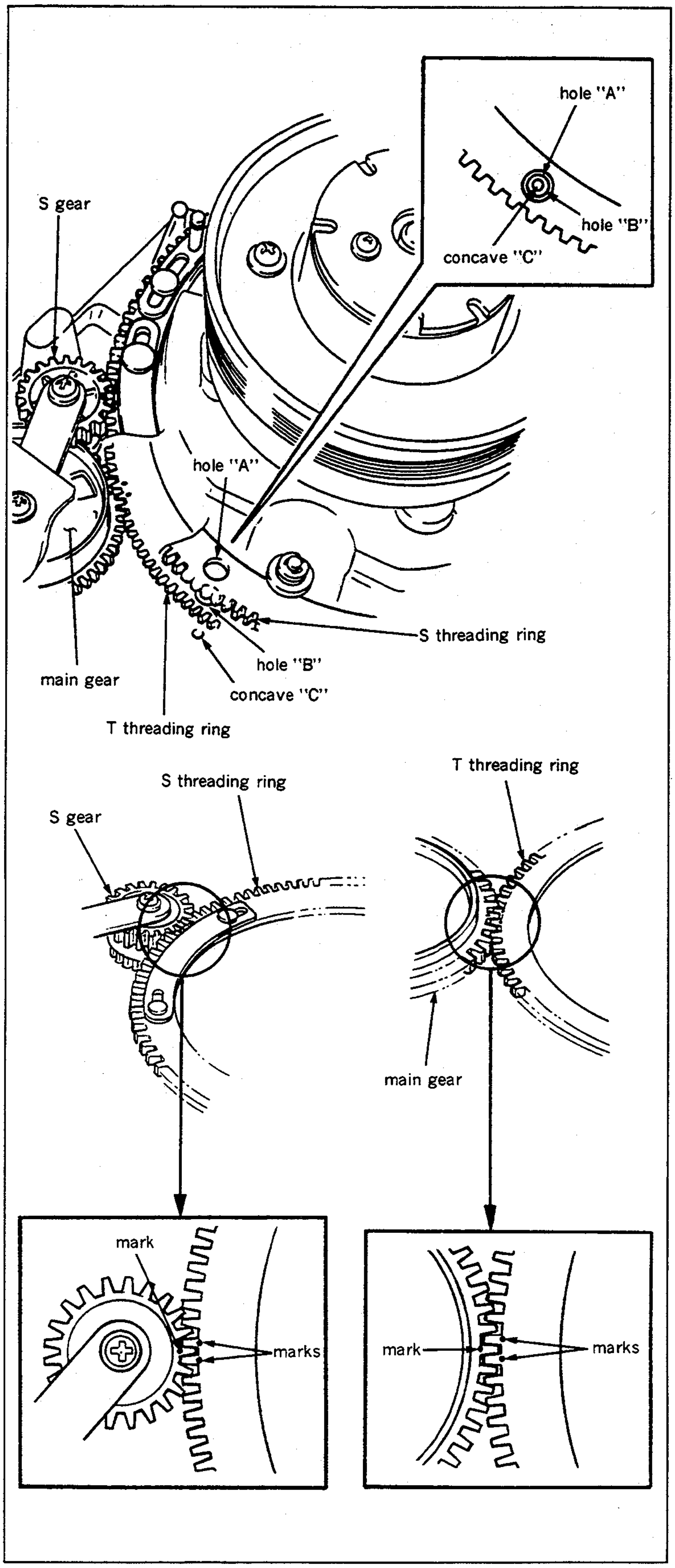

PTC-49 board
reinforcement bracket
worm wheel
main gear
S gear

Installation

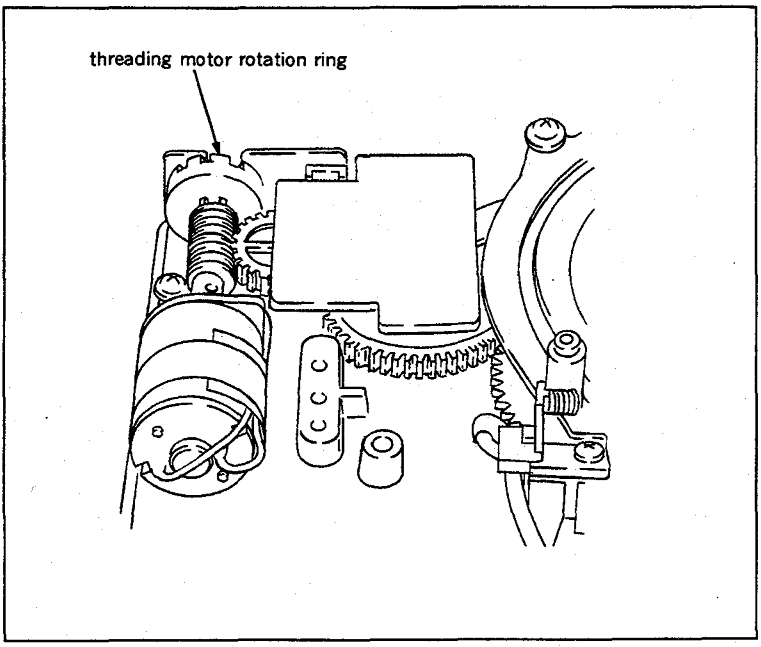
Note 1 : Install the worm wheel and S gear after performing following step (14) main gear engagement adjustment.

Note 2 : When install the S gear, perform following step (15) S gear engagement adjustment.

13. Clean installation shaft for the gear, and hole of the gear with cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
14. Install the main gear and perform the main gear engagement adjustment.
    (1) Make sure that the hole "A" of the S threading ring, hole "B" of the T threading ring and in the concave "C" on the slant chassis are the same position.
    (2) Install the main gear so that engage two marks on the teeth of the T threading ring with a mark on the tooth of the main gear as shown in the figure.
15. Install the S gear and perform the S gear engagement adjustment.
    (1) Make sure that the hole "A" of the S threading ring, hole "B" of the T threading ring and in the concave "C" on the slant chassis are the same position.
    (2) Install the S gear so that engage two marks on the teeth of the S threading ring with a mark on the tooth of the S gear as shown in the figure.
16. Install the worm wheel.
17. Install the reinforcement bracket.
18. Connect connectors CN901, CN902 and CN903 to PTC-49 board, and install PTC-49 board to the unit.


hole "A"
hole "B"
concave "C"
S gear
hole "A"
S threading ring
hole "B"
main gear
concave "C"
T threading ring
S threading ring
S gear
T threading ring
main gear
mark
marks
mark
marks

19. Turn the threading motor rotation detection ring of a threading motor block with finger, and place the threading ring to the point of 5 mm back from the threading completion mode.
20. Assemble the ST base assembly, P slider assembly, T slider assembly, T rail, S slider assembly and T rail in the reversing the order of steps (4) to (8).
21. Turn the POWER to ON, make sure that the threading operates properly and smoothly.
22. Insert a cassette tape, and make sure that the tape threads to the normal position.



Adjustment after replacement

23. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
24. Perform tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
25. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
26. Perform CTL head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-5.)
27. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
28. Perform audio head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
29. Perform audio head phase adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
30. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
31. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)

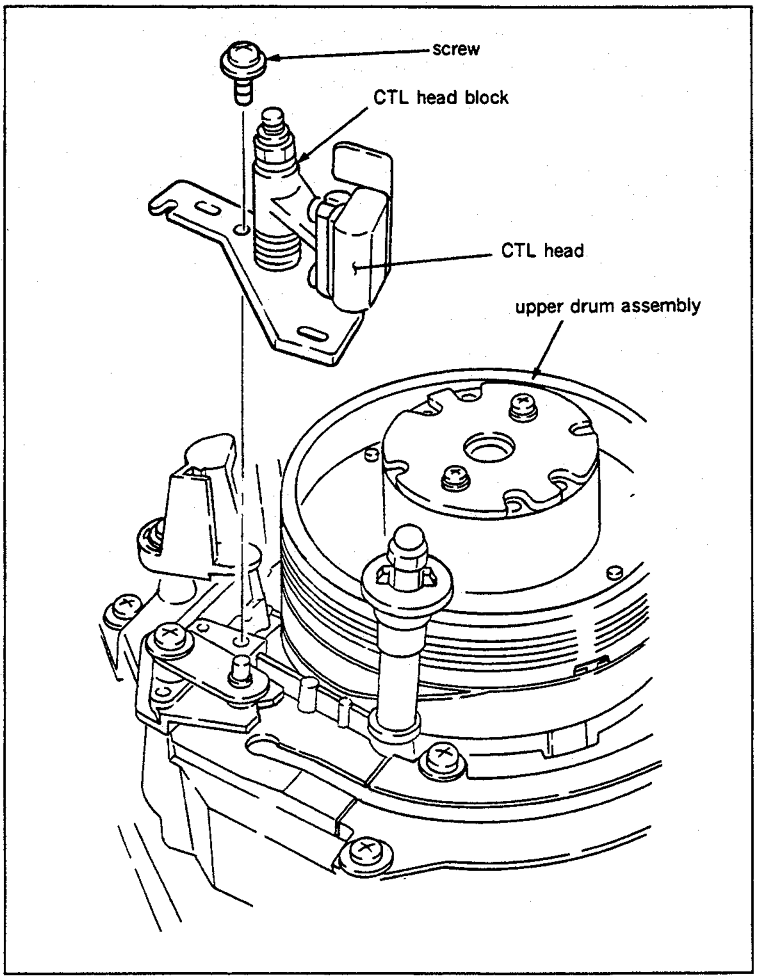
5-25. CTL HEAD REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of CTL head
↓
Adjustment of video tracking
↓
Adjustment of CTL head height
↓
Adjustment of CTL head position
↓
Adjustment of TC head position

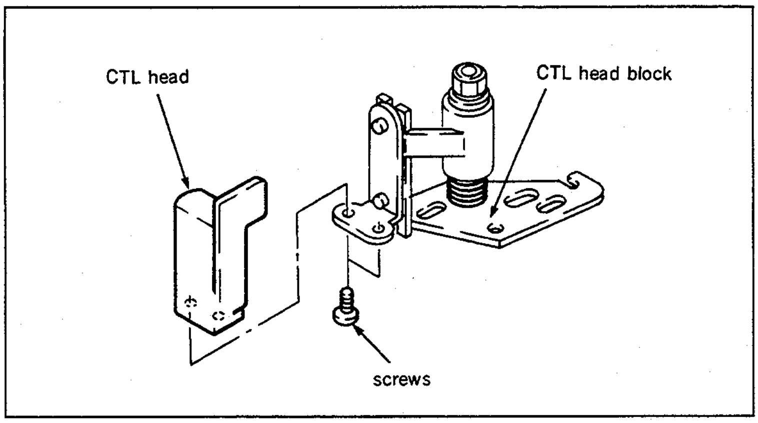


Removal

1. Rotate an upper drum assembly by hand, and set the video heads away from a CTL head.
2. Unsolder two lead wires from the CTL head.
3. Loosen a screw shown in the figure, remove the CTL head block from the unit.

Note :Never contact the CTL head to the upper drum assembly when removing the CTL head.

4. Loosen two screws at the bottom of the head, and remove the CTL head.



Installation

5. Clean a CTL head side bracket and the installation surface of a new CTL head with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
6. Install the CTL head with two screws.
7. Install the assembled CTL head block to the unit.

8. Solder two lead wires to the CTL head.

Note :Solder red lead wire to left side, and white lead wire to right side looking it from the front.

9. Clean the CTL head and TG-4 tape guide with cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.

Adjustment after replacement

10. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
11. Perform CTL head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-5.)
12. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
13. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)

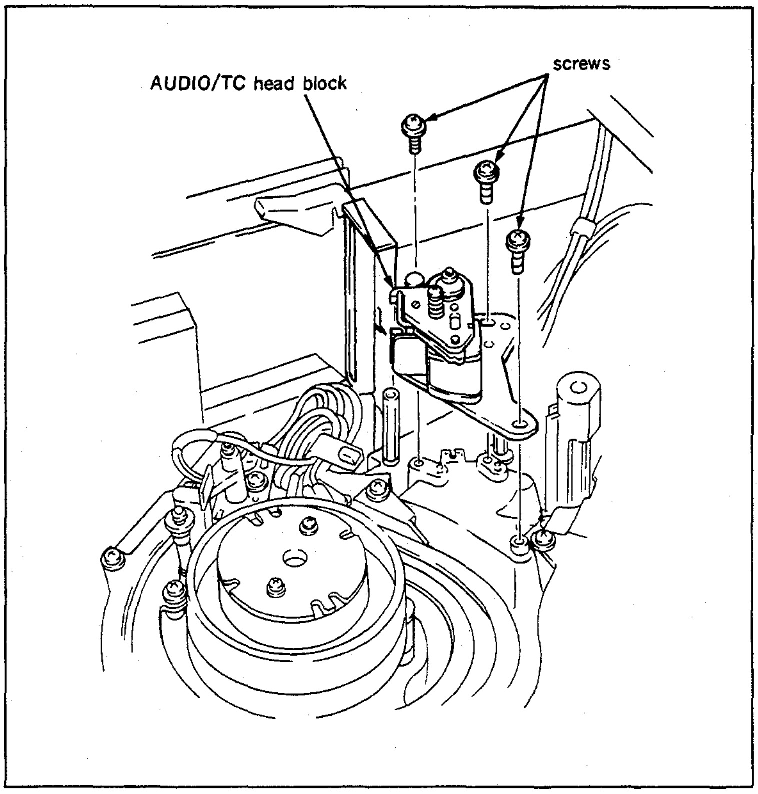
5-26. AUDIO/TC HEAD REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of AUDIO/TC head
↓
Adjustment of AUDIO/TC head zenith
↓
Adjustment of audio head tape-to-head contact
↓
Confirmation of tape running
↓
Adjustment of video tracking
↓
Adjustment of audio head height
↓
Adjustment of audio head phase
↓
Adjustment of CTL head position
↓
Adjustment of TC head position



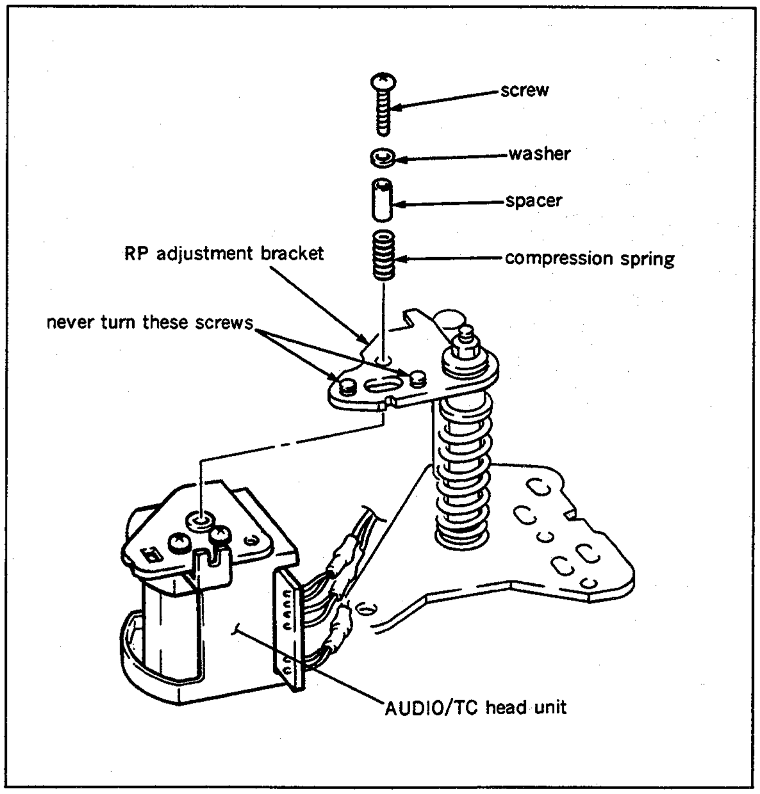
Removal

1. Remove a cleaning roller, block. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. At this time, the harness clamper of the drum comes off together. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)
3. Disconnect connectors from an AUDIO/TC head which connected with AU-148AP board, AU-149AP board and AU-150P board.
4. Remove the head harness from the harness clamper.
5. Remove three screws which hold the AUDIO/TC head block, and remove the head block from the unit.

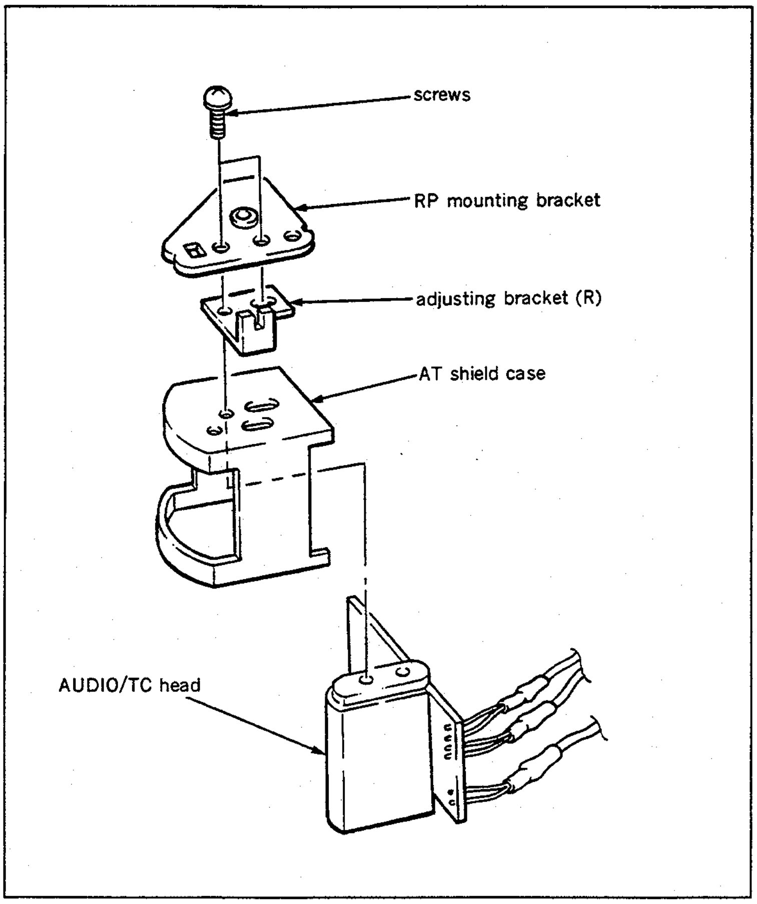
6. Remove a screw as shown in the figure, and remove the AUDIO/TC head unit from a RP adjustment bracket.

Note 1 : When removing the screw, pay particular attention not to lose a spacer, compression spring and washer which come off with the screw.

Note 2 : Do not loosen or tighten the two set-screws.


screw
washer
spacer
RP adjustment bracket
compression spring
never turn these screws
AUDIO/TC head unit

7. Unsolder all lead wires which connected with the head board.
8. Remove two screws as shown in the figure and remove the AUDIO/TC head.


screws
RP mounting bracket
adjusting bracket (R)
AT shield case
AUDIO/TC head

Installation

9. Clean the installing surface of a new AUDIO/TC head with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
10. Install the AUDIO/TC head, adjusting bracket (R) and RP mounting bracket to the holes on an AT shield case as shown in the figure with two screws.
11. Solder the connectors and lead wires to the AUDIO/TC head board.
    To face in front of the head,
    From the top
    White (with yellow tube)
    Red (with yellow tube)
    White (with red tube)
    Red (with red tube)
    White (with white tube)
    Red (with white tube)
12. Install the assembled AUDIO/TC head unit to the RP adjustment bracket.
13. Clean the tape running surface of the AUDIO/TC head with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
14. Install the AUDIO/TC head block with three screws.

Adjustment after replacement

15. Perform AUDIO/TC head zenith adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-2.)
16. Perform AUDIO head tape-to-head contact adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-9.)
17. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
18. Perform video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
19. Perform audio head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
20. Perform audio head phase adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
21. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
22. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)

5-27. CAPSTAN MOTOR REPLACEMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01

Replacement flow chart

Replacement of capstan motor

↓

Adjustment of capstan FG duty

↓

Adjustment of capstan free speed

↓

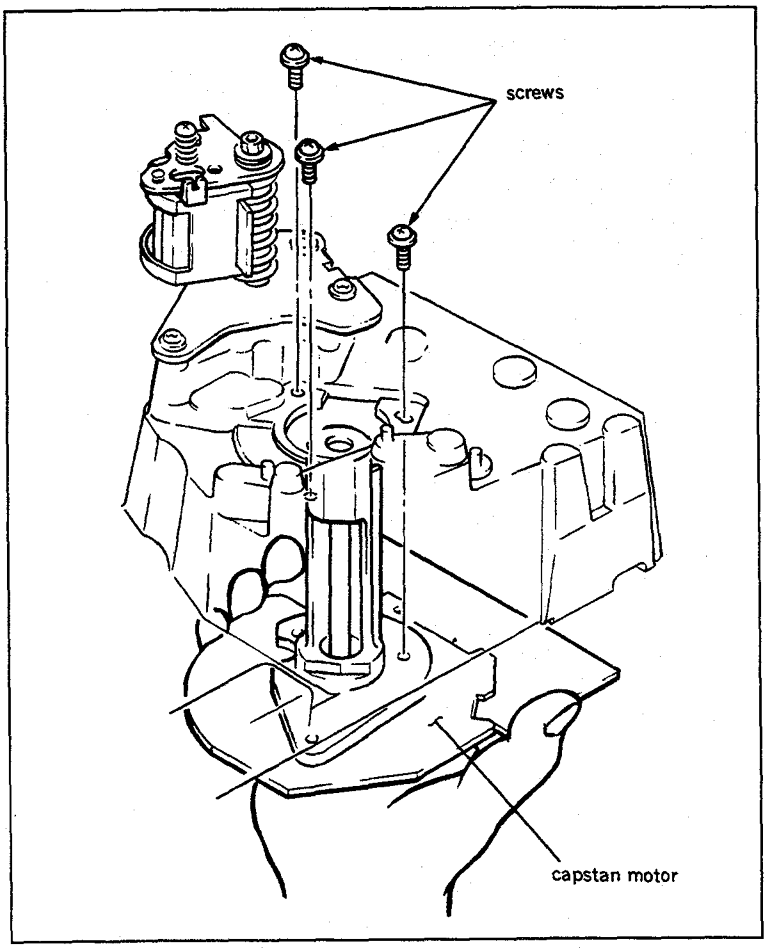
Confirmation of capstan motor operation

↓

Confirmation of pinch solenoid position

↓

Confirmation of tape running



Removal

1. Make sure that the unit is into unthreading end mode.
2. Set the unit up with the left side panel to the bottom.
3. Open DR-118 board.
4. Disconnect a connector of a capstan motor at the back side of the unit.
5. Disconnect three connectors CN914, CN915 and CN916 which connected with PD-56 board on the pinch press block.
6. Remove two screws which holding a pinch press block, and remove it from the chassis. (Refer to Section 5-22.)
7. Remove three fixing screws of the capstan motor from the top of the unit while holding the capstan motor with hand from the back side of the unit.

Note 1 : Hold the capstan motor with hands to prevent it dropping.

Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the tape guide around the capstan motor.

Installation

8. Clean the installing surfaces of a new capstan motor and the chassis with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
9. Install the capstan motor to the chassis.

Note 1 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the capstan shaft.

Note 2 : Pay particular attention not to cause damage to the tape guide around the capstan motor.

10. Install the capstan motor with three screws.
11. Connect the capstan motor connector.
12. Close DR-118A board, and place the unit to the original position.
13. Clean the capstan shaft with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
14. Install the pinch press block to the chassis with two screws.
15. Connect three connectors CN914, CN915 and CN916 with PD-56 board.

Adjustment after replacement

16. Perform capstan FG duty adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-27-2.)
17. Perform capstan speed adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-27-3.)
18. Perform confirmation of capstan motor operation. (Refer to Section 5-27-1.)
19. Perform confirmation of pinch solenoid position. (Refer to steps (1) to (4) in Section 5-22-1.)
20. Perform confirmation of tape running. (Refer to Section 6-3.)

5-27-1. Capstan Motor Operation Check

- Be sure to perform the capstan motor operation check when a capstan motor is replaced.

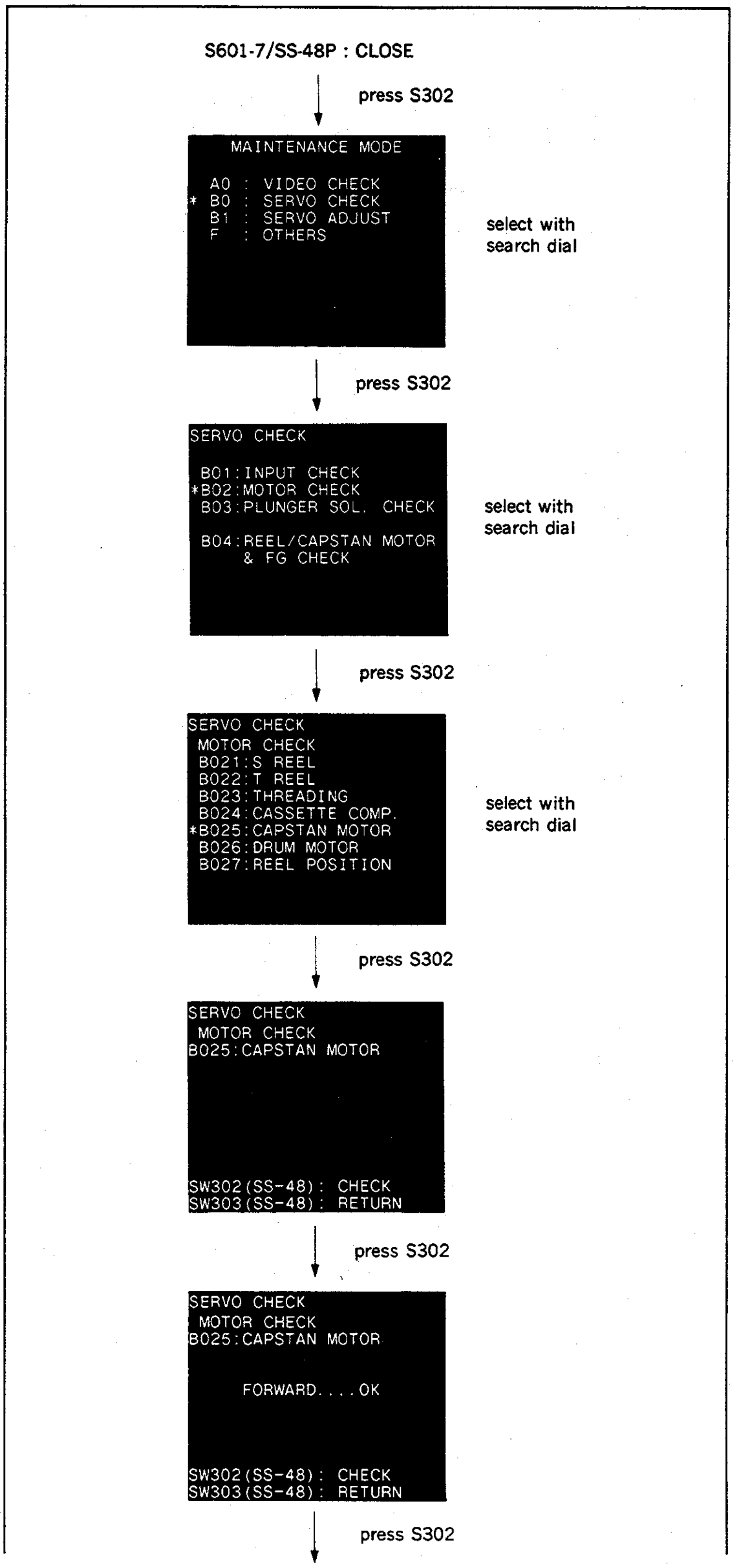
Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state, and press S302 to put the unit into maintenance mode.
2. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "BO : SERVO CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
3. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO CHECK" mode.
4. Move * mark to "BO2: MOTOR CHECK" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
5. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "MOTOR CHECK" menu.
6. Move * mark to "BO25: CAPSTAN MOTOR" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
7. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "CAPSTAN MOTOR" sub-menu.
8. Press S302 on SS-48P board after "BO25: CAPSTAN MOTOR" is appeared on the monitor screen.
   Make sure that "FORWARD...OK" is appeared on the monitor screen.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board again.
   Make sure that "REVERSE...." appears and then "REVERSE...OK" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   If the above message does not appear, check the capstan motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board).
10. Press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note : In order to finish "SERVO CHECK" mode in the maintenance mode, turn the POWER switch to OFF, and put Bit7 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



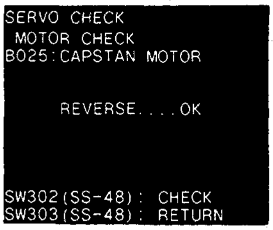
```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
* B0 : SERVO CHECK
 B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

```
SERVO CHECK

 B01:INPUT CHECK
*B02:MOTOR CHECK
 B03:PLUNGER SOL. CHECK

 B04:REEL/CAPSTAN MOTOR
     & FG CHECK
```

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
 B021:S REEL
 B022:T REEL
 B023:THREADING
 B024:CASSETTE COMP.
*B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR
 B026:DRUM MOTOR
 B027:REEL POSITION
```

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR






SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR


      FORWARD....OK


SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```



```
SERVO CHECK
 MOTOR CHECK
B025:CAPSTAN MOTOR

      REVERSE....OK



SW302(SS-48): CHECK
SW303(SS-48): RETURN
```

press S303 twice

S601-7/SS-48P : OPEN

5-27-2. Capstan FG Duty Adjustment

- Be sure to perform the capstan FG duty adjustment when the capstan motor is replaced.

Preparation

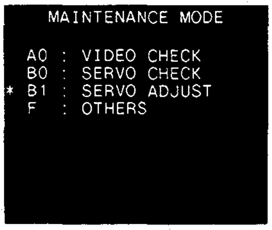
Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1: SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B104: CAPSTAN FG DUTY" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "CAPSTAN FG DUTY".
7. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen. When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.

S601-7/SS-48P : CLOSE

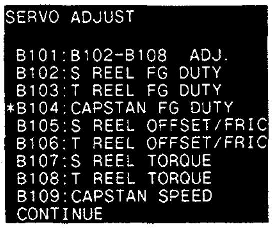
press S302



```
    MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0 : VIDEO CHECK
  B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
  F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

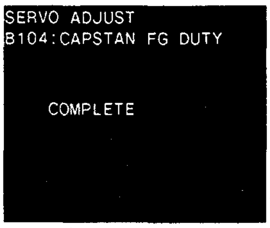
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
*B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
 B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

select with search dial

press S302



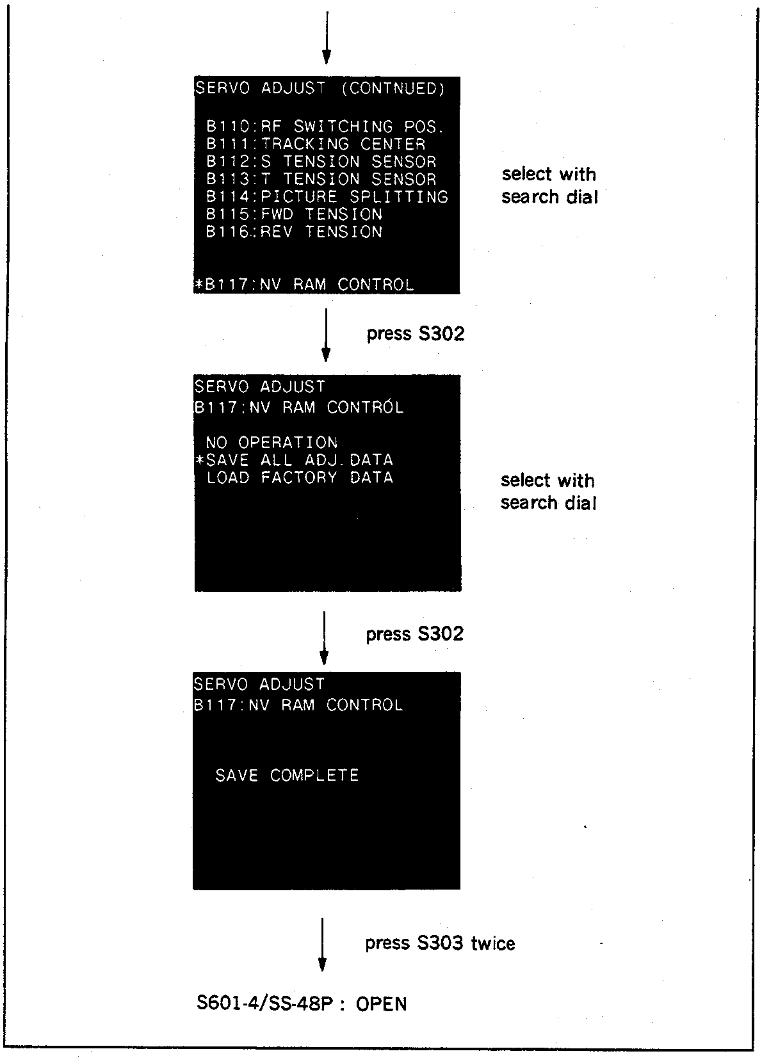
```
SERVO ADJUST
B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY


    COMPLETE
```

press S303

8. Move * mark to ”B117 : NV RAM CONTROL” which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
9. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute ”NV RAM CONTROL” menu.
10. Move * mark to ”SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA” with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
12. When ”SAVE COMPLETE” is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.

Note 1 : When ”INCOMPLETE” appears on the monitor screen in step (7), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
Check the capstan motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board) and capstan FG amplifier circuit (on SS-48P board).

Note 2 : When the SERVO ADJUST” mode is completed, turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

5-27-3. Capstan Speed Adjustment

- Be sure to perform the capstan speed adjustment when the capstan motor is replaced.

Preparation

Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Tool

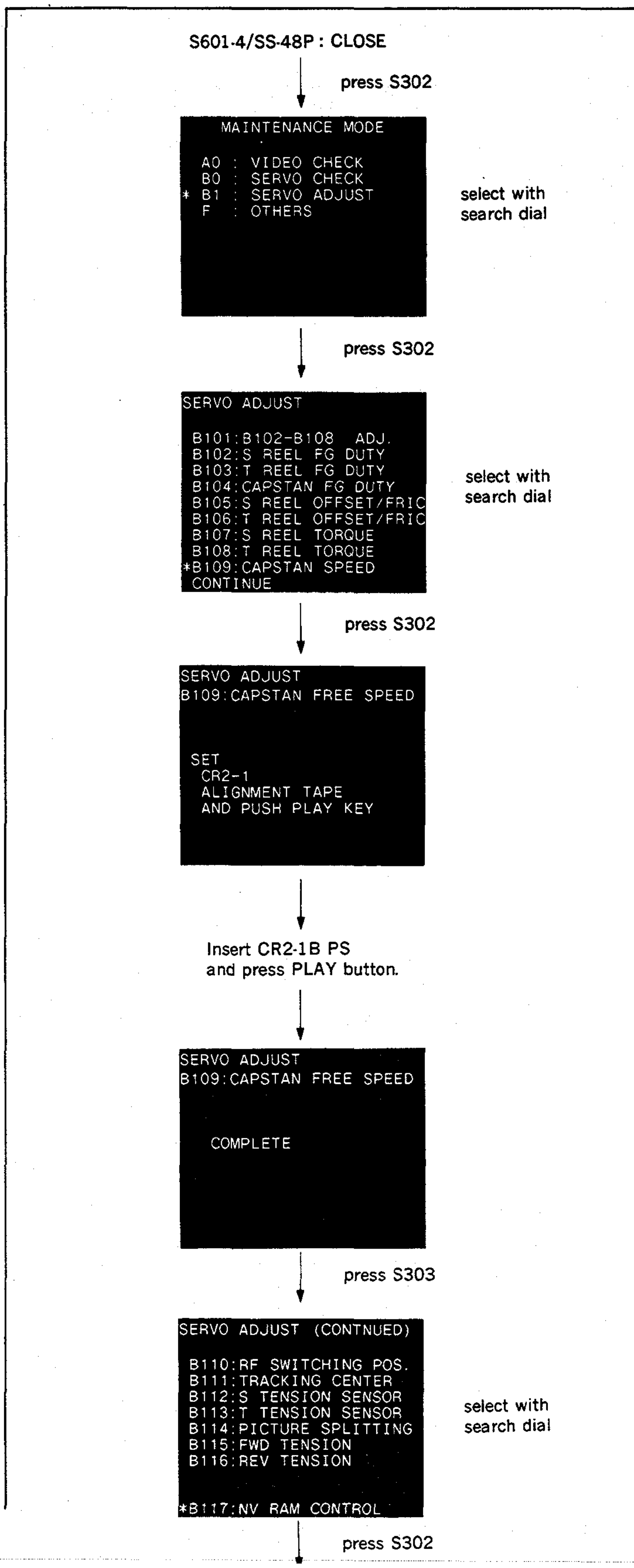
Alighnment tape CR2-1B PS : 8-960-096-51

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment dose not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Push S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "Bl : SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B109: CAPSTAN SPEED" which is displaying on monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "CAPSTAN FREE SPEED" menu.
7. A message "SET CR2-1 ALIGNMENT TAPE AND PUSH PLAY KEY" will be displayed on the monitor screen.
8. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS, and press PLAY button.
9. Confirm that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.

Note: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (9), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen. Then press EJECT button and take out the alignment tape, then check if the alignment tape is CR2-1B PS.
If it is OK, check the capstan motor drive circuit (on DR-118A board) and capstan FG amplifier circuit (on SS-48P board).

10. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.



S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

press S302

```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0  :  VIDEO CHECK
 B0  :  SERVO CHECK
* B1  :  SERVO ADJUST
 F   :  OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST

 B101:B102-B108  ADJ.
 B102:S REEL FG DUTY
 B103:T REEL FG DUTY
 B104:CAPSTAN FG DUTY
 B105:S REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B106:T REEL OFFSET/FRIC
 B107:S REEL TORQUE
 B108:T REEL TORQUE
*B109:CAPSTAN SPEED
 CONTINUE
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST
B109:CAPSTAN FREE SPEED


 SET
  CR2-1
  ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

Insert CR2-1B PS
and press PLAY button.

```
SERVO ADJUST
B109:CAPSTAN FREE SPEED


   COMPLETE
```

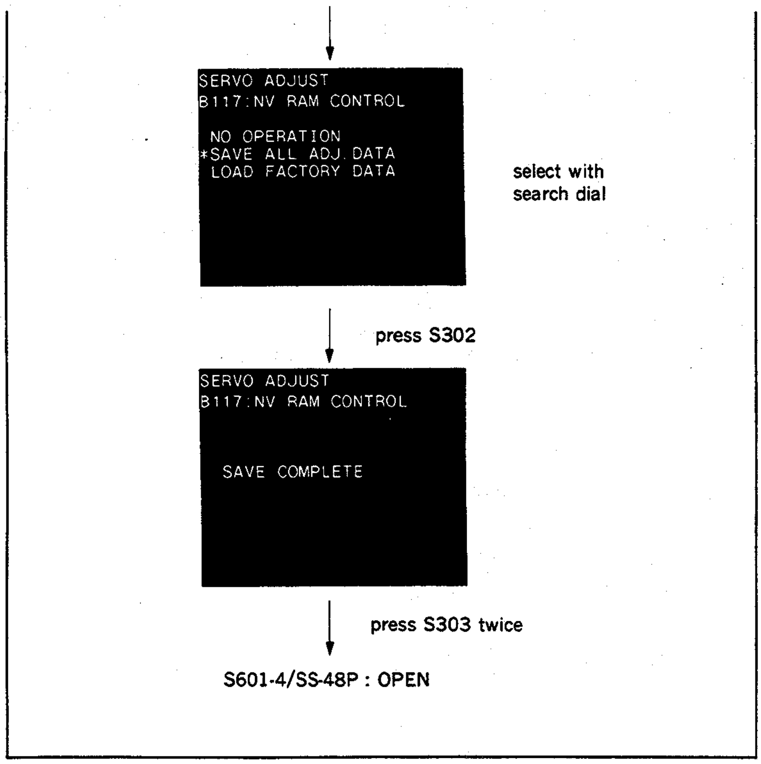
press S303

```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

press S302

11. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
12. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
13. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
14. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.
15. Press EJECT button and take out the alignment tape.
16. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

select with search dial
press S302
press S303 twice
S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

TAPE RUN

SECTION 6
TAPE RUN ALIGNMENT

6-1. GENERAL INFORMATION FOR TAPE RUN ADJUSTMENT

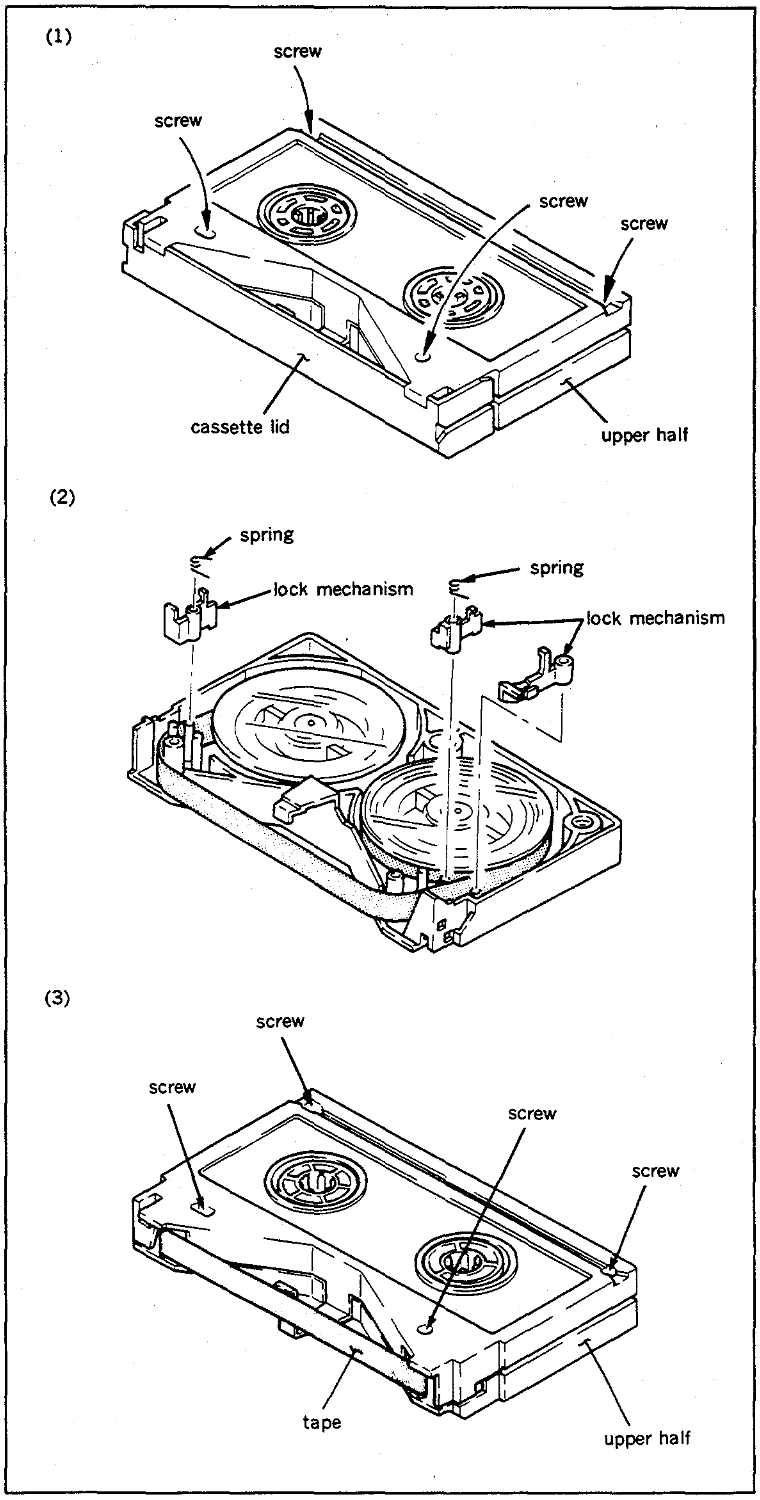
1. HOW TO MAKE A CASSETTE TAPE (ALIGNMENT TAPE) WITHOUT LID

   The check and adjustment cannot be performed if a cassette tape lid is installed. Remove the cassette tape lid as follows :

   (1) Remove four screws on the back of the cassette tape as shown in the figure, and remove an upper half of the cassette.

   (2) Remove the lock mechanism parts and the springs both at left and right sides, and remove the cassette lid from the upper half.

   (3) Install the upper half on the lower half with four screws from the back side.


(1)
screw
screw
screw
screw
cassette lid
upper half
(2)
spring
lock mechanism
spring
lock mechanism
(3)
screw
screw
screw
screw
tape
upper half

2. ALIGNMENT TAPE

   The alignment tapes used for tape run adjustment are as follows :

   CR2-1B PS : 8-960-096-51
   CR5-2A PS : 8-960-098-44
   CR8-1A PS : 8-960-098-45

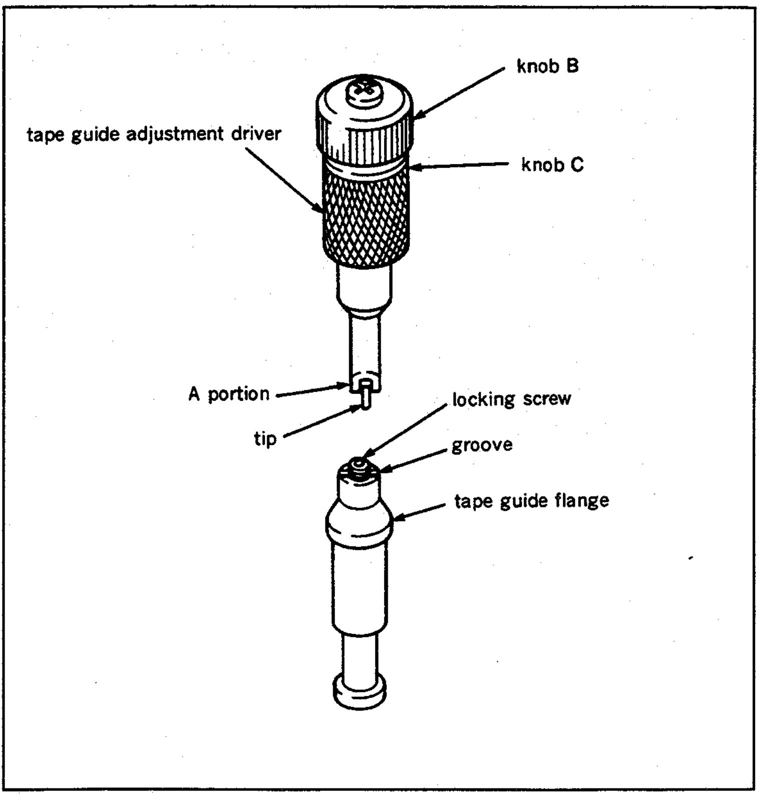
3. TAPE GUIDE ADJUSTMENT DRIVER

During tracking adjustment, rotate the flange on the tape guide in order to obtain the most desirable tape path. At that time, use the tape guide adjustment driver.

Tape guide adjustment driver : J-6321-500-A

Here is the explanation about how to use the tape guide adjustment driver.

(1) Align A portion (flatblade) with the groove of the tape guide flange.
(2) Fix knob C, rotate knob B, and loosen locking screw.
(3) Align the tip of knob B with the hole of locking screw of the tape guide. Fix knob B and rotate knob C. Then, the upper flange of the tape guide is rotated.
(4) In order to tighten the locking screw of the tape guide flange, firstly, fix the knob C, then rotate the knob B. (Tightening torque: 9.8 to 11.7 N•cm {1.0 to 1.2 kgf•cm})

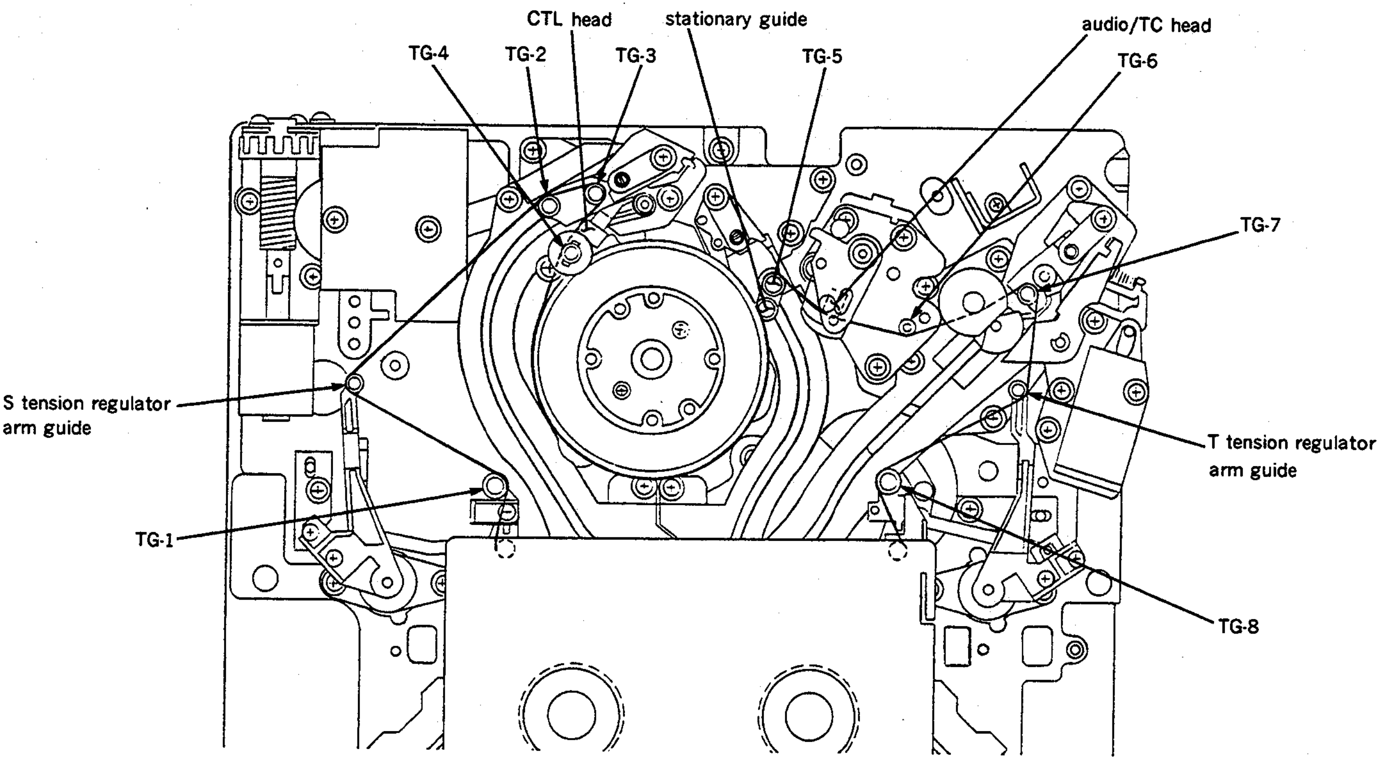


4. CASSETTE COMPARTMENT

Install the cassette compartment in the unit before performing the tape run adjustment. This enables more accurate adjustment.

5. LOCATION OF HEADS AND TAPE GUIDES

The location of heads and tape guides listed up in the adjustment item is shown in the figure.


CTL head
stationary guide
audio/TC head
TG-4
TG-2
TG-3
TG-5
TG-6
TG-7
S tension regulator arm guide
T tension regulator arm guide
TG-1
TG-8

6-2. AUDIO/TC HEAD ZENITH ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
Flatness plate : J-6086-570-A

Adjustment flow chart

Adjustment of audio/TC head zenith

↓

Adjustment of audio head height

↓

Adjustment of audio head phase

↓

Adjustment of drum entrance-side tape running

↓

Adjustment of drum entrance-side video tracking

↓

Adjustment of TC head position

↓

Confirmation of audio head height

↓

Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)

Check

1. Put the unit into unthreading end mode.
2. Place the flatness plate to a TG-6 tape guide, then push it slightly against an audio/TC head.

Note : Pay particular attention not to scratch the tape contacting surface of the audio/TC head.

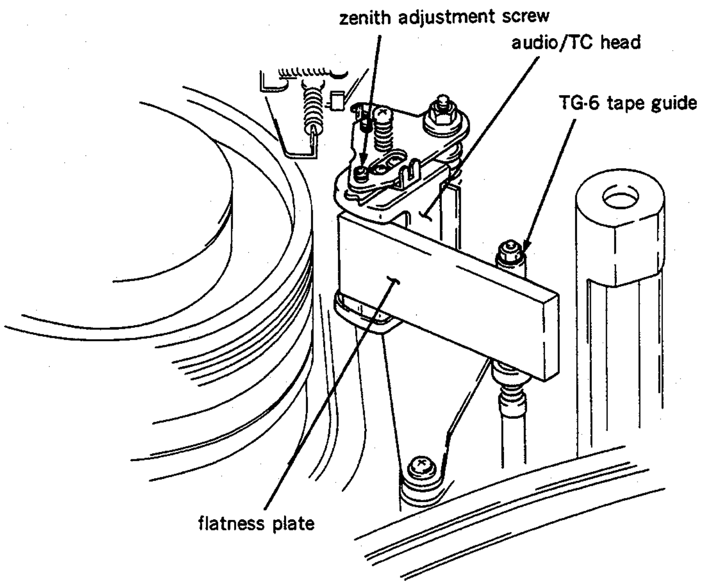
3. While pressing the flatness plate against the TG-6 tape guide with finger, push the upper part of the flatness plate in front of the audio/TC head softly with fingers of the other hand. Then, push the lower part of the flatness plate in front of the audio/TC head softly with fingers of the other hand.

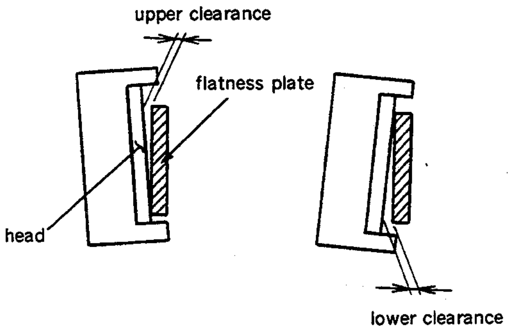
Specification : The flatness plate must not move when pushed the upper part. (In other words, no clearance shall exist between the flatness plate and head.)

The flatness plate must not move or a little move when pushed the lower part.

The clearance between the flatness plate and head (moving distance) is acceptable less than 0.05 mm.

- The confirmation procedure of 0.05 mm clearance:
  (1) Turn the zenith adjustment screw in counterclockwise so that the flatness plate must not move when pushed the upper and lower parts.
  (2) Turn the zenith adjustment screw in clockwise 50 degrees, the 0.05 mm clearance between the flatness plate and head exists.





Spec. : Upper clearance must not exist.
Lower clearance is acceptable less than 0.05 mm.

If the specification is satisfied, perform steps (5) and later.
If the specification is not satisfied, perform steps (4) and later.

Adjustment

4. In case clearance is observed at lower part, turn the zenith adjustment screw in counterclockwise to satisfy the above specification.
   In case clearance is observed at upper part, turn the zenith adjustment screw in clockwise to satisfy the above specification.
5. Clean the audio/TC head and TG-6 tape guide with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
6. Perform audio head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
7. Perform audio head phase adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
8. Perform drum exit-side tape running adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
9. Perform drum exit-side video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
10. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
11. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
12. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)

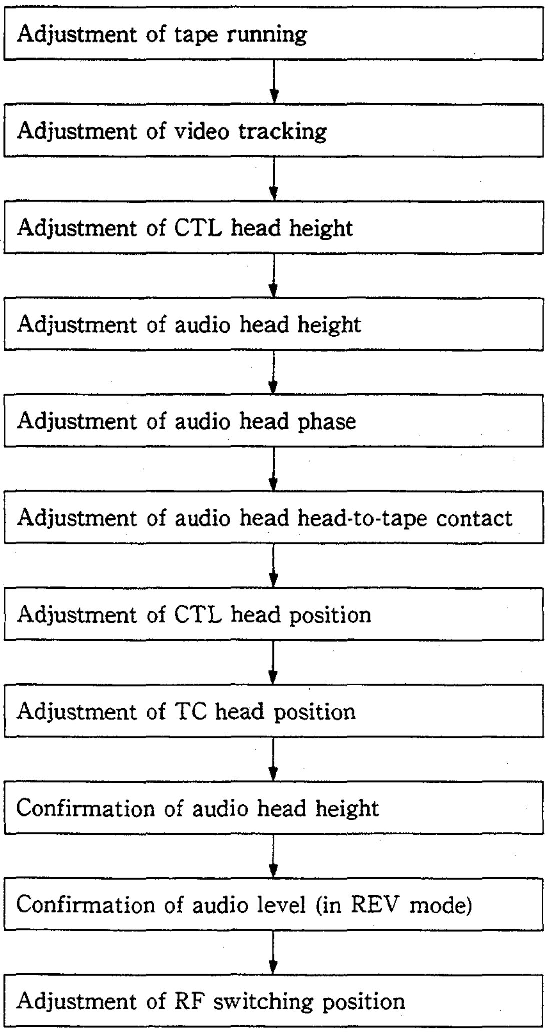
6-3. TAPE RUNNING ADJUSTMENT

- Adjustment of tape run is extremely important and critical adjustment for the purpose of running the tape in the most appropriate state. If this adjustment is not adequate, there is a possibility to damage the tape or cause serious damage to the unit.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit. By this way, accurate adjustment will be possible without difficulty as a service operation.

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Tape guide adjustment driver	: J-6321-500-A
Adjustment mirror	: J-6080-029-A
Oxide tape without lid (BCT-30G)	
Metal tape without lid (BCT-90ML)	

Adjustment flow chart


Adjustment of tape running
Adjustment of video tracking
Adjustment of CTL head height
Adjustment of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio head head-to-tape contact
Adjustment of CTL head position
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)
Adjustment of RF switching position

Check

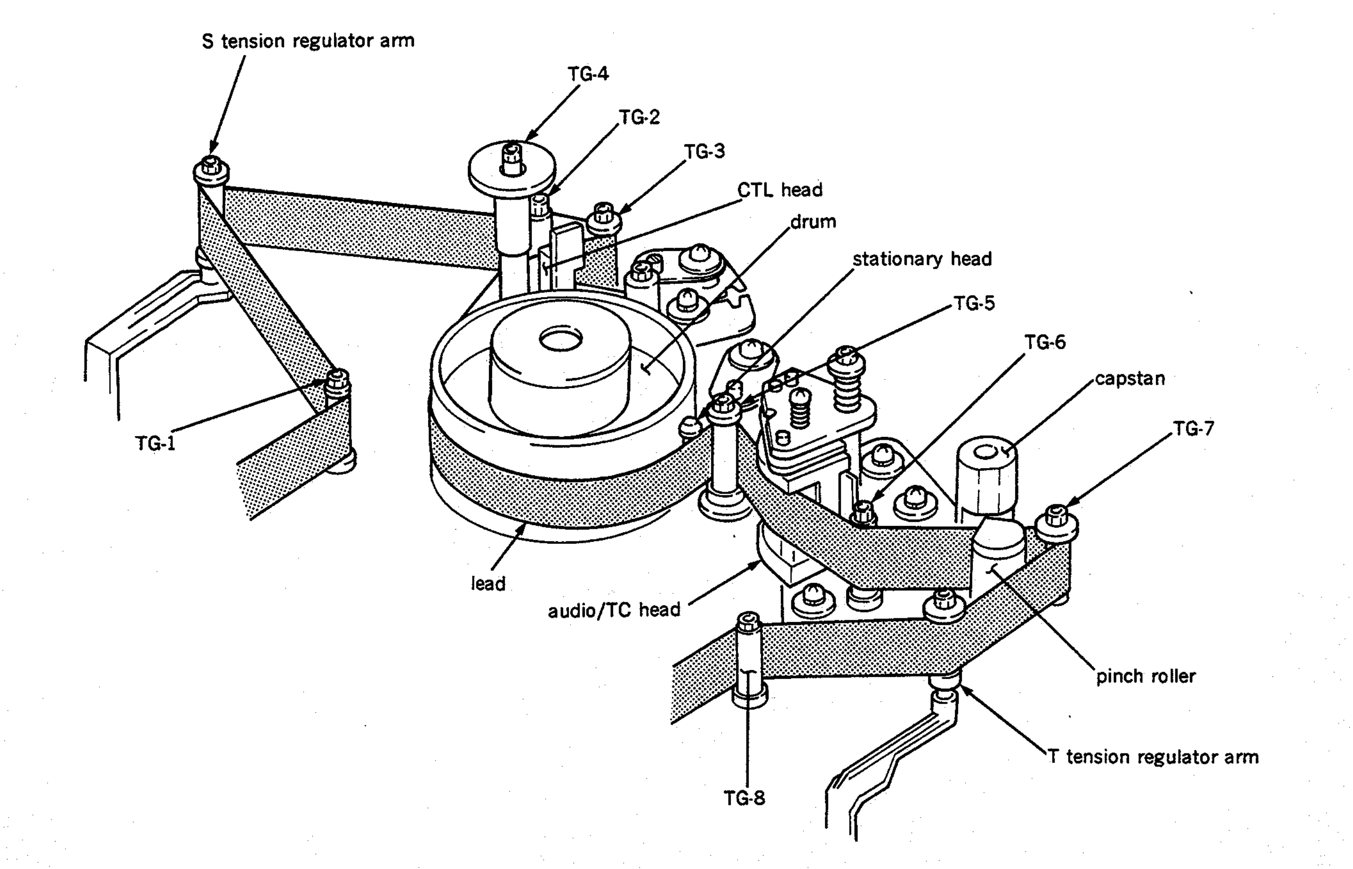
1. Clean the tape running surface of the tape guides, drum and video heads with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
2. Insert an oxide tape without lid (BCT-30G) into the unit.
3. Put the unit into PLAY mode.
4. Make sure using the adjustment mirror that the tape running condition satisfies the specification.
5. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
6. Make sure using the adjustment mirror that the tape running condition satisfies the specification.
7. Put the unit into FWD X5 and F.FWD modes.
8. Make sure using the adjustment mirror that the tape running condition satisfies the specification.
9. Put the unit into REV X5 and REW modes.
10. Make sure using the adjustment mirror that the tape running condition satisfies the specification.
11. Make sure that the specification is satisfied when the unit is changed from STOP mode to F.FWD mode, STOP mode to REW mode, STOP mode to PLAY mode, STOP mode to FWD X5 mode, or STOP mode to REV X5 mode.
12. Press the EJECT button, take out the oxide tape without lid (BCT-30G), and insert the metal particle tape without lid (BCT-90ML) into the unit.
13. Perform steps (3) through (11) and confirm that the specifications are satisfied.

Adjustment

14. Loosen the locking screw at the upper part of the tape guide that does not satisfy the specification two to three turns using the tape guide adjustment driver.
15. Turn the adjustment nut or the upper flange of the tape guide, and adjust the height of the tape guide so that the specification is satisfied. Tighten the locking screw after adjustment is completed.

Note : The specification may not be satisfied by the above adjustment when an S slider assembly or T slider assembly is replaced. In this case, turn the slantness adjustment screw for the S slider assembly or T slider assembly in accordance with the procedure described in the video tracking adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-4-2 or 6-4-3.)

16. Perform video tracking adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-4.)
17. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
18. Perform audio head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-7.)
19. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-8.)
20. Perform audio head head-to-tape contact adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-9.)



21. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
22. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)
23. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
24. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode).
    (Refer to Section 6-11.)
25. Perform RF switching position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-12.)

Specification

Drum entrance side

1) The tape runs in contact with the lead of drum entrance side without any curl.
2) The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide.
   (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
3) The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide.
   When the unit just put into the REV mode, the lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange without curl.
   (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
4) The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the S tension arm.
   (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
5) There shall be no uneven tape tension in the area between the TG-4 and TG-3, the TG-2 and guide roller of S tension arm, and the guide roller of S tension arm and TG-1.

Drum exit side

6) The tape runs in contact with the lead of drum exit side without any curl.
7) The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide.
   (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
8) The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide.
   However, in PLAY, F.FWD, and REW modes, the lower flange of the tape guide must not rotate.
   (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
9) The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide.
   (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
10) The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the T tension arm.
    (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
11) There shall be no uneven tape tension in the area between the TG-5 and TG-6, the TG-6 and capstan shaft, the capstan shaft and TG-7, the TG-7 and guide roller of T tension arm, and the guide roller of T tension arm and TG-8.

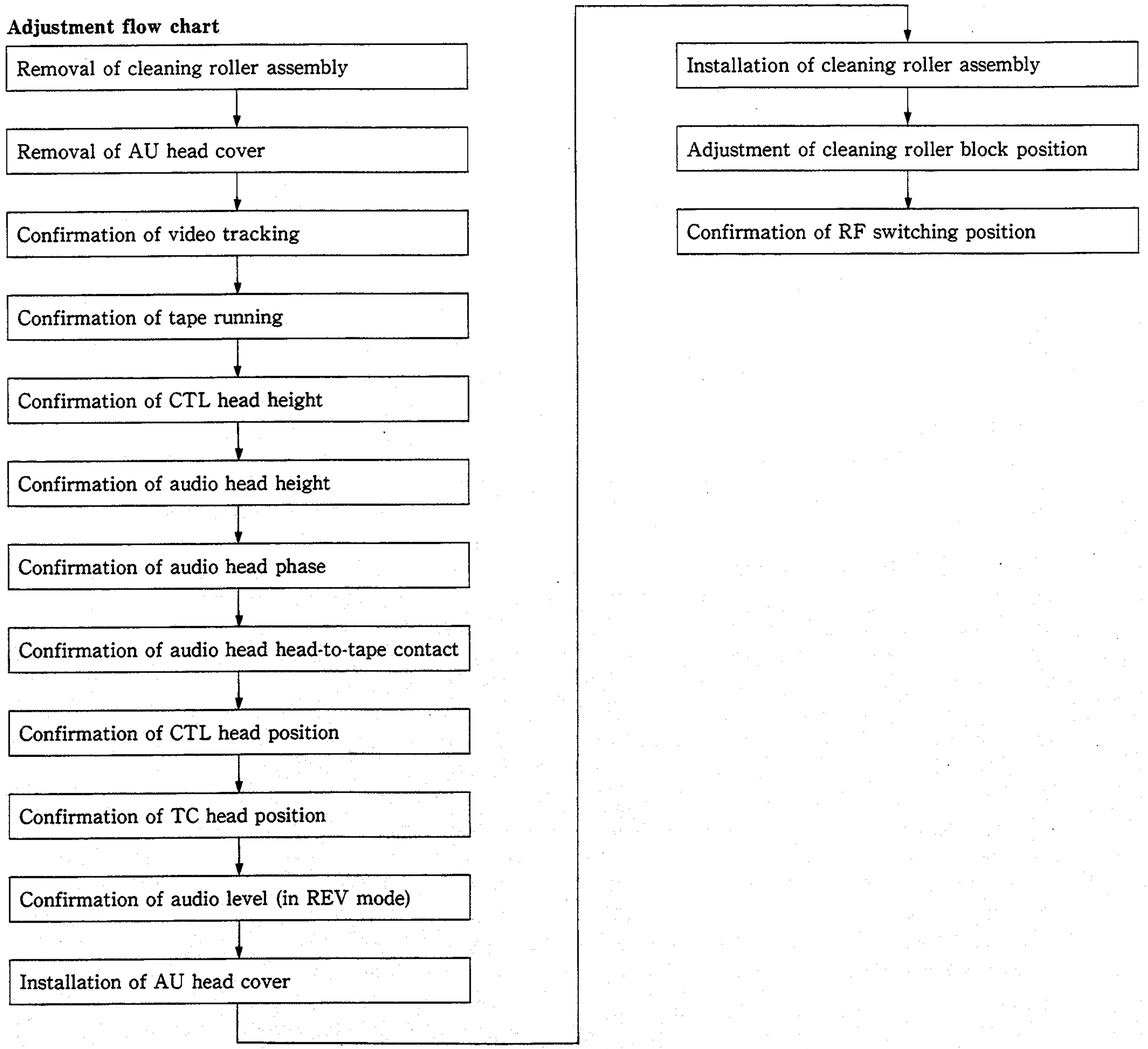
6-4. CONFIRMATION OF VIDEO TRACKING

- Adjustment of video tracking is extremely important. If this adjustment is not adequate, the tape interchangeability is influenced significantly.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit. By this way, accurate adjustment will be possible without difficulty as a service operation.

Tools

Cleaning piece : 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid : 9-919-573-01
Alignment tape without lid (CR2-1B PS)
: 8-960-096-51
Adjustment mirror : J-6080-029-A
Dualtrace oscilloscope

Adjustment flow chart

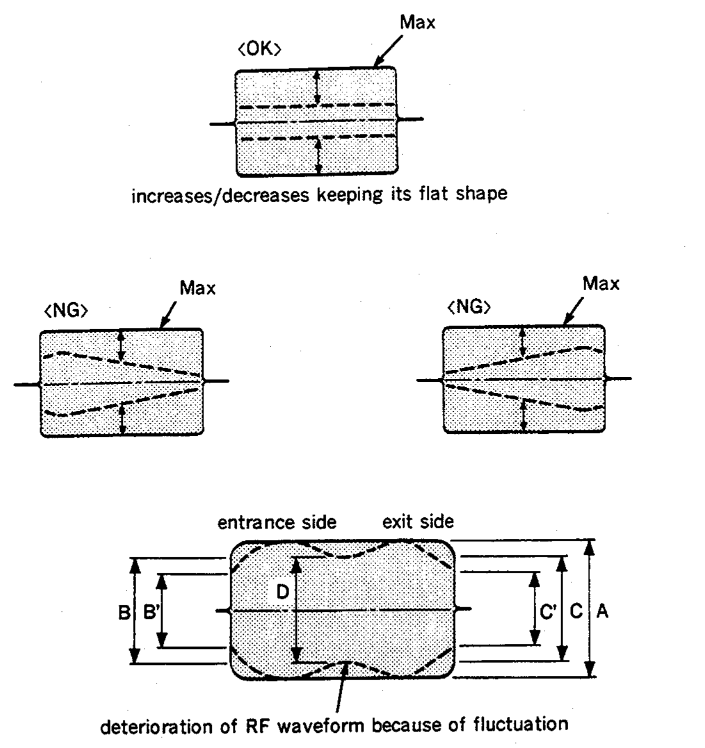

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Confirmation of video tracking
Confirmation of tape running
Confirmation of CTL head height
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Confirmation of audio head head-to-tape contact
Confirmation of CTL head position
Confirmation of TC head position
Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position
Confirmation of RF switching position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

1. Clean the tape running surface of the tape guides, drum, and video heads with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
2. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP101/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Y-RF signal)
   CH-2 : TP1/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Switching pulse)
   TRIG : CH-2
3. Insert an alignment tape without lid (CR2-1B PS) into the unit and put the unit into PLAY mode.
4. Make sure that the RF envelope waveform increases/decreases keeping its flat shape when the tracking control is turned.
5. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact waveform and fluctuation satisfy the required specifications when the RF envelope waveform is maximized.


⟨OK⟩
Max
increases/decreases keeping its flat shape
⟨NG⟩
Max
⟨NG⟩
Max
entrance side
exit side
B
B'
D
C'
C
A
deterioration of RF waveform because of fluctuation

A : maximum output level
D : minimum output level at center portion because of fluctuation
C, B : maximum output level at entrance and exit sides
C', B' : minimum output level at entrance and exit sides because of fluctuation

$$\frac{B}{A} \geqq 0.8$$

$$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.8$$

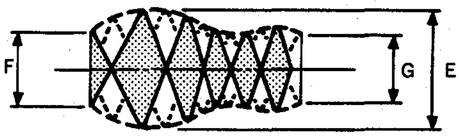
$$\frac{D}{A} \geqq 0.9$$

$$\frac{B'}{B} \geqq 0.9$$

$$\frac{C'}{C} \geqq 0.9$$

6. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
7. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact waveform satisfies the specifications when the RF envelope waveform is maximized.
8. Put the unit into REW and F.FWD modes, and change the mode from STOP to F.FWD modes, and from STOP to REW modes. At that time, make sure that no head-to-tape contact waveform lacking exists in the RF envelope waveform.
   If the specification is satisfied, perform steps (9) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment in accordance with Sections 6-4-1, 6-4-2, or 6-4-3.
9. Make sure that the tape running state in each tape guide satisfy the specification. (Refer to Section 6-3.)
10. Perform CTL head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-5.)
11. Perform audio head height adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-7.)
12. Perform audio head phase tentative adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
13. Perform audio head head-to-tape contact adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-9.)
14. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
15. Perform audio head phase adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-8.)
16. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
17. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
18. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
19. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
20. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
21. Install the cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
22. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
23. Perform RF switching position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-12.)

<In REV mode>



$\frac{F}{E} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{G}{E} \geqq 0.8$

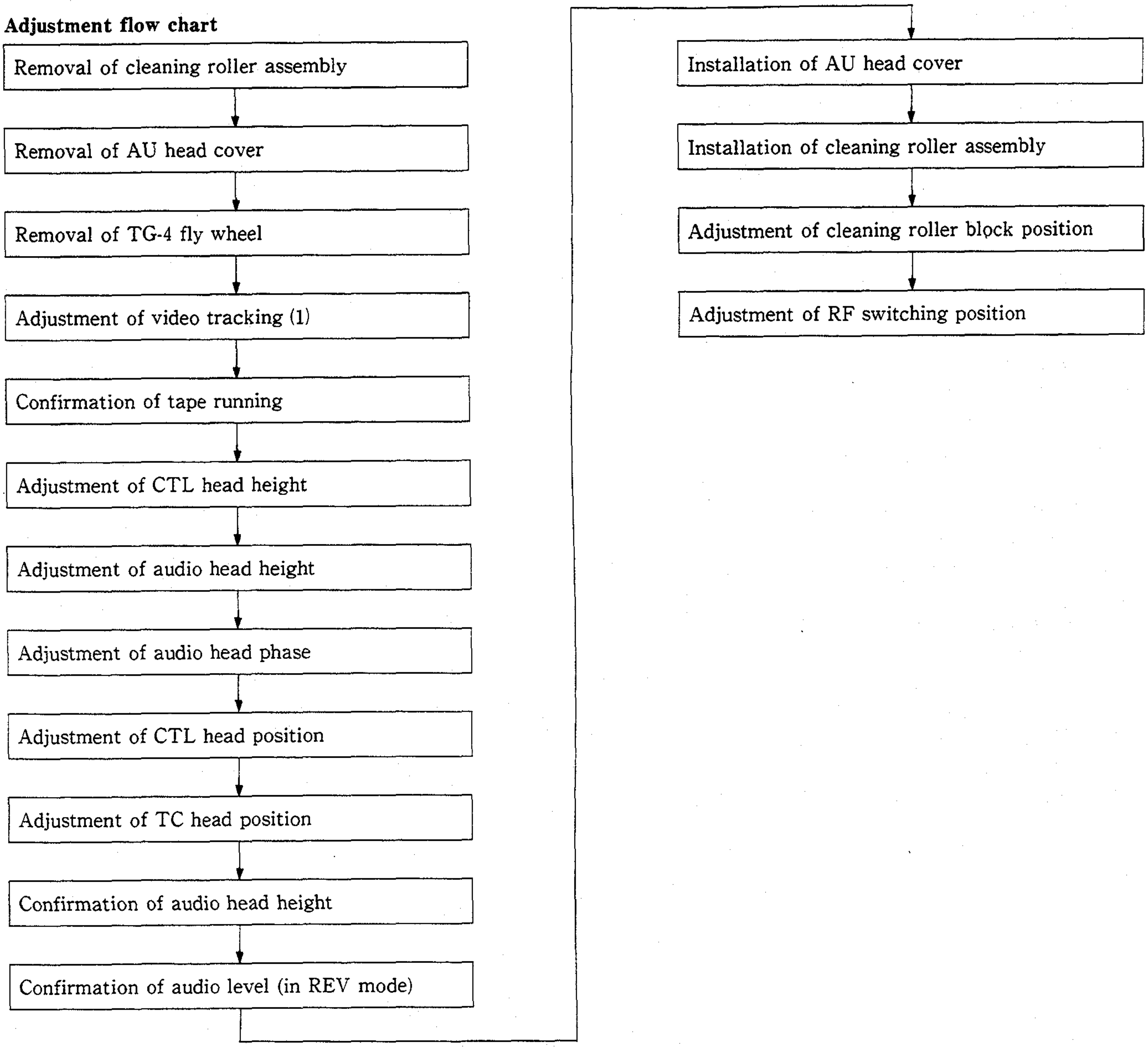
6-4-1. Video Tracking Adjustment (1)

- Adjustment of video tracking is extremely important. If this adjustment is not adequate, the tape interchangeability is influenced significantly.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit. By this way, accurate adjustment will be possible without difficulty as a service operation.

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Alignment tape without lid (CR2-1B PS)	: 8-960-096-51
Tape guide adjustment driver	: J-6321-500-A
Adjustment mirror	: J-6080-029-A
Dualtrace oscilloscope	

Adjustment flow chart



Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Removal of TG-4 fly wheel
Adjustment of video tracking (1)
Confirmation of tape running
Adjustment of CTL head height
Adjustment of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Adjustment of CTL head position
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position
Adjustment of RF switching position

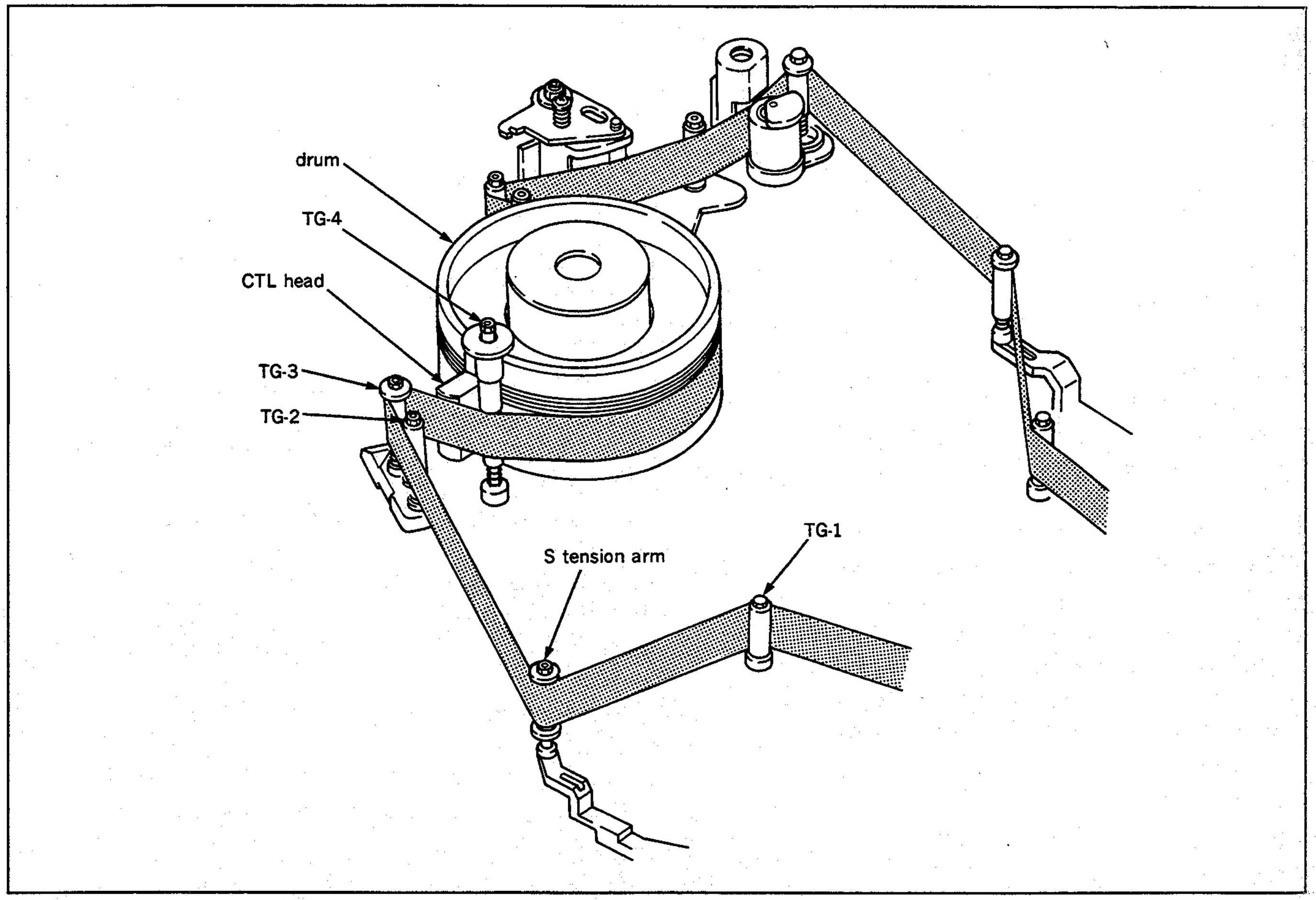
Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover. (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

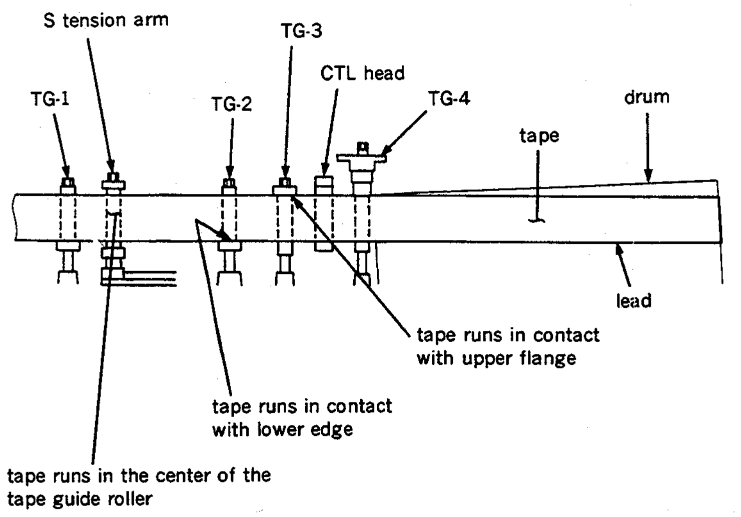
Adjustment

- **Perform steps (1) through (16), and steps (31) and later when performing the tracking adjustment on the drum entrance side.**
- **Perform steps (1) and (2), and steps (17) and later when performing the tracking adjustment on the drum exit side.**

1. Clean the tape running surface of the tape guides, drum, and video heads with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
2. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP101/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Y-RF signal)
   CH-2 : TP1/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Switching pulse)
   TRIG : CH-2
3. Hold claws of the upper part of a TG-4 tape guide roller using tweezers, and remove a fly wheel. (Refer to Section 5-2.)
4. Loosen the locking screws at the upper part of a TG-3 and TG-2 tape guide rollers one to two turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
5. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS and put the unit into PLAY mode.
6. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is 70 % to 80 % of the maximum output.
7. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide does not come in contact with the lower edge of the tape.
8. Turn the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide so that the RF envelope waveform on the entrance side is flat.
9. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide comes in contact with the lower edge of the tape.

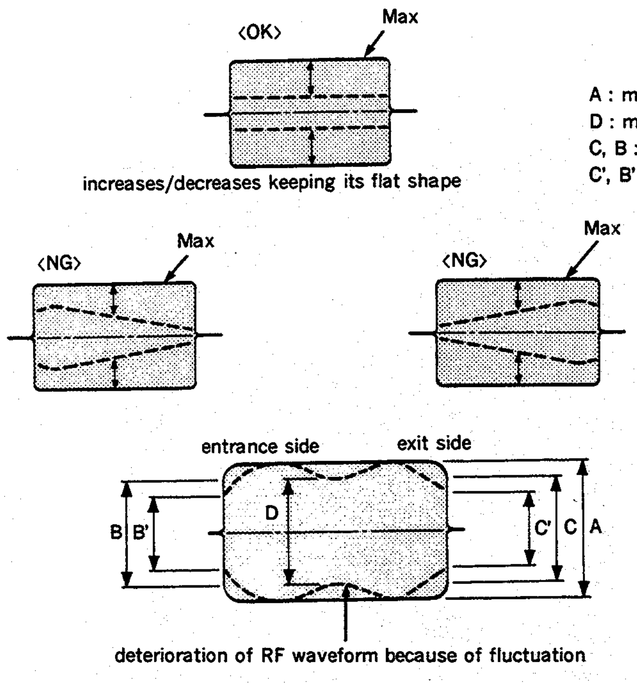

drum
TG-4
CTL head
TG-3
TG-2
S tension arm
TG-1

10. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is the maximum output.
    Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform on the drum entrance side and the fluctuation satisfy the specification. Make sure that no tape curl to occur at the tape guide flanges of the TG-2 and TG-3 using an adjustment mirror.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable as far as the maximum limit shown in the figure.)


S tension arm
TG-3
CTL head
TG-1
TG-2
TG-4
drum
tape
lead
tape runs in contact with upper flange
tape runs in contact with lower edge
tape runs in the center of the tape guide roller

Specifications

- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the S tension arm.
  (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)


⟨OK⟩
Max
increases/decreases keeping its flat shape
⟨NG⟩
Max
⟨NG⟩
Max
entrance side
exit side
B
B'
D
C'
C
A
deterioration of RF waveform because of fluctuation

A : maximum output level
D : minimum output level at center portion because of fluctuation
C, B : maximum output level at entrance and exit sides.
C', B' : minimum output level at entrance and exit sides because of fluctuation

$\frac{B}{A} \geqq 0.8$

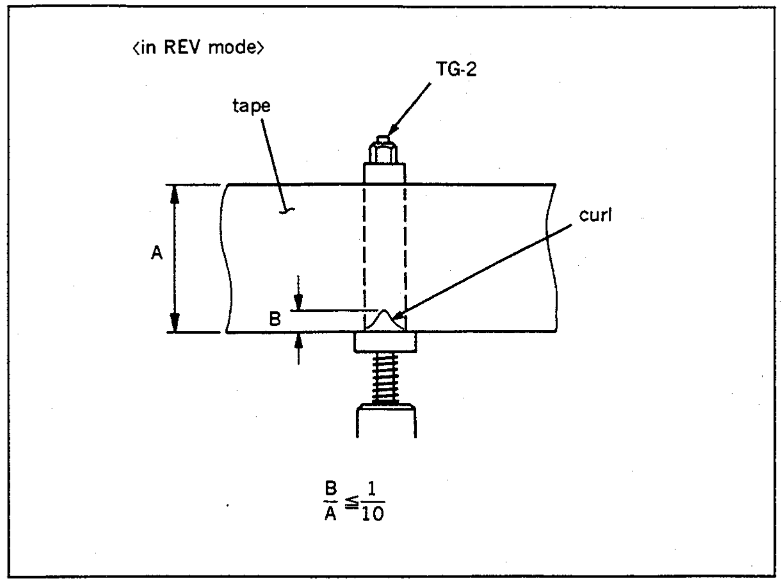
$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.8$

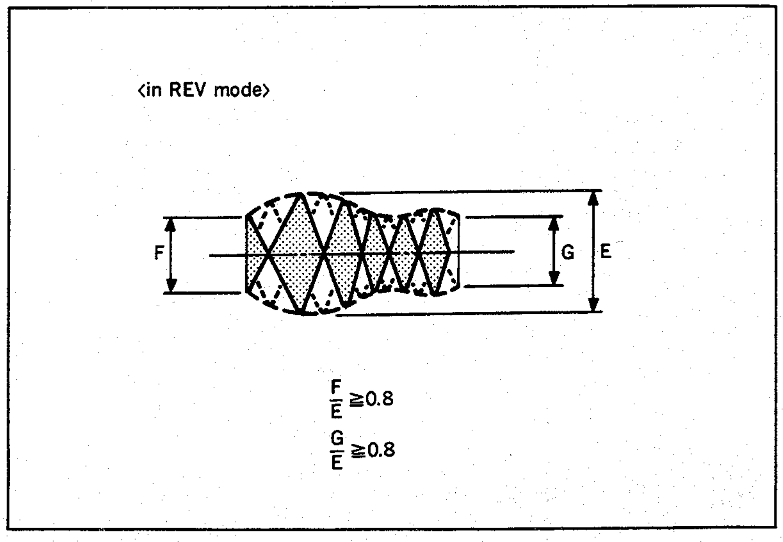
$\frac{D}{A} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{B'}{B} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{C'}{C} \geqq 0.9$

11. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    At that time, make sure that the tape curl at the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide satisfies the specification below.
    Specification : No tape curl to occur at the lower flange.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
    If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment in accordance with the following procedure.
    1) Loosen the locking screw of the guide roller of the S tension regulator one to two turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
    2) Put the unit into PLAY mode.
    3) Rotate the upper flange so that the tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the S tension regulator.
    4) Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    5) Turn the upper flange of the guide roller of the S tension regulator and adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide for fine adjustment so that the specification is satisfied.
    6) Put the unit into PLAY mode again. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification, and that the tape running at the TG-2 tape guide and guide roller of the S tension regulator satisfy the specification described on the right column.
    If the specification is not satisfied, readjust repeatedly so that the specification is satisfied in both PLAY and REV modes.
12. Put the unit into REV X1 mode and turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is the maximum output.
13. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform in REV X1 mode satisfies the specification.
14. Tighten the locking screws of each tape guide using a tape guide adjustment driver.
15. Perform steps (4) through (9) in Section 6-4, and make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification.
16. Install the fly wheel to the TG-4 tape guide roller. Make sure that the fly wheel is surely locked, after installation.

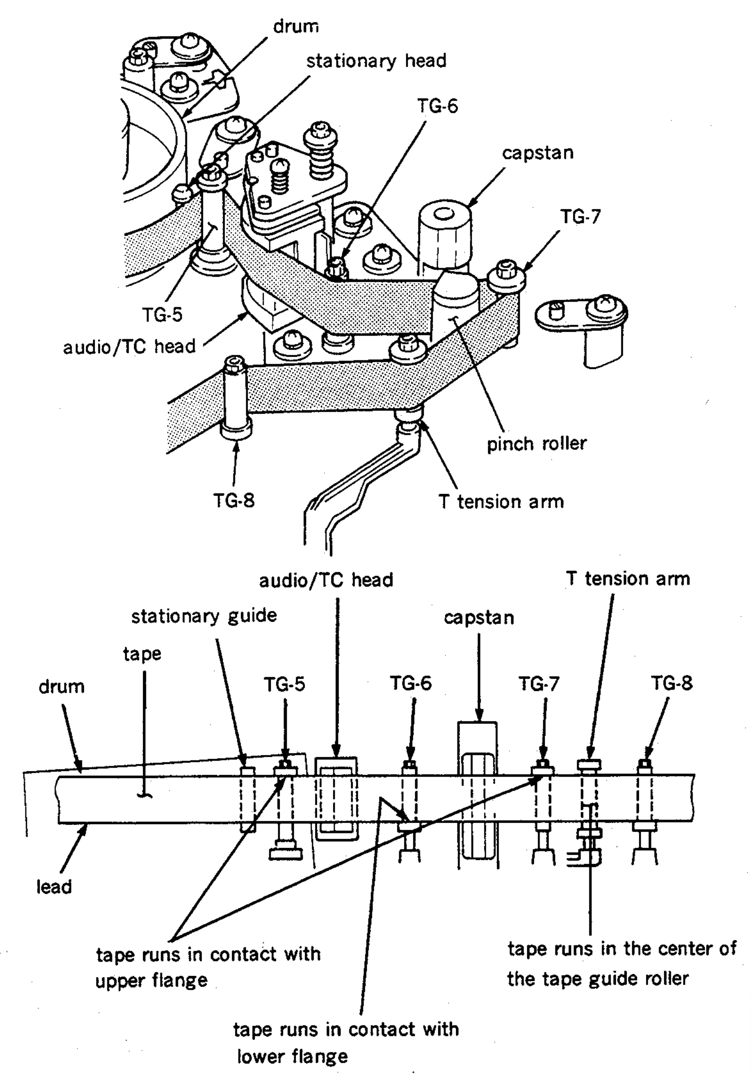




If the RF envelope waveform on the drum entrance side and tape running do not satisfy the specification even in the above procedure, replace the drum assembly.

Steps (17) and later describe the tracking adjustment on the drum exit side.

17. Loosen the locking screws at the upper part of the TG-5, TG-6, and TG-7 tape guide rollers one to two turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
18. Insert the alignment tape CR2-1B PS and put the unit into PLAY mode.
19. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is 70% to 80% of the maximum output.
20. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-6 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide does not come in contact with the lower edge of the tape.
21. Turn the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide so that the upper flange of the tape guide does not come in contact with the upper edge of the tape.
22. Turn the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide so that the RF envelope waveform on the exit side is flat.
    If tape curl can not be removed in the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide when the RF envelope waveform is flat, make sure that the zenith of an audio/TC head. (Refer to Section 6-2.)
23. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-6 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide does not come in contact with the lower edge of the tape.
24. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    At that time, make sure that the clearance between the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide and tape satisfies the specification.
    Specification : The clearance between the lower flange and lower edge of the tape should be more than 0.2 mm.
25. Turn the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide so that the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide slightly comes in contact with the upper edge of the tape.

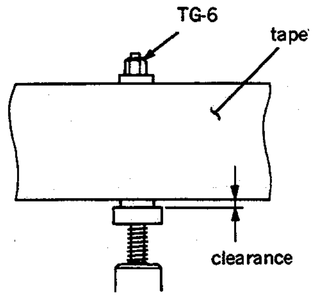


- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide.
  However, in PLAY, F.FWD, and REW modes, the lower flange of the tape guide must not rotate.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the T tension arm.
  (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of thetape width.)

26. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is the maximum output.
    Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform on the drum exit side and the fluctuation satisfy the specification.
    Make sure that no tape curl to occur at the tape guide flanges of the TG-5, TG-6 and TG-7 using the adjustment mirror.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable as far as the maximum limit shown in the figure.)
27. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform in REV X1 mode satisfies the specification.
28. Tighten the locking screws of each tape guide using a tape guide adjustment driver.
29. Perform steps (4) through (9) in Section 6-4, and make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification.

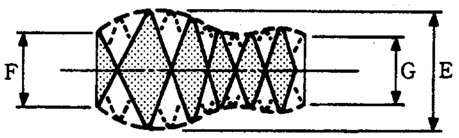
    If the RF envelope waveform on the drum exit side and the tape running do not satisfy the specification even in the above procedure, replace the drum assembly.
30. Make sure that the tape running at each tape guide satisfy the specification.
    (Refer to Section 6-3.)
31. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
32. Perform audio head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-7.)
33. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-8.)
34. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
35. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)
36. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
37. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
38. Install the AU head cover.
    (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
39. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
40. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
41. Perform RF switching position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-12.)

<in REV mode>



clearance≧0.2 mm

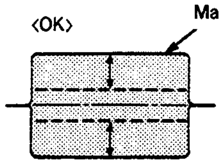
<in REV mode>



$\frac{F}{E} \geqq 0.8$

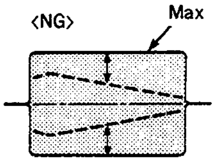
$\frac{G}{E} \geqq 0.8$

<OK>

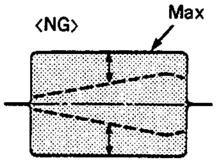


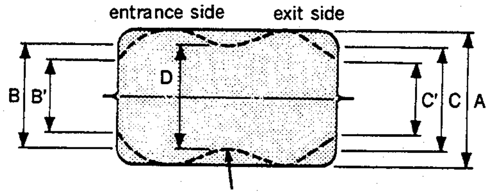
increases/decreases keeping its flat shape

<NG>



<NG>





deterioration of RF waveform because of fluctuation

A : maximum output level
D : minimum output level at center portion because of fluctuation
C, B : maximum output level at entrance and exit sides
C', B' : minimum output level at entrance and exit sides because of fluctuation

$\frac{B}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{D}{A} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{B'}{B} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{C'}{C} \geqq 0.9$

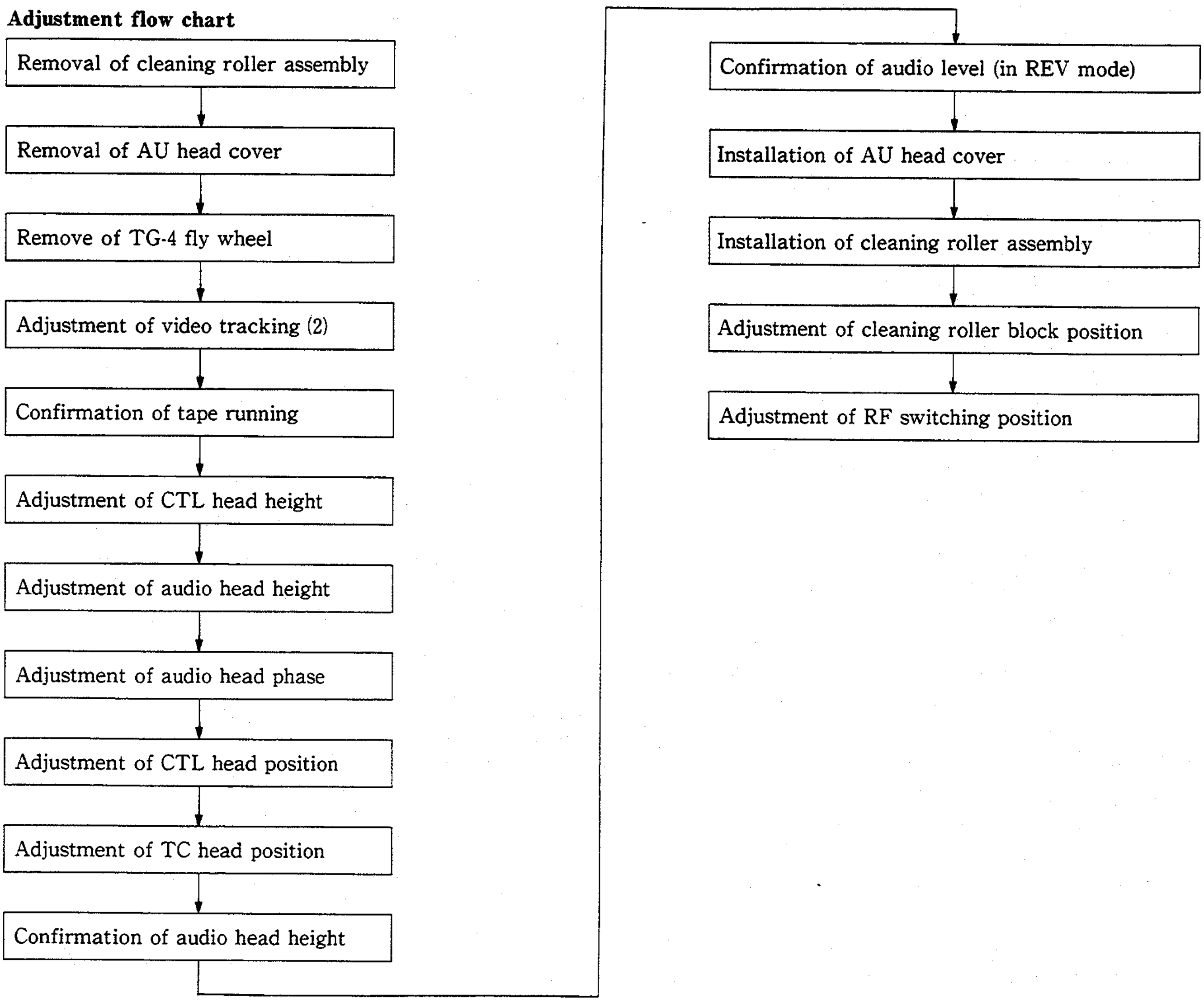
6-4-2. Video Tracking Adjustment (2)

- This section describes how to adjust the video tracking when an S slider assembly is replaced.
- Adjustment of video tracking is extremely important. If this adjustment is not adequate, the tape interchangeability is influenced significantly.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit. By this way, accurate adjustment will be possible without difficulty as a service operation.

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Alignment tape without lid (CR2-1B PS)	: 8-960-096-51
Tape guide adjustment driver	: J-6321-500-A
Adjustment mirror	: J-6080-029-A
Dualtrace oscilloscope	

Adjustment flow chart



Removal of cleaning roller assembly

Removal of AU head cover

Remove of TG-4 fly wheel

Adjustment of video tracking (2)

Confirmation of tape running

Adjustment of CTL head height

Adjustment of audio head height

Adjustment of audio head phase

Adjustment of CTL head position

Adjustment of TC head position

Confirmation of audio head height

Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)

Installation of AU head cover

Installation of cleaning roller assembly

Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Adjustment of RF switching position

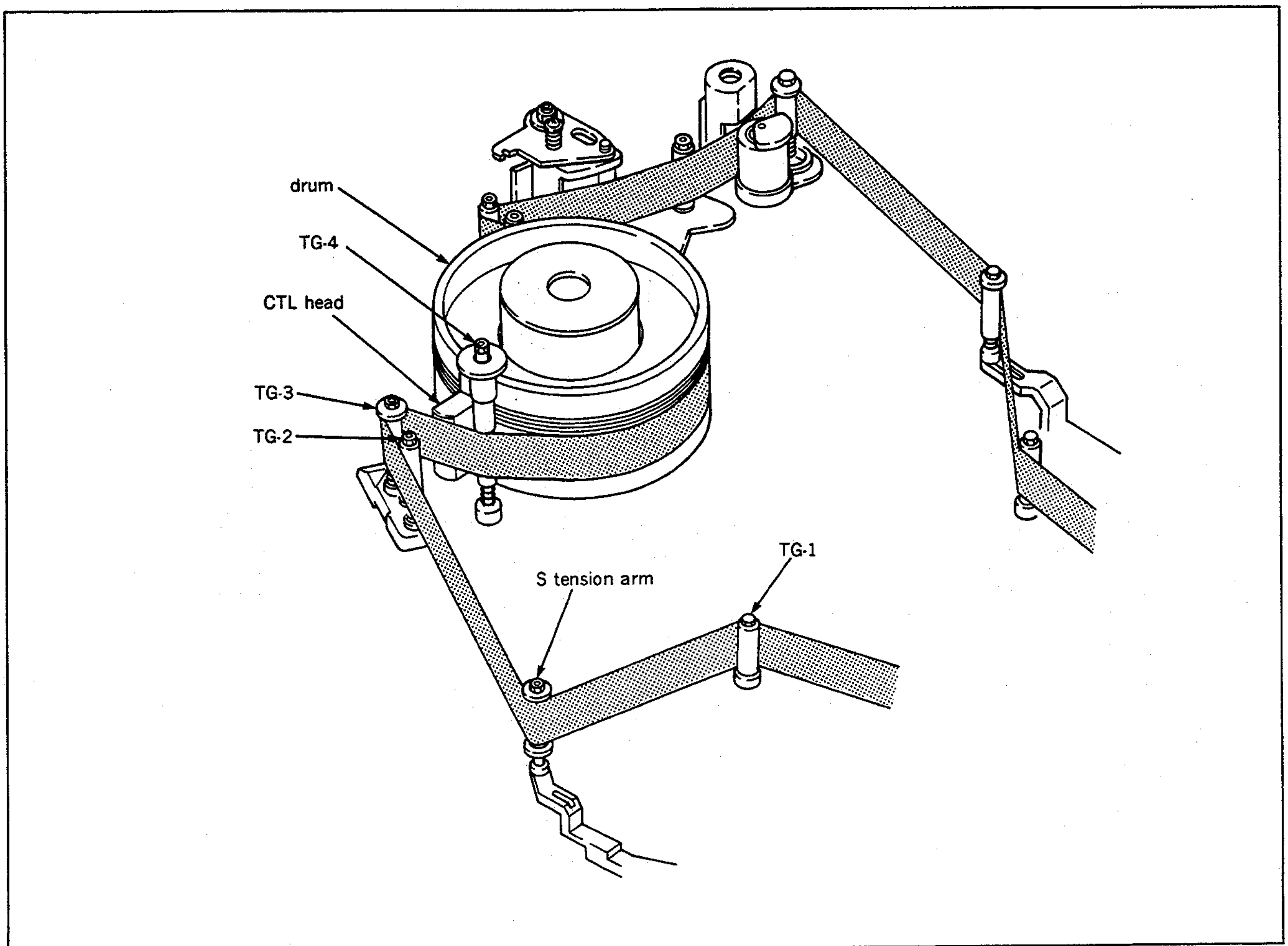
Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

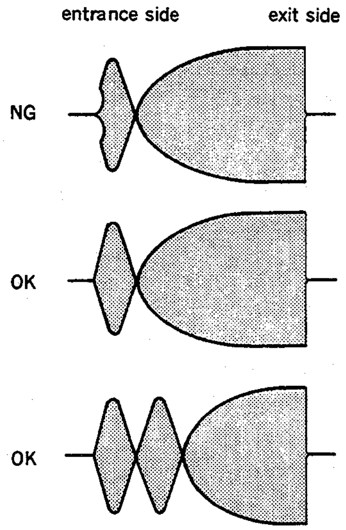
Adjustment

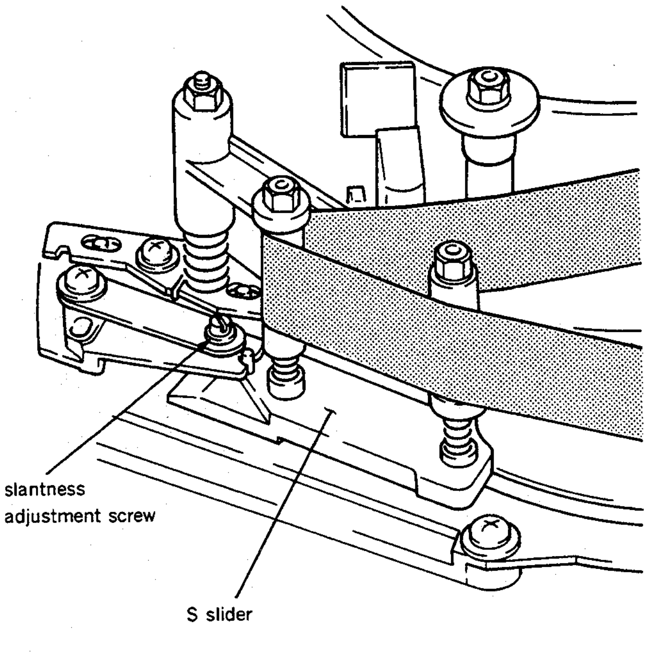
1. Hold claws of the upper part of a TG-4 tape guide roller using tweezers, and remove a fly wheel. (Refer to Section 5-2.)
2. Clean the tape running surface of the tape guides, drum, and video heads with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
3. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.

CH-1 : TP101/VP-33AP board
(Address : Side A, D-1) (Y-RF signal)
CH-2 : TP1/VP-33AP board
(Address : Side A, D-1) (Switching pulse)
TRIG : CH-2



4. Loosen the locking screws at the upper part of a TG-3 tape guide roller, TG-2 tape guide roller and S tension arm one to two turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
5. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS and put the unit into PLAY mode.
6. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide so that a clearance occurs between the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide and the lower edge of the tape.
7. Turn the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide so that a clearance occurs between the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide and the upper edge of the tape.
8. Fine adjust the height of the tape guide of the S tension arm so that the tape runs in the center of the tape guide of the S tension arm.
9. Make sure that the tape runs in contact with the tape guide flanges of the TG-2, TG-3, TG-4, and S tension arm.
10. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform on the drum exit side is maximum.
11. Make sure that the RF waveform satisfies the specification as shown in the figure.
    If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment as follows :
    1) Turn the slantness adjustment screw for an S slider assembly in counterclockwise in the range not exceeding 90 degrees to satisfy the specification.
12. Turn the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide so that it comes in contact with the upper edge of the tape and so that the RF envelope waveform is flat.
13. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is 70% to 80% of the maximum output.
14. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide comes in contact with the lower edge of the tape.





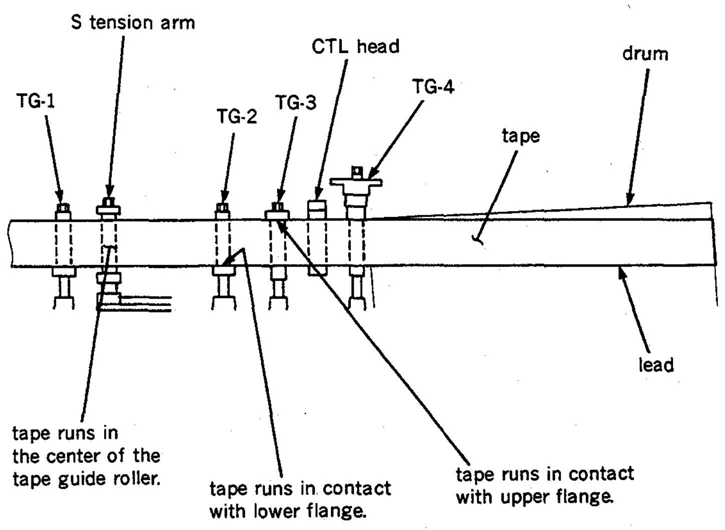
15. Fine adjust the height of the tape guide of the S tension arm so that the tape runs in the center of the tape guide of the S tension arm.
16. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is the maximum output.
    Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform on the drum entrance side and fluctuation satisfy the specification.
    Make sure that no tape curl to occur at the tape guide flanges of the TG-2 and TG-3 using an adjustment mirror.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable as far as the maximum limit shown in the figure.)
17. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    At that time, make sure that the tape curl at the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide satisfies the specification below.

    Specification : No tape curl to occur at the lower flange.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)

    If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment in accordance with the following procedure.
    1) Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    2) Turn the upper flange of the guide roller of the S tension arm and adjustment nut of the TG-2 tape guide for fine adjustment so that the specification is satisfied.
    3) Put the unit into PLAY mode again. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification, and that the tape running at the TG-2 tape guide and guide roller of the S tension arm satisfy the specification described on the right column.

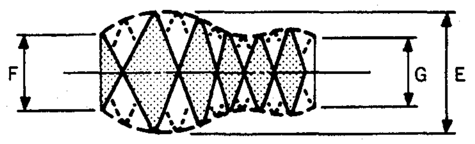
    If the specification is not satisfied, readjust repeatedly so that the specification is satisfied in both PLAY and REV modes.
18. Put the unit into REV X1 mode and make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform in REV X1 mode satisfies the specification.

- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-3 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-2 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the S tension arm.
  (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)


S tension arm
CTL head
drum
TG-1
TG-2
TG-3
TG-4
tape
lead
tape runs in the center of the tape guide roller.
tape runs in contact with lower flange.
tape runs in contact with upper flange.

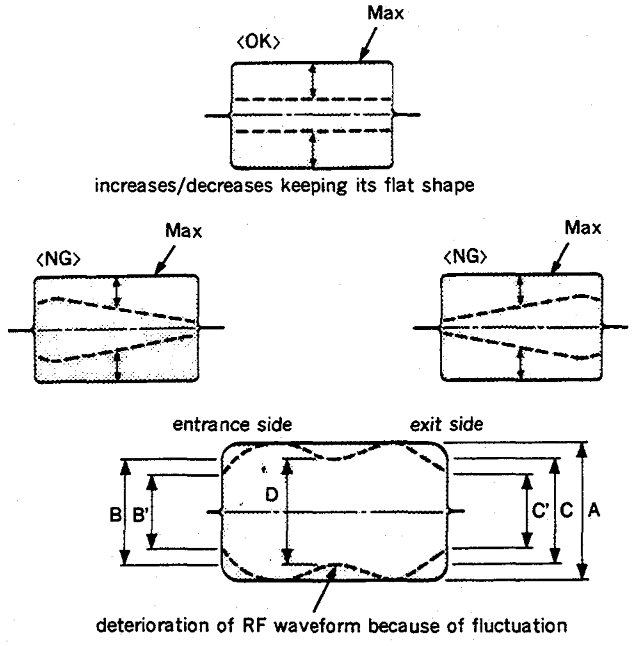
19. Tighten the locking screws of each tape guide using a tape guide adjustment driver.
20. Perform steps (4) through (9) in Section 6-4, and make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification.
21. Install the fly wheel to the TG-4 tape guide roller. Make sure that the fly wheel is surely locked, after installation.
22. Make sure that the tape running at each tape guide satisfy the specification.
    (Refer to Section 6-3.)
23. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
24. Perform audio head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-7.)
25. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-8.)
26. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
27. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)
28. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
29. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
30. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
31. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
32. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
33. Perform RF switching position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-12.)

<in REV mode>



$\frac{F}{E} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{G}{E} \geqq 0.8$


<OK>
Max
increases/decreases keeping its flat shape
<NG>
Max
<NG>
Max
entrance side
exit side
B
B'
D
C'
C
A
deterioration of RF waveform because of fluctuation

A : maximum output level
D : minimum output level at center portion because of fluctuation
C, B : maximum output level at entrance and exit sides
C', B' : minimum output level at entrance and exit sides because of fluctuation

$\frac{B}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{D}{A} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{B'}{B} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{C'}{C} \geqq 0.9$

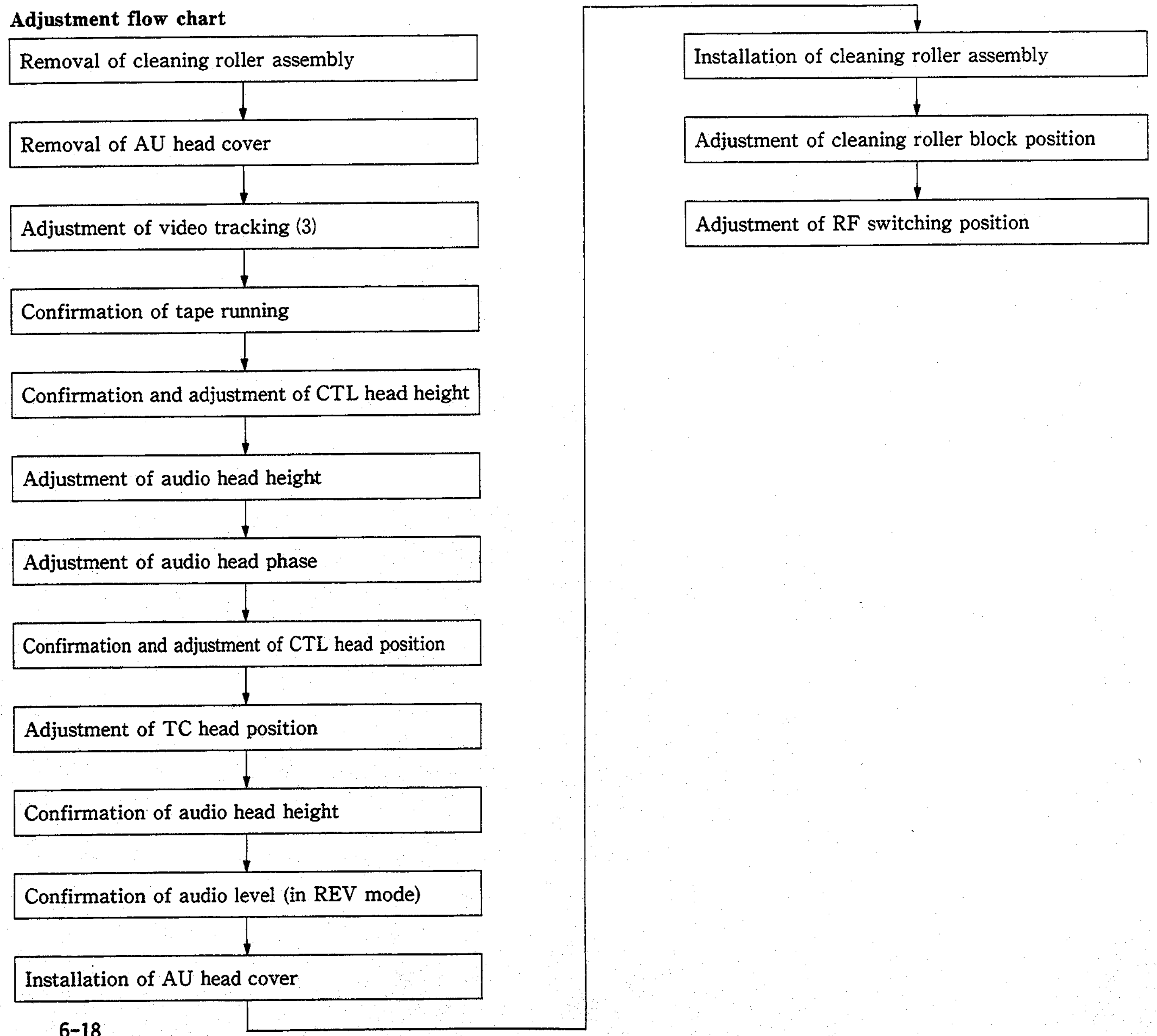
6-4-3. Video Tracking Adjustment (3)

- This section describes how to adjust the video tracking when an T slider assembly is replaced.
- Adjustment of video tracking is extremely important. If this adjustment is not adequate, the tape interchangeability is influenced significantly.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit. By this way, accurate adjustment will be possible without difficulty as a service operation.

Tools

Cleaning piece	: 2-034-697-00
Cleaning fluid	: 9-919-573-01
Alignment tape without lid (CR2-1B PS)	: 8-960-096-51
Tape guide adjustment driver	: J-6321-500-A
Adjustment mirror	: J-6080-029-A
Dualtrace oscilloscope	

Adjustment flow chart

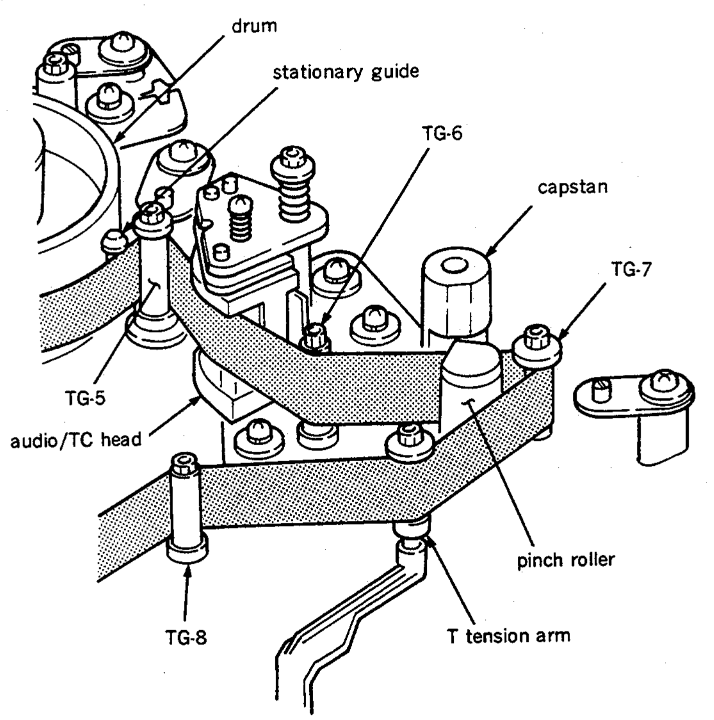

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of video tracking (3)
Confirmation of tape running
Confirmation and adjustment of CTL head height
Adjustment of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Confirmation and adjustment of CTL head position
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position
Adjustment of RF switching position

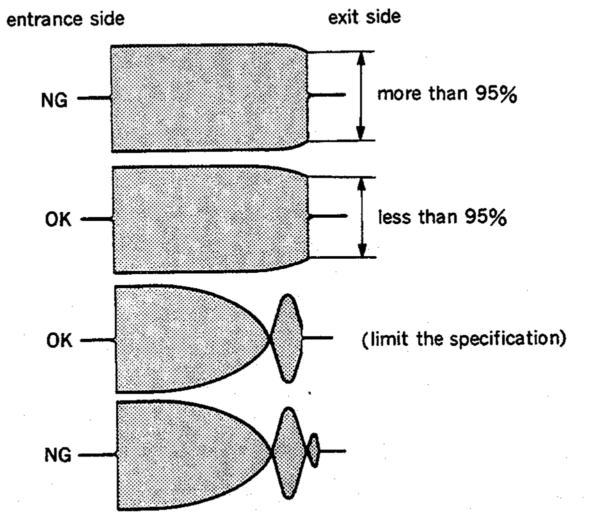
Preparation

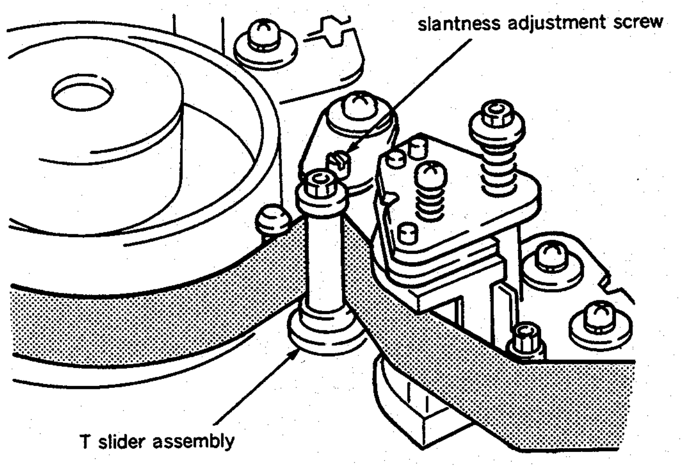
1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Adjustment

1. Clean the tape running surface of the tape guides, drum, and video heads with a cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid.
2. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP101/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Y-RF signal)
   CH-2 : TP1/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Switching pulse)
   TRIG : CH-2
3. Loosen the locking screws at the upper part of a TG-5 tape guide roller, TG-6 tape guide roller, TG-7 tape guide roller and T tension arm one to two turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
4. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS and put the unit into PLAY mode.
5. Turn the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide so that a clearance occurs between the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide and the upper edge of the tape.
6. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-6 tape guide so that a clearance occurs between the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide and the lower edge of the tape.
7. Turn the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide so that a clearance occurs between the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide and the upper edge of the tape.
8. Fine adjust the height of the tape guide of the T tension arm so that the tape runs in the center of the tape guide of the T tension arm.
9. Make sure that the tape runs in contact with the tape guide flanges of the TG-5, TG-6, TG-7, and T tension arm.
10. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform on the drum entrance side is maximum.
11. Make sure that the RF envelope waveform satisfies the specification as shown in the figure.
    If the specification is not satisfied, perform the adjustment as follows :
    1) Turn the slantness adjustment screw for a T slider assembly in counterclockwise in the range not exceeding 30 degrees to satisfy the specification.


drum
stationary guide
TG-6
capstan
TG-7
TG-5
audio/TC head
pinch roller
TG-8
T tension arm


entrance side
exit side
NG
more than 95%
OK
less than 95%
OK
(limit the specification)
NG

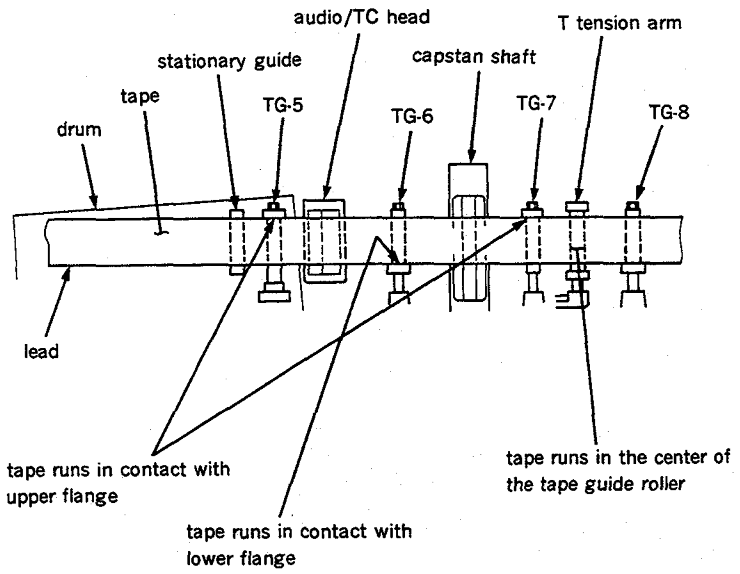

slantness adjustment screw
T slider assembly

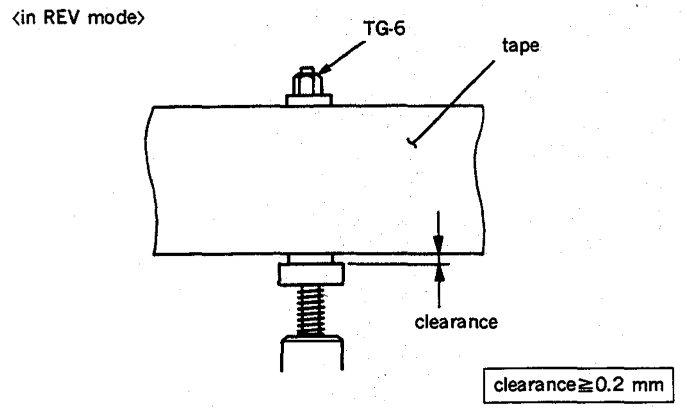
12. Turn the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide so that it comes in contact with the upper edge of the tape and so that the RF envelope waveform is flat.
13. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is 70% to 80% of the maximum output.
14. Turn the adjustment nut of the TG-6 tape guide so that the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide comes in contact with the lower edge of the tape.
15. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
    At that time, make sure that the clearance between the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide and tape satisfies the specification.

Specification : The clearance between the lower flange and lower edge of the tape should be more than 0.2 mm.

16. Turn the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide so that the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide slightly comes in contact with the upper edge of the tape.
17. Fine adjust the height of the tape guide of the T tension arm so that the tape runs in the center of the tape guide of the T tension arm.
18. Turn the tracking control so that the RF envelope waveform is the maximum output.
    Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform on the drum exit side and fluctuation satisfy the specification.
    Make sure that no tape curl to occur at the tape guide flanges of the TG-5, TG-6 and TG-7 using an adjustment mirror.
    (If tape curl can not be removed, it is acceptable as far as the maximum limit shown in the figure.)

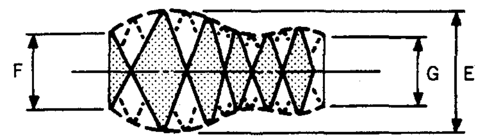
- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-5 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide.
  However, in PLAY, F.FWD, and REW modes, the lower flange of the tape guide must not rotate.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide.
  (If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)
- The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the T tension arm.
  (In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)


audio/TC head
T tension arm
stationary guide
capstan shaft
tape
TG-5
TG-6
TG-7
TG-8
drum
lead
tape runs in contact with upper flange
tape runs in the center of the tape guide roller
tape runs in contact with lower flange



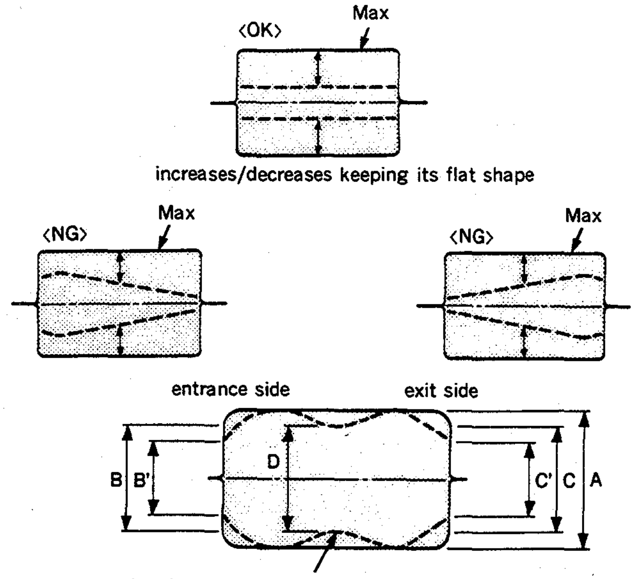
19. Make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform in REV X1 mode satisfies the specification.
20. Tighten the locking screws of each tape guide using a tape guide adjustment driver.
21. Perform steps (4) through (9) in Section 6-4, and make sure that the head-to-tape contact of the RF envelope waveform and fluctuation satisfy the specification.
22. Make sure that the tape running at each tape guide satisfy the specification.
    (Refer to Section 6-3.)
23. Perform CTL head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-5.)
24. Perform audio head height adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-7.)
25. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-8.)
26. Perform CTL head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-6.)
27. Perform TC head position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-10.)
28. Perform reconfirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
29. Perform confirmation of audio level (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
30. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
31. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
32. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)
33. Perform RF switching position adjustment.
    (Refer to Section 6-12.)

<in REV mode>



$\frac{F}{E} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{G}{E} \geqq 0.8$



increases/decreases keeping its flat shape

deterioration of RF waveform because of fluctuation

A : maximum output level
D : minimum output level at center portion because of fluctuation
C, B : maximum output level at entrance and exit sides
C', B' : minimum output level at entrance and exit sides because of fluctuation

$\frac{B}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.8$

$\frac{D}{A} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{B'}{B} \geqq 0.9$

$\frac{C'}{C} \geqq 0.9$

6-5. CTL HEAD HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Alignment tape CR8-1A PS : 8-960-098-45
Dualtrace oscilloscope
Box screwdriver (Across flat has 5.5 mm)

Adjustment flow chart

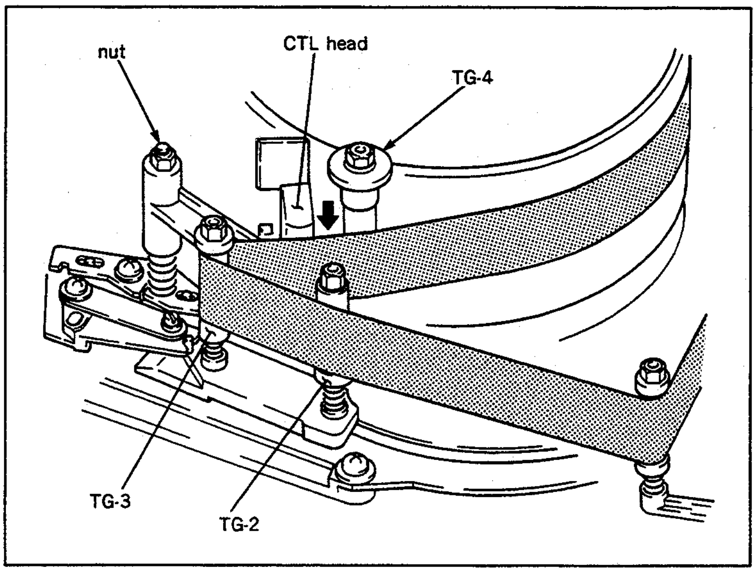
Removal of cleaning roller assembly
↓
Removal of AU head cover
↓
Adjustment of CTL head height
↓
Confirmation of video tracking
↓
Adjustment of CTL head position
↓
Adjustment of TC head position
↓
Confirmation of audio head height
↓
Confirmation of audio head phase
↓
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
↓
Installation of AU head cover
↓
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
↓
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP606/SS-48P board
   (Address : Side A, A-1) (CTL signal)
2. Insert an alignment tape CR8-1A PS into the unit and play back the portion where 1 kHz signal has been recorded on a CTL track.
3. Make sure that the level goes down when the portion (between a CTL head and TG-4 tape guide) of the tape shown in the figure is pressed down or pushed up slightly.
   If the level goes up, perform steps (4) and later.
   If the level goes down, perform steps (5) and later.



Adjustment

4. In case the level goes up when the tape is pressed down :
   (1) Turn the nut shown in the figure in counterclockwise using a box screwdriver so that the output waveform is maximum.
   In case the level goes up when the tape is pushed up :
   (1) Turn the nut shown in the figure in clockwise using a box screwdriver so that the output waveform is maximum.
5. Make sure that the video tracking on the drum entrance side satisfied the specification. (Refer to Section 6-4.)
6. Perform CTL head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-6.)
7. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
8. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
9. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
10. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
11. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step (23) in Section 5-3.)
12. Install the cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
13. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)

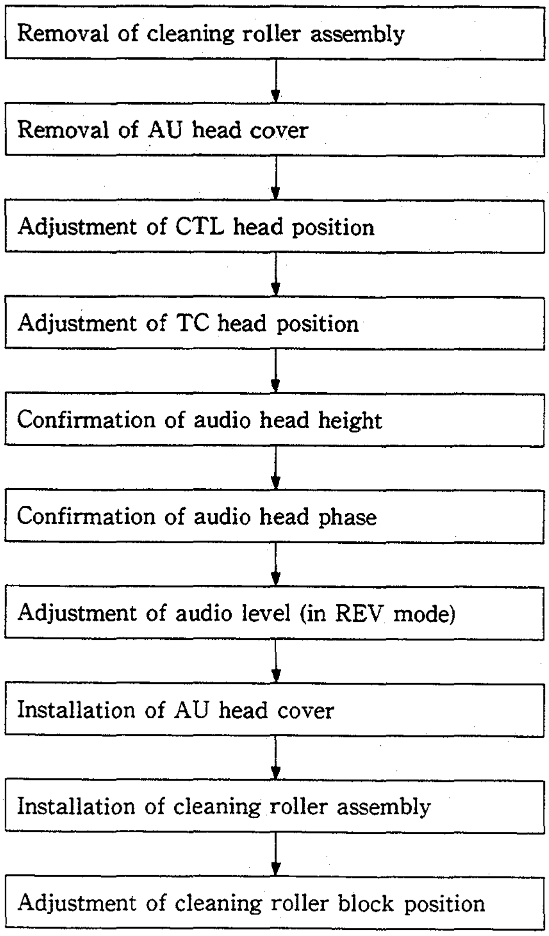
6-6. CTL HEAD POSITION ADJUSTMENT

- Adjustment of CTL head position is extremely important. If this adjustment is not adequate, the tape interchangeability is influenced significantly.
  Take utmost care in performing adjustment.
- Perform this adjustment with the cassette compartment installed in the unit.

Tools

Alignment tape CR2-1B PS : 8-960-096-51
Dualtrace oscilloscope

Adjustment flow chart

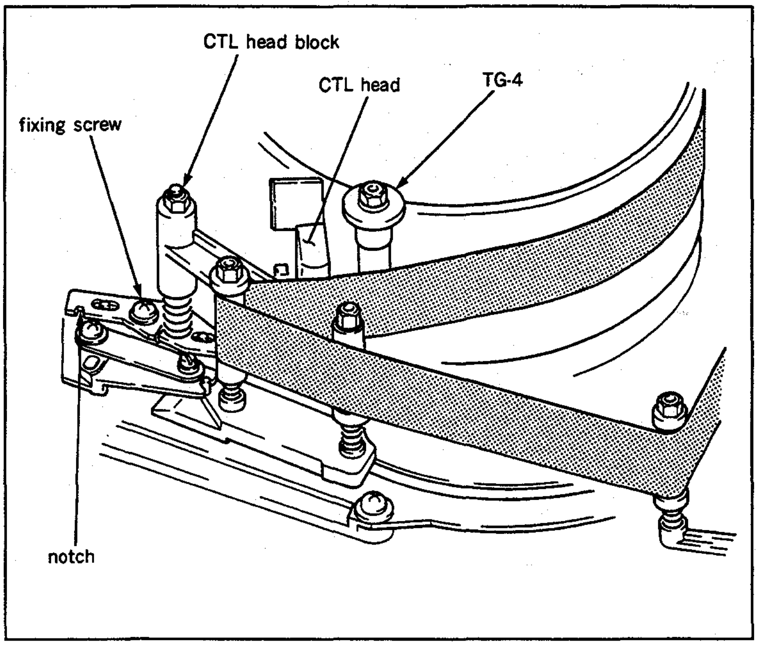

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of CTL head position
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP606/SS-48P board
   (Address : Side A, A-1) (CTL signal)
   CH-2 : TP1/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1) (Switching pulse)
   TRIG : CH-2
2. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS into the unit and put the unit into PLAY mode.
3. Turn the tracking control and confirm that the output in the center of the RF envelope waveform is maximum when it is set to the FIX position.
   If the specification is satisfied, perform steps (9) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform steps (4) and later.



Adjustment

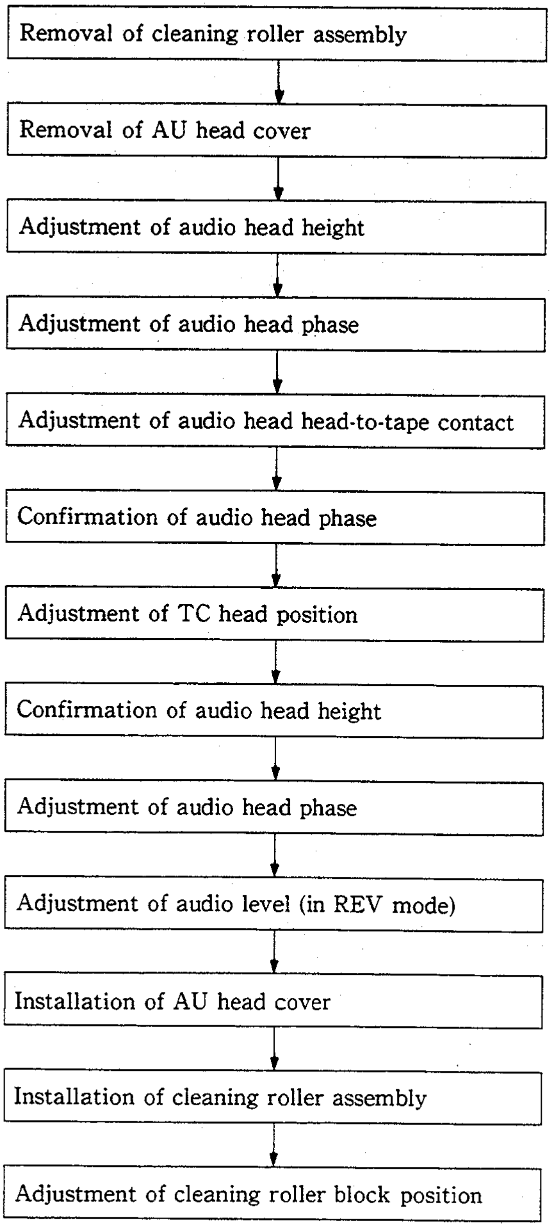
4. Turn the tracking control and set it to the FIX position.
5. Loosen a fixing screw of the CTL head block by 1/4 to 1/2 turn.
6. Insert a 3 mm flatbladed screwdriver into the notch of the CTL head block and adjust the CTL head block position so that the center level of the RF envelope waveform is maximized.
7. Tighten a fixing screw of the CTL head block.
8. Make sure that the specification is satisfied in accordance with the check procedures.
9. Perform TC head position adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-10.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
11. Perform confirmation of audio head phase.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
12. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
13. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step (23) in Section 5-3.)
14. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
15. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)

6-7. AUDIO HEAD HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Alignment tape CR8-1A PS : 8-960-098-45
Dualtrace oscilloscope
Box screwdriver (Across flat has 5.5 mm)

Adjustment flow chart

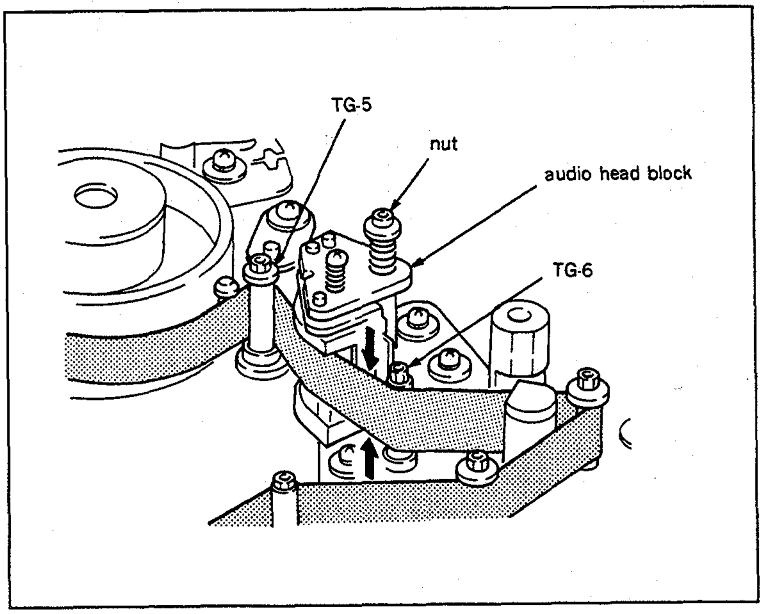

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio head head-to-tape contact
Confirmation of audio head phase
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Adjustment of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP103/AU-148AP board
   (Address : Side A, E-3) (AUDIO CH-1)
   CH-2 : TP103/AU-149AP board
   (Address : Side A, E-3) (AUDIO CH-2)
2. Insert an alignment tape CR8-1A PS into the unit and play back the 1 kHz 0 VU (0 : 00 to 2 : 55) audio signal portion recorded in the last portion.
3. Make sure that the level goes down when the portion (between an audio head and TG-6 tape guide) of the tape shown in the figure is pressed down or pushed up.
   If the level goes up, perform steps (4) and later.
   If the level goes down, perform steps (5) and later.



Adjustment

4. In case the level goes up when the tape is pressed down :
   (1) Turn the nut shown in the figure in counterclockwise using a box screwdriver so that the output waveform is maximum.

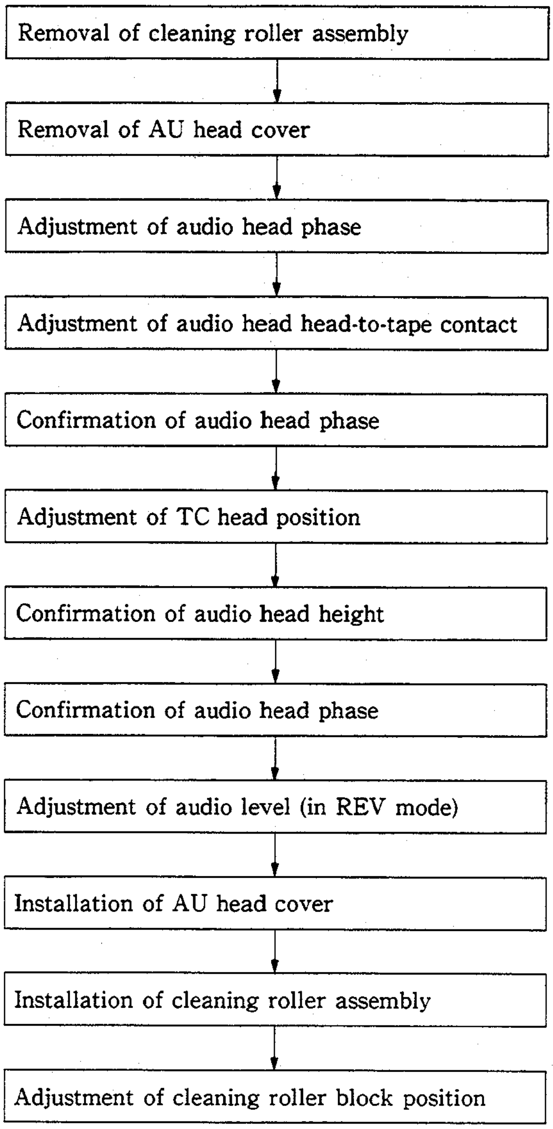
   In case the level goes up when the tape is pushed up :
   (1) Turn the nut shown in the figure in clockwise using a box screwdriver so that the output waveform is maximum.
5. Perform audio head phase adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-8.)
6. Perform audio head head-to-tape contact adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-9.)
7. Perform confirmation of audio head phase.
   (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
8. Perform TC head position adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-10.)
9. Perform confirmation of audio head height.
   (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in Section 6-7.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head phase.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
11. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
12. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
13. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
14. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)

6-8. AUDIO HEAD PHASE ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Alignment tape CR8-1A PS : 8-960-098-45
Dualtrace oscilloscope

Adjustment flow chart


Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio head head-to-tape contact
Confirmation of audio head phase
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

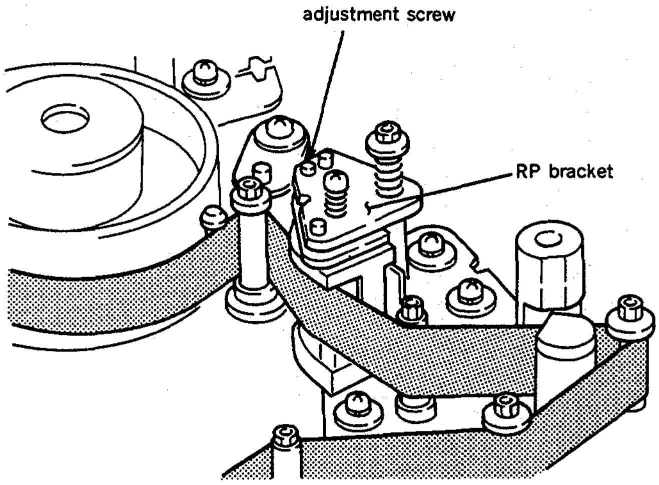
1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

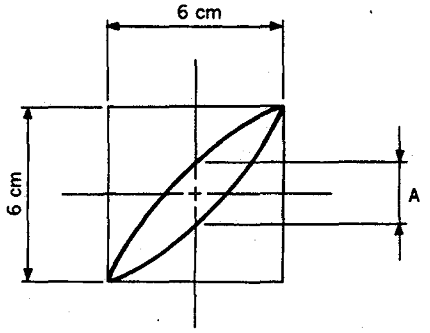
Check

1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : C138 (−) terminal on AU-148AP board
   (Address : Side A, A-3) (AUDIO CH-1)
   CH-2 : C138 (−) terminal on AU-149AP board
   (Address : Side A, A-3) (AUDIO CH-2)
2. Insert an alignment tape CR8-1A PS into the unit and play back the 10 kHz, -10 dB (3 : 00 to 4 : 55) audio signal portion.
3. Adjust the scope for horizontal and vertical amplitude to 6 cm of a lissajous waveform.
4. Make sure that the vertical amplitude at the center of the horizontal direction satisfies the specification.
   Then, strike the portion of a RP bracket shown in the figure lightly with the tip of a screwdriver and make sure that the phase in this case satisfies the specification.
   If the specification is satisfied, perform steps (6) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform steps (5) and later.

Adjustment

5. Turn the adjustment screw shown in the figure so that the specification is satisfied.
6. Perform step (4) in the check procedure, then perform reconfirmation of audio head phase.
7. Perform audio head head-to-tape contact adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-9.)
8. Perform step (4) in the check procedure, then perform reconfirmation of audio head phase.
9. Perform TC head position adjustment.
   (Refer to Section 6-10.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head height.
    (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
11. Perform step (4) in the check procedure, then perform reconfirmation of audio head phase.
12. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
13. Install the AU head cover.
    (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
14. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)





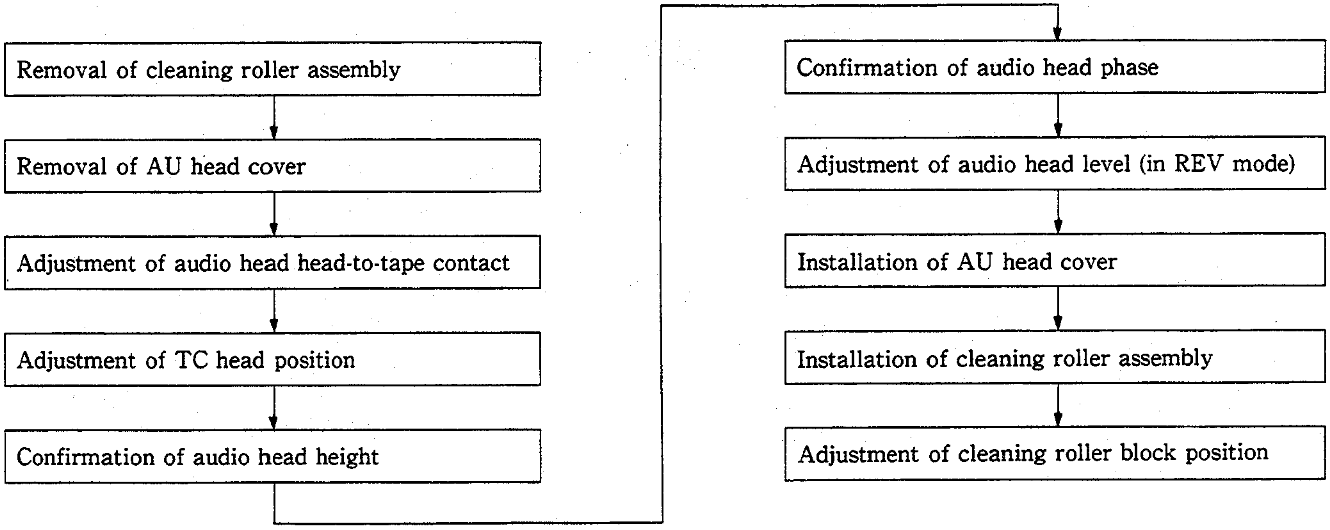
Spec. : A≦0.52 cm

6-9. AUDIO HEAD HEAD-TO-TAPE CONTACT ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Alignment tape CR8-1A PS: 8-960-098-45
Audio level meter
Tension scale : 7-732-050-20

Adjustment flow chart


Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of audio head head-to-tape contact
Adjustment of TC head position
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Adjustment of audio head level (in REV mode)
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : AUDIO OUT CH-1 connector on the connector panel
   CH-2 : AUDIO OUT CH-2 connector on the connector panel
2. Insert an alignment tape CR8-1A PS into the unit and play back the 10 kHz, -10 dB (3 : 00 to 4 : 55) audio signal portion.

3. Push the upper part of the tape between an audio head and TG-6 tape guide slightly in the direction shown by the arrow. Push the upper part of the tape between the audio head and TG-5 tape guide slightly in the direction shown by the arrow.
   Make sure that the change in a level satisfies specification 1 in both channels.

   Specification 1 : The change in a level must be less than 0.3 dB.

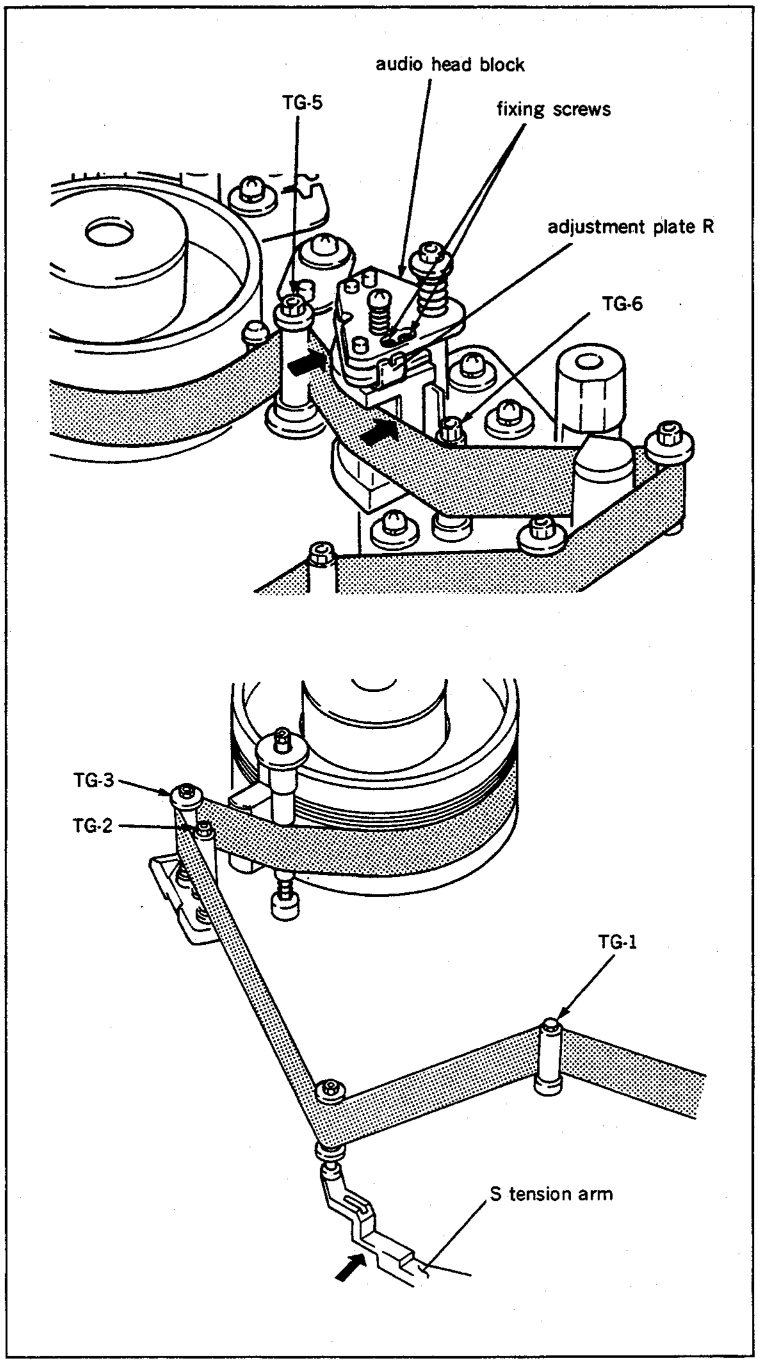
4. Put the tension scale on the portion of a S tension arm shown in the figure, and push it in the direction shown by the arrow until 20 g is indicated.
   Make sure that the change in a level satisfies specification 2 in both channels.

   Specification 2 : The change in a level must be less than 0.3 dB.

   If specifications 1 and 2 are satisfied, perform step (9).
   If specification 1 or 2 is satisfied, perform steps (5) and later.

Adjustment

5. Loosen two fixing screws of the head shown in the figure by 1/4 to 1/2 turn.
6. Insert a 3 mm flatbladed screwdriver into the notch of an adjustment plate R shown in the figure and adjust the head-to-tape contact so that the level is maximum.
7. Tighten two screws of the head.
8. Make sure that the specification is satisfied in accordance with the check procedure.
9. Perform TC head position adjustment. (Refer to Section 6-10.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
11. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
12. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
13. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step (23) in Section 5-3.)
14. Install the cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
15. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)



6-10. TC HEAD POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Tools

Alignment tape CR2-1B PS : 8-960-096-51
Dualtrace oscilloscope

Adjustment flow chart

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
↓
Removal of AU head cover
↓
Adjustment of TC head position
↓
Confirmation of audio head height
↓
Confirmation of audio head phase
↓
Confirmation of audio head head-to-tape contact
↓
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
↓
Installation of AU head cover
↓
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
↓
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

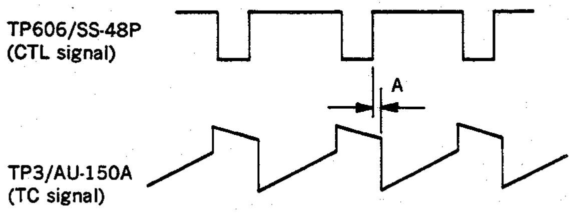
1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

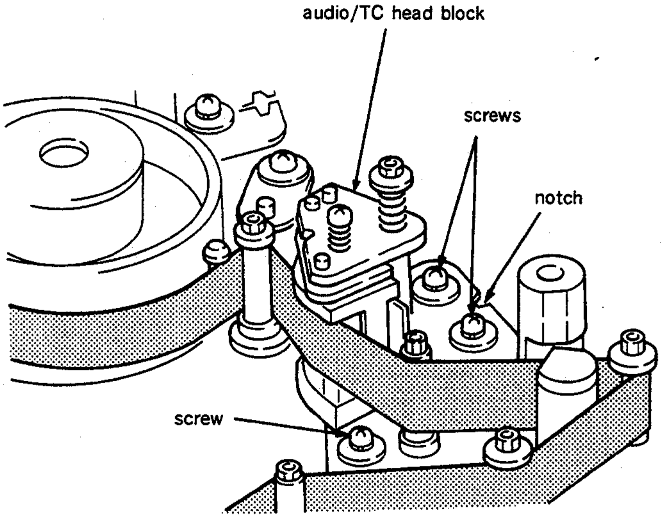
1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : TP606/SS-48P board
   (Address : Side A, A-1) (CTL signal)
   CH-2 : TP3/AU-150A board
   (Address : Side A, B-3) (TC signal)
   TRIG : TP1/VP-33AP board
   (Address : Side A, D-1)
   (Switching pulse)
2. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS into the unit and put the unit into PLAY mode.
3. Make sure that the positional relationship between at the rising edge of a CTL signal and at the falling edge of a TC signal satisfy the specification.
   If the specification is satisfied, perform steps (8) and later.
   If the specification is not satisfied, perform steps (4) and later.

Adjustment

4. Loosen three fixing screws of an audio/TC head block by 1/4 to 1/2 turn.
5. Insert a 3 mm flatbladed screwdriver into the notch of the audio/TC head block shown in the figure and adjust the audio/TC head block position so that the specification is satisfied.
6. Tighten three screws of the audio/TC head block.
7. Make sure that the specification is satisfied in accordance with the check procedure.
8. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
9. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
10. Perform confirmation of audio head head-to-tape contact. (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-9.)
11. Perform audio level adjustment (in REV mode). (Refer to Section 6-11.)
12. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
13. Install the cleaning roller assembly.
    (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
14. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)



Spec. : A=0 ± 400 μs

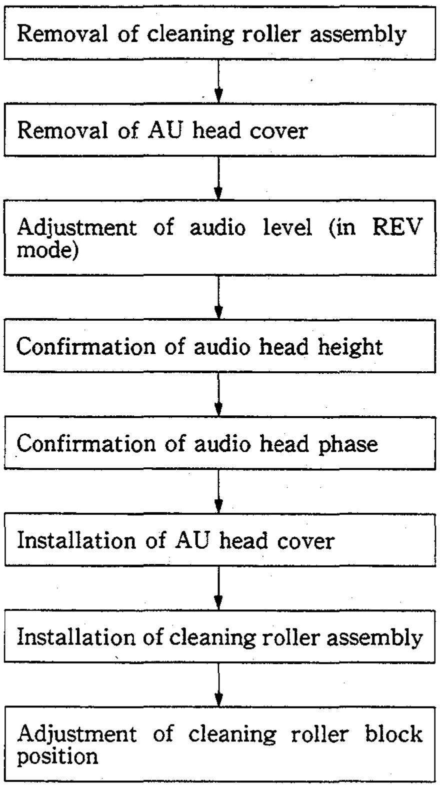


6-11. AUDIO LEVEL ADJUSTMENT (IN REV MODE)

Tools

Alignment tape CR8-1A PS	: 8-960-098-45
Tape guide adjustment driver:	J-6321-500-A
Adjustment mirror	: J-6080-029-A
Audio level meter	

Adjustment flow chart

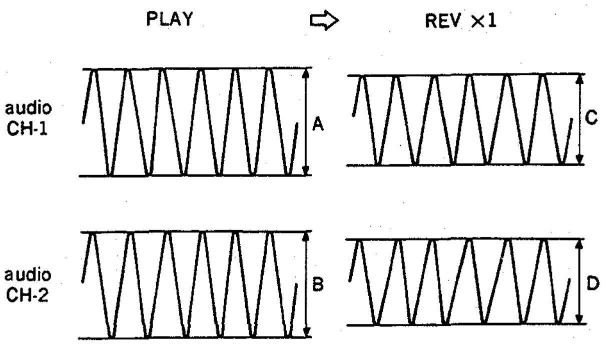

Removal of cleaning roller assembly
Removal of AU head cover
Adjustment of audio level (in REV mode)
Confirmation of audio head height
Confirmation of audio head phase
Installation of AU head cover
Installation of cleaning roller assembly
Adjustment of cleaning roller block position

Preparation

1. Remove a cleaning roller assembly.
   (Refer to steps (1) and (2) in Section 5-6.)
2. Remove an AU head cover.
   (Refer to step (3) in Section 5-3.)

Check

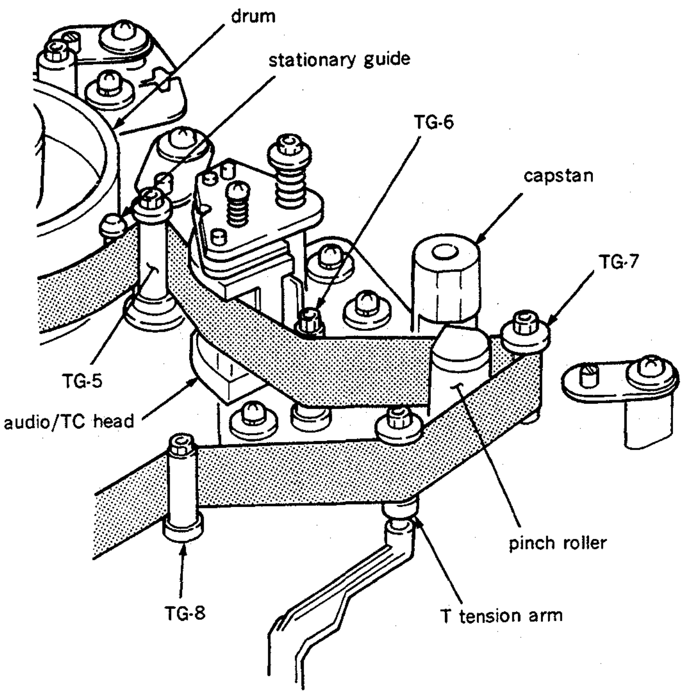
1. Connect the oscilloscope as follows.
   CH-1 : AUDIO OUT CH-1 connector on the connector panel
   CH-2 : AUDIO OUT CH-2 connector on the connector panel


PLAY
⇨
REV ×1
audio CH-1
A
C
audio CH-2
B
D

Spec.:

$$\frac{C}{A} \geqq 0.95$$

$$\frac{D}{B} \geqq 0.95$$


drum
stationary guide
TG-6
capstan
TG-7
TG-5
audio/TC head
pinch roller
TG-8
T tension arm

2. Insert an alignment tape CR8-1A PS into the unit, and play back the 10 kHz, −10 dB audio signal portion, and memorize the CH-1 and CH-2 levels. (The CH-1 level is defined as A, and the CH-2 level as B.)
3. Put the unit into REV X1 mode.
4. Make sure that the CH-1 and CH-2 levels satisfy the specification below. (The CH-1 level is defined as C, and the CH-2 level as D.)

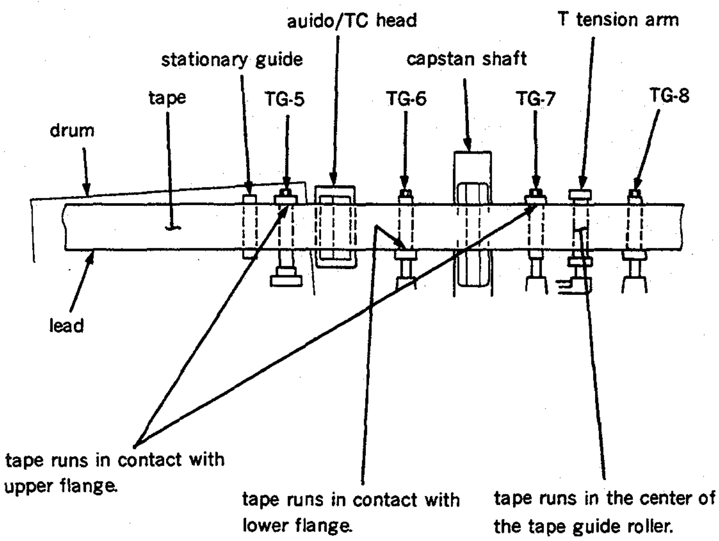
Specification :

CH-1 : C/A level must be more than 0.95.
CH-2 : D/B level must be more than 0.95.

If the specification is not satisfied, perform steps (5) and later.

Adjustment

5. Loosen the locking screw at the upper part of a TG-7 tape guide two to three turns using a tape guide adjustment driver.
6. Fine adjust the height of the TG-7 tape guide so that the specification is satisfied in REV X1 mode.
7. Put the unit into PLAY, REV X1, F.FWD and REW modes, and change the mode from STOP to F.FWD modes, and from STOP to REW modes.
   Using an adjustment mirror, make sure that the tape running at the flanges of the TG-6, TG-7, and T tension arm satisfy the specification in every mode.
8. Perform confirmation of audio head height. (Refer to steps (1) through (3) in Section 6-7.)
9. Perform confirmation of audio head phase. (Refer to steps (1) through (4) in Section 6-8.)
10. Install the AU head cover. (Refer to step ㉓ in Section 5-3.)
11. Install the cleaning roller assembly. (Refer to steps (7) and (8) in Section 5-6.)
12. Perform cleaning roller block position adjustment. (Refer to Section 5-6-1.)


auido/TC head
T tension arm
stationary guide
capstan shaft
tape
TG-5
TG-6
TG-7
TG-8
drum
lead
tape runs in contact with upper flange.
tape runs in contact with lower flange.
tape runs in the center of the tape guide roller.

TG-6 : The lower edge of the tape runs in contact with the lower flange of the TG-6 tape guide.
However, in PLAY, F.FWD, and REW modes, the lower flange of the tape guide must not rotate.
(If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)

TG-7 : The upper edge of the tape runs in contact with the upper flange of the TG-7 tape guide.
(If a tape curl exists, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)

T tension arm : The tape runs in the center of the guide roller of the T tension arm.
(In modes other than PLAY, if a tape curl exists at the upper or lower flange, it is acceptable to the extent of 1/10 of the tape width.)

6-12. RF SWITCHING POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Perform this RF switching position adjustment when a video tracking adjustment is performed.

Preparation

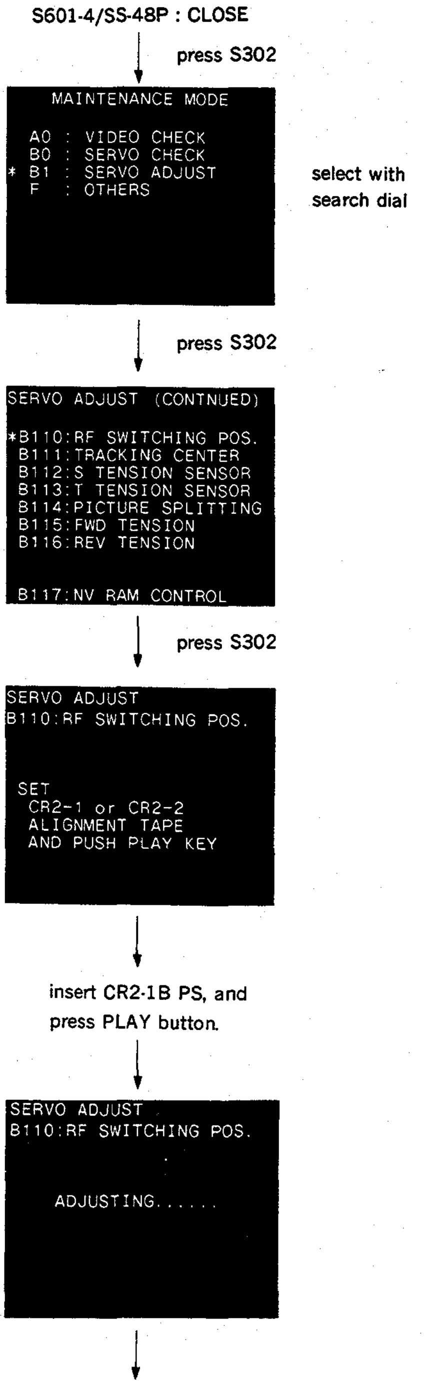
Connect a video monitor with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector, and display characters.

Tool

Alignment tape CR2-1B PS : 8-960-096-51

Check

1. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode. (The automatic adjustment does not accept the mode other than EJECT.)
2. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board in CLOSE state. Press S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
3. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
4. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
5. Move * mark to "B110: RF SWITCHING POS." which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
6. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "RF SWITCHING POS." menu.
7. Confirm that the message "SET CR2-1 OR CR2-2 ALIGNMENT TAPE AND PUSH PLAY KEY" is displayed on the monitor screen.
8. Insert an alignment tape CR2-1B PS and press the PLAY button.
9. Make sure that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen.
   When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
10. Move * mark to "B117: NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
11. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
12. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
13. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
14. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.



S601-4/SS-48P : CLOSE

press S302

```
   MAINTENANCE MODE

  A0 : VIDEO CHECK
  B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
  F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

press S302

```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

*B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

press S302

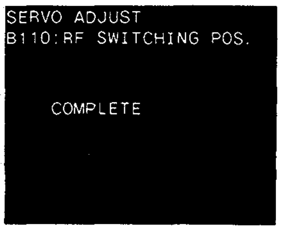
```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.


 SET
  CR2-1 or CR2-2
  ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

insert CR2-1B PS, and press PLAY button.

```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.


    ADJUSTING......
```

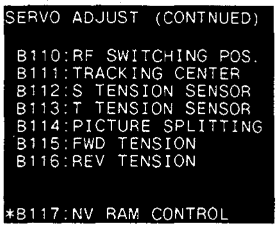
Note: When "INCOMPLETE" appears on the monitor screen in step (9), press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen. After that, press the EJECT button, take out the alignment tape, and make sure that it is CR2-1B PS.

15. Press the EJECT button and take out the alignment tape.
16. Turn the POWER to OFF and put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board to OPEN state.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B110:RF SWITCHING POS.

      COMPLETE
```

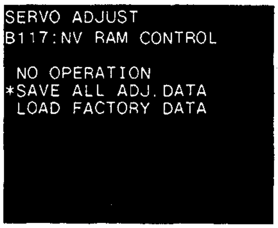
press S303



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

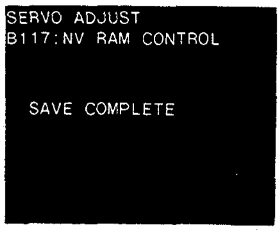
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

   SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

6-13. VIDEO HEAD DIHEDRAL CHECK

The video head dihedral of an upper drum assembly and drum assembly for service part is precisely adjusted at the factory. No adjustment is thus required. Perform only the check.

Tools

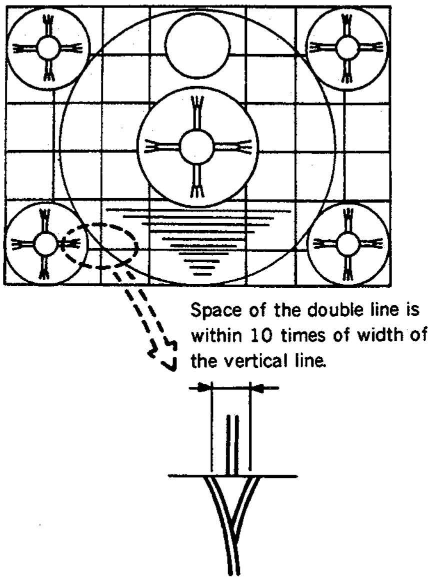
Alignment tape CR5-2A PS : 8-960-098-44
Monitor TV

Check flow chart

Confirmation of video head dihedral

Check

1. Connect a monitor TV to TP204 on VP-33AP board.
2. Insert an alignment tape CR5-2A PS into the unit and play back the monoscope signal portion.
3. Make sure if the vertical line of the monoscope signal just beneath a switching pulse is played back in double lines instead of a single line.
   Make sure that the space of the double line is within 10 times of width of the vertical line.


Space of the double line is within 10 times of width of the vertical line.

6-14. PICTURE SPLITTING COMPENSATION ADJUSTMENT

This picture splitting compensation adjustment is usually not required.
Picture splitting is rarely detected on the monitor TV that is connected to the connector on the connector panel. Perform this adjustment only when the picture splitting is detected. The picture splitting is the phenomenon shown in the figure.

Tools

Conventional monitor TV for checking
Alignment tape CR5-2A PS : 8-960-098-44
For adjustment purpose, monitor TV (Use a monitor whose AFC lock is slow.)

Adjustment flow chart

Adjustment of picture splitting compensation

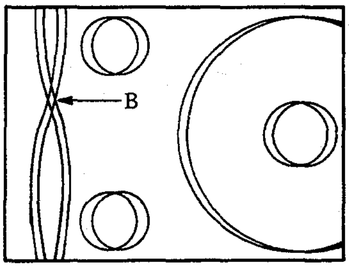
Check

1. Connect a conventional monitor TV to the connector on the connector panel.
2. Insert an alignment tape CR5-2A PS into the unit and play back the monoscope signal portion.
3. Check whether picture splitting is detected on the monitor TV.

Specification : 1.5 μs or less
If picture splitting is detected, perform steps (4) and later.

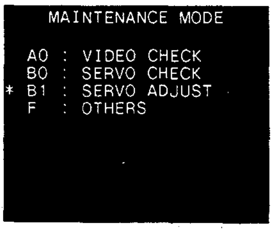
Adjustment

4. Connect a monitor TV for adjustment purpose to TP202 on VP-33AP board.
5. Connect a conventional monitor TV with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector on the connector panel.
6. Put the monitor TV into H DELAY, AFC FAST, and SYNC INT modes.
7. Make sure that the unit is in EJECT mode.
8. Put Bit4 of S601 on SS-48P board to CLOSE state. Press S302 and put the unit into maintenance mode.
9. Press the search dial to enter the jog mode, and move * mark to "B1 : SERVO ADJUST" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
10. Press S302 on SS-48P board to select "SERVO ADJUST" mode.
11. Move * mark to "B114: PICTURE SPLITTING" in the menu which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.



S601-4/SS-48P:CLOSE

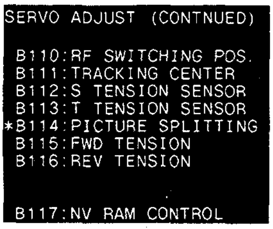
↓ press S302



```
MAINTENANCE MODE

 A0 : VIDEO CHECK
 B0 : SERVO CHECK
* B1 : SERVO ADJUST
 F  : OTHERS
```

select with search dial

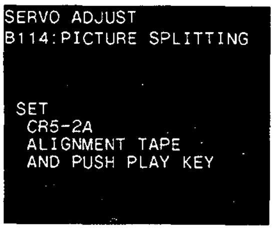
↓ press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
*B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION

 B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

↓ press S302



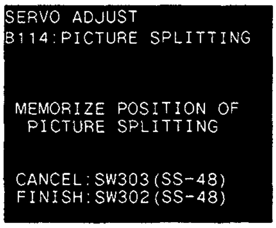
```
SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING


 SET
  CR5-2A
  ALIGNMENT TAPE
  AND PUSH PLAY KEY
```

↓

insert CR5-2A PS, and press PLAY button.

↓

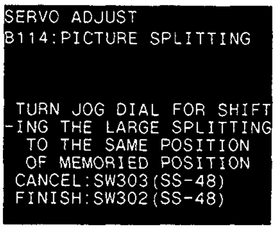
12. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "PICTURE SPLITTING" menu.
13. Insert an alignment tape CR5-2A PS into the unit and play back the monoscope signal portion.
14. Mark the "B" position shown in the figure on the monitor screen with felt pen.
15. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
16. Turn the search dial so that the picture splitting cross-point position of a picture played back on the monitor screen coincides with the position marked in step (14).
17. Press S302 on SS-48P board.
18. Turn the search dial so that minimize the picture splitting, and press S302 on SS-48P board.
19. Make sure that the message "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen that is connected with VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector or MONITOR connector.
20. When "COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 on SS-48P board to return to the menu screen.
21. Move * mark to "B117 : NV RAM CONTROL" which is displaying on the monitor screen with the search dial.
22. Press S302 on SS-48P board to execute "NV RAM CONTROL" menu.
23. Move * mark to "SAVE ALL ADJ. DATA" with the search dial.
24. Press S302 on SS-48P board. Data will be stored on the NOV RAM.
25. When "SAVE COMPLETE" is displayed on the monitor screen, press S303 twice on SS-48P board to return to the mode screen.



```
SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING


 MEMORIZE POSITION OF
  PICTURE SPLITTING


 CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
 FINISH:SW302(SS-48)
```

mark the "B" position on the monitor screen

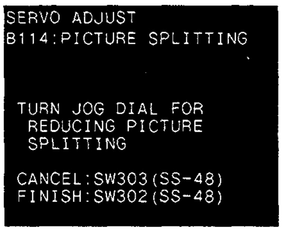
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING


 TURN JOG DIAL FOR SHIFT
-ING THE LARGE SPLITTING
  TO THE SAME POSITION
  OF MEMORIED POSITION
 CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
 FINISH:SW302(SS-48)
```

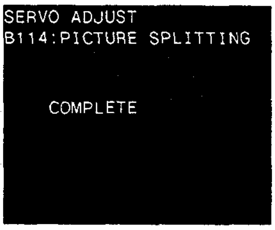
turn the search dial, and perform adjustment

press S302



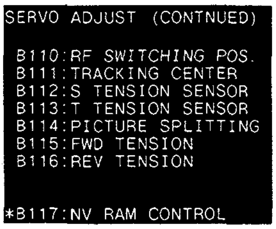
```
SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING


 TURN JOG DIAL FOR
  REDUCING PICTURE
  SPLITTING

 CANCEL:SW303(SS-48)
 FINISH:SW302(SS-48)
```

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B114:PICTURE SPLITTING


    COMPLETE
```

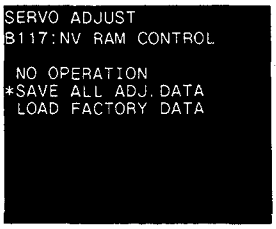
press S303



```
SERVO ADJUST (CONTNUED)

 B110:RF SWITCHING POS.
 B111:TRACKING CENTER
 B112:S TENSION SENSOR
 B113:T TENSION SENSOR
 B114:PICTURE SPLITTING
 B115:FWD TENSION
 B116:REV TENSION


*B117:NV RAM CONTROL
```

select with search dial

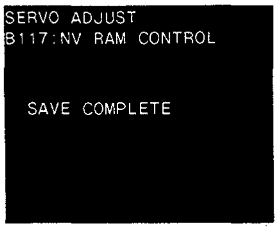
press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL

 NO OPERATION
*SAVE ALL ADJ.DATA
 LOAD FACTORY DATA
```

select with search dial

press S302



```
SERVO ADJUST
B117:NV RAM CONTROL


  SAVE COMPLETE
```

press S303 twice

S601-4/SS-48P : OPEN

E-ALIGNMENT INF.

SECTION 7
GENERAL INFORMATION FOR ELECTRICAL ADJUSTMENT

7-1. ADJUSTMENT COMPONENT INDEX

AU-148 board

RV101	HEAD TUNE	10-7
RV102	OXIDE F.RESP.	10-7
RV103	METAL F.RESP.	10-9
RV104	METAL PB LEVEL	10-9
RV105	STEREO PHASE	10-10
RV106	PB LEVEL	10-7
RV201	DOLBY EN INPUT LEVEL	10-7
RV204	PB PRESET LEVEL	10-7
SW101	HEAD TUNE C SELECT SW	10-7

AU-149 board

RV101	HEAD TUNE	10-8
RV102	OXIDE F.RESP.	10-8
RV103	METAL F.RESP.	10-12
RV104	METAL PB LEVEL	10-12
RV105	STEREO PHASE	10-13
RV106	PB LEVEL	10-8
RV201	DOLBY EN INPUT LEVEL	10-8
RV204	PB PRESET LEVEL	10-8
SW101	HEAD TUNE C SELECT SW	10-8

MA-44 board

RV1	CH1 METER LEVEL	10-14
RV2	CH2 METER LEVEL	10-14

PTC-39 board

RV1	DME	9-3
RV2	DME	9-3

RP-57 board

RV4	YA PB RF F.RESP.	12-11
RV104	YB PB RF F.RESP.	12-11
RV204	CA PB RF F.RESP.	12-11
RV304	CB PB RF F.RESP.	12-11

SS-48 board

CV401	CHARA SIZE	8-1
CV402	MENU SIZE	8-1

TBC-18 board

LV300	Y ERR VOLT	11-42
LV400	C ERR VOLT	11-42
RV100	Y GAIN	11-39
RV200	C GAIN	11-40
RV301	Y PHASE	12-18
RV302	Y ERR CLP	12-16
RV303	Y TR GAIN	11-45
RV307	Y FREQ	12-15
RV400	Y/C DELAY	12-20
RV401	OXIDE DELAY	12-21
RV402	C ERR CLIP	12-16
RV403	C FREQ	12-15
RV500	VIDEO LEVEL	11-39
RV501	CHROMA LEVEL	11-40
RV700	SYNC LEVEL	12-16
RV701	SYNC PHASE	12-35
RV702	UV OFFSET (AM NOISE)	11-44
RV703	VISC P	12-28
RV704	VISC R	12-30
RV705	BURST LEVEL	12-16
RV706	POSI EDGE	12-12
RV707	NEGA EDGE	12-12
RV708	INT SC	12-35
RV709	1ST FIELD	12-26
RV710	HUE	11-44
RV711	4Fsc FREQ.	11-43

VP-33 board

RV102	YA OXIDE F.RESP.	11-31
RV103	YB OXIDE F.RESP.	11-31
RV106	YA METAL F.RESP.	11-30
RV107	YB METAL F.RESP.	11-30
RV108	Y OXIDE RF	11-16
RV109	Y METAL RF	11-15
RV111	VIDEO METER	11-15
RV112	Y METAL DO	11-35
RV113	Y OXIDE DO	11-35
RV201	Y LIMITER BALANCE	11-20
RV202	Y METAL OMC	11-28
RV203	Y OXIDE OMC	11-29
RV204	Y METAL DEMOD GAIN	11-18
RV205	Y OXIDE DEMOD GAIN	11-19
RV206	Y DEMOD BALANCE	11-24

RV402 CA OXIDE F.RESP. 11-33
RV403 CB OXIDE F.RESP.......................11-33
RV406 CA METAL F.RESP. 11-32
RV407 CB METAL F.RESP. 11-32
RV408 C OXIDE RF 11-17
RV409 C METAL RF 11-17
RV412 C METAL DO 11-36
RV413 C OXIDE DO 11-36
RV501 C LIMITER BALANCE 11-22
RV502 C METAL OMC 11-28
RV503 C OXIDE OMC 11-29
RV504 C METAL DEMOD GAIN 11-18
RV505 C OXIDE DEMOD GAIN 11-19
RV506 C DEMOD BALANCE 11-26
RV701 PRE Y LEVEL 11-46
RV703 Y OUT LEVEL 11-47
RV704 S VIDEO Y LEVEL 11-47
RV705 VIDEO OUT LEVEL 11-48
RV706 VIDEO OUT SYNC 11-48
RV707 S VIDEO SYNC 11-47
RV708 Y OUT SYNC 11-47
RV709 VIDEO 3 LEVEL 11-48
RV712 BURST LEVEL 11-54
RV713 V SC LEAK 11-53
RV714 U SC LEAK 11-53
RV715 ENC B-Y LEVEL 11-54
RV716 ENC R-Y LEVEL 11-54
RV718 CF ADJ 12-25
RV719 VISC LEVEL 11-52
RV720 VISC DC 11-52
RV721 R-Y DELAY 12-22
RV722 R-Y LEVEL 11-49
RV723 B-Y DELAY 12-22
RV724 B-Y LEVEL 11-50
RV725 ID(+)LEVEL 11-51
RV726 ID(−)LEVEL 11-51

7-2. REQUIRED EQUIPMENT

VIDEO system equipments

Equipment		Equivalent	Note
Oscilloscope		TEKTRONIX 2445	more than 150 MHz
Signal Generator	Component	TEKTRONIX TSG-300(BETACAM SP SPEC.)	(for BETACAM SP)
	Composite	TEKTRONIX 1411	
	Digital Composite	TEKTRONIX 271	SCH reference
Network Analyzer		ANRITSU MS-420B	use together with head coupling tool
Waveform Monitor	Component	TEKTRONIX WFM300/WFM300A/ 1781R	component signal W/F
	Composite	TEKTRONIX 1481C/1751/1781R	with SCH meter
Spectrum analyzer		ADVANTEST R4131B/D	
Picture Monitor			
Head Coupling Tool			
Frequency Counter		ADVANTEST TR5821AK	
Blank Tape (Oxide)		BCT-20G	standard products
Blank Tape (Metal)		BCT-20M	standard products
Alignment Tape		CR5-1B PS(PART No. 8-960-096-91)	refer to Section 11, 12 Video System Alignment
Alignment Tape		CR5-2A PS(PART No. 8-960-098-44)	refer to Section 11, 12 Video System Alignment

AUDIO/TIME CODE system equipments

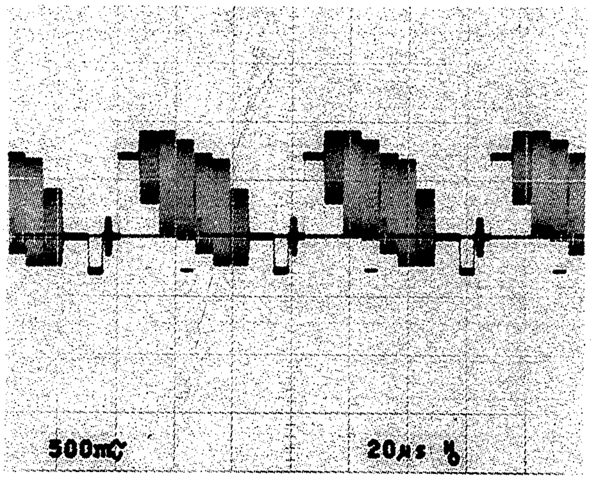
Equipment	Equivalent	Note
Oscilloscope	TEKTRONIX 2445	
Composite Signal Generator	TEKTRONIX 1411	
Picture Monitor		
Audio Level Meter	HP 3400A	
Alignment Tape	CR8-1A PS(PART No. 8-960-098-45)	refer to Section 10 Audio/Time Code System Alignment
	CR8-1B PS(PART No. 8-960-096-86)	

Others

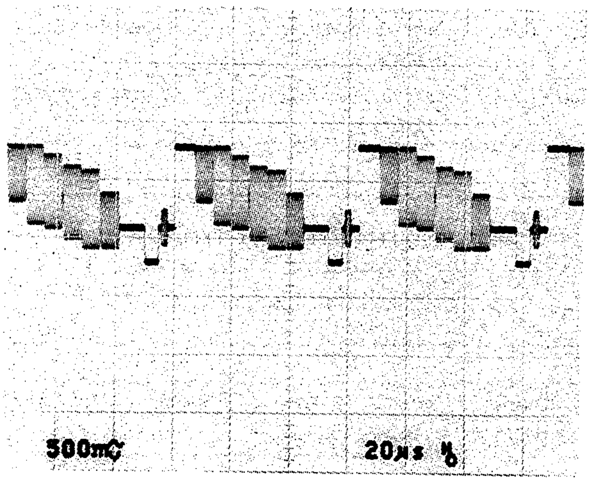
Equipment	Equivalent	Note
Digital Voltmeter	ADVANTEST TR6845	refer to 8-1. switching regulator adjustment

7-3. TEST SIGNAL

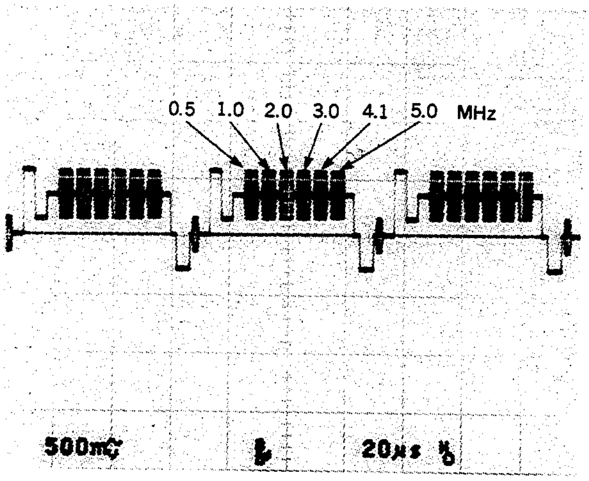
1. 100% COLOR BARS



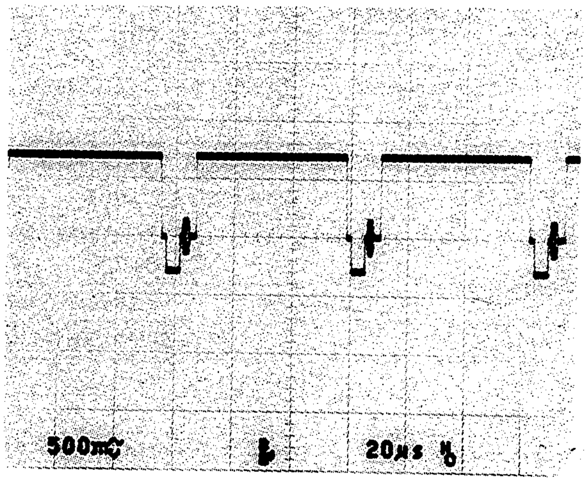
2. 75% COLOR BARS



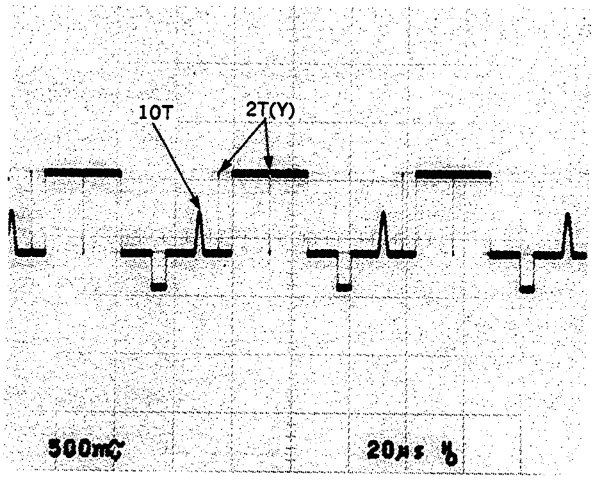
3. 60% MULTI BURST



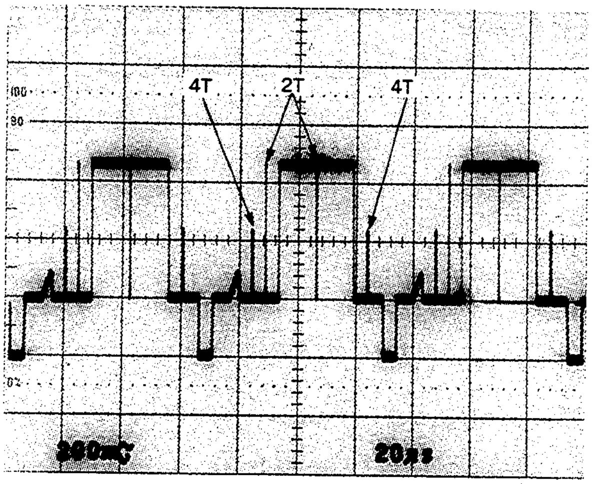
4. 50% FLAT FIELD



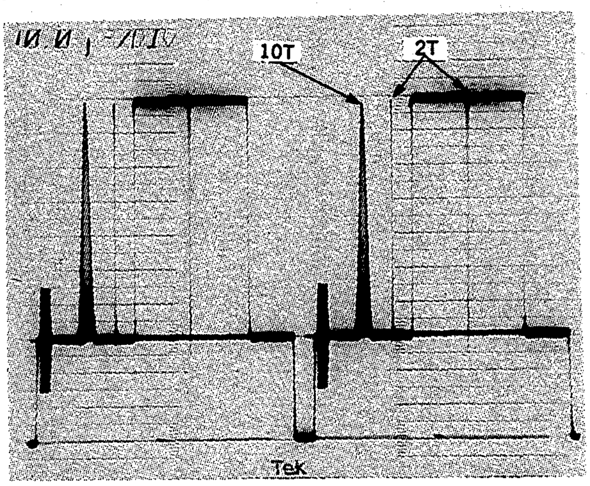
5. PULSE & BAR (COMPONENT) 2T(Y)



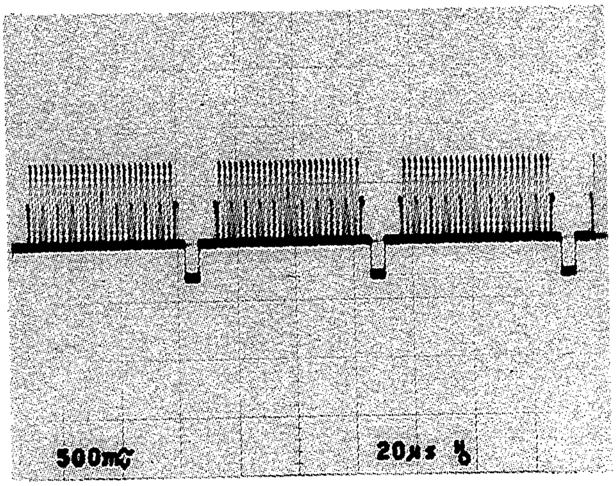
6. PULSE & BAR (COMPONENT) 2T, 4T (Y)



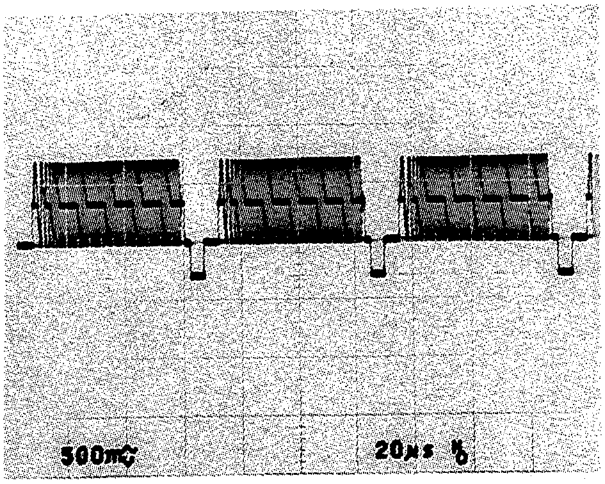
7. PULSE & BAR (COMPOSITE) 2T



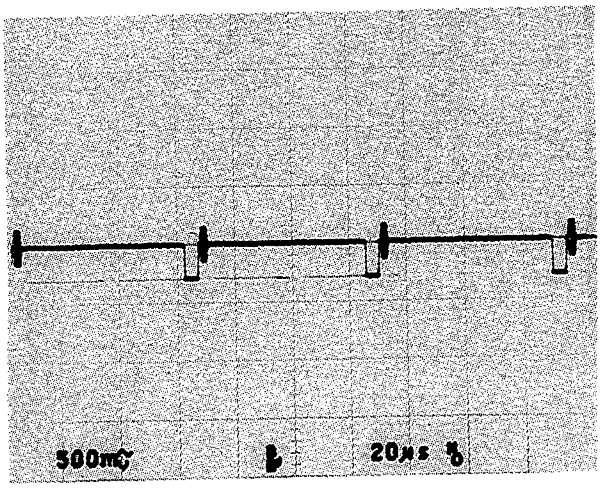
8. 50% BOWTIE



9. 100% NARROW LINE SWEEP (200 kHz−5.5 MHz)



10. BLACK BURST



POWER/SYSCON

SECTION 8
POWER SUPPLY AND SYSTEM CONTROL ALIGNMENT

[Equipment Required]

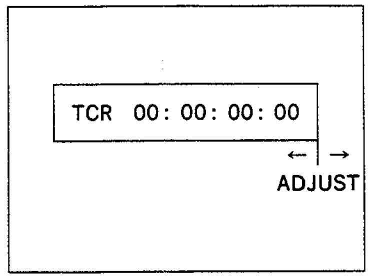
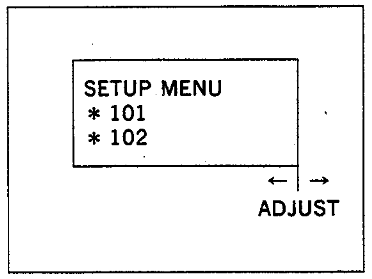
- Digital Voltmeter (ADVANTEST TR6845)
- Picture Monitor
- Alignment Tape CR5-2A PS (Part No. 8-960-098-44)
  Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK
0: 00	75% Color Bars
3: 00	60% Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1.0,2.0,3.0,4.1,4.5 MHz C: 0.2,0.5,1.0,1.5,2.0 MHz
6: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T
9: 00	Pulse & Bar
11: 00	Quad Phase
13: 00 15: 00	C-Monoscope Switching position is shifted.

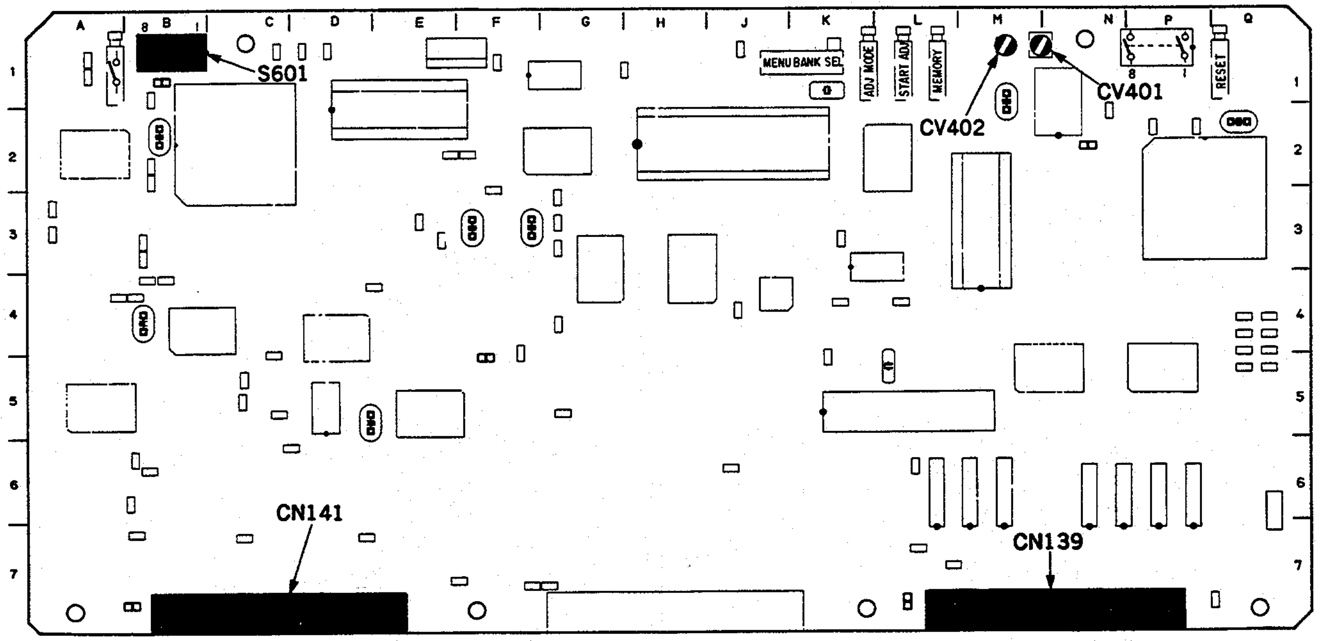
8-1. SWITCHING REGULATOR VOLTAGE CHECK

Machine conditions for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustment
• Set the bit 1 through 8 of S601 (B-1) on the SS-48 board to ON. **NOTE:** When checking, be careful not to short between connector pins. • After adjustment is completed, set the bit 1 through 8 of S601 (B-1) on the SS-48 board to OFF.	Use the digital voltmeter CN139-46pin/SS-48 $+5.1\pm0.25$ V CN139-44pin/SS-48 $+8.0^{+1.0}_{-0.6}$ V CN139-42pin/SS-48 $-5.1^{+0.25}_{-0.6}$ V CN141-5Apin/SS-48 $-13.0^{+0.5}_{-0.75}$ V CN141-4Apin/SS-48 $+13.0\pm0.5$ V	(CHECK)

8-2. CHARACTER POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Machine conditions for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustment
Step 1 • Connect the picture monitor to VIDEO OUTPUT 3 connector. • CHARACTER switch (sub control panel): ON • CTL/TC/U-BIT switch (control panel): CTL • Play back the C-monoscope signal (13: 00—15: 00) portion of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	Adjust the CTL character display, and position the right side frame at the same scale which positioned the left side frame in the monoscope picture on the monitor.  TCR 00: 00: 00: 00 ← | → ADJUST	⊘ CV401/SS-48(M-1)
Step 2 • Press the SYSTEM SET-UP MENU button on the sub control panel once. • After adjustment is completed, press the SYSTEM SET-UP MENU button and display the original picture.	Adjust the setup menu display, and position the right side frame at the same scale which positioned the left side frame in the monoscope picture on the monitor.  SETUP MENU * 101 * 102 ← | → ADJUST	⊘ CV402/SS-48(M-1)

SS-48 board



SERVO

SECTION 9
SERVO SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

NOTE: There are relative items about servo system alignment in section 3,5 and 6.
If necessary, refer to them.

[Equipment Required]

- Oscilloscope (TEKTRONIX 2445 or equivalent)
- Picture Monitor
- Alignment Tape CR2-1B PS (Part No. 8-960-096-51)

Contents

VIDEO TRACK	AUDIO TRACK	TIME CODE TRACK	CTL
Y; 4MHz Signal C; 5MHz Signal	Blank	Blank	CTL

- Alignment Tape CR5-1B PS (Part No. 8-960-096-91)

Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK	AFM
0: 00	RF Sweep Marker 1,2,4,6,8,10,12 MHz	No-Signal
2: 00	60% H Sweep (CTDM) Marker 0.5,1,2,3,4,5 MHz	
5: 00	Pulse & Bar (CTDM)	
8: 00	Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1,2,4.5,5.5 MHz C: 0.2, 0.5,1,1.5,2 MHz	
11: 00	Pulse & Bar	
14: 00	100% Color Bars	400 Hz SINE WAVE 25 kHz DEVIATION
16: 30		75 kHz DEVIATION
17: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T	No-Signal
19: 00	Line 17A	
22: 00	Quad Phase	
24: 00	50% Flat Field	
26: 00	100% Color Bars with Dropout	
28: 00	Composite H Sweep with VISC	
30: 00		

- Alignment Tape CR5-2A PS (Part No. 8-960-098-44)
  Contents

TIME min. s	VIDEO TRACK
0: 00	75% Color Bars
3: 00	60% Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1.0,2.0,3.0,4.1,4.5 MHz C: 0.2,0.5,1.0,1.5,2.0 MHz
6: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T
9: 00	Pulse & Bar
11: 00	Quad Phase
13: 00	C-Monoscope Switching position is shifted.
15: 00	

9-1. SEARCH DIAL ASSEMBLY SENSOR DUTY ADJUSTMENT

NOTE: This adjustment should be only performed if any parts are replaced on the PTC-39 board or if any RV is moved unintentionally.

Preparation:

(1) Remove the lower control panel ass'y. (Refer to Section 2-8.)
(2) Remove the rubber of a search dial. Then remove the screw on the dial and pull out the dial knob.
(3) Remove three screws on the lower control panel and remove the search dial.
(4) Remove one screw on the side of the search dial and remove a plastic cover.
(5) Install the lower control panel on the unit.
(6) Install the dial knob and rubber.
(7) Connect the harness to the connector CN1 on the PTC-39 board passing the hole of the control panel.
(8) Solder the test terminal for connecting a probe to CN1-2pin, 3pin and 6pin on the PTC-39 board.
(9) Fix the search dial on the control panel using a adhesive tape, so you can operate the dial by one hand.
(10) After adjustment is completed, install the dial and the panel.

Fig. 1

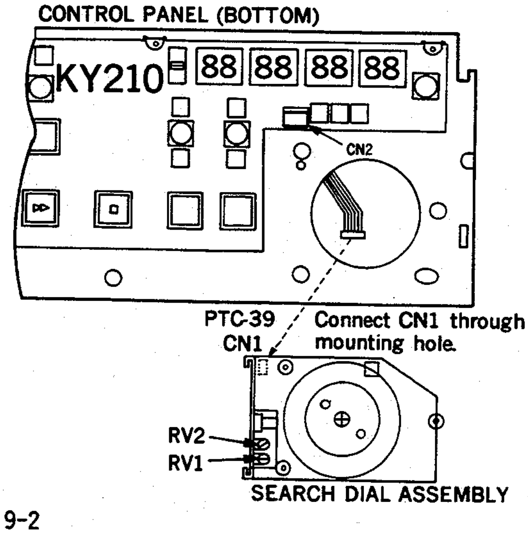
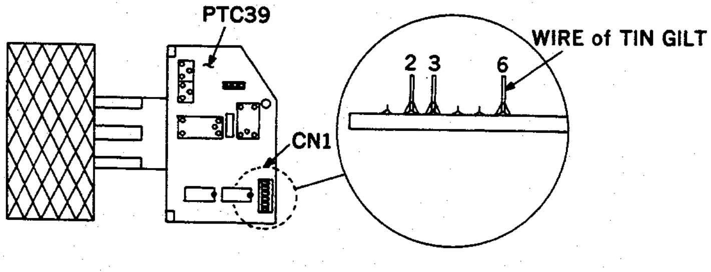
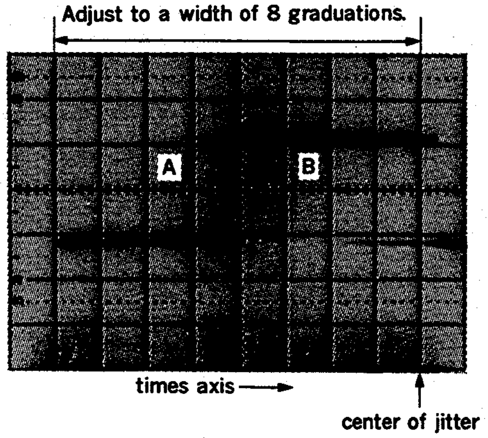
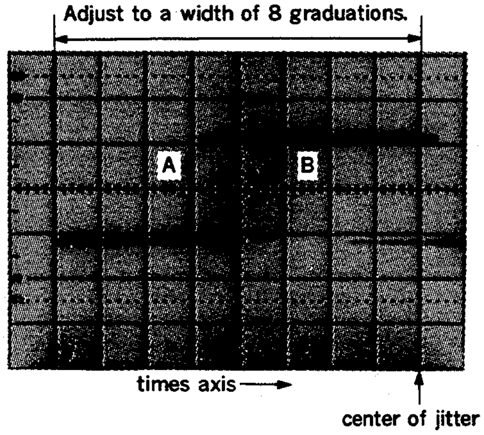

CONTROL PANEL (BOTTOM)
KY210
88 88 88 88
CN2
PTC-39
CN1
Connect CN1 through the mounting hole.
RV2
RV1
SEARCH DIAL ASSEMBLY

Fig. 2


PTC39
CN1
2 3
6
WIRE of TIN GILT

Machine coditions for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustment
Step 1 • Connect the HOT side of the probe of the oscilloscope to CN1-2pin on the PTC-39 board of the search dial ass'y and the GND side to CN1-6pin. • Press the search dial to put the unit into jog mode. • Oscilloscope VOLTS/div: 2 V SEC/div: 2 ms TRIGGER/SLOPE: – • Turn the H position control of the oscilloscope to position the rising of the beam at the first graduation from the left of the scale. • Turn and keep the search dial in the reverse direction at the settled speed. • Adjust the turning speed of the oscilloscope so that the waveform has one cycle of 8 graduations on the scale.	 A: B=4.2: 3.8 (±5%)	⊘ RV2/PTC-39
Step 2 • Connect the HOT side of the probe of the oscilloscope to CN1-3pin on the PTC-39 board and the GND side to CN1-6pin. • Press the search dial to put the unit into jog mode. • Oscilloscope VOLTS/div: 2 V SEC/div: 2 ms TRIGGER/SLOPE: – • Turn the H position control of the oscilloscope to position the rising of the beam at the first graduation from the left of the scale. • Turn and keep the search dial in the forward direction at the settled speed. • Adjust the turning speed of the oscilloscope so that the waveform has one cycle of 8 graduations on the scale.	 A: B=4.2: 3.8 (±5%)	⊘ RV1/PTC-39

AUDIO/TC

SECTION 10
AUDIO/TIME CODE SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

[Equipment Required]

- Oscilloscope (TEKTRONIX 2445 or equivalent)
- Signal Generator
  Composite SG (TEKTRONIX 1411 or equivalent)
- Audio Level Meter
- Picture Monitor
- Alignment Tape CR8-1A PS (Part No. 8-960-098-45)
  Contents

TIME min s	AUDIO TRACK
0: 00	1 kHz, 0 VU[*1]
2: 55	Blank
3: 00	10 kHz, −10 VU
4: 55	Blank
5: 00	1 kHz, −20 VU
5: 55	Blank
6: 00	40 Hz, 7, 10, 15 kHz, −20 VU[*2]
7: 55	Blank
8: 00	1 kHz, 0 VU CTL TRACK 1 kHz, 0 VU
10: 00	

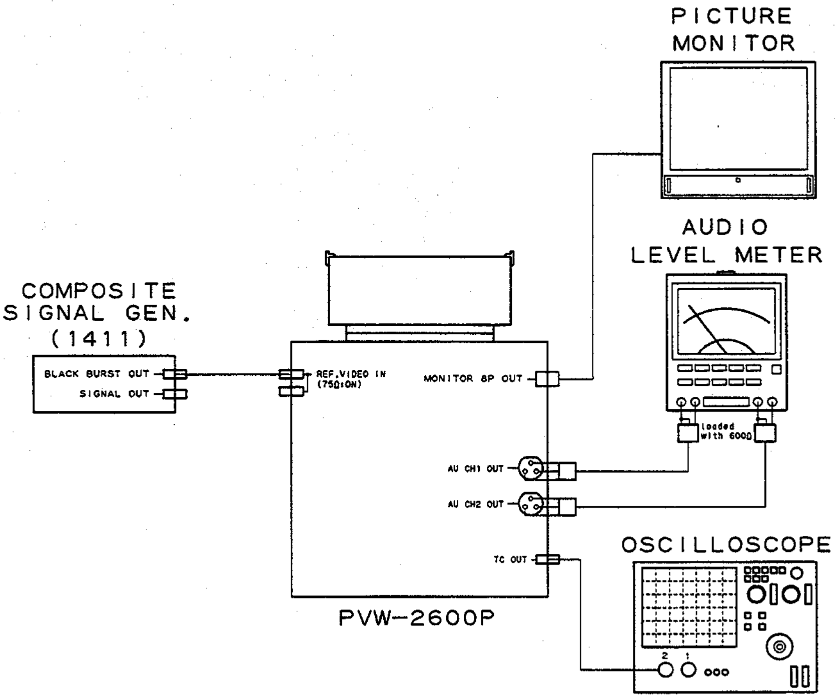
[*1] When this tape is reproduced in the audio reference level check or adjustment, the output level (0 dB) should be corrected according to the correction value as follows.
Example: Correction value = −0.5 dB
Output level = 0 dB − 0.5 dB = −0.5 dB

[*2] When this tape is reproduced in the audio frequency response check or adjustment, the output level should be corrected according to the correction value.

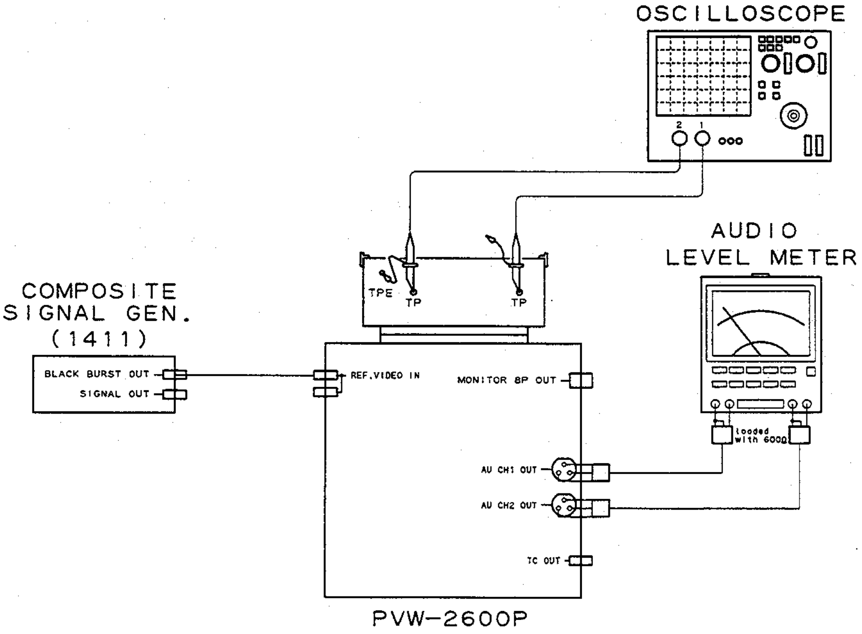
[Connection]

Connect some equipments as following CONNECTION 1 or CONNECTION 2 unless otherwise specified.

CONNECTION 1.


PICTURE MONITOR
AUDIO LEVEL METER
loaded with 600Ω
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
MONITOR 8P OUT
AU CH1 OUT
AU CH2 OUT
TC OUT
OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
PVW-2600P

CONNECTION 2.


OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
AUDIO LEVEL METER
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN
MONITOR 8P OUT
loaded with 600Ω
AU CH1 OUT
AU CH2 OUT
TC OUT
PVW-2600P

SECTION 10
AUDIO/TIME CODE SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

[Equipment Required]

- Oscilloscope (TEKTRONIX 2445 or equivalent)
- Signal Generator
  - Composite SG (TEKTRONIX 1411 or equivalent)
- Audio Level Meter
- Picture Monitor
- Alignment Tape CR8-1A PS (Part No. 8-960-098-45)
  - Contents

TIME min s	AUDIO TRACK
0: 00	1 kHz, 0 VU[*1]
2: 55	Blank
3: 00	10 kHz, −10 VU
4: 55	Blank
5: 00	1 kHz, −20 VU
5: 55	Blank
6: 00	40 Hz, 7, 10, 15 kHz, −20 VU[*2]
7: 55	Blank
8: 00	1 kHz, 0 VU CTL TRACK 1 kHz, 0 VU
10: 00	

* 1. When this tape is reproduced in the audio reference level check or adjustment, the output level (0 dB) should be corrected according to the correction value as follows.

Example: Correction value = −0.5 dB
Output level = 0 dB − 0.5 dB = −0.5 dB

* 2. When this tape is reproduced in the audio frequency response check or adjustment, the output level should be corrected according to the correction value.

- Alignment Tape CR8-1B PS (Part No. 8-960-096-86)
  Contents

TIME min s	AUDIO TRACK	VIDEO TRACK	CTL TRACK
0: 00	1 kHz, 0 VU[*1]	Black Burst	CTL
2: 30	Blank (only Bias)	Black Burst	CTL
	15 kHz, 0 VU	Black Burst	CTL
5: 00	1 kHz, −20 VU	Black Burst	CTL
6: 00	40 Hz, −20 VU[*2]	Black Burst	CTL
6: 30	7 kHz, −20 VU[*2]		
7: 00	10 kHz, −20 VU[*2]		
7: 30	15 kHz, −20 VU[*2]		
8: 00	1 kHz 0 VU	—	1 kHz sine wave
10: 00			

* 1. When this tape is reproduced in the audio reference level check or adjustment, the output level (0 dB) should be corrected according to the correction value as follows.
Example: Correction value=−0.5 dB
Output level=0 dB−0.5 dB=−0.5 dB

* 2. When this tape is reproduced in the audio frequency response check or adjustment, the output level should be corrected according to the correction value.

[Switch/Setup menu/Volume Setting]

This setting should not be changed in position unless otherwise specified.
Terminate the output of the AUDIO OUT connector at 600 Ω unless otherwise specified.

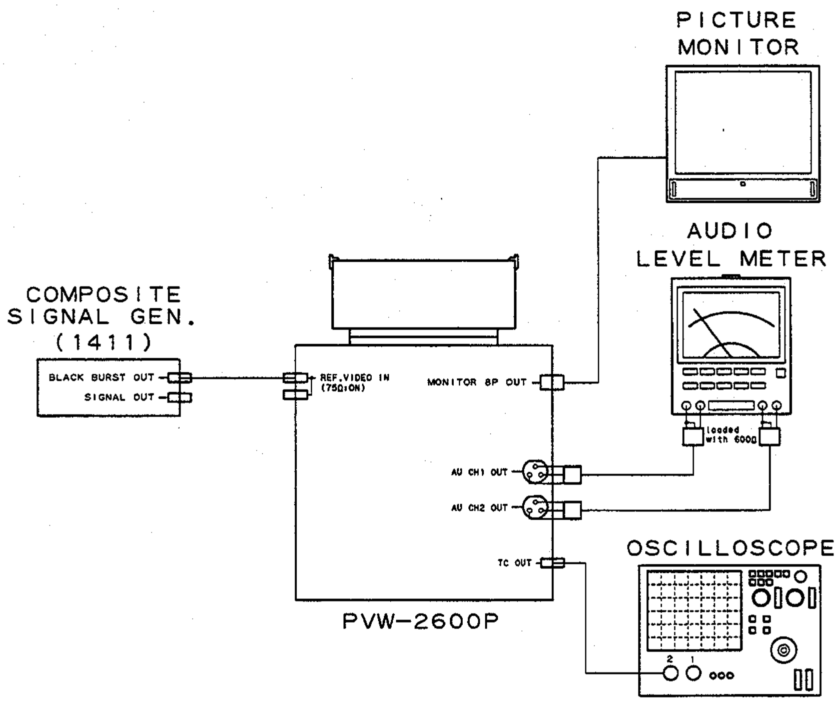
<Control Panel>
upper
AUDIO MONITOR: MIX
CH1 PB VOL: PUSH(PRESET)
CH2 PB VOL: PUSH(PRESET)
HEADPHONES VOL: MIN

<Sub Control Panel>
DOLBY NR: OFF

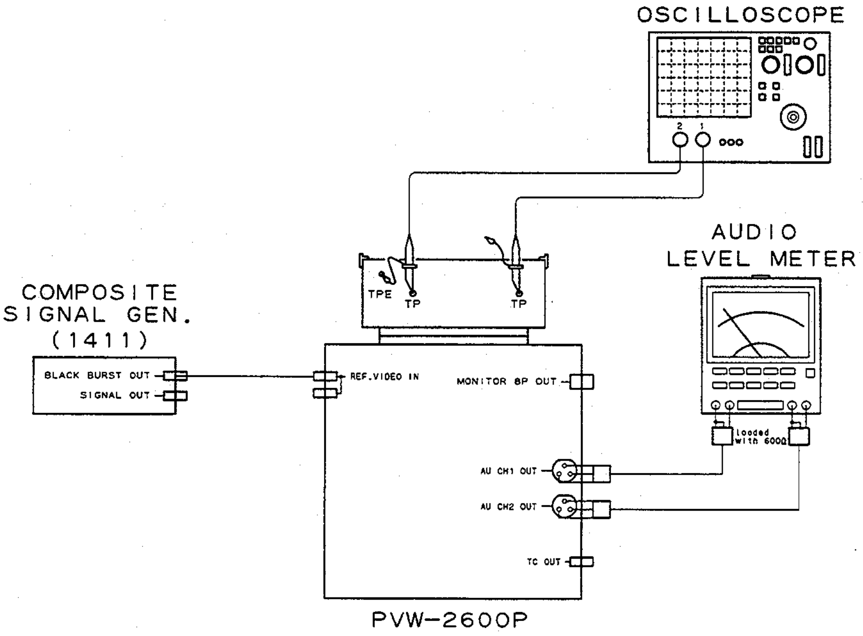
[Connection]

Connect some equipments as following CONNECTION 1 or CONNECTION 2 unless otherwise specified.

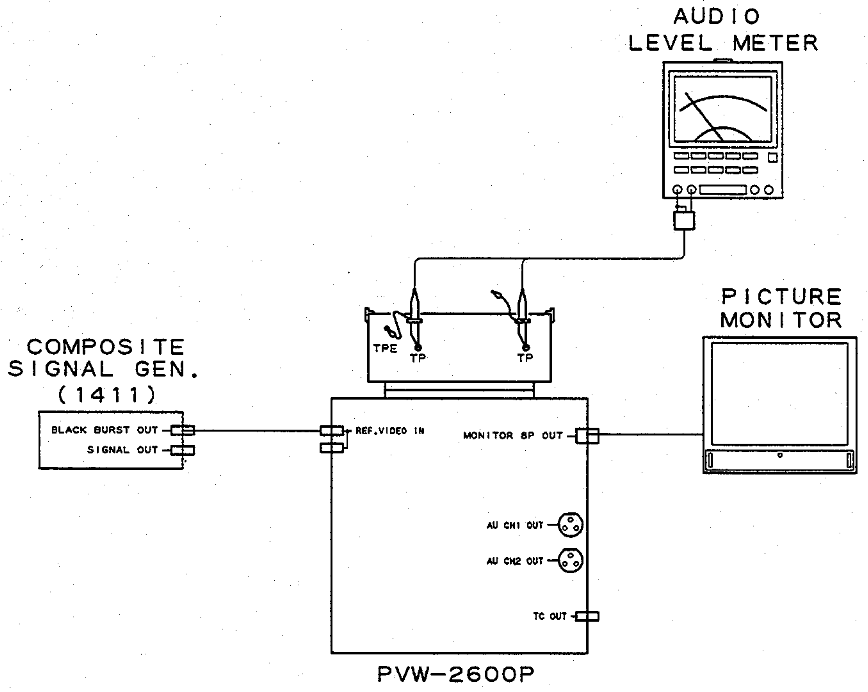
CONNECTION 1.


PICTURE MONITOR
AUDIO LEVEL METER
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
MONITOR 8P OUT
loaded with 600Ω
AU CH1 OUT
AU CH2 OUT
OSCILLOSCOPE
TC OUT
2 1
PVW-2600P

CONNECTION 2.


OSCILLOSCOPE
2 1
AUDIO LEVEL METER
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN
MONITOR 8P OUT
loaded with 600Ω
AU CH1 OUT
AU CH2 OUT
TC OUT
PVW-2600P

CONNECTION 3.


AUDIO
LEVEL METER
PICTURE
MONITOR
COMPOSITE
SIGNAL GEN.
(1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
TPE
TP
TP
REF.VIDEO IN
MONITOR 8P OUT
AU CH1 OUT
AU CH2 OUT
TC OUT
PVW-2600P

[Preparations and Notes on Alignment]

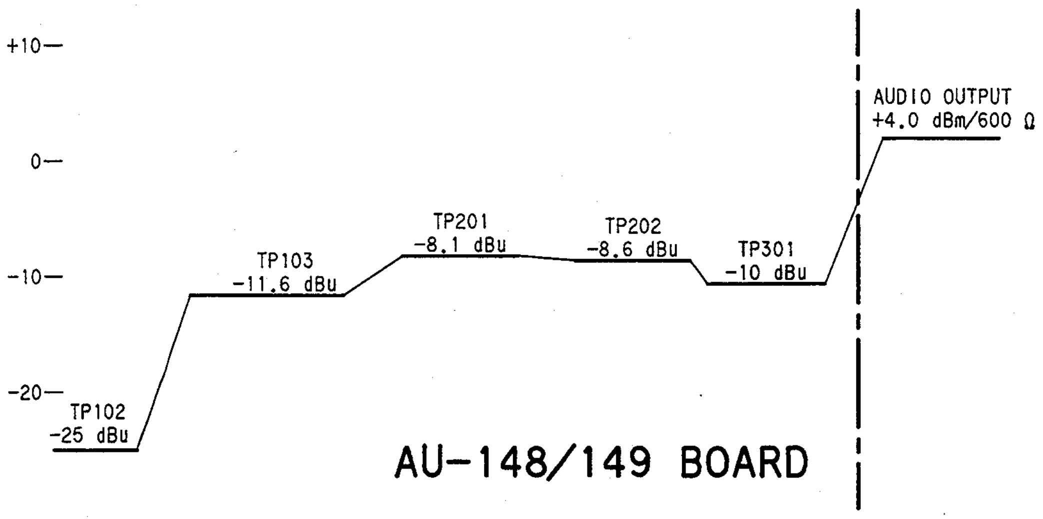
- **Preparations**

  Cleaning of stationary heads

  Clean two stationary heads by the cleaning piece moistened with cleaning fluid. After the fluid blow off, wipe off the heads by a dry cloth or cleaning piece.

- **Notes for alignment**
  - Level fluctuation at 15 kHz in PB is permitted by 0.5 dB.
  - When the alignment tape is played back, specification should be corrected according to the correction value mentioned in the tape lavel.
  - The alignment tape is used within the limits of about 50 times and recommend to manage by marking.

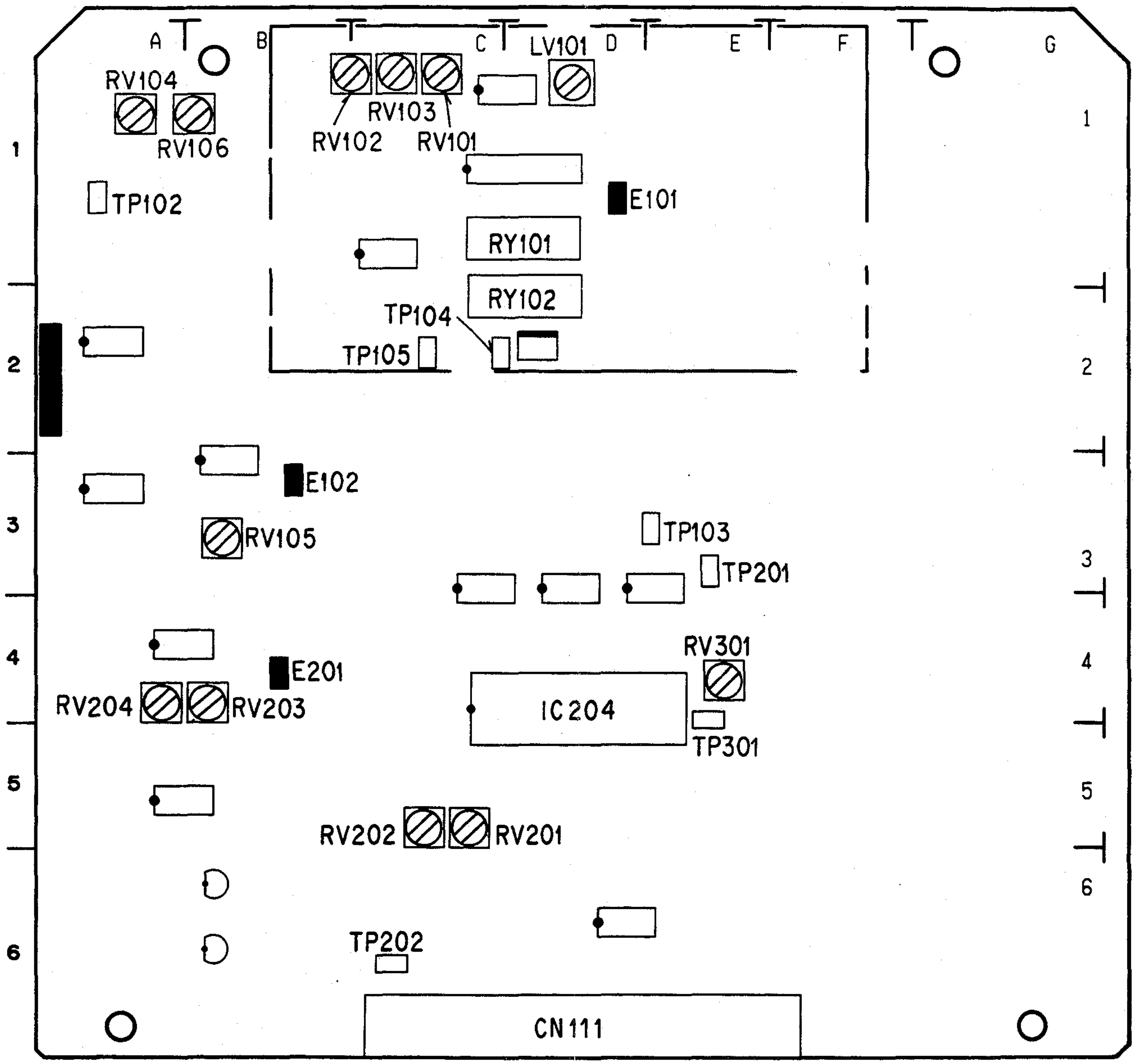
AUDIO SYSTEM LEVEL DIAGRAM
PB MODE(CR8-1A, 1 kHz 0 VU PORTION)
PB LEVEL CONTROL=PRESET



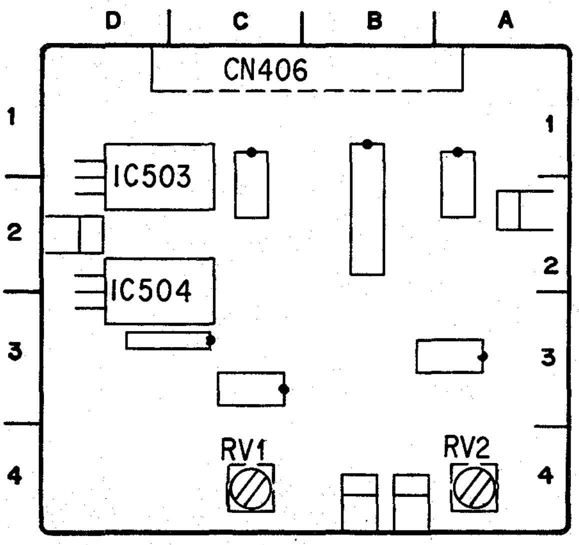
BOARD	TEST POINT	LEVEL		MODE
		dBu	mV rms	
AU148/149	TP102	-25.0	43.6	PB
AU148/149	TP103	-11.6	203.7	PB
AU148/149	TP201	-8.1	304.8	PB
AU148/149	TP202	-8.6	287.8	PB
AU148/149	TP301	-10.0	245.0	PB
CP167	AUDIO OUT	∗+4.0 dBm	1227.7	PB

∗----600 Ω TERMINATED

AU-148/149 board (A Side)

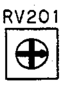
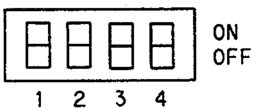

A
B
C
LV101
D
E
F
G
RV104
RV106
RV102
RV103
RV101
TP102
E101
RY101
RY102
TP104
TP105
E102
RV105
TP103
TP201
RV301
E201
RV204
RV203
IC204
TP301
RV202
RV201
TP202
CN111
1
2
3
4
5
6

MA-44 board (A Side)


D
C
B
A
CN406
IC503
IC504
RV1
RV2
1
2
3
4

10-1. AUDIO PB DOLBY OFF FREQUENCY RESPONSE ADJUSTMENT

10-1-1. CH-1 Audio PB Dolby Off Frequency Response Adjustment

<table>
<tr><th>Preparations for adjustment</th><th>Specifications</th><th>Adjustments</th></tr>
<tr><td>Step 1

• RV201/AU-148 (C-5) should indicate in the direction of 3 o'clock.
• Play back the 1 kHz, 40 Hz, 7 kHz, 10 kHz and 15 kHz (−20 VU) signal portion (5: 00—7: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td><td>CH1 AUDIO OUT
<table><tr><th>FREQUENCY [Hz]</th><th>OUTPUT LEVEL [dB]</th></tr><tr><td>40</td><td>$0^{+0.7}_{-2.5}$</td></tr><tr><td>1 k</td><td>0(REF)</td></tr><tr><td>7 k</td><td>0±0.5</td></tr><tr><td>10 k</td><td>$0^{+0.5}_{-0.7}$</td></tr><tr><td>15 k</td><td>$0^{+0.5}_{-1.2}$</td></tr></table></td><td>High-Frequency
⊘ RV101/AU-148 (C-1)
Low-Frequency
⊘ RV102/AU-148 (C-1)
Adjust alternately
If the specification of the high frequency is not satisfied, change SW101/AU-148 (C-1) board.

ON
OFF
1 2 3 4
Set SW101/AU-148 and SW101/AU-149 at the same position and then perform the adjustment.

CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 2
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td><td>TP301/AU-148 (E-4)
−10.00±0.05 dBu</td><td>⊘ RV106/AU-148 (B-1)

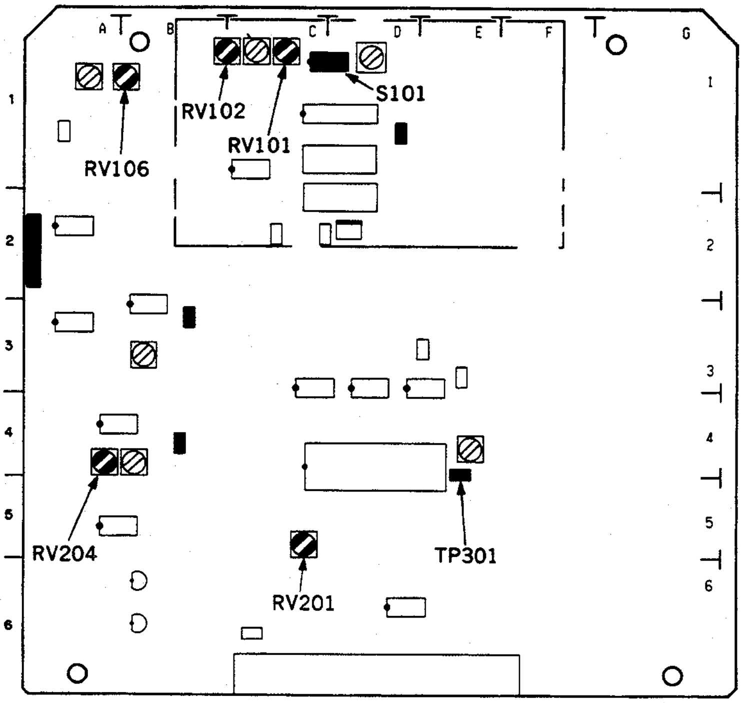
CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 3
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td><td>CH1 AUDIO OUT
+4.0±0.1 dBm</td><td>⊘ RV204/AU-148 (A-4)

CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
</table>

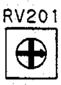
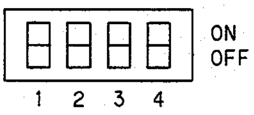
NOTE: If SW101/AU-148 was changed, perform Section 10-1-4. CH-1 Audio PB Phase Adjustment.

APPLICATION : 10-1-1.

AU-148/149 board



10-1-2. CH-2 Audio PB Dolby Off Frequency Response Adjustment

<table>
<tr><th>Preparations for adjustment</th><th>Specifications</th><th>Adjustments</th></tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 1

• RV201/AU-149 (C-5) should indicate in the direction of 3 o'clock.
• Play back the 1 kHz, 40 Hz, 7 kHz, 10 kHz and 15 kHz (−20 VU) signal portion (5: 00—7: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td>
<td>CH2 AUDIO OUT
<table><tr><th>FREQUENCY [Hz]</th><th>OUTPUT LEVEL [dB]</th></tr><tr><td>40</td><td>$0^{+0.7}_{-2.5}$</td></tr><tr><td>1 k</td><td>0(REF)</td></tr><tr><td>7 k</td><td>0±0.5</td></tr><tr><td>10 k</td><td>$0^{+0.5}_{-0.7}$</td></tr><tr><td>15 k</td><td>$0^{+0.5}_{-1.2}$</td></tr></table></td>
<td>High-Frequency
⊘RV101/AU-149 (C-1)
Low-Frequency
⊘RV102/AU-149 (C-1)
Adjust alternately
If the specification of the high frequency is not satisfied, change SW101/AU-148 (C-1) board.

Set SW101/AU-148 and SW101/AU-149 at the same position and then perform the adjustment.

CONNECTION 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td>
<td>TP301/AU-149 (E-4)
−10.00±0.05 dBu</td>
<td>⊘ RV106/AU-149 (B-1)

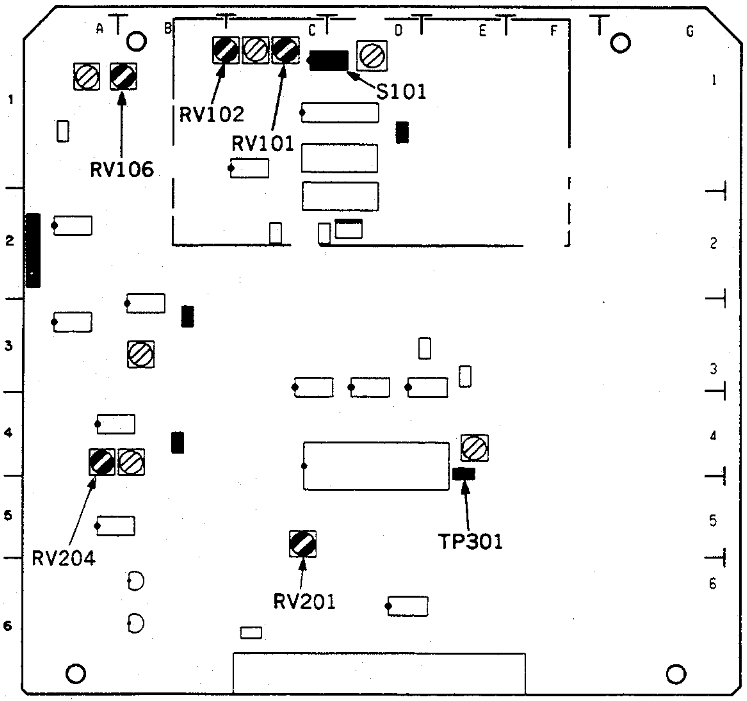
CONNECTION 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.</td>
<td>CH2 AUDIO OUT
+4.0±0.1 dBm</td>
<td>⊘ RV204/AU-149 (A-4)

CONNECTION 1</td>
</tr>
</table>

NOTE: If SW101/AU-149 was changed, perform Section 10-1-6. CH-2 Audio PB Phase Adjustment.

APPLICATION : 10-1-2.

AU-148/149 board

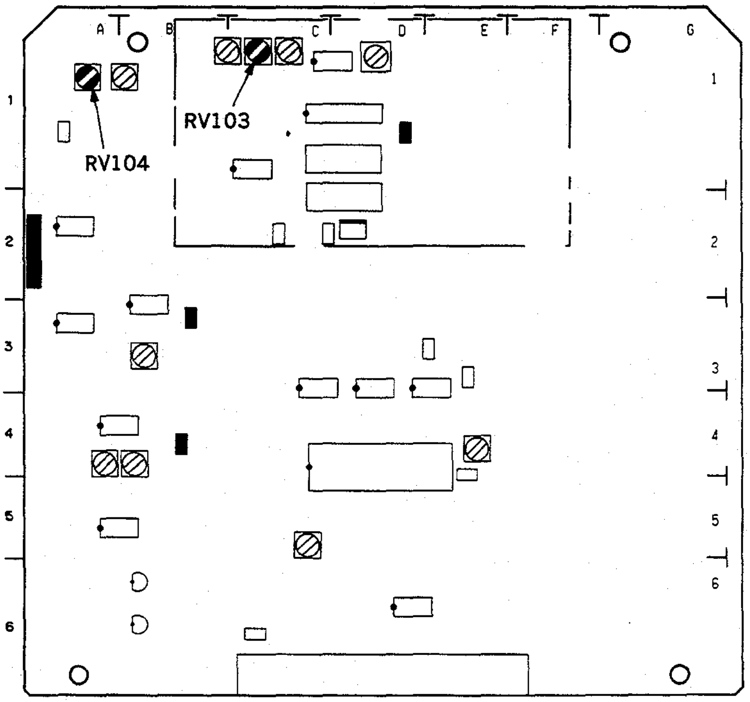


10-1-3. CH-1 Audio PB Dolby Off Metal Frequency Response Adjustment

<table>
<tr><th>Preparations for adjustment</th><th>Specifications</th><th>Adjustments</th></tr>
<tr><td>Step 1
• Play back the 1 kHz, 40 Hz, 7 kHz, 10 kHz and 15 kHz (−20 VU) signal portion (6: 00—8: 00) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.</td><td>CH1 AUDIO OUT<table>
<tr><th>FREQUENCY [Hz]</th><th>OUTPUT LEVEL [dB]</th></tr>
<tr><td>1 k</td><td>0 (REF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10 k</td><td>0 ±0.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15 k</td><td>$-0.8^{+0.5}_{-0.2}$</td></tr>
</table></td><td>High-Frequency
⊘RV103/AU-148 (C-1)
CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 2
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 30) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.</td><td>CH1 AUDIO OUT
+4.0±0.1 dBm</td><td>Middle-Frequency
⊘RV104/AU-148 (A-1)
CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
</table>

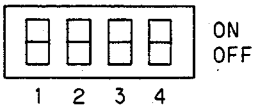
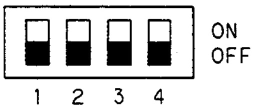
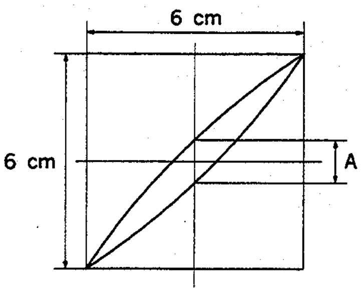
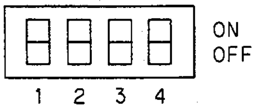
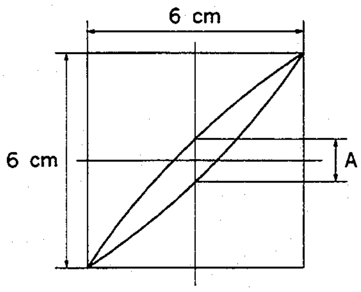
APPLICATION : 10-1-3.

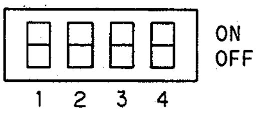
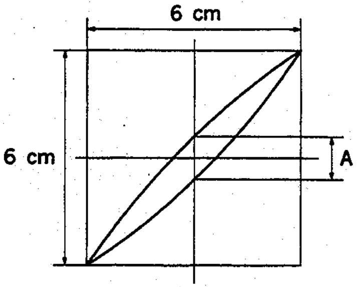
AU-148/149 board



10-1-4. CH-1 Audio PB Phase Adjustment

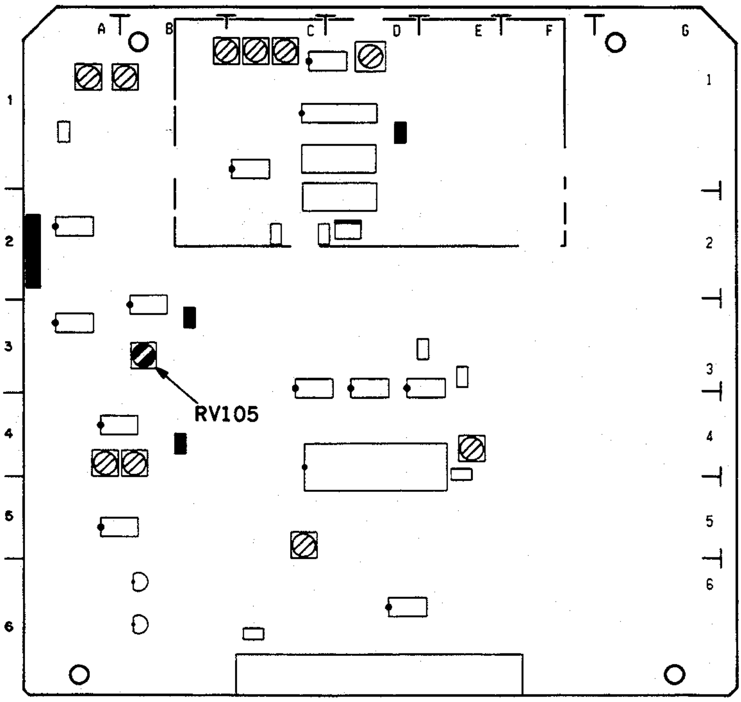
Before the adjustment, Audio Head Phase Adjustment in Section 6-8 should be completed.

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Connect the CH1 probe of the oscilloscope to CH2 AUDIO OUT connector. (HOT side to 2 pin, and GND side to 3 pin) • Connect the CH2 probe of the oscilloscope to CH1 AUDIO OUT connector. (HOT side to 2 pin, and GND side to 3 pin) • Set the oscilloscope to X-Y mode. • Write down the setting of SW101 bit1 through bit4 (C-1) on the AU-148 and AU-149 boards.  • Set SW101 on the AU-148 board and SW101 on the AU-149 board to all OFF.  • Play back the 10 kHz, −10 VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A.	CH1 AUDIO OUT (CH2 probe: Y axis) CH2 AUDIO OUT (CH1 probe: X axis) Lissajous waveform of the oscilloscope  The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less) If the specification is not satisfied, perform Audio Head Phase Adjustment in Section 6-8.	(Check) CONNECTION 2
Step 2 • Extend the AU-148 board by extention board. • Reset SW101 on the AU-148 board to the memorized position in Step 1.  • Play back the 10 kHz, −10 VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A.	 The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less)	● RV105/AU-148 (B-3) CONNECTION 2

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 3 • Disconnect the extention board. • Play back the 10kHz, −10VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A. **NOTE:** Confirm that SW101 on the AU-148 and AU-149 boards are set to the memorized position in Step 1.  	 The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less) If the specification is not satisfied, perform CH-2 Audio PB Phase Adjustment in section 10-1-6.	(Check)

APPLICATION : 10-1-4.

AU-148/149 board

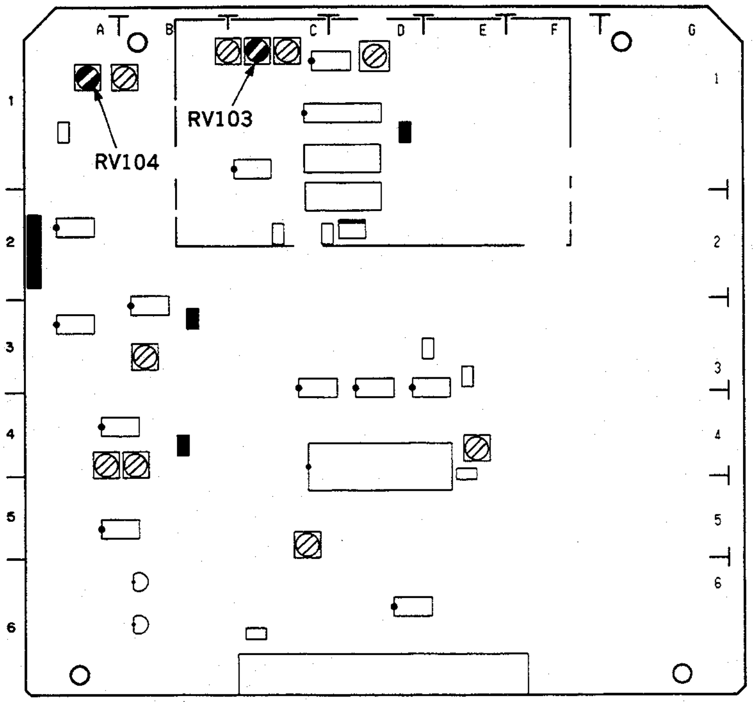


10-1-5. CH-2 Audio PB Dolby Off Metal Frequency Response Adjustment

<table>
<tr><th>Preparations for adjustment</th><th>Specifications</th><th>Adjustments</th></tr>
<tr><td>Step 1
• Play back the 1 kHz, 40 Hz, 7 kHz, 10 kHz and 15 kHz (−20 VU) signal portion (6: 00—8: 00) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.</td><td>CH2 AUDIO OUT
<table>
<tr><th>FREQUENCY [Hz]</th><th>OUTPUT LEVEL [dB]</th></tr>
<tr><td>1 k</td><td>0 (REF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10 k</td><td>0 ±0.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15 k</td><td>$-0.8\,^{+0.5}_{-0.2}$</td></tr>
</table></td><td>High-Frequency
⊘ RV103/AU-149 (C-1)
CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 2
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 30) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.</td><td>CH2 AUDIO OUT
+4.0±0.1 dBm</td><td>Middle-Frequency
⊘ RV104/AU-149 (A-1)
CONNECTION 1</td></tr>
</table>

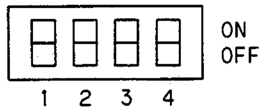
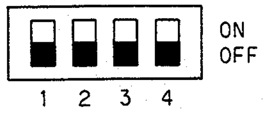
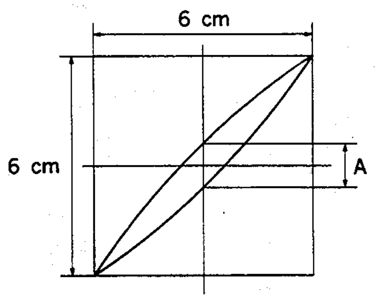
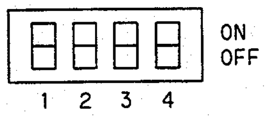
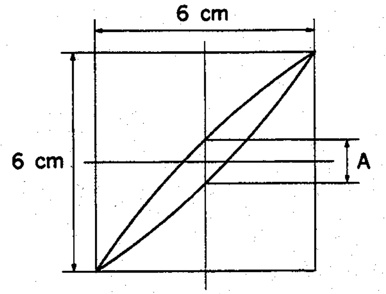
APPLICATION : 10-1-5.

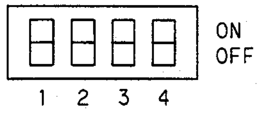
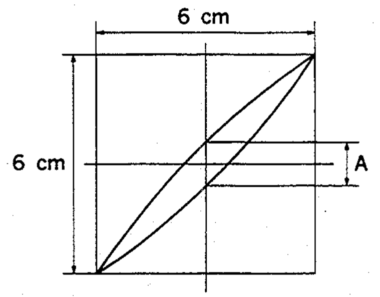
AU-148/149 board



10-1-6. CH-2 Audio PB Phase Adjustment

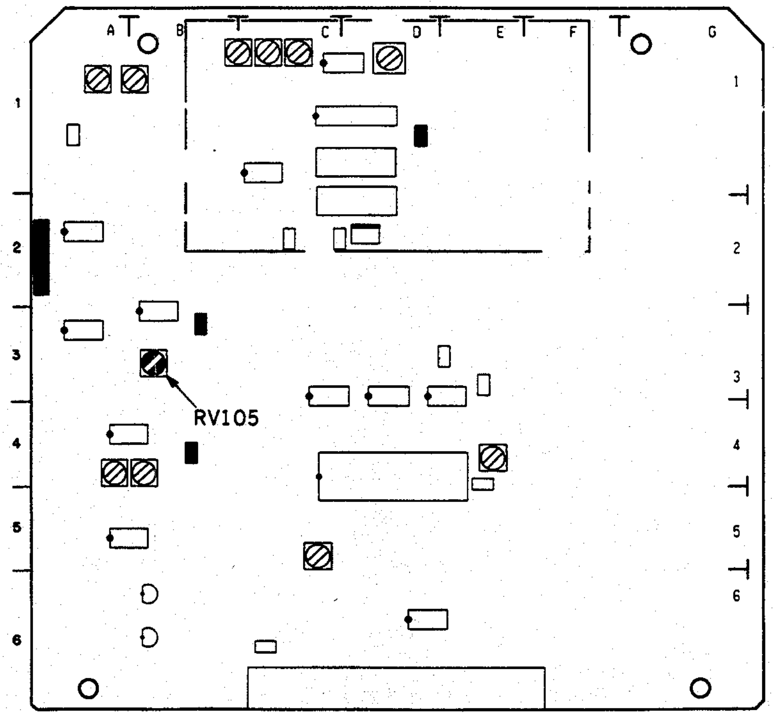
Before the adjustment, Audio Head Phase Adjustment in Section 6-8 should be completed.

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Connect the CH1 probe of the oscilloscope to CH1 AUDIO OUT connector. (HOT side to 2 pin, and GND side to 3 pin) • Connect the CH2 probe of the oscilloscope to CH2 AUDIO OUT connector. (HOT side to 2 pin, and GND side to 3 pin) • Set the oscilloscope to X-Y mode. • Write down the setting of SW101 bit1 through bit4 (C-1) on the AU-148 and AU-149 boards.  • Set SW101 on the AU-148 board and SW101 on the AU-149 board to all OFF.  • Play back the 10 kHz, −10 VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A.	CH1 AUDIO OUT (CH1 probe: X axis) CH2 AUDIO OUT (CH2 probe: Y axis) Lissajous waveform of the oscilloscope  The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less) If the specification is not satisfied, perform Audio Head Phase Adjustment in Section 6-8.	(Check) CONNECTION 2
Step 2 • Extend the AU-149 board by extention board. • Reset SW101 on the AU-149 board to the memorized position in Step 1.  • Play back the 10 kHz, −10 VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A.	 The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less)	❶ RV105/AU-149 (B-3)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 3 • Disconnect the extention board. • Play back the 10 kHz, −10 VU signal portion (3: 00—4: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A. **NOTE:** Confirm that SW101 on the AU-148 and AU-149 boards are set to the memorized position in Step 1. 	 The lissajous waveform should point from the bottom-left to the top-right corner area. A≦0.5 cm (±5° or less) If the specification is not satisfied, perform CH-1 Audio PB Phase Adjustment in section 10-1-4.	(Check)

APPLICATION: 10-1-6.

AU-148/149 board



10-2. SEARCH MODE AUDIO PB LEVEL CHECK

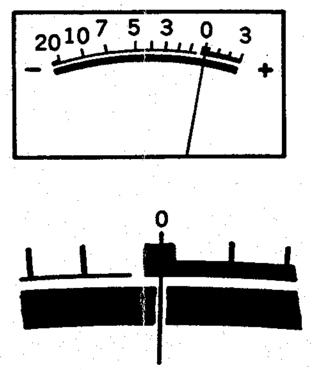
10-2-1. CH-1 Search Mode Audio OXIDE/METAL PB Level Check

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Rewind the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS and 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 30) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS (10 times normal speed).	CH1 AUDIO OUT +10.0 dBm or less	(Check) CONNECTION 1

10-2-2. CH-2 Search Mode Audio OXIDE/METAL PB Level Check

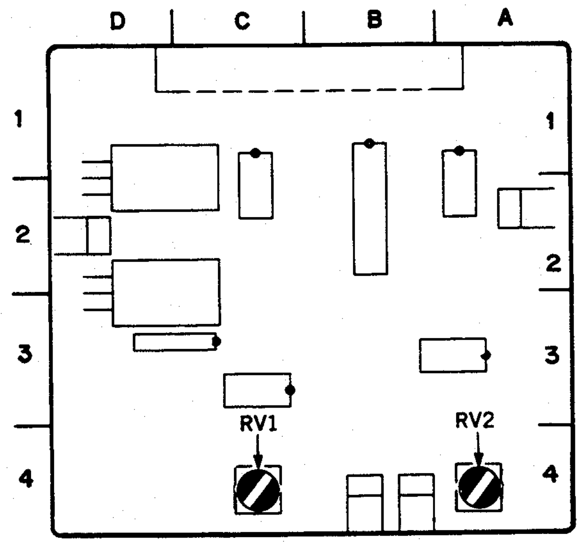
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Rewind the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS and 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 30) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS (10 times normal speed).	CH2 AUDIO OUT +10.0 dBm or less	(Check) CONNECTION 1

10-3. AUDIO METER ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.	CH1/CH2 VU METER  The pointer should indicate zero. Correct the adjustment position of the pointer by using correction value which is listed on the label of the alignment tape.	CH1 ⊘ RV1/MA-44 (C-4) CH2 ⊘ RV2/MA-44 (A-4) CONNECTION 1

APPLICATION : 10-3.

MA-44 board



10-4. AUDIO MONITOR OUT LEVEL CHECK

10-4-1. CH-1 Audio Monitor Out Level Check

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• AUDIO MONITOR switch (control panel): MIX • Pull the CH1 PB level control on the control panel, then fully turn it counterclockwise. (MIN) • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0 : 00—2 : 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.	AUDIO MONITOR OUT +4.0±0.5 dBm	(Check)

10-4-2. CH-2 Audio Monitor Out Level Check

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• AUDIO MONITOR switch (control panel): MIX • Pull the CH2 PB level control on the control panel, then fully turn it counterclockwise. (MIN) • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0 : 00—2 : 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1B PS.	AUDIO MONITOR OUT +4.0±0.5 dBm	(Check)

10-5. HEADPHONES LEVEL CHECK

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Connect a stereo phone jack between the HEADPHONES jack on a control panel and a audio level meter. (terminated by 8 Ω) • Turn the HEADPHONES volume level control on a control panel counterclockwise fully (MIN). • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.	HEADPHONES connector OUT (CH1/CH2) −70 dBu or less	(Check)
Step 2 • Turn the HEADPHONES volume level control clockwise fully (MAX). • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.	HEADPHONES connector OUT (CH1/CH2) −16±2 dBu	(Check)
Step 3 • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.	HEADPHONES connector OUT (CH1/CH2) CH1: −16±2 dBu CH2: −60 dBu or less	(Check)
Step 4 • AUDIO MONITOR select switch (control panel): CH1 • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS.	HEADPHONES connector OUT (CH1/CH2) CH1/CH2 −16±2 dBu	(Check)
Step 5 • AUDIO MONITOR select switch (control panel): CH2 • Play back the 1 kHz, 0 VU signal portion (0: 00—2: 55) of the alignment tape CR8-1A PS. • After adjustment is completed, set the AUDIO MONITOR select switch to MIX, and set the PB level controls to mechanical center.	HEADPHONES connector OUT (CH1/CH2) CH1/CH2 −70 dBu or less	(Check)

VIDEO

SECTION 11
VIDEO SYSTEM ALIGNMENT

[Equipment Required]

- *Oscilloscope (TEKTRONIX 2445 or equivalent)*
- Signal Generator
  Composite SG (TEKTRONIX 1411 or equivalent)
- Waveform Monitor
  Component (TEKTRONIX WFM300/WFM300A/1781R or equivalent)
  Composite (TEKTRONIX 1481C/1751/1781R or equivalent)
- Spectrum Analyzer (ADVANTEST R4131 B/D or equivalent)
- Picture Monitor
- Frequency Counter
- Blank Tape (oxide) BCT-20G
- Blank Tape (metal) BCT-20M

NOTE: "Blank Tape" indicates a cassette tape on which no video/audio signals are recorded.

- Alignment Tape CR5-2A PS (part No. 8-960-098-44)

Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK
0: 00 3: 00	75% Color Bars
3: 00 6: 00	60% Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1.0,2.0,3.0,4.1,4.5 MHz C: 0.2,0.5,1.0,1.5,2.0 MHz
6: 00 9: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T
9: 00 11 : 00	Pulse & Bar
11 : 00 13: 00	Quad Phase
13: 00 15: 00	C-Monoscope Switching position is shifted.

- Alignment Tape CR5-1B PS (Part No. 8-960-096-91)
  Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK	AFM
0: 00	RF Sweep Marker 1,2,4,6,8,10,12 MHz	No-Signal
2: 00	60% H Sweep (CTDM) Marker 0.5,1,2,3,4,5 MHz	
5: 00	Pulse & Bar (CTDM)	
8: 00	Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1,2,4.5,5.5 MHz C: 0.2, 0.5,1,1.5,2 MHz	
11: 00	Pulse & Bar	
14: 00	100% Color Bars	400 Hz Sine Wave 25 kHz Deviation
16: 30		75 kHz Deviation
17: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T	No-Signal
19: 00	Line 17A	
22: 00	Quad Phase	
24: 00	50% Flat Field	
26: 00	100% Color Bars with Dropout	
28: 00	Composite H Sweep with VISC	
30: 00		

[Switch/Setup menu Setting]

This setting should not be changed in position unless otherwise specified.

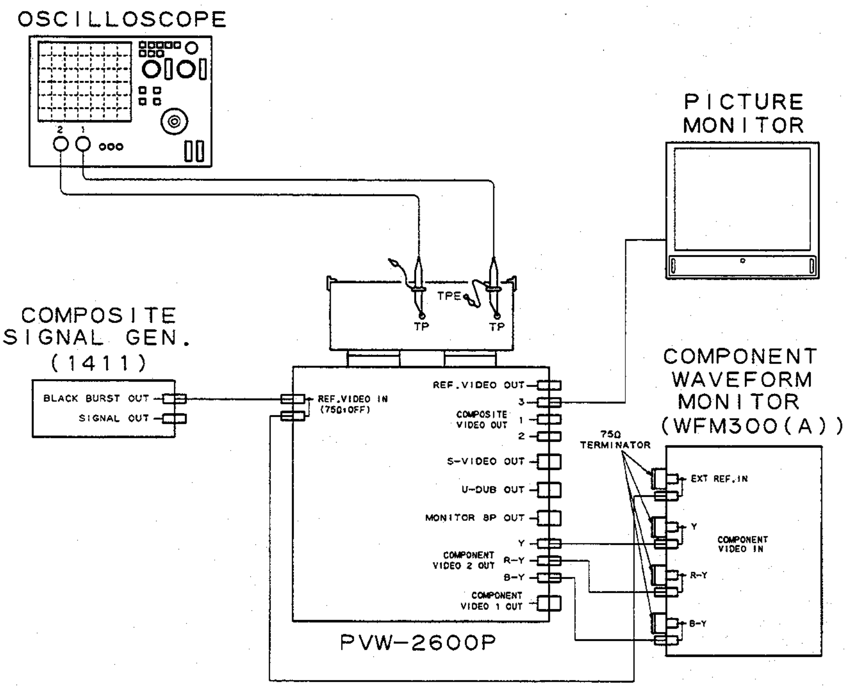
<Control Panel>
upper
LOCAL/REMOTE: LOCAL
lower
CTL/TC/U-BIT: TC

<Sub Control Panel>
CHARACTER: ON
TC: LTC
CAPSTAN LOCK: 8 FD
TBC CONTROL: LOCAL
VIDEO: PRESET
CHROMA: PRESET
SET UP: PRESET
Y/C DELAY: PRESET

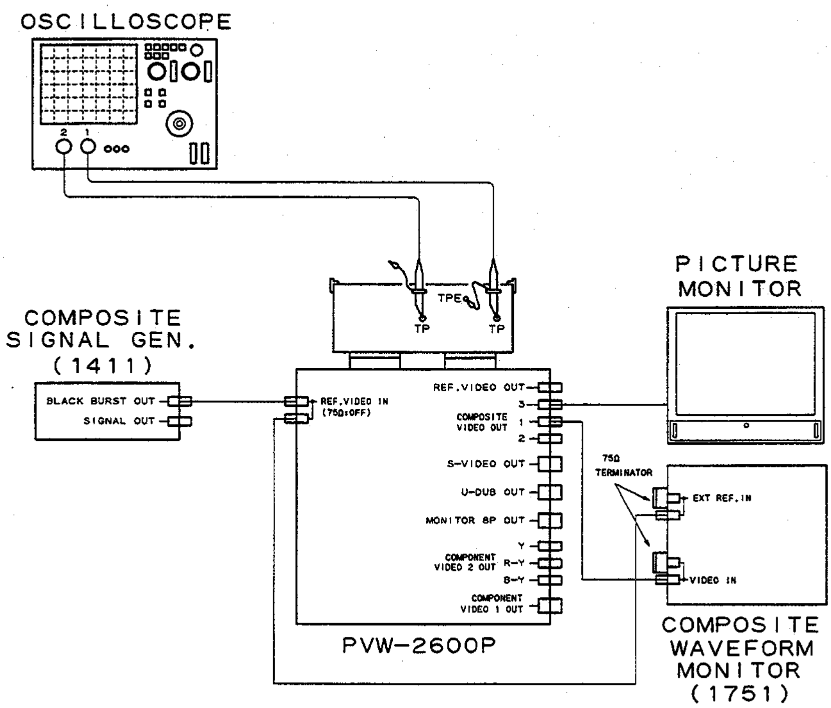
[Connection]

Connect some equipment as following unless otherwise specified.

CONNECTION 1 SG 1411/Waveform Monitor WFM-300 (A)/Oscilloscope/Picture Monitor


OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
PICTURE MONITOR
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
3
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
Y
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P
COMPONENT WAVEFORM MONITOR (WFM300(A))
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
Y
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO IN

CONNECTION 2 SG1411/Waveform Monitor1751/Oscilloscope/Picture Monitor

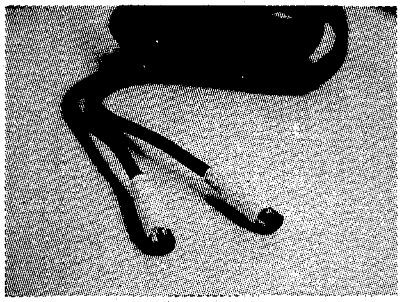

OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
TPE
TP
TP
PICTURE MONITOR
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
VIDEO IN
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

[Preparations and Notes on Alignment]

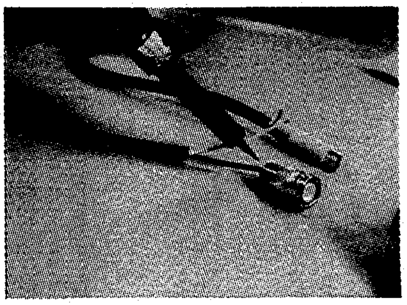
Making the cable for measuring S-VIDEO input/output level

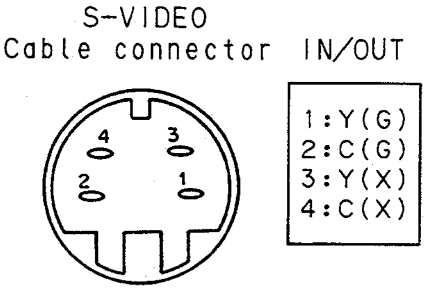
S-terminal (Y/C) convert cable (BNC x 2) is necessary to measuring S-VIDEO input/output level.

Preparation: S-S terminal connection cable about 5 meters in length (standard product) (SONY YC-50KV)

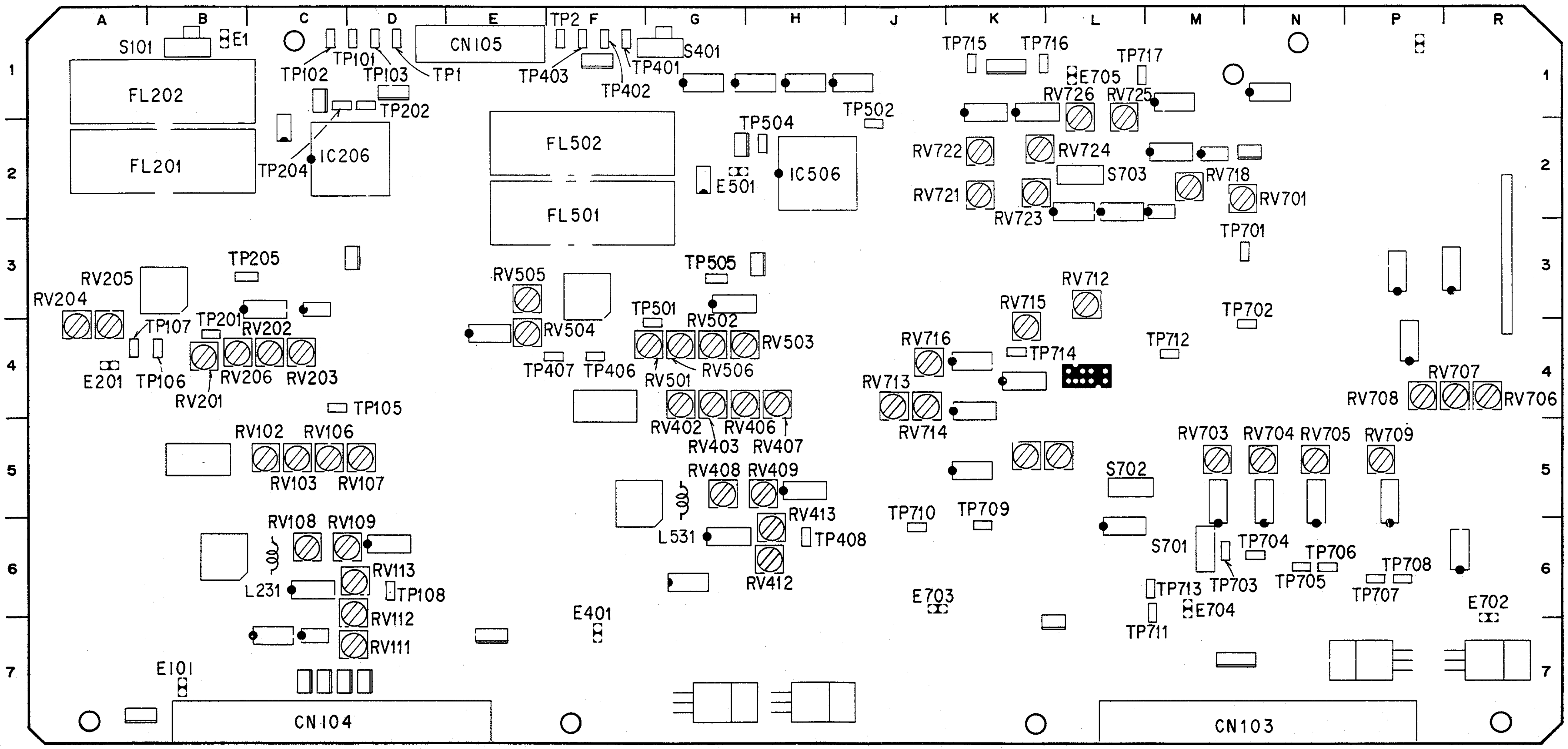


1. Cut the cable in half.
2. Tear and strip the cover of the cable with a cutter.
3. Strip the cover of the shield wire with a nipper.
4. Check the Y/C core wire with a tester.
5. Solder the BNC terminal for Y signal to the shield wire of Y signal in the cable and the BNC terminal for C signal to the shield wire of C signal. (Check the continuity with a tester.)

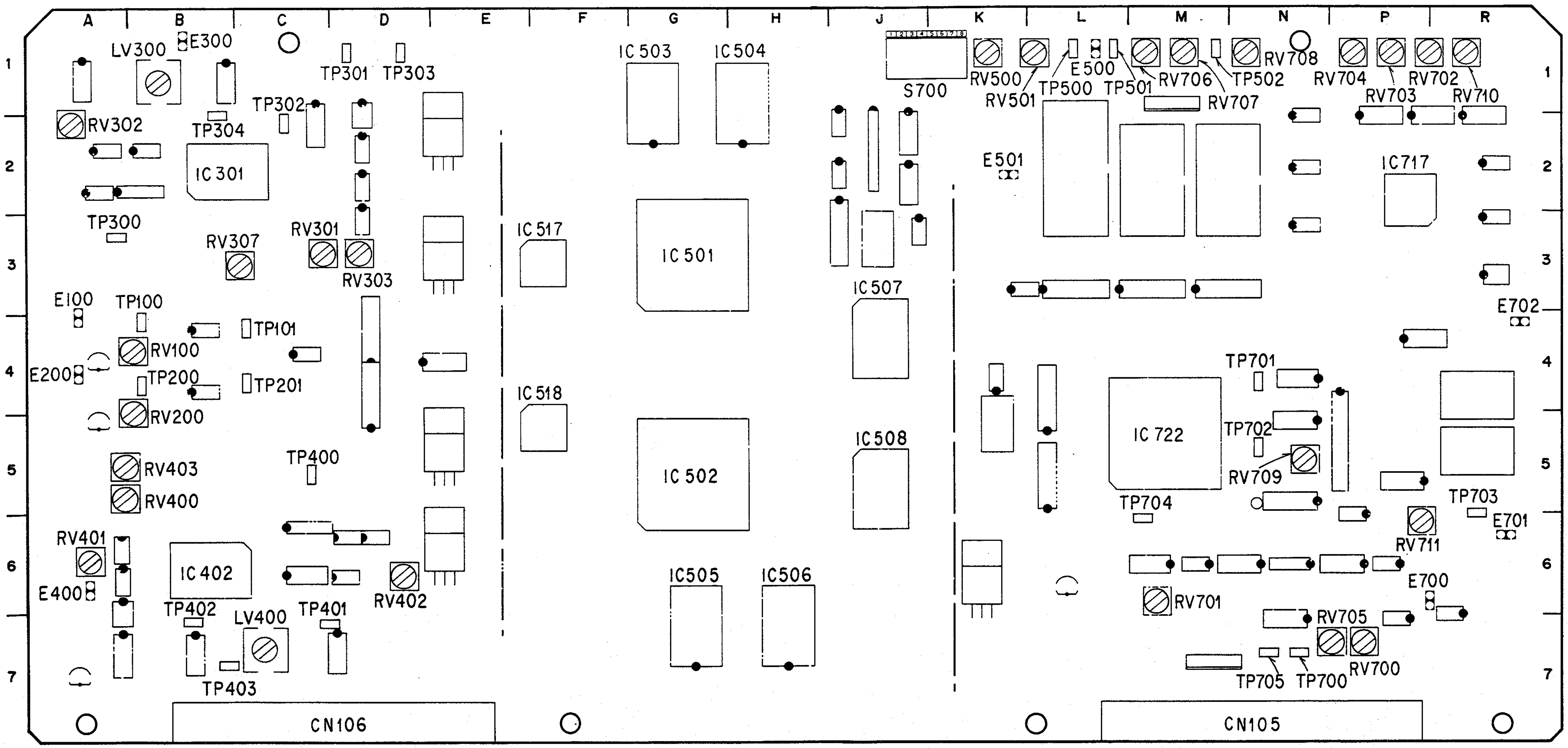



S-VIDEO
Cable connector IN/OUT
4
3
2
1
1:Y(G)
2:C(G)
3:Y(X)
4:C(X)

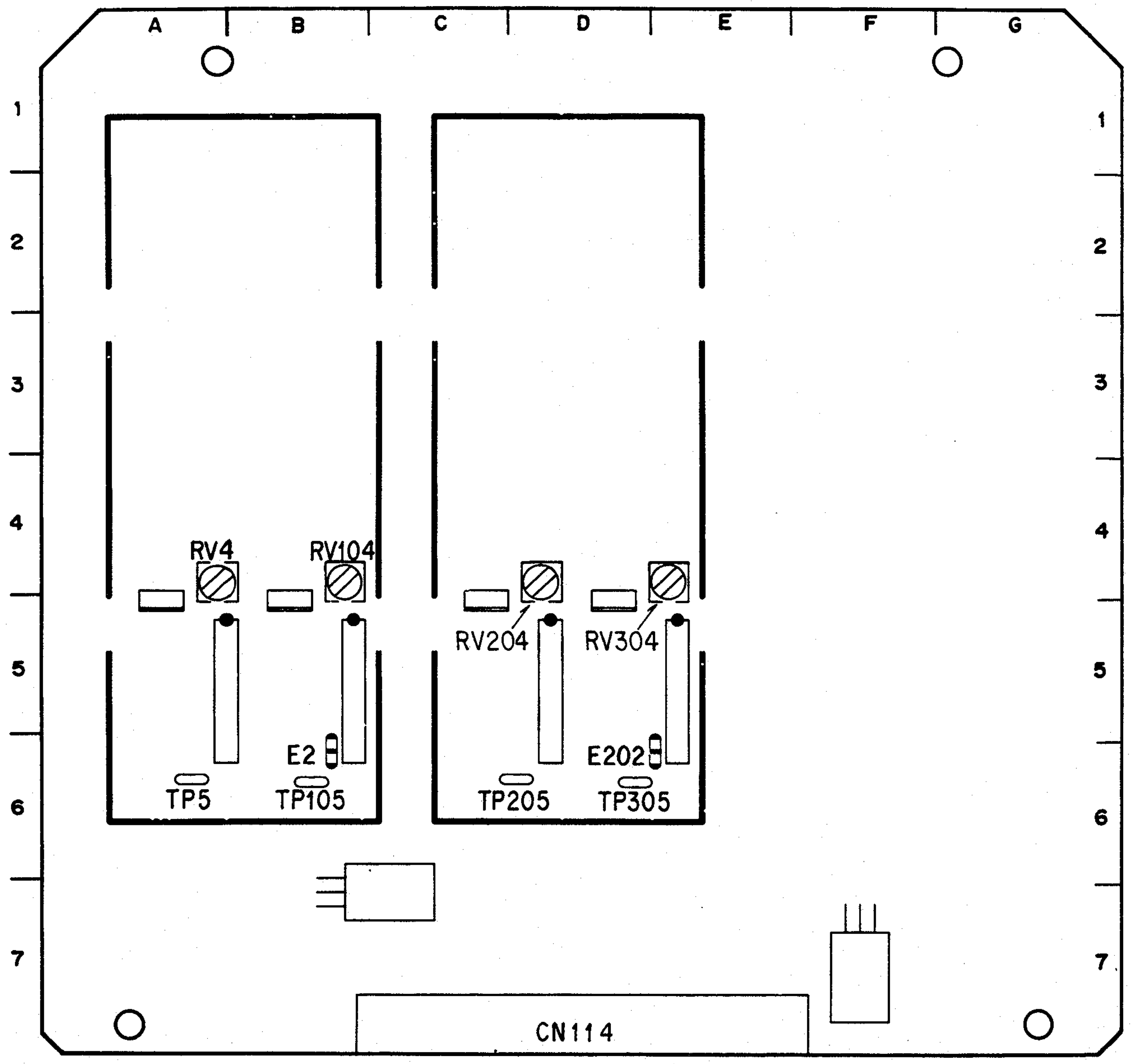
VP-33 board (A side)


A
B
C
D
E
TP2 F
G
H
J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
S101
E1
TP102
TP101
TP103
TP1
CN105
TP403
TP402
TP401
S401
FL202
FL201
TP202
TP204
IC206
FL502
FL501
TP504
E501
IC506
TP502
TP715
TP716
TP717
E705
RV726
RV725
RV722
RV724
S703
RV721
RV723
RV718
RV701
TP701
TP205
RV205
RV204
TP107
TP201
RV202
E201
TP106
RV206
RV203
RV201
TP105
RV505
RV504
TP501
RV502
RV503
TP505
TP407
TP406
RV501
RV506
RV712
RV715
TP714
RV716
RV713
RV714
TP702
TP712
RV707
RV708
RV706
RV402
RV406
RV403
RV407
RV102
RV106
RV103
RV107
RV408
RV409
RV413
TP408
L531
RV412
RV108
RV109
RV113
TP108
L231
RV112
RV111
RV703
RV704
RV705
RV709
S702
TP710
TP709
S701
TP704
TP706
TP708
TP713
TP703
TP705
TP707
E703
E704
E702
TP711
E401
E101
CN104
CN103

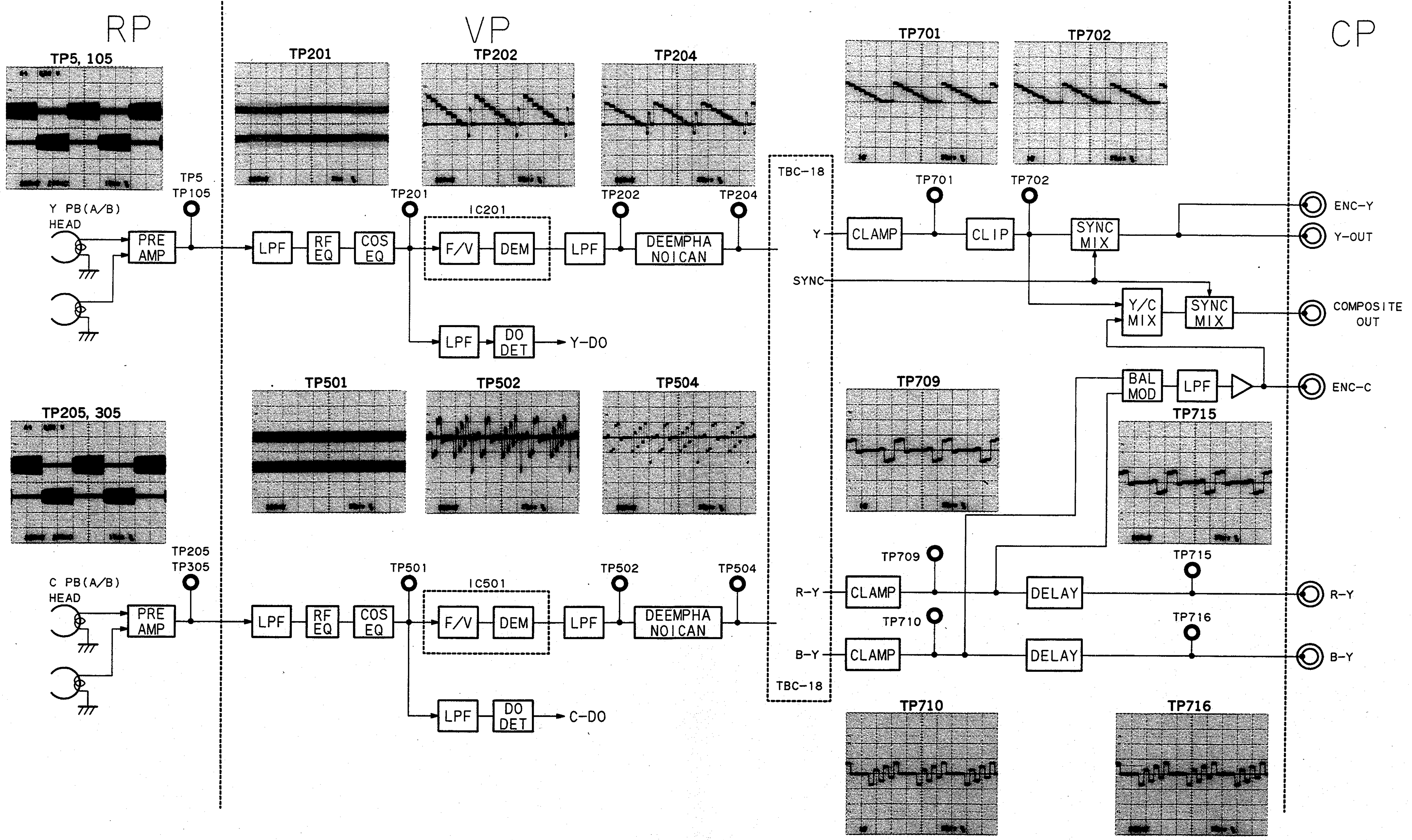
TBC-18 board (A side)


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
LV300
E300
TP301
TP303
IC503
IC504
S700
RV500
RV501
TP500
E500
TP501
RV706
RV707
TP502
RV708
RV704
RV702
RV703
RV710
RV302
TP304
TP302
IC301
TP300
RV307
RV301
RV303
IC517
IC501
E501
IC717
IC507
E702
E100
TP100
TP101
RV100
E200
TP200
TP201
RV200
IC518
IC502
IC508
TP701
IC722
TP702
RV709
TP704
TP703
E701
RV711
RV403
RV400
TP400
RV401
E400
IC402
TP402
LV400
TP401
TP403
RV402
IC505
IC506
RV701
E700
RV705
RV700
TP705
TP700
CN106
CN105

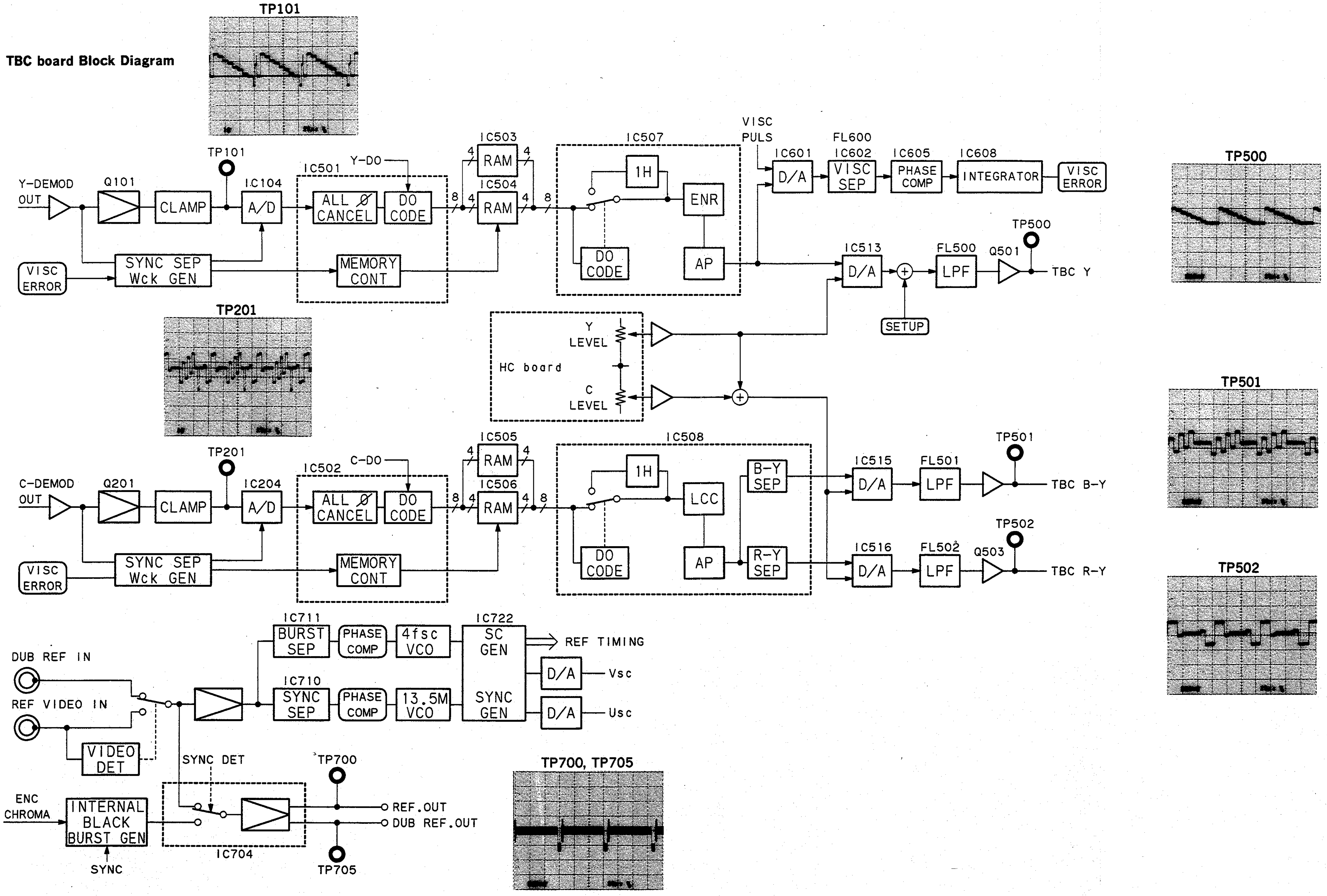
RP-57 board (A side)


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV4
RV104
RV204
RV304
E2
E202
TP5
TP105
TP205
TP305
CN114

VP-33 board Block Diagram

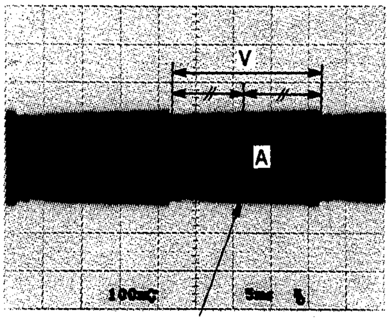

RP
VP
CP
TP5, 105
TP201
TP202
TP204
TP701
TP702
TP5
TP105
Y PB(A/B)
HEAD
PRE AMP
LPF
RF EQ
COS EQ
TP201
IC201
F/V
DEM
LPF
TP202
DEEMPHA NOICAN
TP204
TBC-18
Y
CLAMP
TP701
CLIP
TP702
SYNC MIX
ENC-Y
Y-OUT
SYNC
Y/C MIX
SYNC MIX
COMPOSITE OUT
LPF
DO DET
Y-DO
BAL MOD
LPF
ENC-C
TP501
TP502
TP504
TP709
TP715
TP205, 305
TP205
TP305
C PB(A/B)
HEAD
PRE AMP
LPF
RF EQ
COS EQ
TP501
IC501
F/V
DEM
LPF
TP502
DEEMPHA NOICAN
TP504
TP709
TP715
R-Y
CLAMP
DELAY
R-Y
TP710
TP716
B-Y
CLAMP
DELAY
B-Y
TBC-18
LPF
DO DET
C-DO
TP710
TP716

TBC board Block Diagram

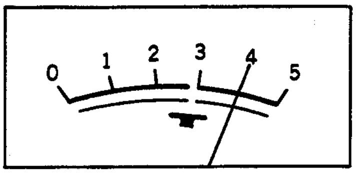

TP101
Y-DEMOD OUT
Q101
CLAMP
TP101
IC104
A/D
IC501
Y-DO
ALL Ø CANCEL
DO CODE
VISC ERROR
SYNC SEP Wck GEN
MEMORY CONT
IC503
RAM
IC504
RAM
4
8
IC507
1H
ENR
DO CODE
AP
VISC PULS
IC601
D/A
FL600
IC602
VISC SEP
IC605
PHASE COMP
IC608
INTEGRATOR
VISC ERROR
TP500
IC513
D/A
SETUP
FL500
LPF
Q501
TBC Y
TP201
HC board
Y LEVEL
C LEVEL
C-DEMOD OUT
Q201
CLAMP
TP201
IC204
A/D
IC502
C-DO
ALL Ø CANCEL
DO CODE
VISC ERROR
SYNC SEP Wck GEN
MEMORY CONT
IC505
RAM
IC506
RAM
IC508
1H
LCC
DO CODE
AP
B-Y SEP
R-Y SEP
IC515
D/A
FL501
LPF
TP501
TBC B-Y
IC516
D/A
FL502
LPF
Q503
TP502
TBC R-Y
TP501
TP502
DUB REF IN
REF VIDEO IN
VIDEO DET
IC711
BURST SEP
PHASE COMP
4fsc VCO
IC710
SYNC SEP
PHASE COMP
13.5M VCO
IC722
SC GEN
SYNC GEN
REF TIMING
D/A
Vsc
D/A
Usc
SYNC DET
TP700
REF.OUT
DUB REF.OUT
TP705
IC704
ENC CHROMA
INTERNAL BLACK BURST GEN
SYNC
TP700, TP705

11-1. VP BOARD (RF, DM SYSTEM) ADJUSTMENT

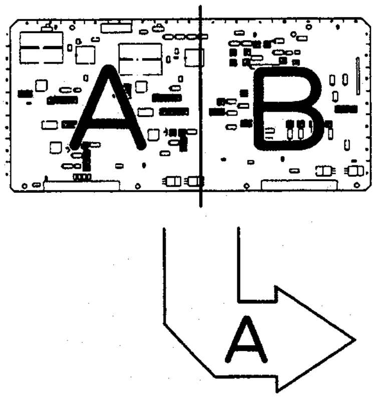
11-1-1. Y PB RF Level Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Turn the tracking control on a control panel so that the pointer of the RF meter indicates the maximum RF level. **NOTE :** S101/VP-33 (B-1): ON (S101: Y RF AGC SW)	TP106/VP-33 (B-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  center of V period A=200±10 mV p-p	⊘ RV109/VP-33 (D-6) TRIG: TP1/VP-33 (D-1) CONNECTION 1

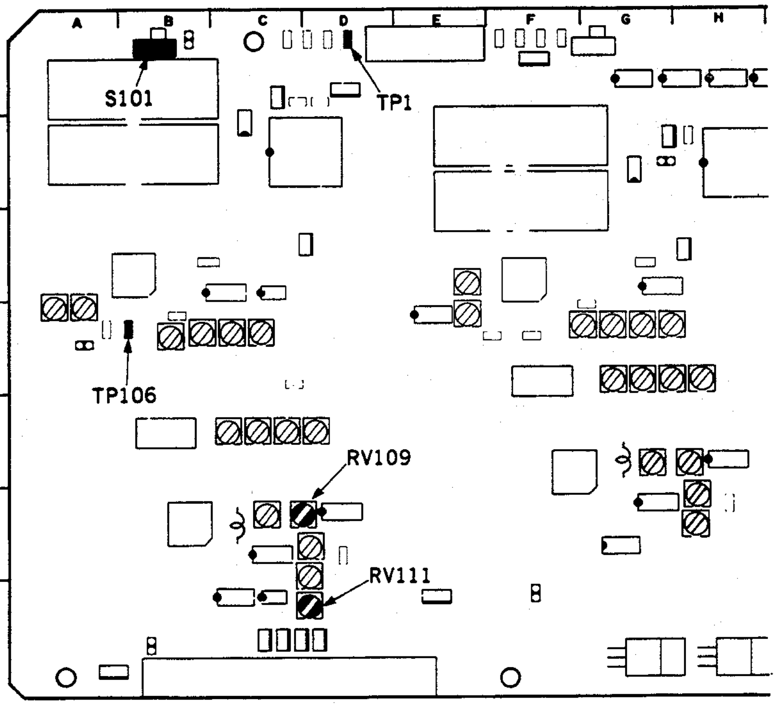
11-1-2. RF Meter Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Turn the tracking control on a control panel so that the pointer of the RF meter indicates the maximum RF level.	RF meter/control panel  The pointer of the meter should indicate 4.	⊘ RV111/VP-33 (D-7) CONNECTION 1

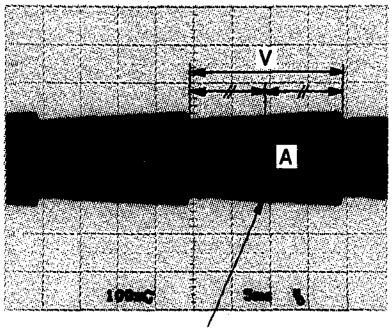
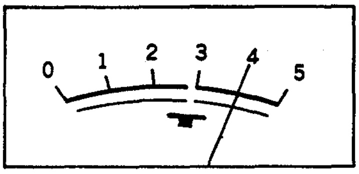
VP-33 board



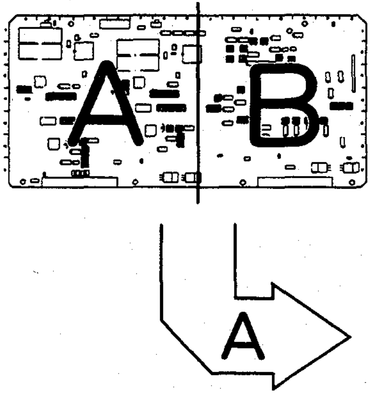
APPLICATION : 11-1-1.
11-1-2.



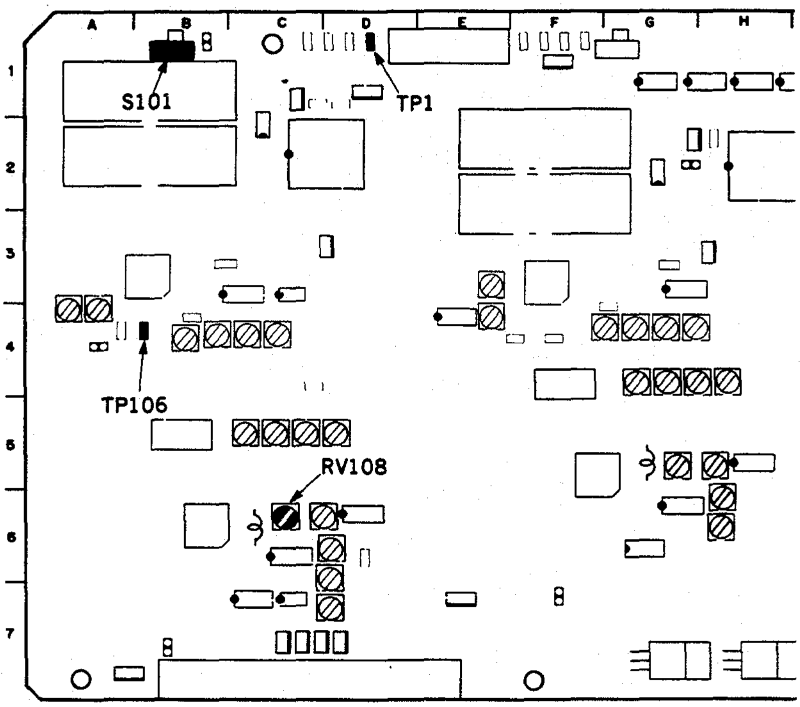
11-1-3. Y PB RF Level Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS. • Turn the tracking control on a control panel so that the pointer of the RF meter indicates the maximum RF level.	TP106/VP-33 (B-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  center of V period A=200±10 mV p-p	● RV108/VP-33 (C-6) TRIG: TP1/VP-33 (D-1) CONNECTION 1
NOTE : S101/VP-33 (B-1): ON (S101 : Y RF AGC SW)	RF meter/control panel  The pointer of the meter should indicate "$4.0^{+0.5}_{-1.0}$".	(Check)

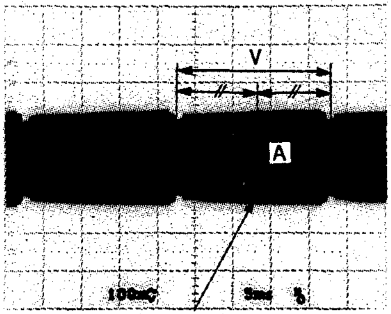
VP-33 board



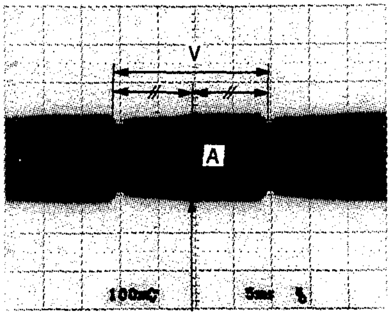
APPLICATION : 11-1-3.



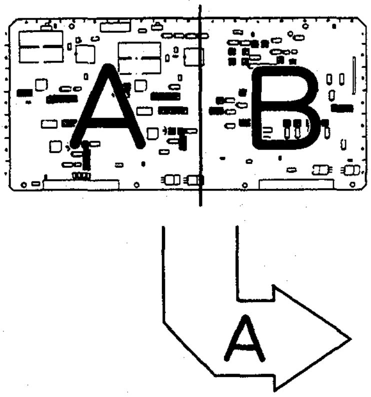
11-1-4. C PB RF Level Adjustment (Metal)

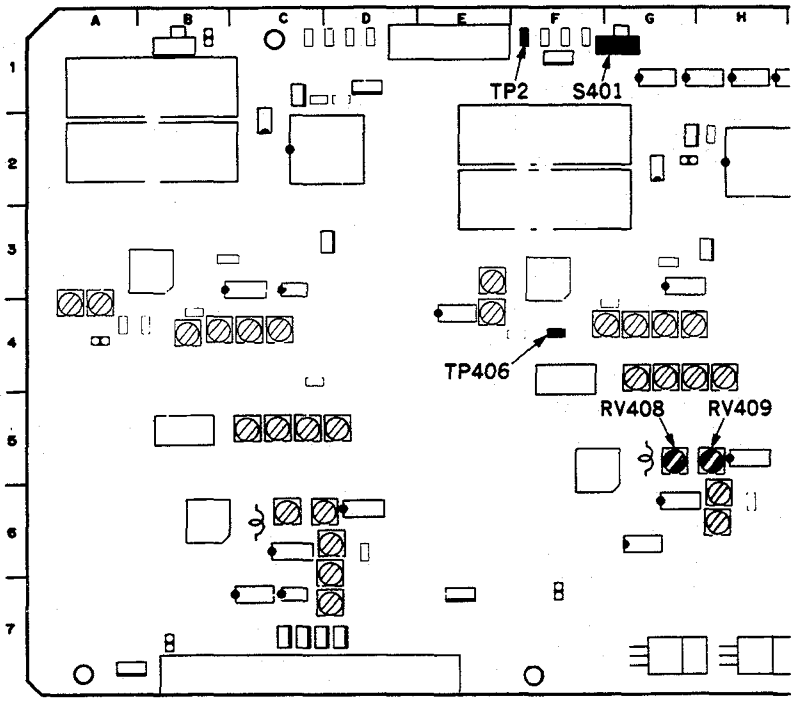
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Turn the tracking control on a control panel so that the pointer of the RF meter indicates the maximum RF level. **NOTE** : S401/VP-33 (G-1): ON (S401: C RF AGC SW)	TP406/VP-33 (F-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  center of V period A=200±10 mV p-p	⊘ RV409/VP-33 (H-5) TRIG: TP2/VP-33 (F-1) CONNECTION 1

11-1-5. C PB RF Level Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS. • Turn the tracking control on a control panel so that the pointer of the RF meter indicates the maximum RF level. **NOTE** : S401/VP-33 (G-1): ON (S401: C RF AGC SW)	TP406/VP-33 (F-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  center of V period A=200±10 mV p-p	⊘ RV408/VP-33 (G-5) TRIG: TP2/VP-33 (F-1) CONNECTION 1

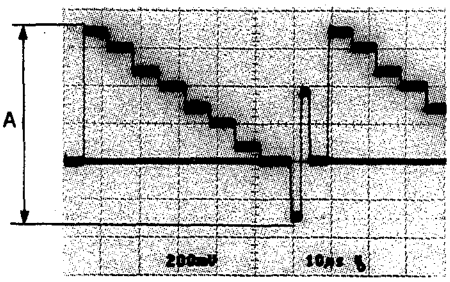
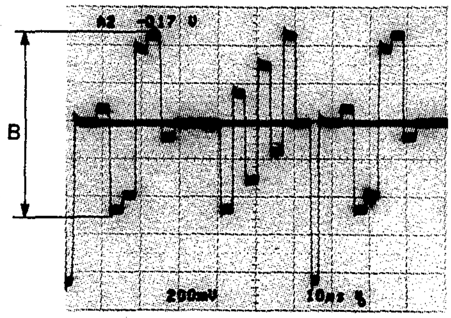
VP-33 board



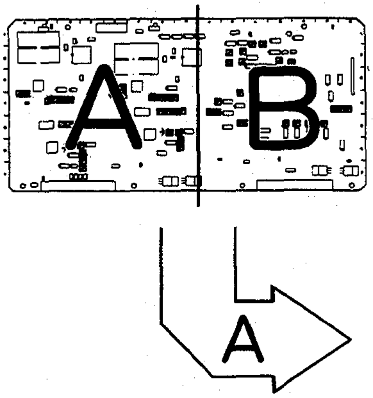


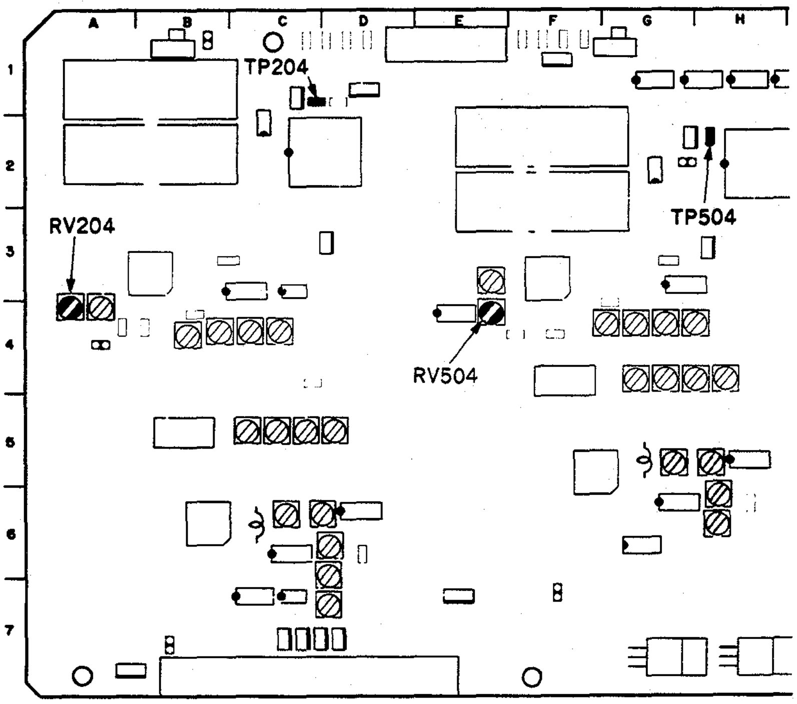
APPLICATION: 11-1-4.
11-1-5.

11-1-6. Y and C Demodulator Gain Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP204/VP-33 (C-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=1.0±0.02 V p-p	(A) (Y METAL DM GAIN) ⊘RV204/VP-33 (A-4) TRIG: TP204/VP-33 (C-1) CONNECTION 1
	TP504/VP-33 (H-2) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=933±20 mV p-p	(B) (C DM GAIN) ⊘RV504/VP-33 (E-3) TRIG: TP504/VP-33 (H-2) CONNECTION 1

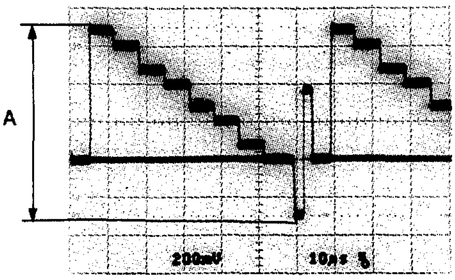
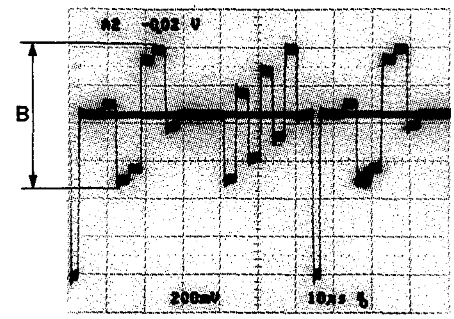
VP-33 board



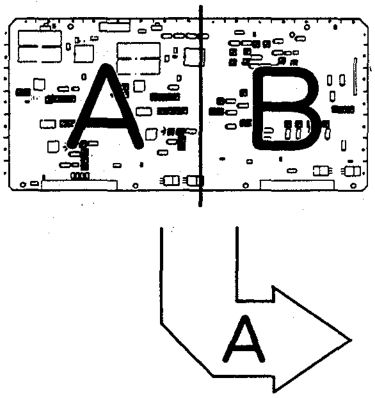


APPLICATION: 11-1-6.

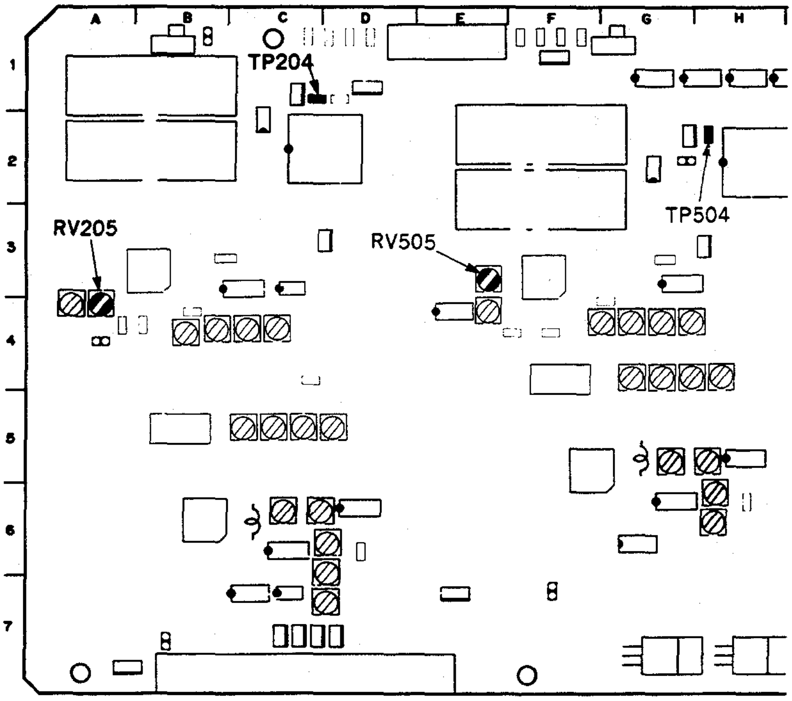
11-1-7. Y/C Demodulator Gain Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	TP204/VP-33 (C-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=1.00±0.02 V p-p	(A) (Y OXIDE DM GAIN) ⊘RV205/VP-33 (A-4) TRIG: TP1/VP-33 (D-1) CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	TP504/VP-33 (H-2) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=700±20 mV p-p	(B) (C OXIDE DM GAIN) ⊘RV505/VP-33 (E-3) TRIG: TP504/VP-33 (H-2) CONNECTION 1

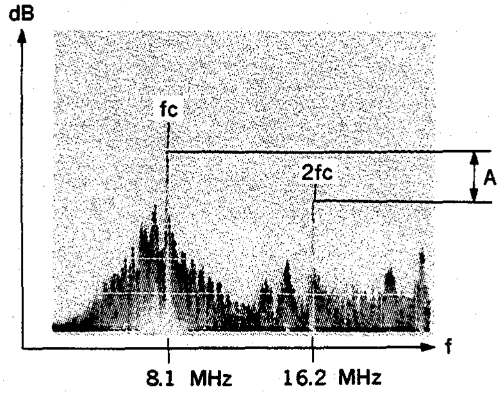
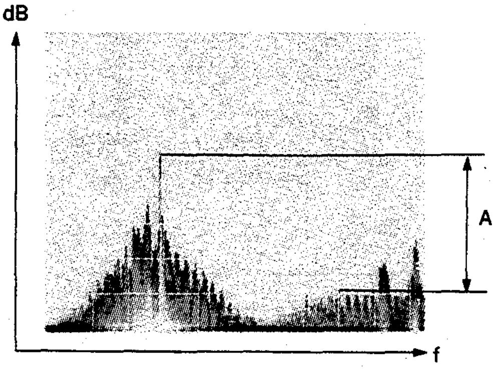
VP-33 board



APPLICATION : 11-1-7.

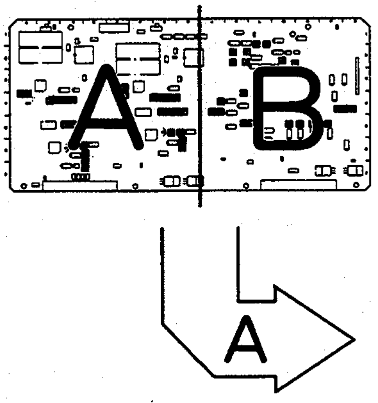


11-1-8. Y and C Limiter Balance Adjustment

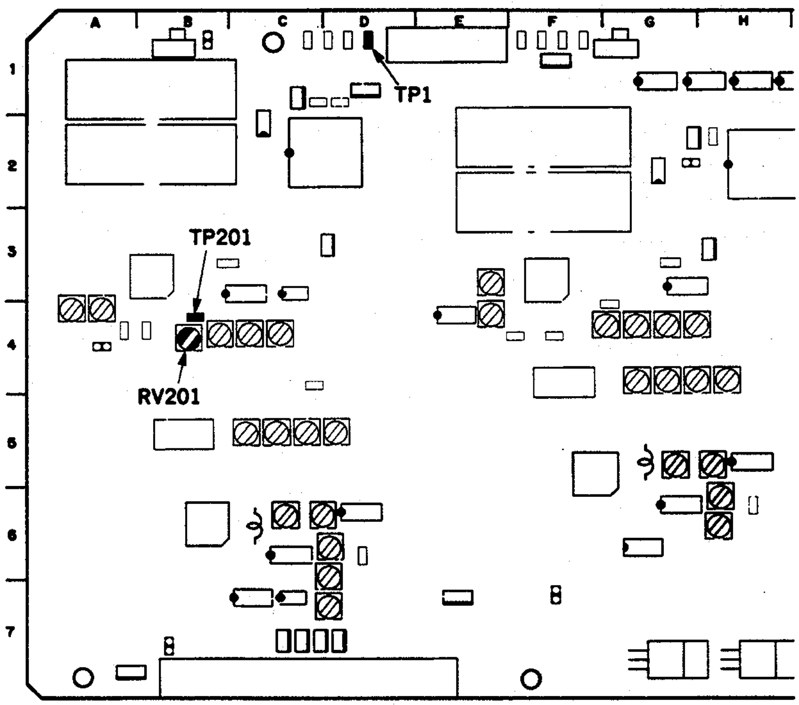
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a spectrum analyzer to OUTPUT terminal of a oscilloscope.	TP201/VP-33 (B-4) Picture of the spectrum analyzer Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  A≧35 dB	(A) (Y LIMITER BALANCE) ●RV201/VP-33 (B-4) TRIG: TP1/VP-33 (D-1)

Continues to the next page.

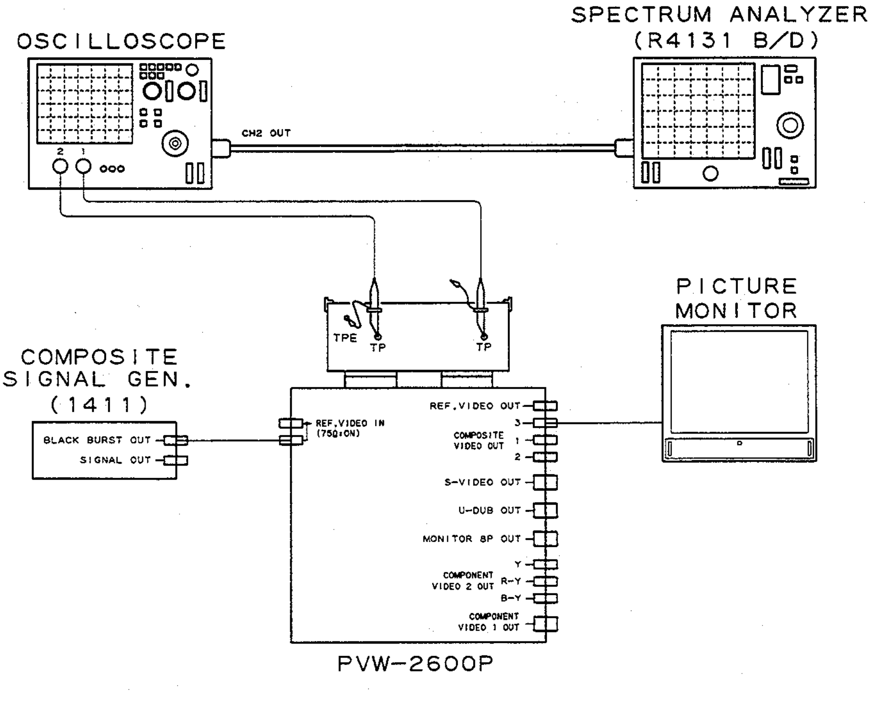
VP-33 board



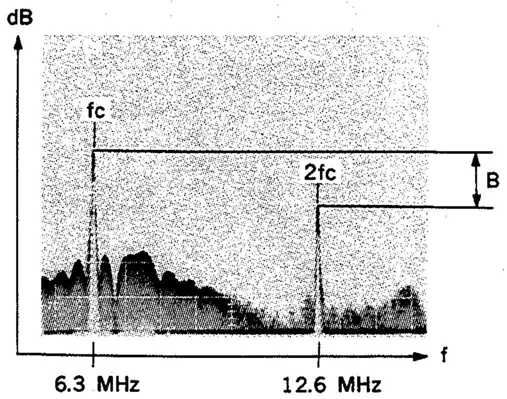
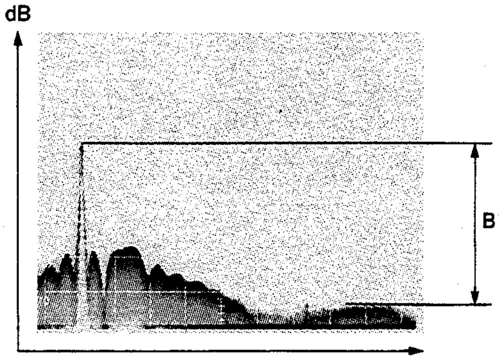
APPLICATION : 11-1-8.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP1
TP201
RV201

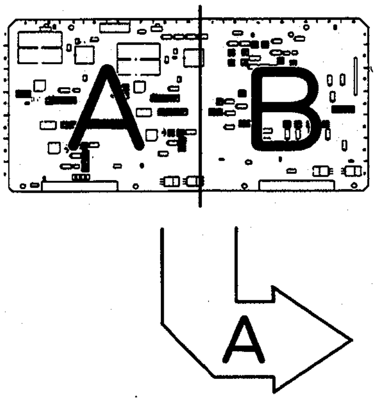
[CONNECTION]


OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
CH2 OUT
SPECTRUM ANALYZER
(R4131 B/D)
PICTURE
MONITOR
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE
SIGNAL GEN.
(1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN
(75Ω:ON)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE
VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT
VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT
VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P

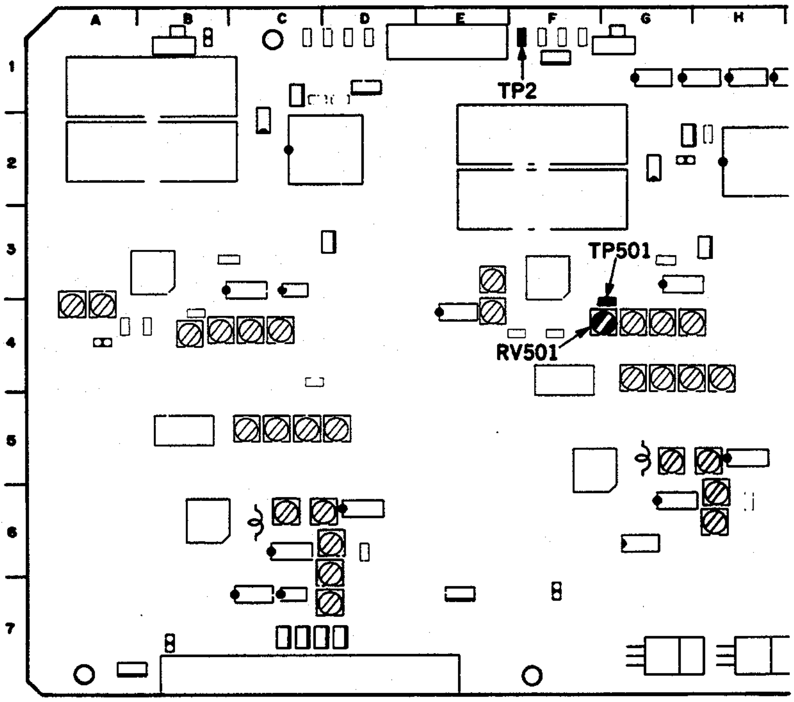
11-1-8. Y and C Limiter Balance Adjustment (Continued)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a spectrum analyzer to OUTPUT terminal of a oscilloscope.	TP501/VP-33 (G-4) Picture of the spectrum analyzer Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  B≧40 dB	(B) (C LIMITER BALANCE) ❶RV501/VP-33 (G-4) TRIG: TP2/VP-33 (F-1)

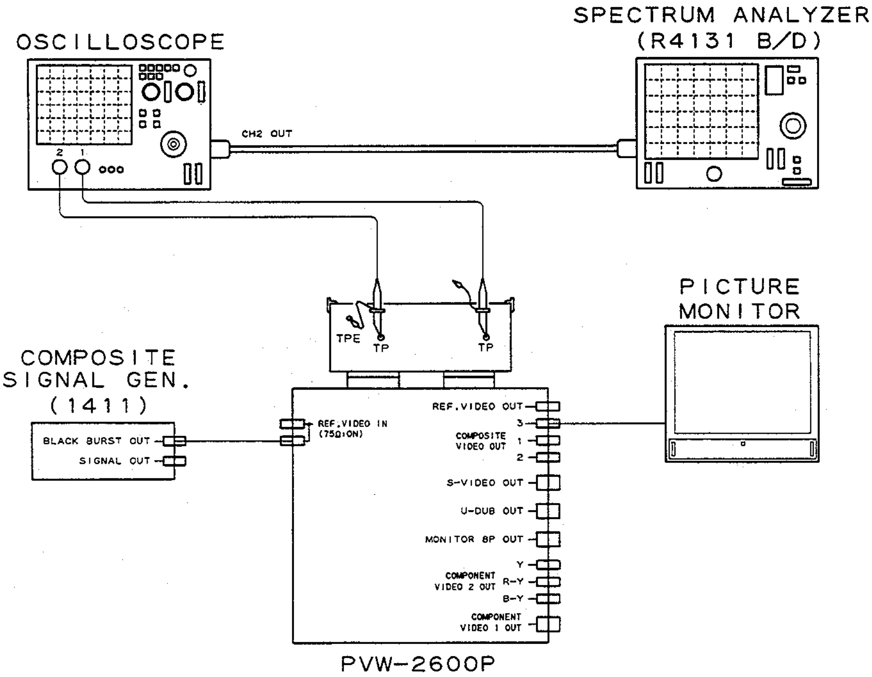
VP-33 board



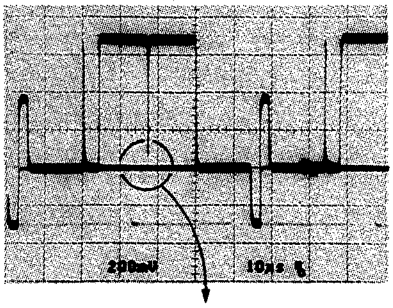
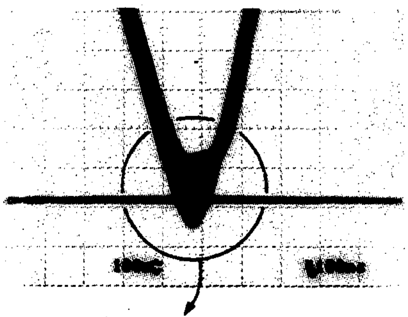
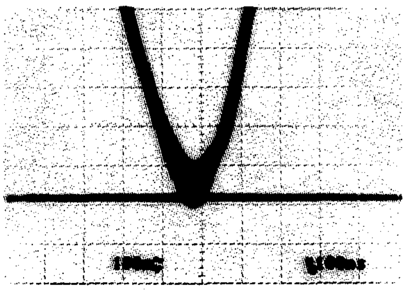
APPLICATION : 11-1-8.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP2
TP501
RV501

[CONNECTION]

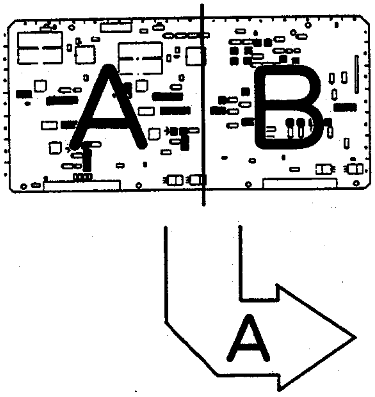

OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
CH2 OUT
SPECTRUM ANALYZER
(R4131 B/D)
PICTURE
MONITOR
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE
SIGNAL GEN.
(1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN
(75Ω:ON)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE
VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT
VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT
VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P

11-1-9. Y and C Demodulator Balance Adjustment

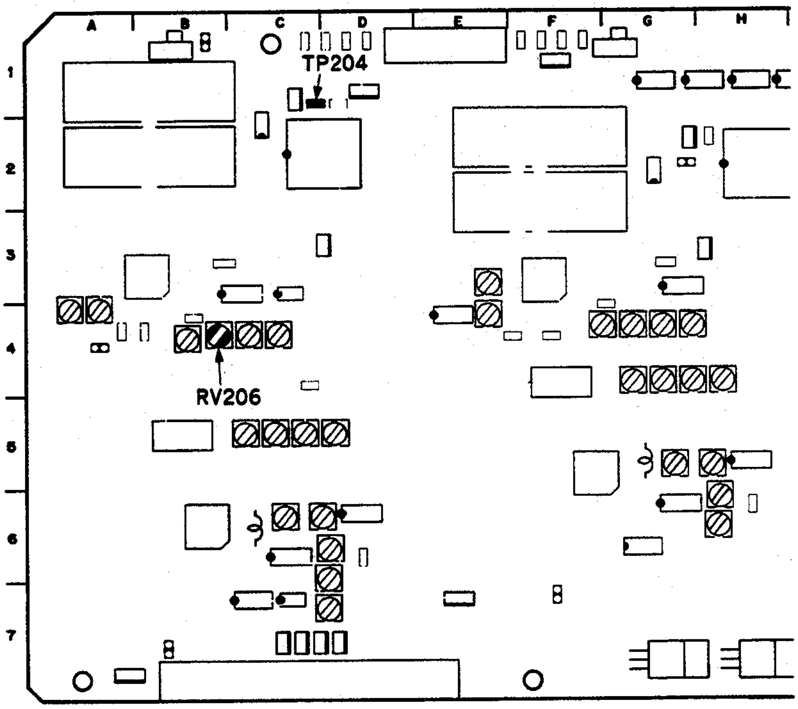
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the pulse & bar signal portion (5:00—8:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP204/VP-33 (C-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Before adjustment  Minimize the moire. ⇩ After adjustment 	(A) (Y DEMOD BALANCE) ⊘ RV206/VP-33 (B-4) TRIG: TP300/TBC-18 (A-3) CONNECTION 1

Continues to the next page.

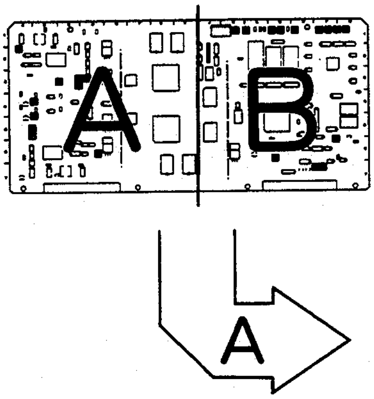
VP-33 board



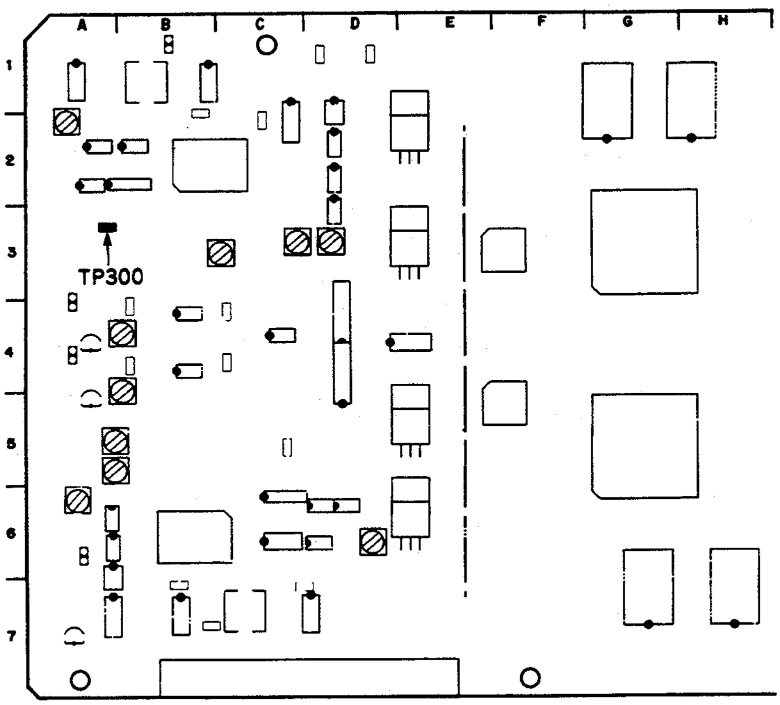
APPLICATION : 11-1-9.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP204
RV206

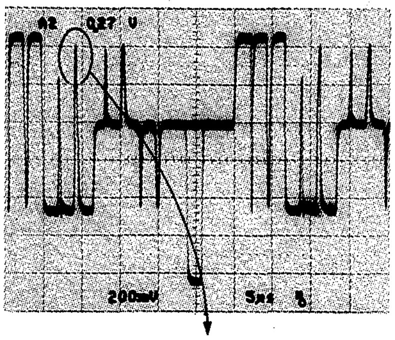
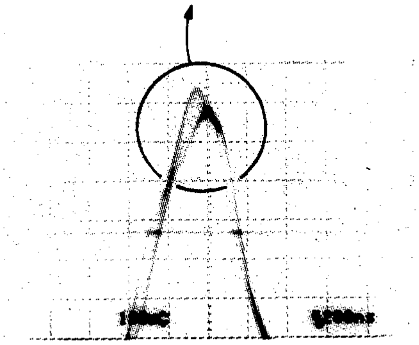
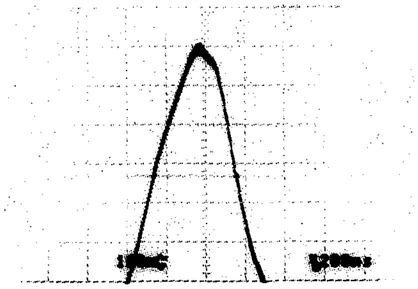
TBC-18 board



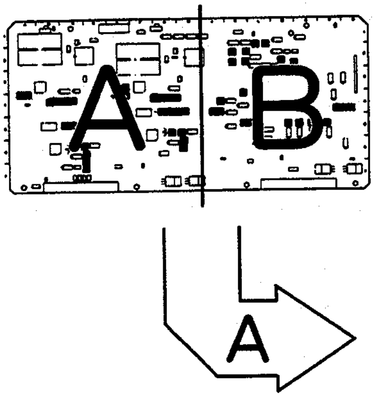
APPLICATION : 11-1-9.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP300

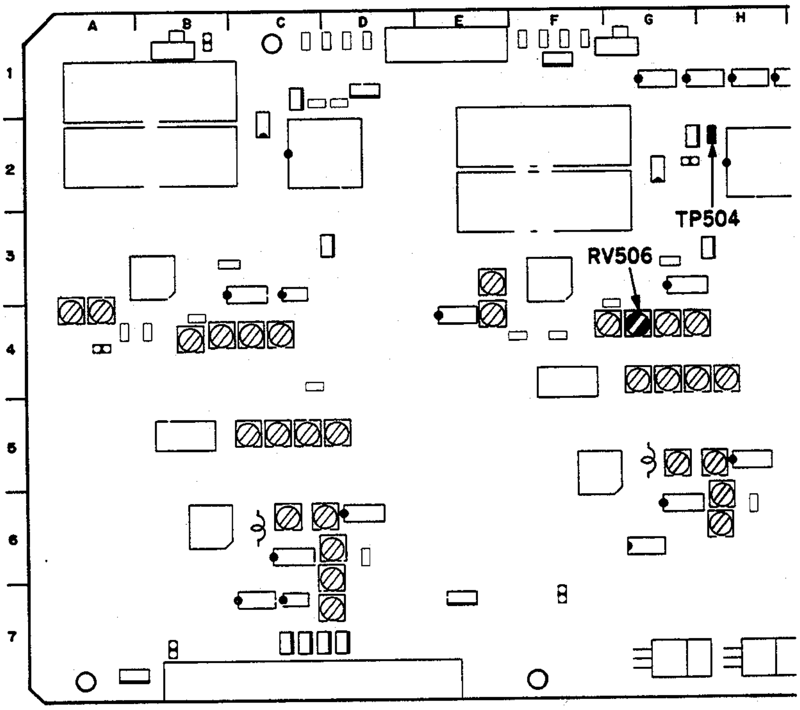
11-1-9. Y and C Demodulator Balance Adjustment (Continued)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the pulse & bar signal portion (5:00 — 8:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP504/VP-33 (H-2) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Before adjustment Minimize the moire.  ⇩ After adjustment 	(B) (C DEMOD BALANCE) ⊘ RV506/VP-33 (G-4) TRIG: TP400/TBC-18 (C-5) CONNECTION 1

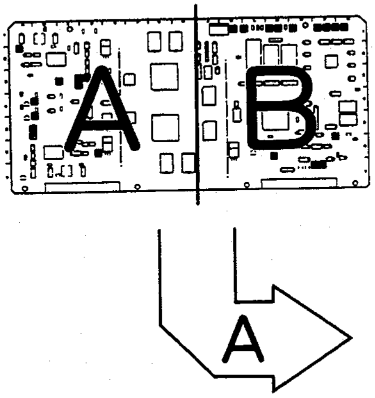
VP-33 board



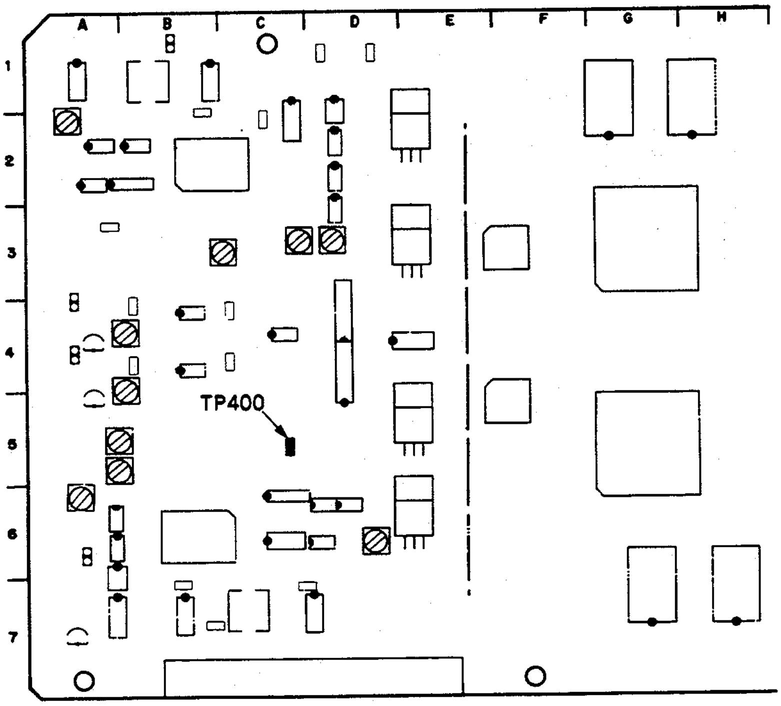
APPLICATION : 11-1-9.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP504
RV506

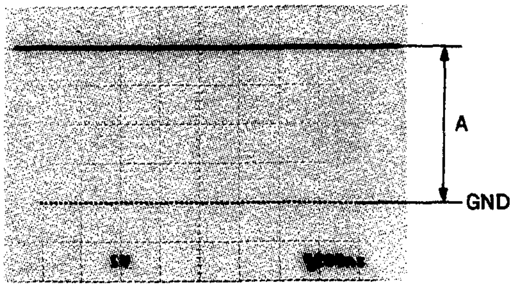
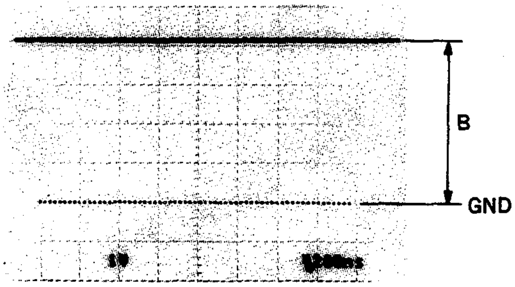
TBC-18 board



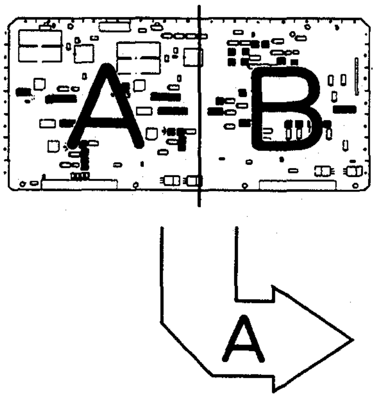
APPLICATION : 11-1-9.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP400

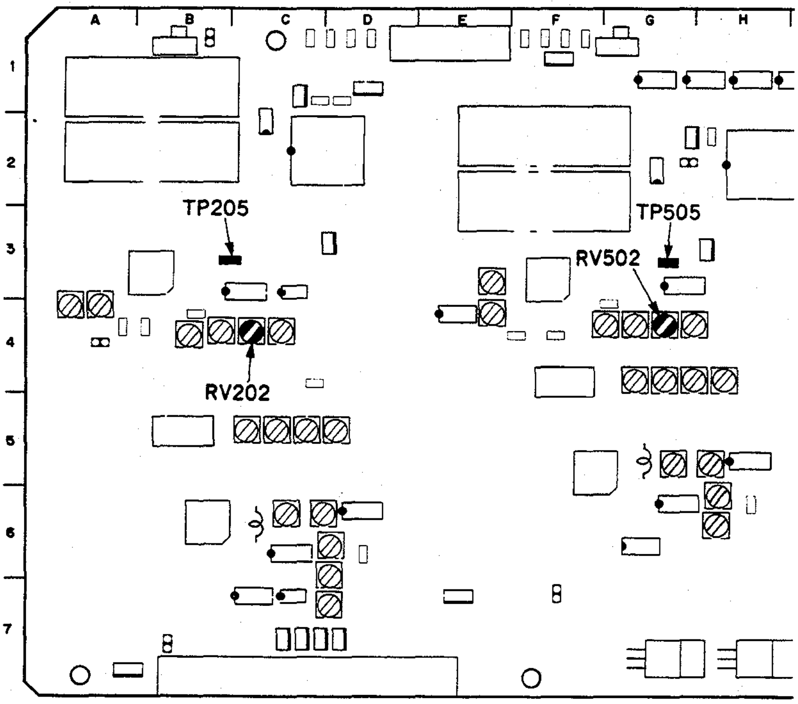
11-1-10. Y and C OMC Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Insert a blank tape BCT-20M (metal) • PLAY mode	TP205/VP-33 (C-3) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=4.0±0.1 V dc	(A) (Y METAL OMC) ⊘ RV202/VP-33 (C-4) CONNECTION 1
	TP505/VP-33 (G-3) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=4.1±0.1 V dc	(B) (C METAL OMC) ⊘ RV502/VP-33 (G-4) CONNECTION 1

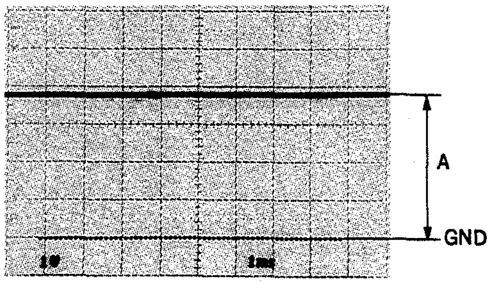
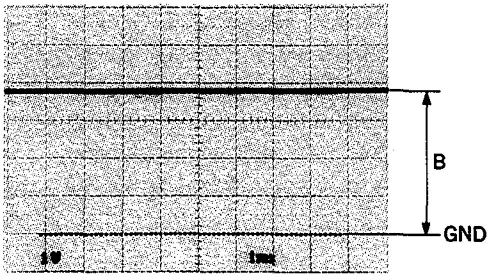
VP-33 board



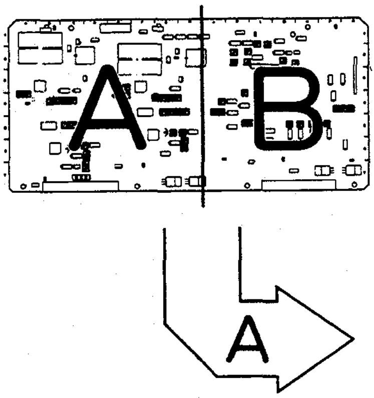
APPLICATION : 11-1-10.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP205
TP505
RV502
RV202

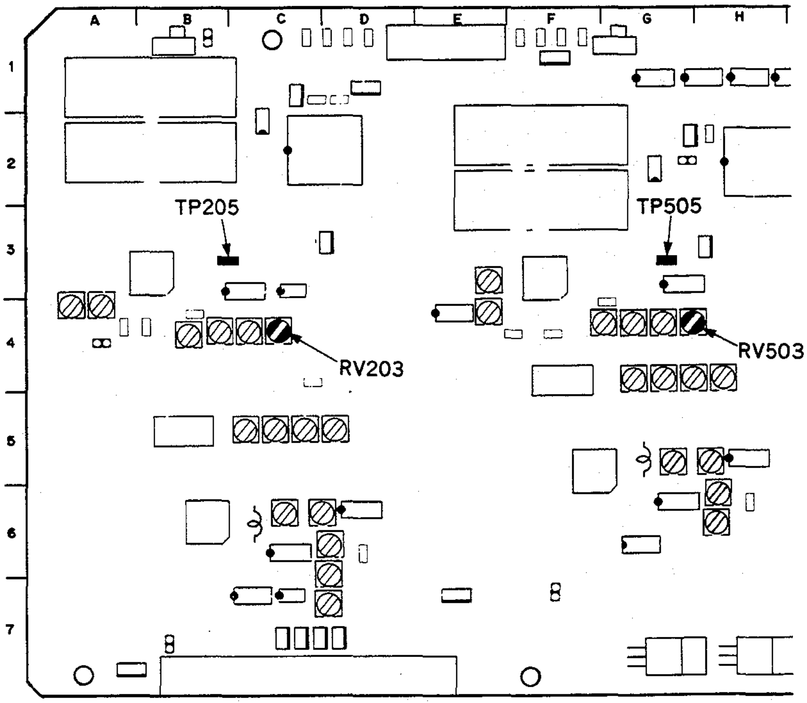
11-1-11. Y and C OMC Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
- Insert a blank tape BCT-20G (oxide). - PLAY mode	TP205/VP-33 (B-3) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=3.8±0.1 V dc	(A) (Y OXIDE OMC) ⊘RV203/VP-33 (C-4) CONNECTION 1
	TP505/VP-33 (G-3) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=3.8±0.1 V dc	(B) (C OXIDE OMC) ⊘RV503/VP-33 (G-4) CONNECTION 1

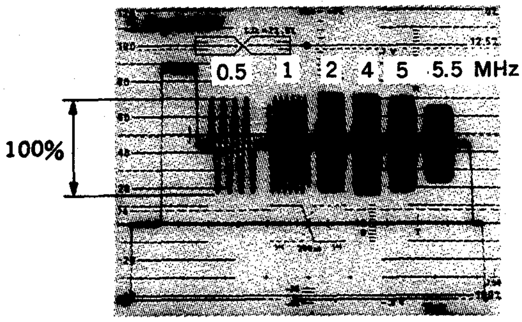
VP-33 board



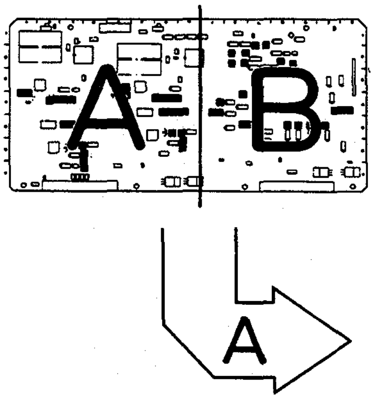
APPLICATION : 11-1-11.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP205
TP505
RV203
RV503

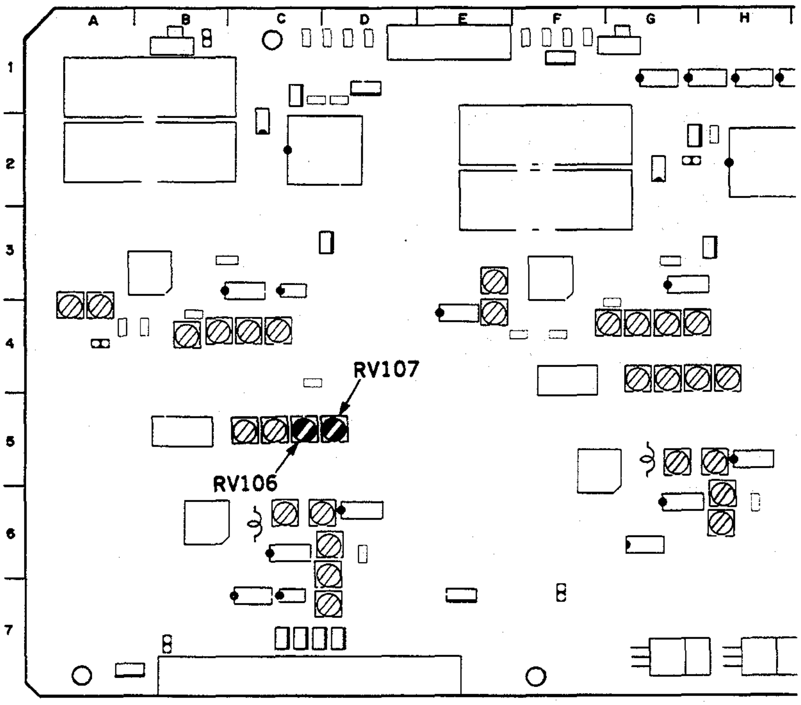
11-1-12. PB Y Frequency Response Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the multi burst signal portion (8:00—11:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 OUTPUT connector.	CONPONENT 2 Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  (1) 0.5 MHz reference 100% (or 0 dB) 4.0 MHz=100% (101 through 99%) (0±0.1 dB) (2) Check the levels for following frequencies. 0.5 MHz=reference 1.0 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 2.0 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 5.0 MHz= 89% (105 through 96%) (−1.0±0.6 dB) 5.5 MHz= 73% (80 through 67%) (−2.7±0.8 dB) (3) Flicker should not be on the monitor picture.	CH-A: ●RV106/VP-33 (C-5) CH-B: ●RV107/VP-33 (D-5) TRIG: REF. VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

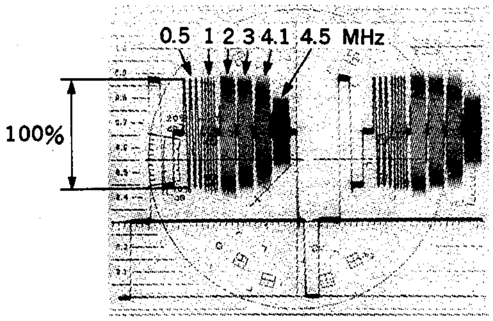
VP-33 board



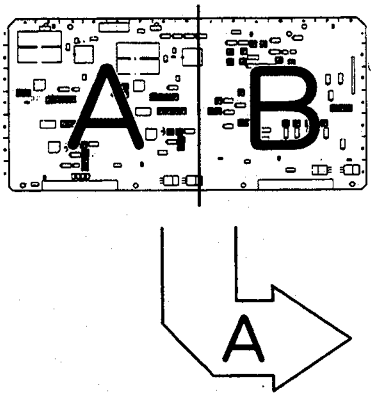
APPLICATION: 11-1-12.



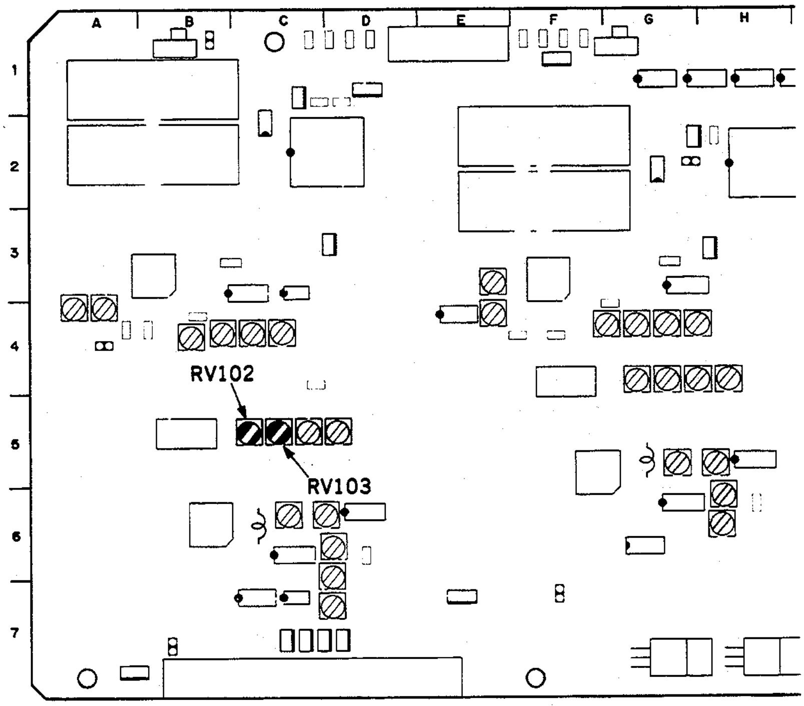
11-1-13. PB Y Frequency Response Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
- Play back the multi burst signal portion (3:00 — 6:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS. - Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  (1) 0.5 MHz reference 100% (or 0 dB) 3.0 MHz= 89% (94 through 84%) (−1.0±0.5 dB) (2) Check the levels for following frequencies. 0.5 MHz=reference 1.0 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 2.0 MHz=100% (105 through 86%) (0±0.4 dB) 4.1 MHz= 71% (87 through 56%) ($-3.0^{+1.8}_{-2.0}$ dB) (3) Flicker should not be on the monitor picture.	CH-A: ⊘RV102/VP-33 (C-5) CH-B: ⊘RV103/VP-33 (C-5) TRIG: REF VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

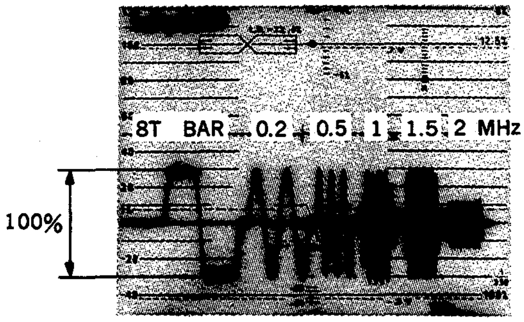
VP-33 board



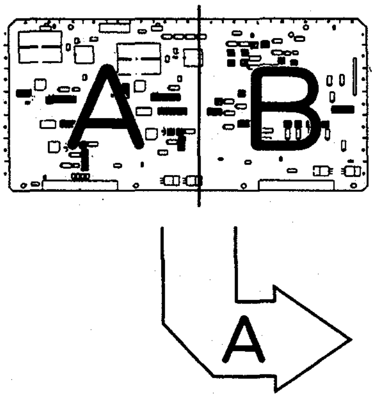
APPLICATION : 11-1-13.



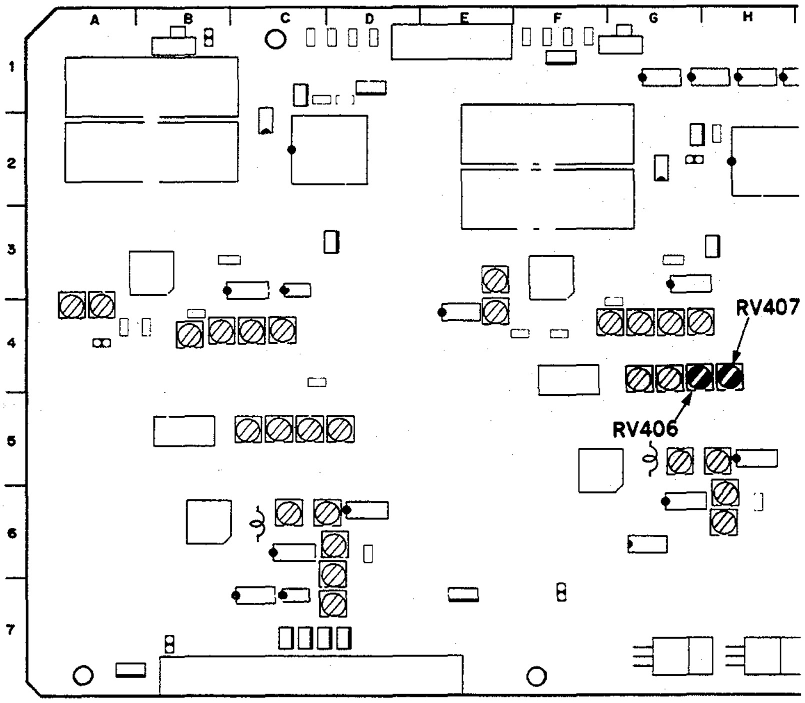
11-1-14. PB C Frequency Response Adjustment (Metal)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
- Play back the multi burst signal portion (8:00—11:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. - Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 R−Y OUT/B−Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  (1) R−Y 8T BAR reference 100% (or 0 dB) 1.5 MHz= 94% (98 through 91%) (−0.5±0.3 dB) (2) Check the levels for following frequencies. 0.2 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 0.5 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 1.0 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 2.0 MHz= 84% (91 through 72%) (−1.8±1.0 dB) (3) Check that the waveform of B−Y satisfies the specifications above. If it doesn't, perform fine adjustments so that both waveforms of R−Y and B−Y satisfy the specifications.	CH-A: ⊘RV406/VP-33 (G-4) CH-B: ⊘RV407/VP-33 (H-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

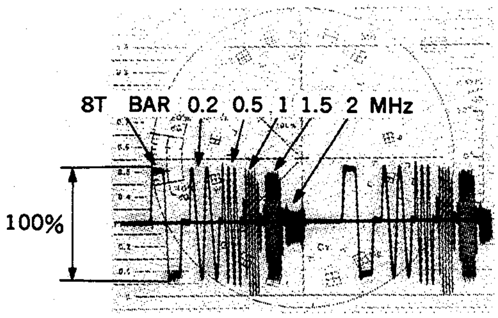
VP-33 board



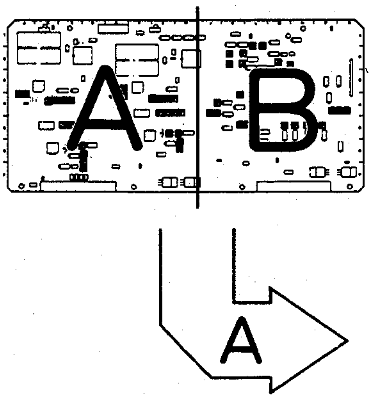
APPLICATION : 11-1-14.

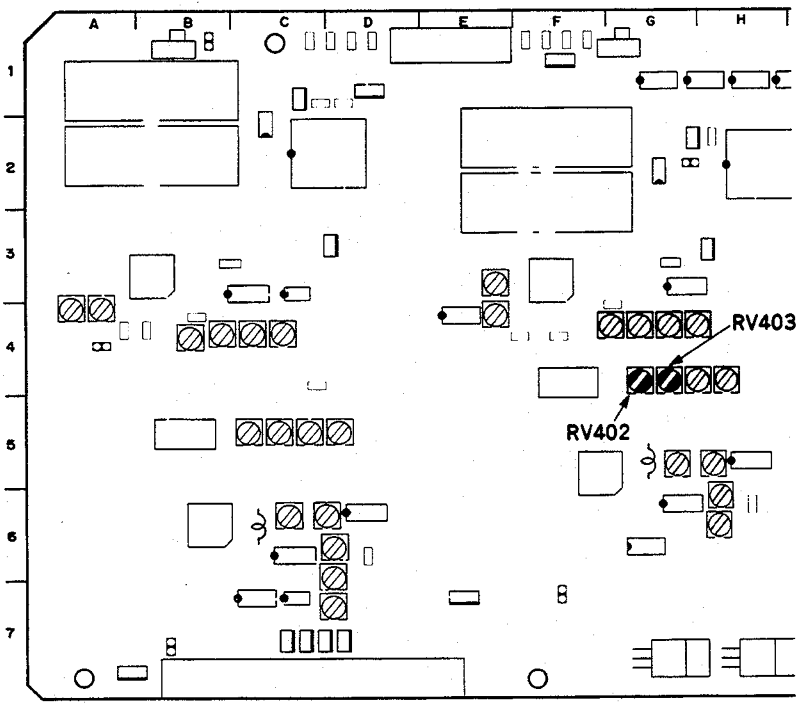


11-1-15. PB C Frequency Response Adjustment (Oxide)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the multi burst signal portion (3:00—6:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS. • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 R—Y OUT/B—Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  (1) R—Y. 8T BAR reference 100% (or 0dB) 1.0 MHz= 94% (98 through 91%) (−0.5±0.3 dB) (2) Check the levels for following frequencies. 0.2 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 0.5 MHz=100% (105 through 96%) (0±0.4 dB) 1.5 MHz= 84% (97 through 73%) (−1.5±1.2 dB) (3) Check that the waveform of B—Y satisfies the specifications above. If it does not, change the specification of section 11-1-11. Y and C OMC Adjustment (RV503) from 3.8 V dc into 3.7 V dc, then adjust again.	CH-A: ●RV402/VP-33 (G-4) CH-B: ●RV403/VP-33 (G-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

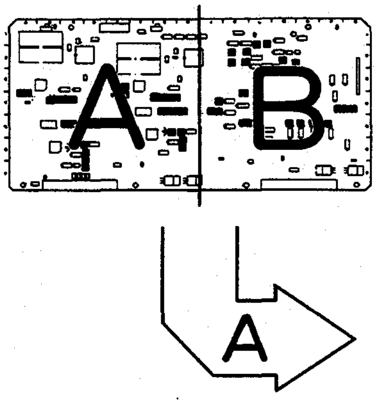
VP-33 board



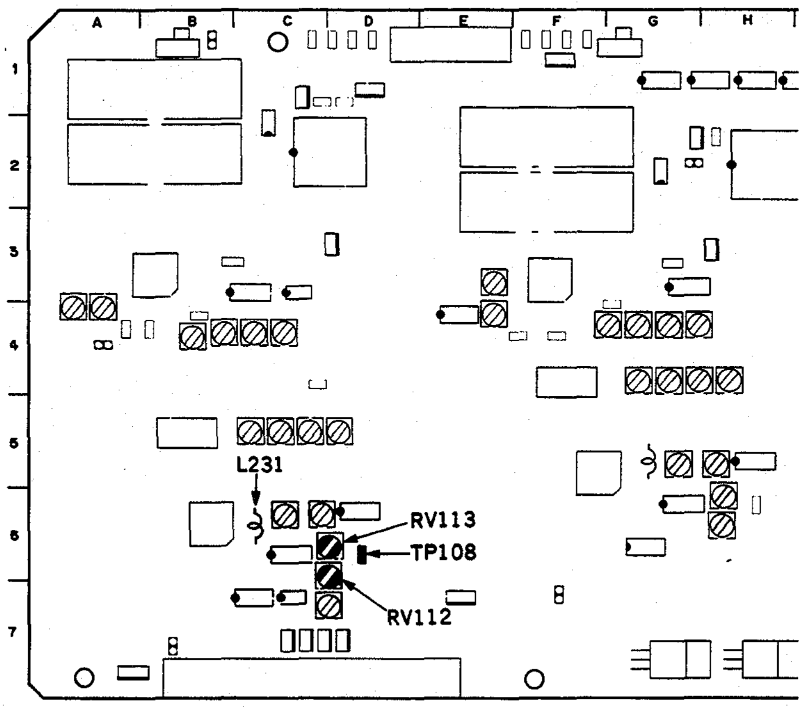


APPLICATION: 11-1-15.

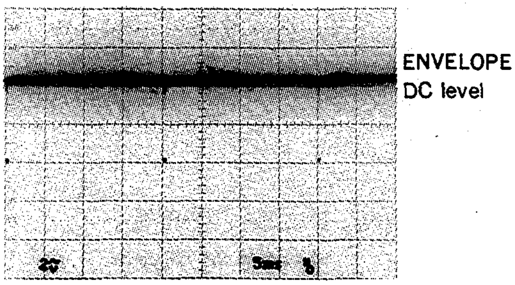
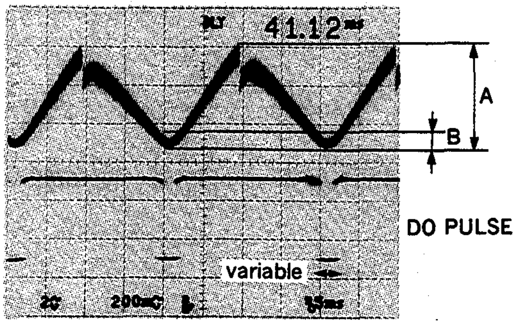
VP-33 board

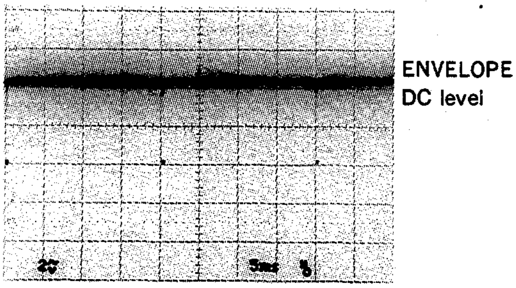
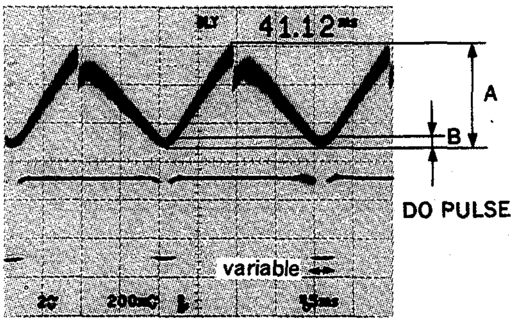


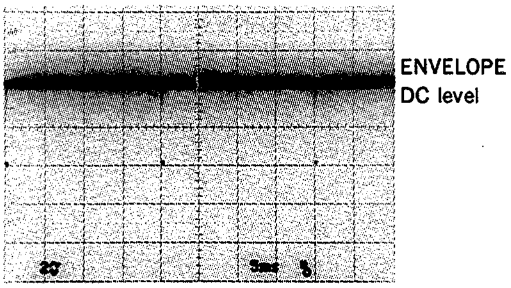
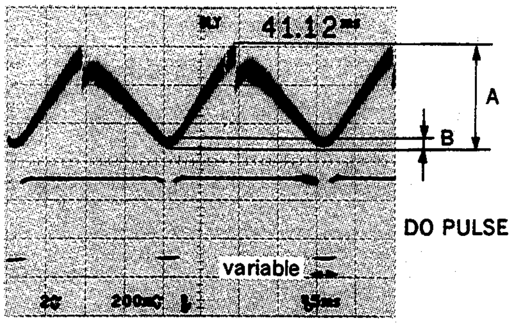
APPLICATION : 11-1-16.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
L231
RV113
TP108
RV112

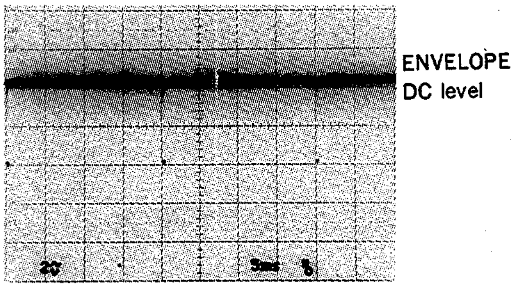
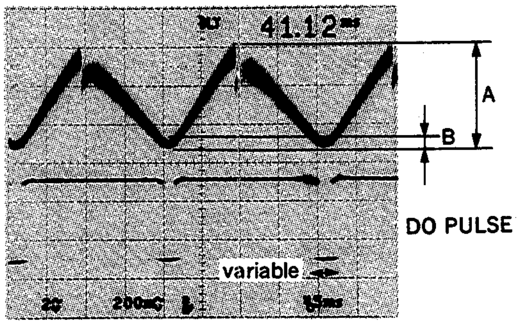
11-1-16. Y DOC Sensitivity Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	L231/VP-33 (C-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Maximize the DC level	TRACKING control /control panel CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • JOG (still) mode	CH-1 : L231/VP-33 (C-6) CH-2 : TP108/VP-33 (D-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B/A=1/5 Adjust so that the value of the DO detective level B stated above, after jog (still) was adjusted so that the high and low noises of monitor picture are equal.	Y OXIDE DO: ⊘ RV113/VP-33 (D-6) TRIG: TP108/VP-33 (D-6) CONNECTION 1

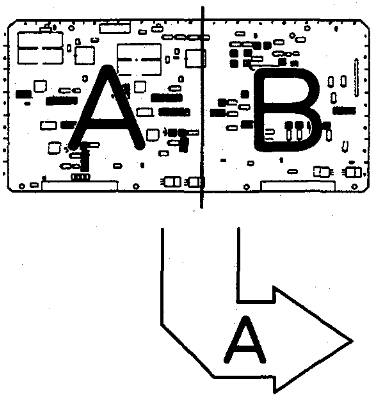
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 3 • Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	LV531/VP-33 (G-5) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Maximize the DC level	TRACKING control /control panel CONNECTION 1
Step 4 • JOG (still) mode	CH-1 : L531/VP-33 (G-5) CH-2 : TP408/VP-33 (H-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B/A=1/10 Adjust so that the value of the DO detective level B stated above, after jog (still) was adjusted so that the high and low noises of monitor picture are equal.	C METAL DO: ⊘RV412/VP-33 (H-6) TRIG: TP408/VP-33 (H-6) CONNECTION 1
Step 5 • Play back the dropout signal portion (26:00—28:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	Check that the dropout portion on the monitor picture is corrected.	(Check)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 3 • Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	L231/VP-33 (C-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Maximize the DC level	TRACKING control /control panel CONNECTION 1
Step 4 • JOG (still) mode	CH-1 : L231/VP-33 (C-6) CH-2 : TP108/VP-33 (D-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B/A=1/8 Adjust so that the value of the DO detective level B stated above, after jog (still) was adjusted so that the high and low noises of monitor picture are equal.	Y METAL DO: RV112/VP-33 (D-6) TRIG: TP108/VP-33 (D-6) CONNECTION 1
Step 5 • Play back the dropout signal portion (26:00—28:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	Check that the dropout portion on the monitor picture is corrected.	(Check)

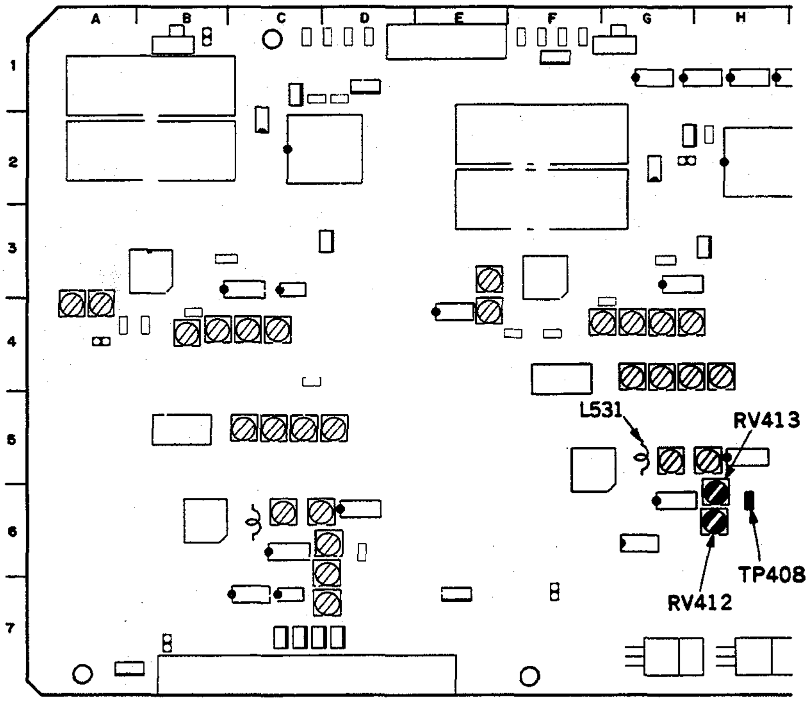
11-1-17. C DOC Sensitivity Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1 • Play back the color bars signal portion (0:00—3:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	LV531/VP-33 (G-5) Waveform of the oscilloscope  Maximize the DC level	TRACKING control /control panel CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • JOG (still) mode	CH-1 : L531/VP-33 (G-5) CH-2 : TP408/VP-33 (H-6) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B/A=1/6 Adjust so that the value of the DO detective level B stated above, after jog (still) was adjusted so that the high and low noises of monitor picture are equal.	C OXIDE DO: ⊘RV413/VP-33 (H-6) TRIG: TP408/VP-33 (H-6) CONNECTION 1

VP-33 board

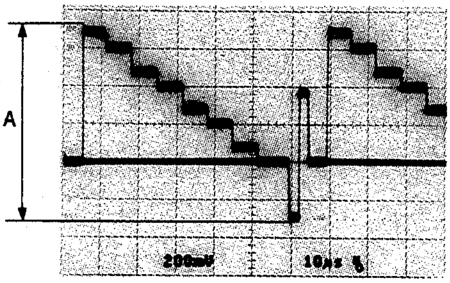
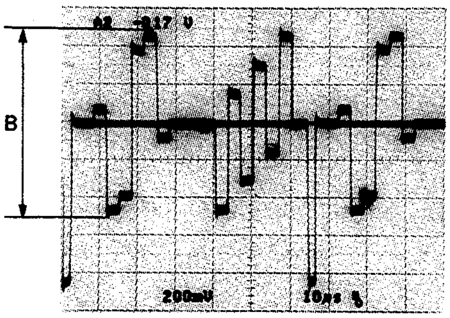


APPLICATION : 11-1-17.

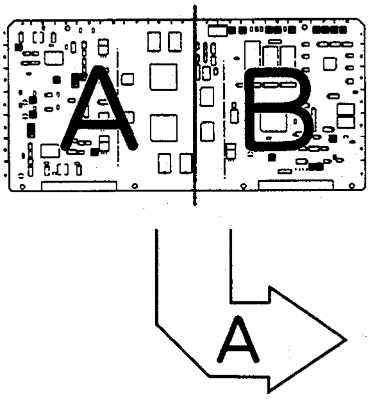

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
L531
RV413
TP408
RV412

11-2. TBC BOARD ADJUSTMENT

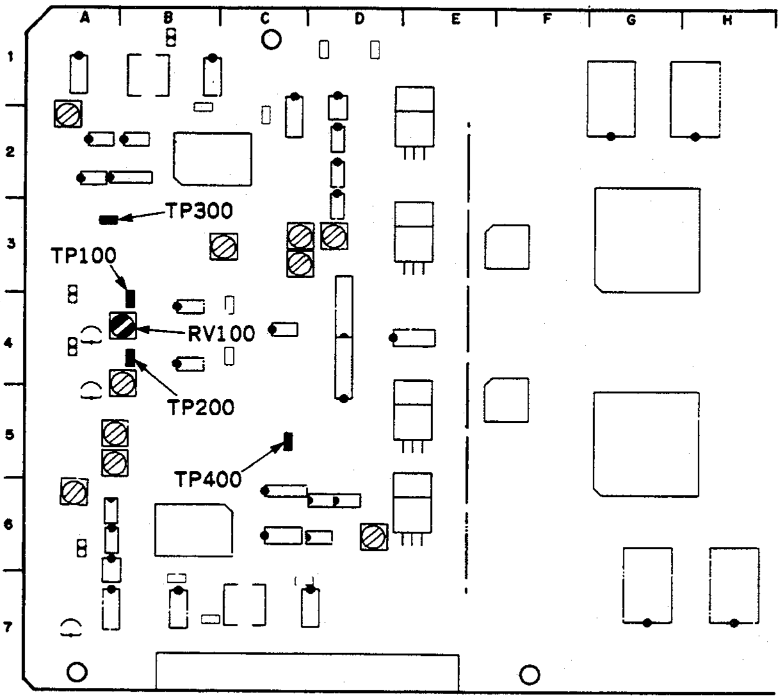
11-2-1. Y and C TBC Input Level Check

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP100/TBC-18 (B-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=1.0±0.1 V p-p	(A) (Y IN Check) TRIG: TP300/TBC-18 (A-3) CONNECTION 1
	TP200/TBC-18 (B-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=0.933±0.10 V p-p	(B) (C IN Check) TRIG: TP400/TBC-18 (C-5) CONNECTION 1

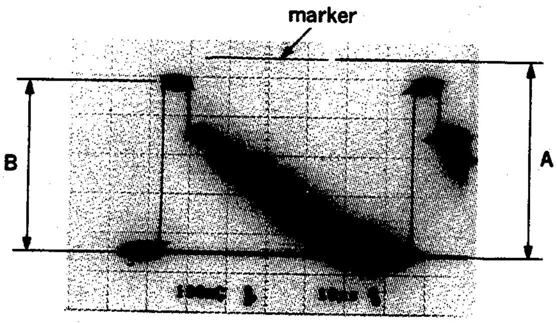
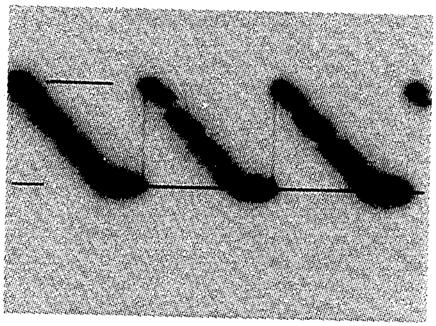
TBC-18 board



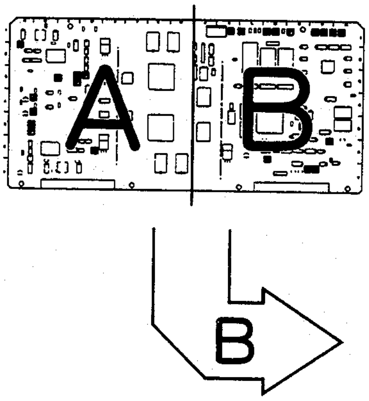
APPLICATION: 11-2-1.

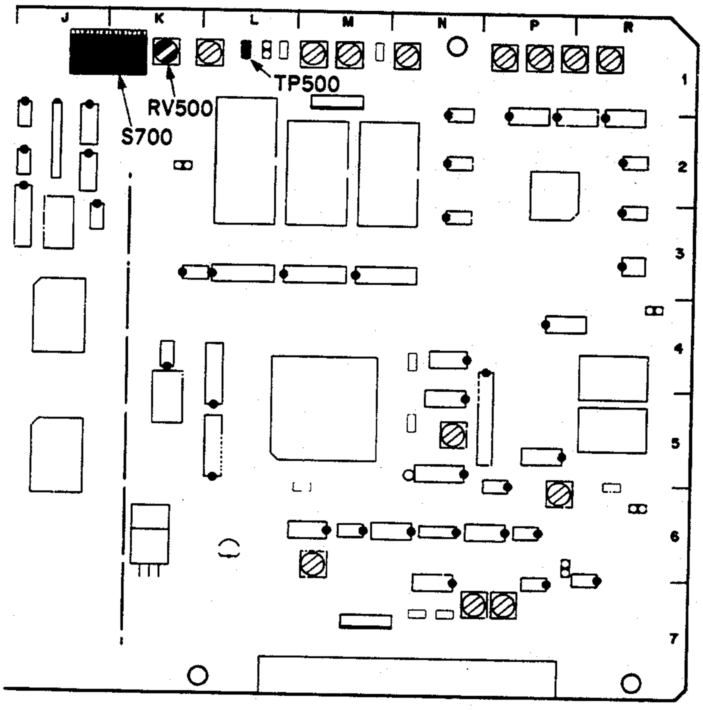

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP300
TP100
RV100
TP200
TP400

11-2-2. Y TBC Output Level and Gain Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S700-1 (LEVEL REF) (J-1) on the TBC-18 board to ON. **NOTE:** Bright the oscilloscope, otherwise the marker of the reference level may be missed. • After adjustment is completed, set S700-1/TBC-18 to OFF.	TP500 (Y OUT)/TBC-18 (L-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  A=0.50±0.01 V p-p B=0.50±0.01 V p-p	(A) (VIDEO LEVEL) ⊘RV500/TBC-18 (K-1) (B) (Y GAIN) ⊘RV100/TBC-18 (B-4) TRIG: VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

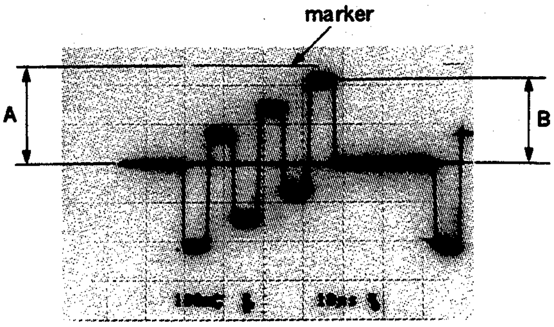
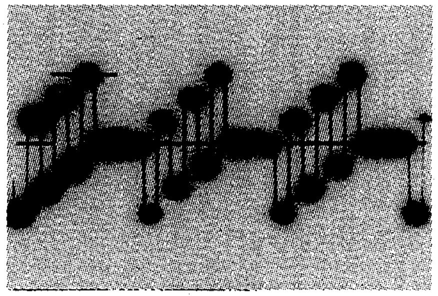
TBC-18 board



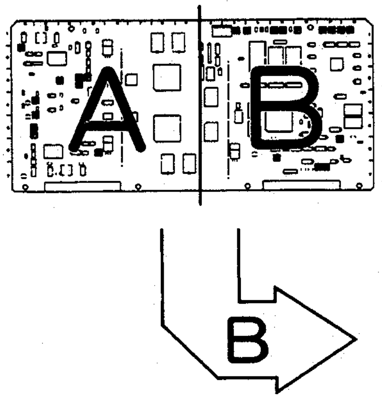


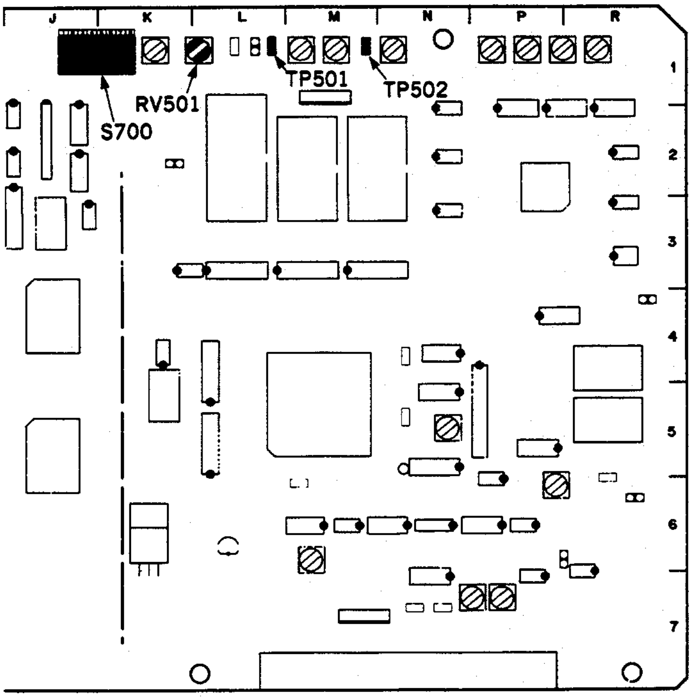
APPLICATION : 11-2-2.

11-2-3. C TBC Output Level and Gain Adjustment

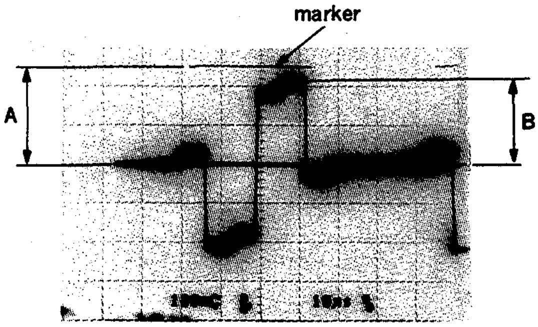
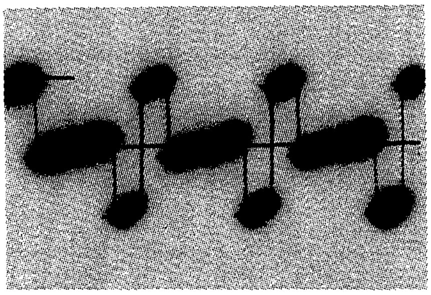
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S700-1 (LEVEL REF) (J-1) on the TBC-18 board to ON. **NOTE:** Bright the oscilloscope, otherwise the marker of the reference level may be missed.	TP501 (B−Y OUT)/TBC-18 (L-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  A=0.336±0.010 V p-p B=0.336±0.010 V p-p	(A) (CHROMA LEVEL) ⊘RV501/TBC-18 (L-1) (B) (C GAIN) ⊘RV200/TBC-18 (B-4) TRIG: VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

TBC-18 board

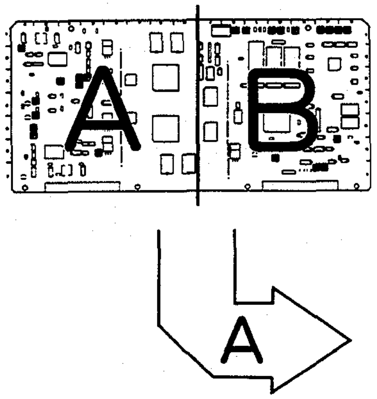




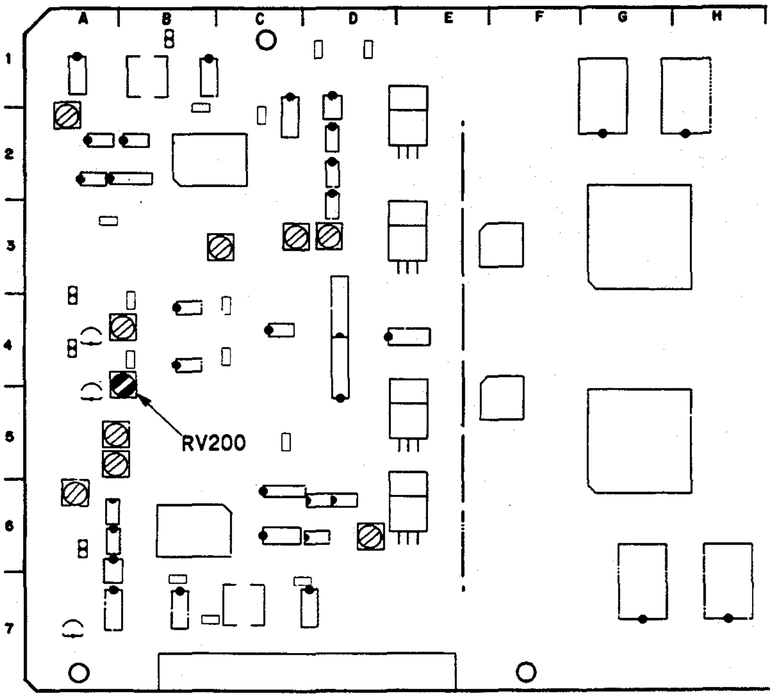
APPLICATION: 11-2-3.

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S700-1 (LEVEL REF)(J-1) on the TBC-18 board to ON. **NOTE:** Bright the oscilloscope, otherwise the marker of the reference level may be missed. • After adjustment is completed, set S700-1/TBC-18 to OFF.	TP502 (R−Y OUT)/TBC-18 (M-1) Waveform of the osilloscope Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  A=0.336±0.010 V p-p B=0.336±0.020 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

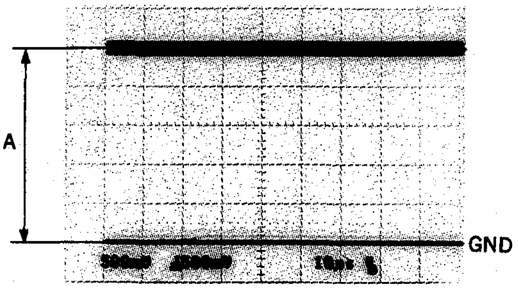
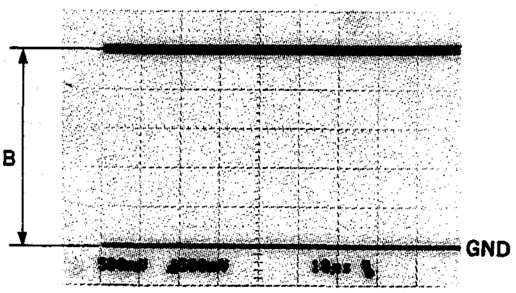
TBC-18 board



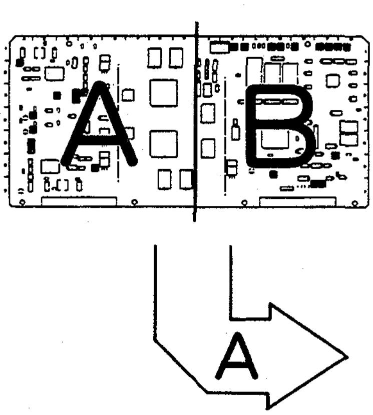
APPLICATION: 11-2-3.



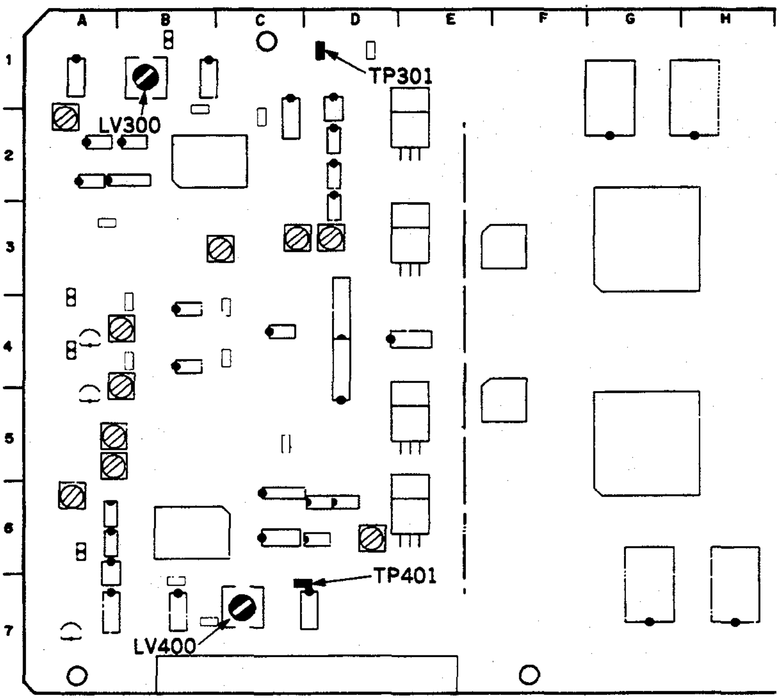
11-2-4. Y and C Normal VCO Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion of (14:00—17:00) the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP301/TBC-18 (D-1) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=2.50±0.05 V dc	(A) (Y ERR VOLT) ⊘LV300/TBC-18 (B-1) TRIG: VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1
	TP401/TBC-18 (D-7) Waveform of the oscilloscope  B=2.50±0.05 V dc	(B) (C ERR VOLT) ⊘LV400/TBC-18 (C-7) TRIG: VIDEO OUT CONNECTION 1

TBC-18 board

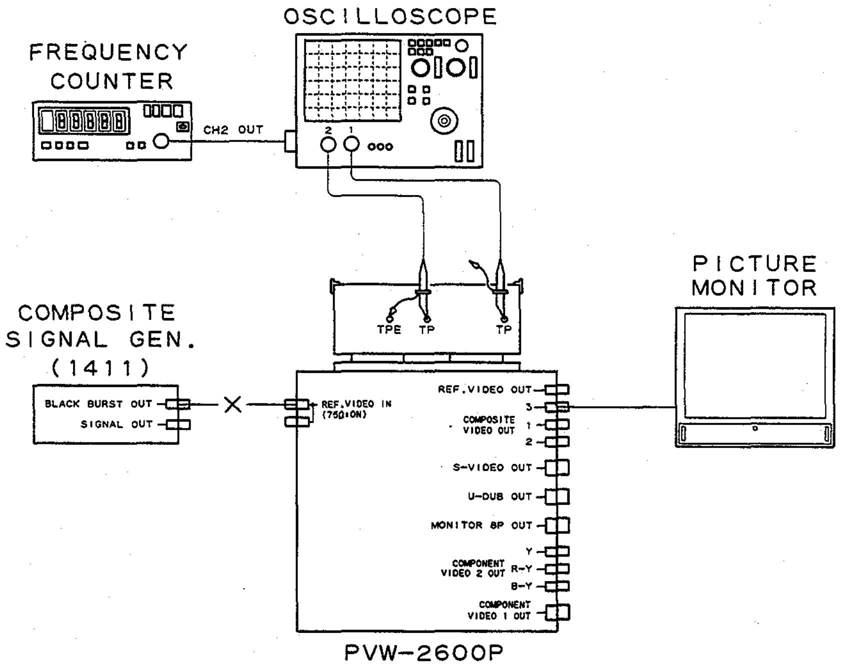


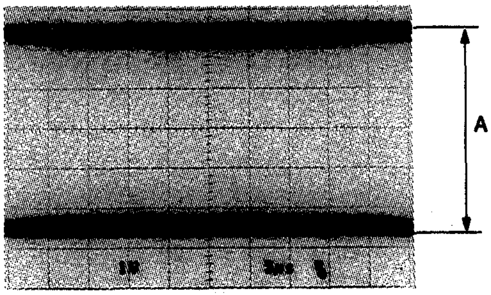
APPLICATION: 11-2-4.



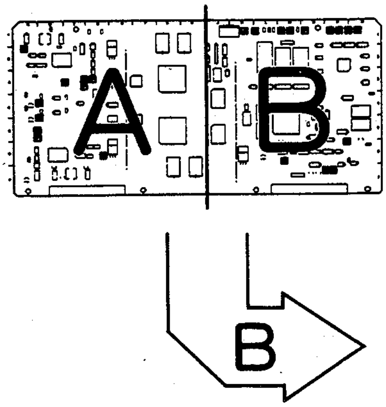
11-2-5. INT SC Frequency Adjustment

[CONNECTION]

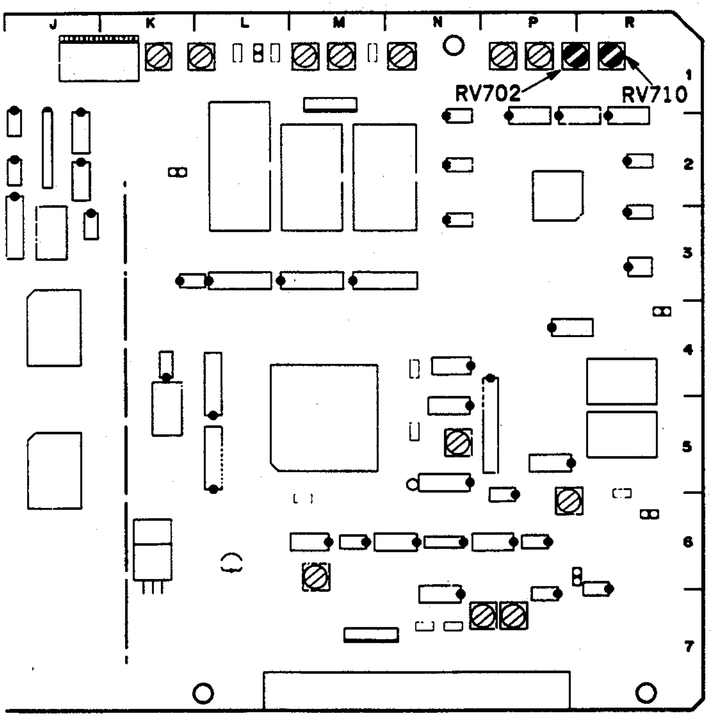

OSCILLOSCOPE
FREQUENCY COUNTER
CH2 OUT
2
1
PICTURE MONITOR
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
TPE
TP
TP
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of a alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect the frequency counter to the OUTPUT terminal of oscilloscope. • Disconnect the REF VIDEO INPUT connector.	TP701/TBC-18 (N-4) Waveform of the oscilloscope  $A=5.0^{+0.2}_{-0.5}$ V p-p	(Check) TRIG: TP701/TBC-18 (N-4)
• After adjustment is completed, connect the REF VIDEO INPUT connector.	TP701/TBC-18 (N-4) Frequency counter f=4,433,618±10 Hz	(4FSC FREQ) ●RV711/TBC-18 (P-6)

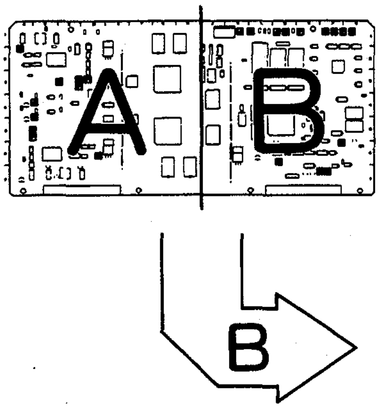
TBC-18 board



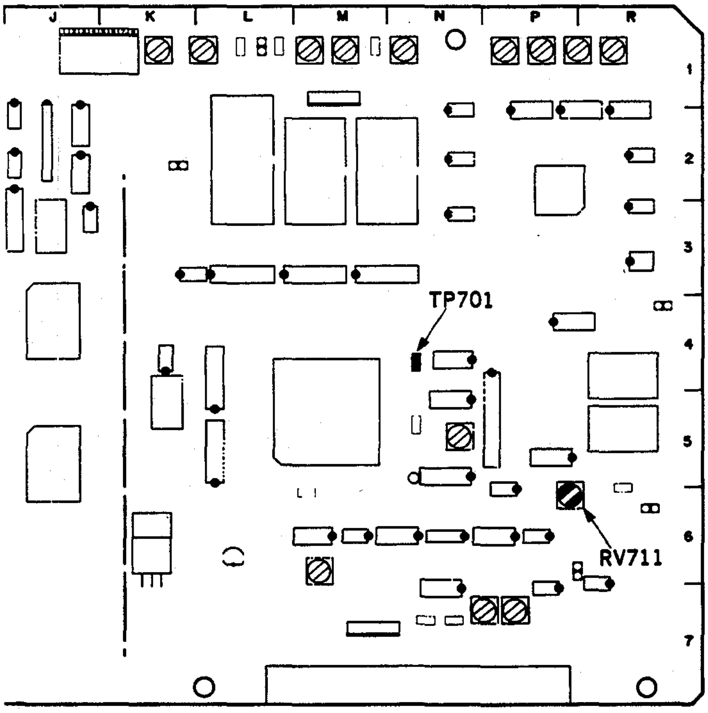
APPLICATION : 11-2-6.


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV702
RV710

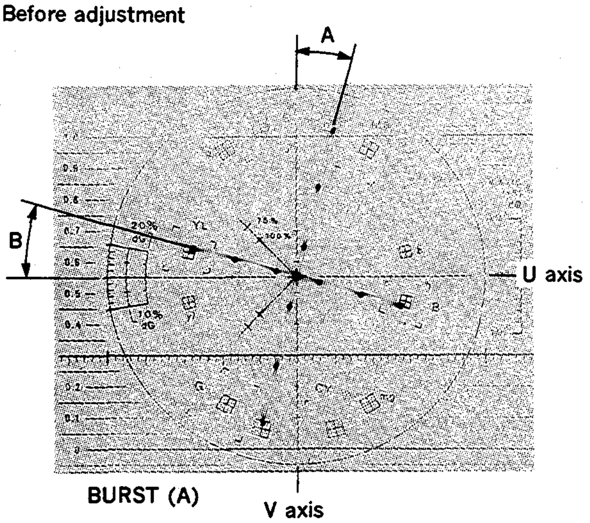
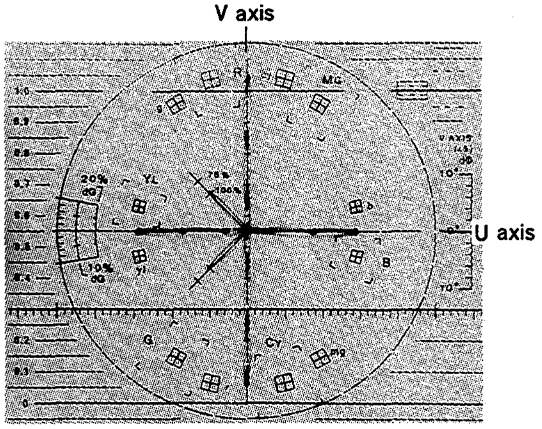
TBC-18 board



APPLICATION : 11-2-5.


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
TP701
RV711

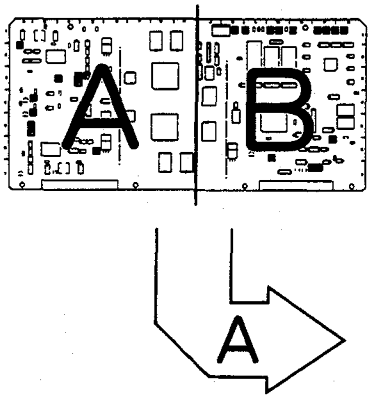
11-2-6. U—V Axis Phase (B-Y, R-Y Phase) Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the Quad Phase signal portion (22:00—24:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a vectorscope to VIDEO OUT 1 connector.	VIDEO OUT 1 Picture of the vectorscope Before adjustment  After adjustment ⇩  (A) Set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale. (B) Set the dots of the B—Y on the U axis of the vector scope. B=0±1° (C) Set the dots of the R—Y on the V axis of the vector scope. C=0±1°	(A) Burst PHASE control/vectorscope (B) U axis (HUE) ● RV710/TBC-18 (R-1) (C) V axis (U/V OFFSET) ● RV702/TBC-18 (R-1) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

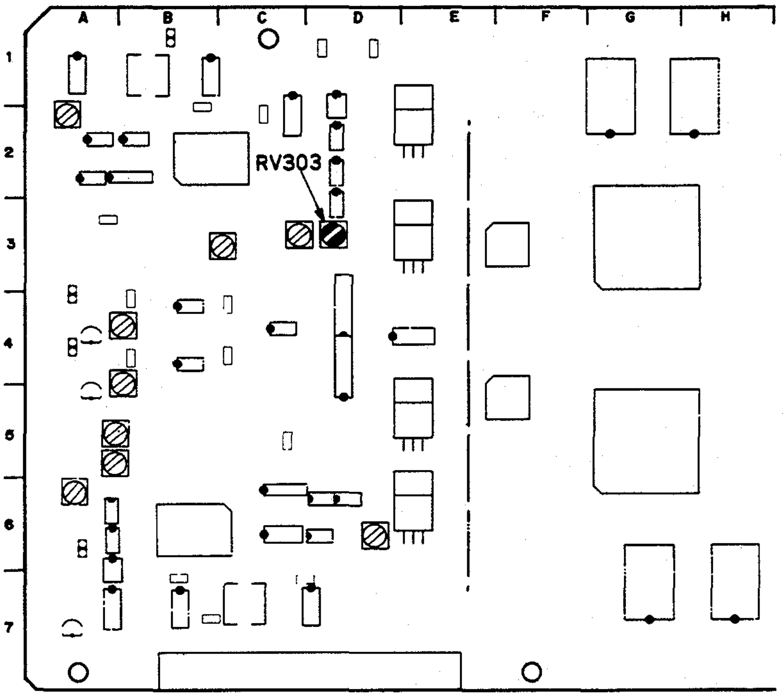
11-2-7. TBC Tracking Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step 1	• Fully turn RV303 counterclockwise.	(Y TR GAIN) ⊘ RV303/TBC-18 (D-3)
Step 2 • Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Shuttle mode (24 times normal speed in forward and reverse)	monitor display • The picture of 24 times normal speed appears. • If the picture does not appear, turn RV303 clockwise gradually so that the picture appear.	(Tracking check)

TBC-18 board

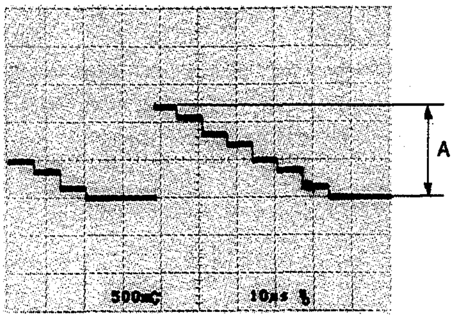


APPLICATION : 11-2-7.

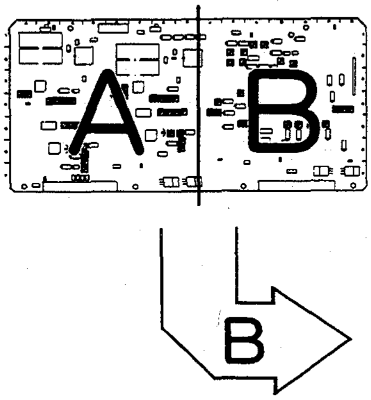


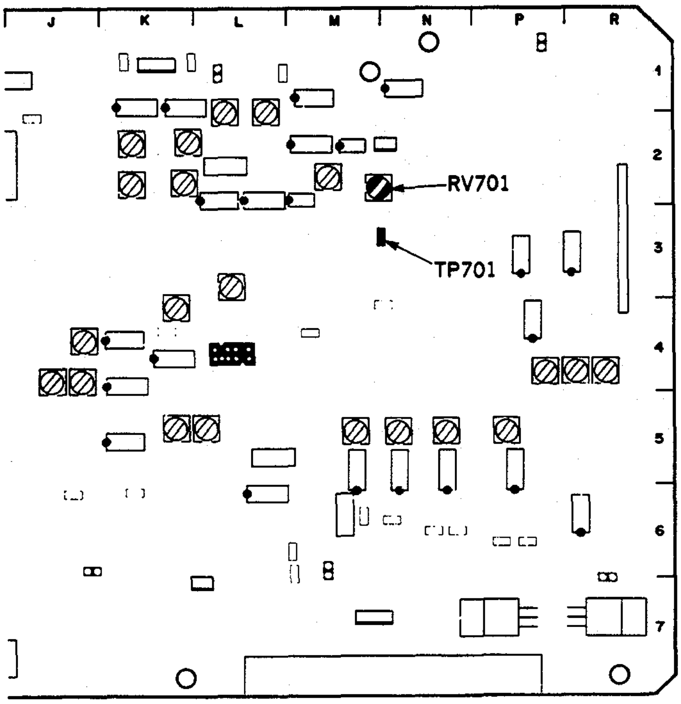
11-3. VP BOARD (VO, EN SYSTEM) ADJUSTMENT

11-3-1. ENC Y Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	TP701/VP-33 (N-3) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A=1.20±0.02 V p-p	●RV701/VP-33 (M-2) TRIG: REF VIDEO CONNECTION 1

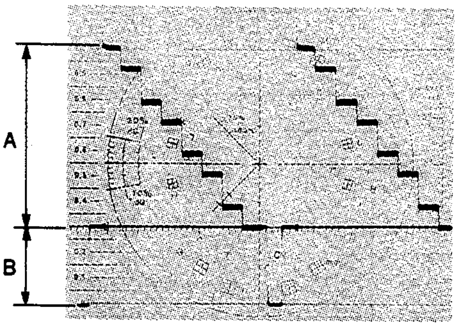
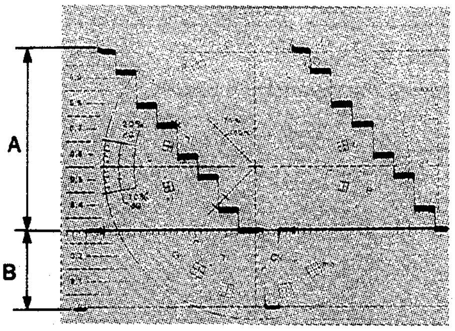
VP-33 board



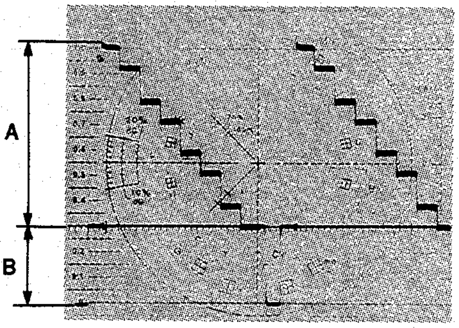


APPLICATION : 11-3-1.

11-3-2. COMPONENT 2 and 1 Y OUT Level Adjustment

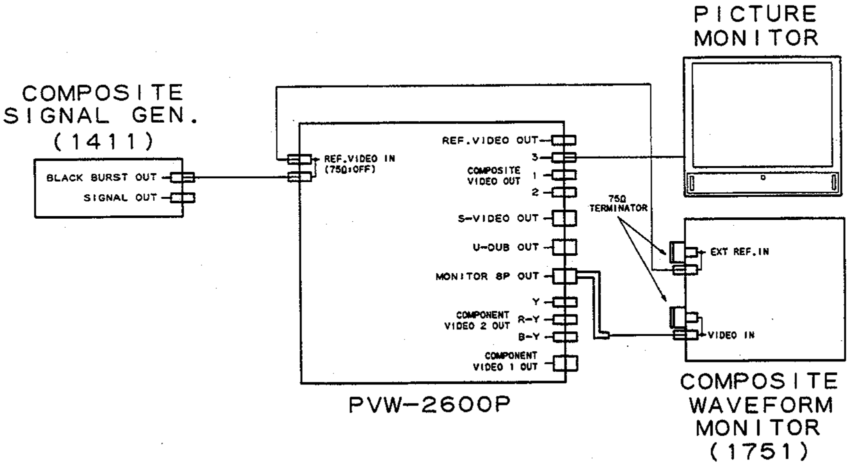
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. Step 1 • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 Y OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(A) (Y) ⊘RV703/VP-33 (M-5) (B) (Y SYNC) ⊘RV708/VP-33 (P-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • Connect the waveform monitor to the Y terminal (1-2 (G)) of COMPONENT 1 OUTPUT connector. (using a multi connector cable DOBNC.)	COMPONENT 1 (Y) OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1

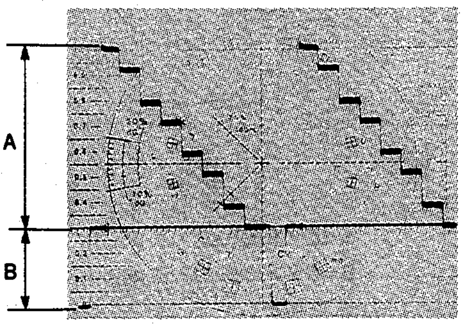
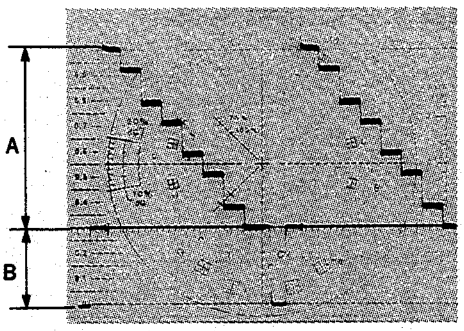
11-3-3. S-VIDEO OUT Y Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform monitor to the Y terminal (3-1 (G)) of S-VIDEO OUTPUT connector.	S-VIDEO (Y) OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(A) (S/Y) ⊘RV704/VP-33 (N-5) (B) (S VIDEO SYNC) ⊘RV707/VP-33 (R-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1

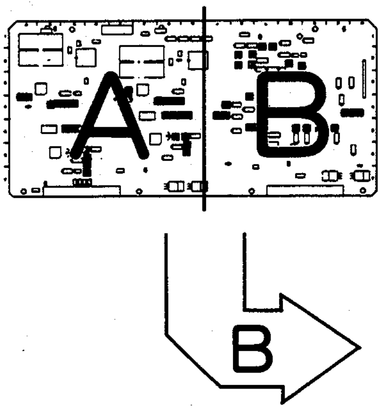
11-3-5. VIDEO OUT 3 and MONITOR OUT Y Level Adjustment

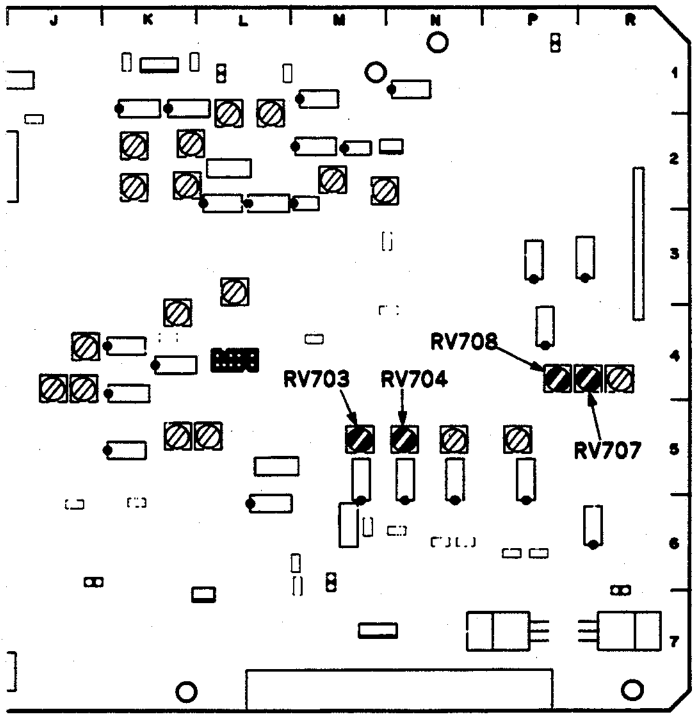
[CONNECTION]


PICTURE MONITOR
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
VIDEO IN
PVW-2600P
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S702 (CHROMA) (L-5) on the VP-33 board to OFF. Step 1 • Connect a waveform monitor to VIDEO OUT 3 connector.	VIDEO OUT 3 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p (adjustment) B=0.300±0.003 V p-p (check)	(A) (VIDEO 3) ●RV709/VP-33 (P-5) (B) (Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO
Step 2 • Connect the waveform monitor to the TV terminal (2-6 (G)) of MONITOR OUTPUT (TV-8P) connector. • After adjustment is completed, set S702/VP-33 to ON.	MONITOR (TV) OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO

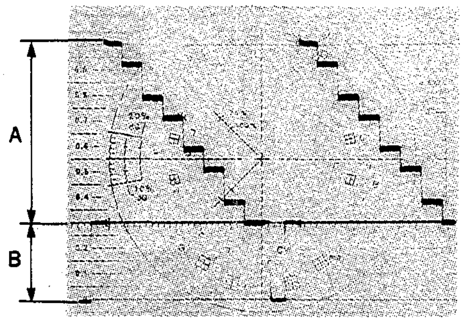
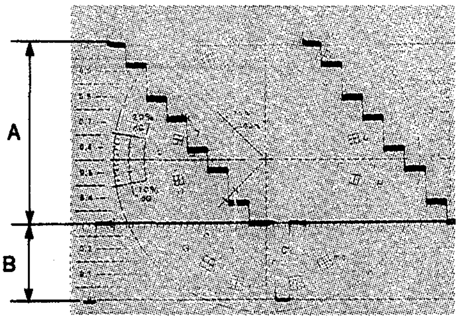
VP-33 board



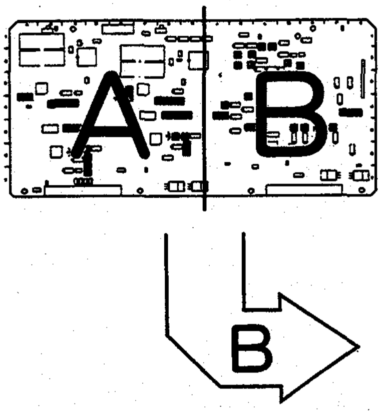

J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV708
RV703
RV704
RV707

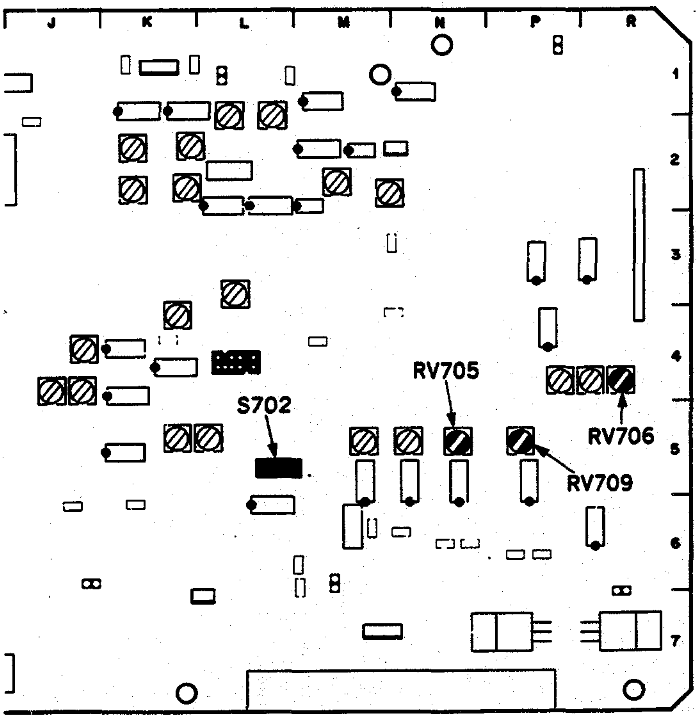
APPLICATION : 11-3-2.
11-3-3.

11-3-4. VIDEO OUT 1 and 2 Y Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S702 (CHROMA) (L-5) on the VP-33 board to OFF. Step 1 • Connect a waveform monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector.	VIDEO OUT 1 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(A) (VIDEO) ⊘RV705/VP-33 (N-5) (B) (VIDEO SYNC) ⊘RV706/VP-33 (R-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2
Step 2 • Connect the waveform monitor to VIDEO OUT 2 connector. • After adjustment is completed, set S702/VP-33 to ON.	VIDEO OUT 2 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p B=0.300±0.003 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

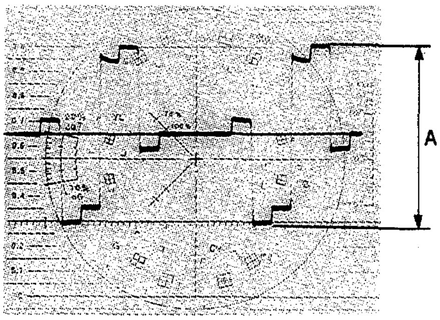
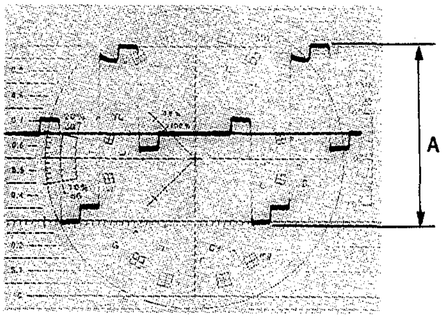
VP-33 board



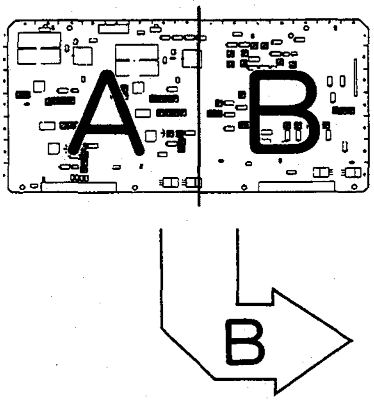


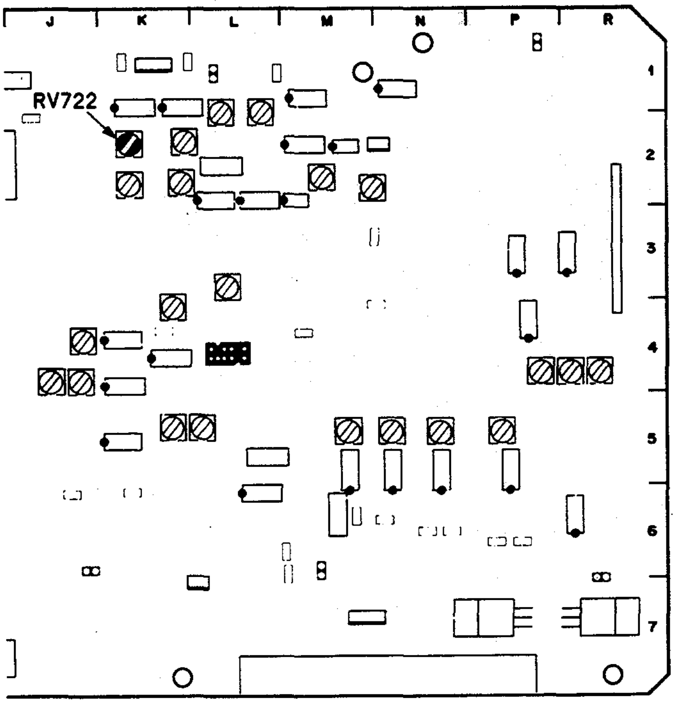
APPLICATION: 11-3-4.
11-3-5.

11-3-6. COMPONENT 2 and 1 R−Y OUT Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. Step 1 • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 R−Y OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 R−Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.7000±0.0035 V p-p	●RV722/VP-33 (K-2) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • Connect the waveform monitor to R−Y terminal (3-4 (G)) of COMPONENT 1 OUTPUT connector. (using a multi connector cable DOBNC)	COMPONENT 1 (R−Y) OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1

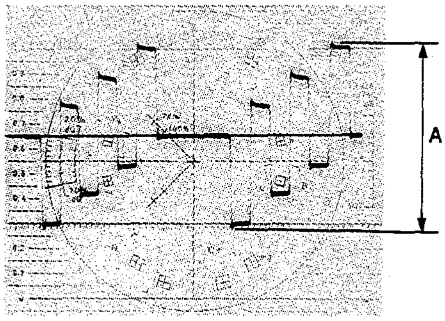
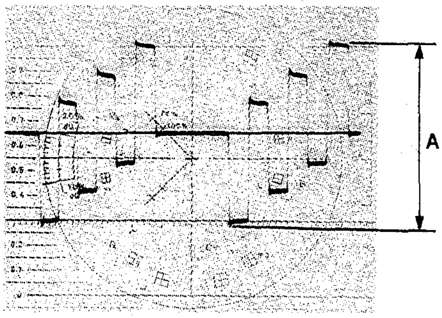
VP-33 board



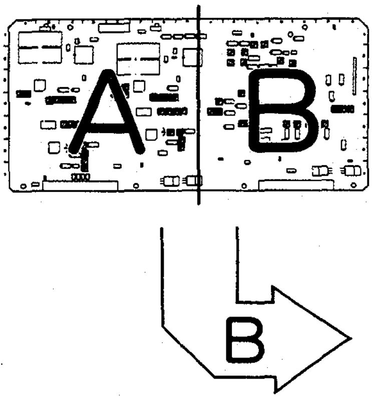


APPLICATION : 11-3-6.

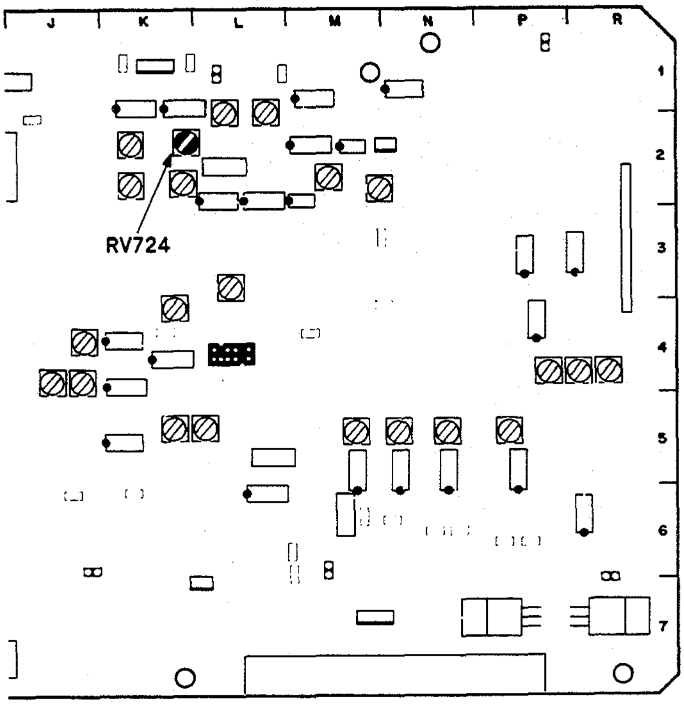
11-3-7. COMPONENT 2 and 1 B–Y OUT Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00–17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. Step 1 • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 B–Y OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 B–Y OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.7000±0.0035 V p-p	⊘RV724/VP-33 (K-2) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1
Step 2 • Connect the waveform monitor to B–Y terminal (5-6 (G)) of COMPONENT 1 OUTPUT connector. (using a multi connector cable DOBNC)	COMPONENT 1 (B–Y) OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=0.700±0.007 V p-p	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1

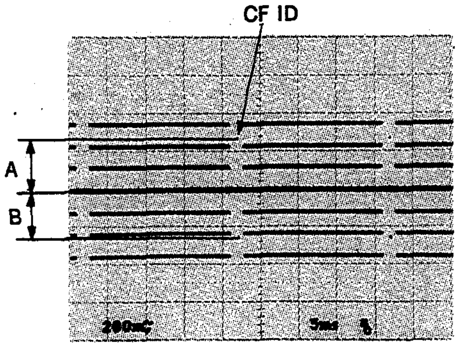
VP-33 board



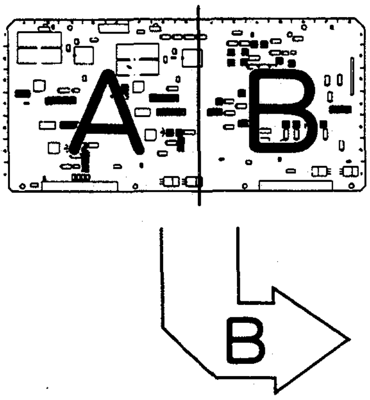
APPLICATION : 11-3-7.



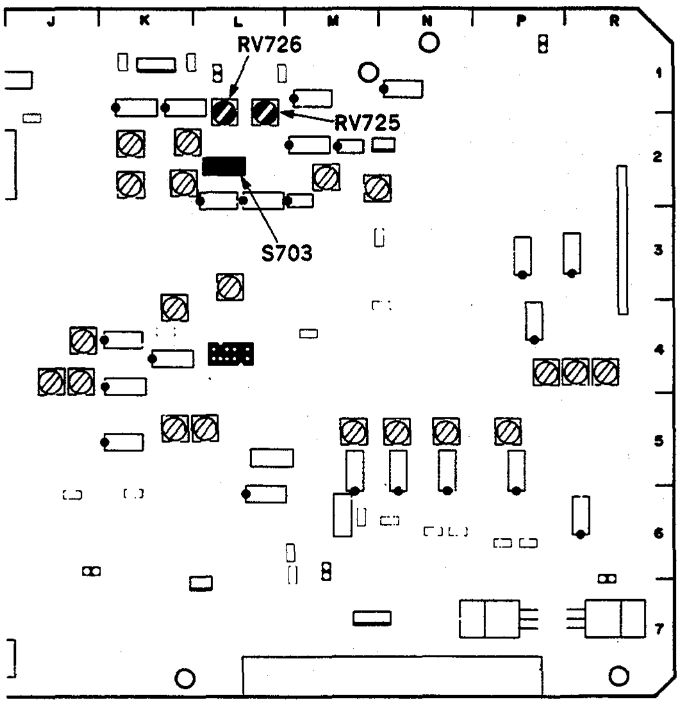
11-3-8. COMPONENT 2 B−Y CF ID Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Set S703 (CF ID) (L-2) on the VP-33 board to ON. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD • Connect a waveform monitor to COMPONENT 2 B−Y OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 B−Y OUT Waveform of the oscilloscope  (1) A=0.2625±0.010 V B=0.2625±0.010 V (2) Check that CF ID pulse will disappear when the CAPSTAN LOCK swith is set to 2FD. After that, set the switch to 8FD.	(A) (ID (+)) ⊘RV725/VP-33 (L-1) (B) (ID (−)) ⊘RV726/VP-33 (L-1) TRIG: TP2/VP-33 (F-1) CONNECTION 1

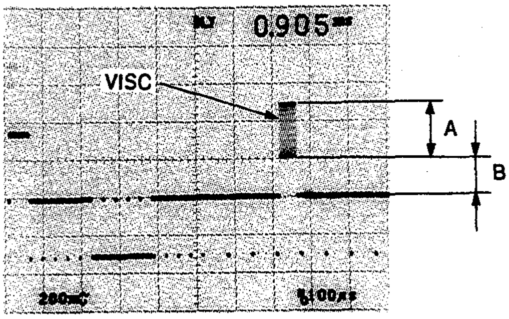
VP-33 board



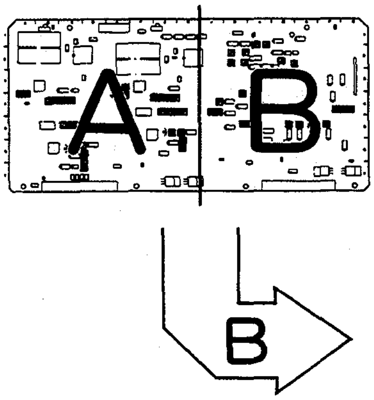
APPLICATION : 11-3-8.



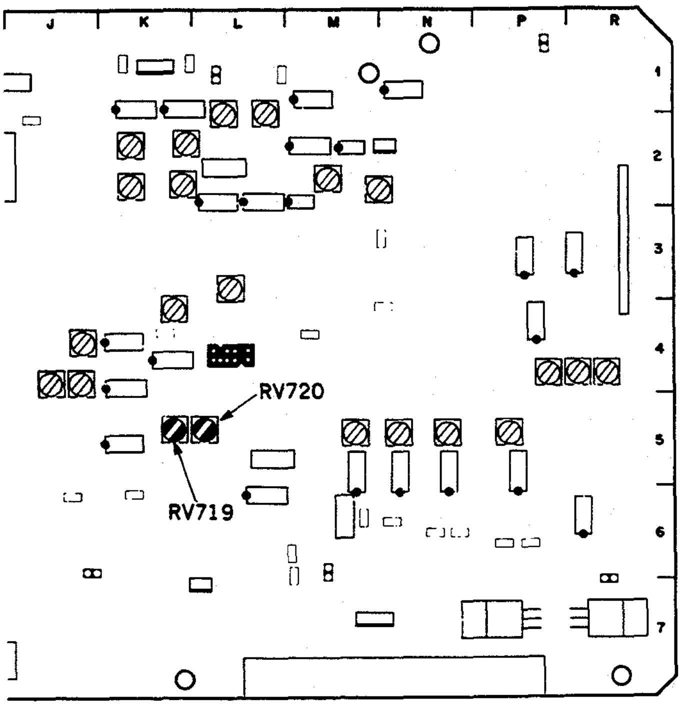
11-3-9. COMPONENT 2 Y VISC Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the composite V sweep signal portion with VISC (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD • Connect a oscilloscope that terminated CH-1 by 75 Ω to COMPONENT 2 Y OUTPUT connector.	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT Waveform of the oscilloscope  (1) A=300±10 mV B=200±5 mV (2) Check that CF ID pulse will disappear when the CAPSTAN LOCK switch is set to 8FD. After that, set the switch to 8FD.	(A) (VISC LEVEL) ⊘RV719/VP-33 (K-5) (B) (VISC DC) ⊘RV720/VP-33 (L-5) TRIG: TP2/VP-33 (F-1) CONNECTION 1

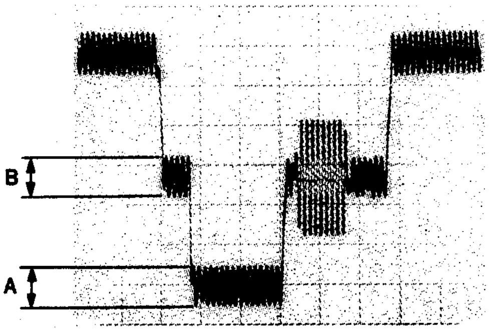
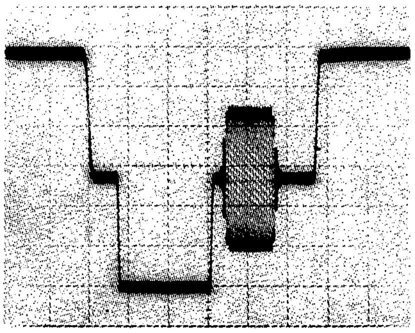
VP-33 board



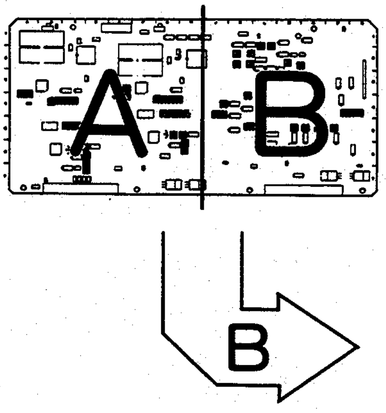
APPLICATION : 11-3-9.



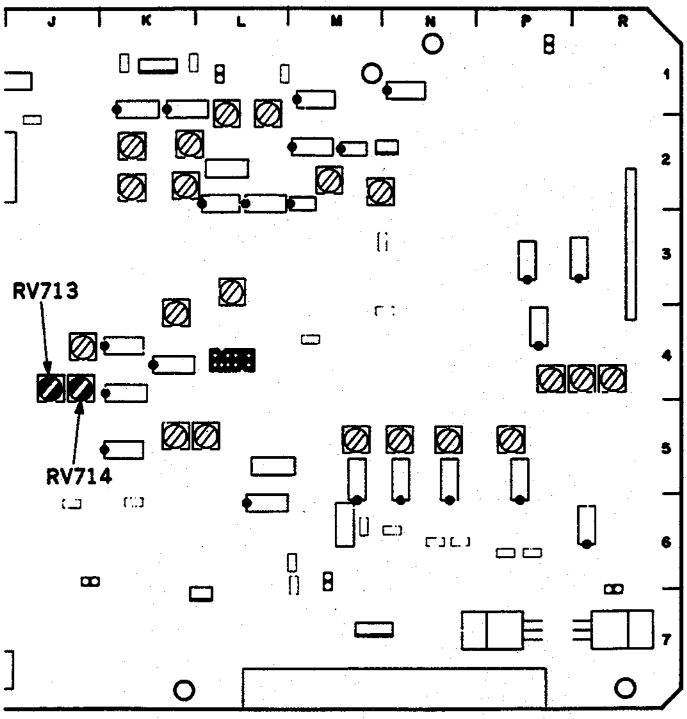
11-3-10. VIDEO OUT 1 ENC SC Leak Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Set the time axis of the wave form monitor to magnification mode.	VIDEO OUT 1 WFM mode Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  Minimize the A. (less than 10 mV p-p) Minimize the B. (less than 10 mV p-p)	(A) (U SC LEAK) ⊘RV714/VP-33 (J-4) (B) (V SC LEAK) ⊘RV713/VP-33 (J-4) Adjust alternately. TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

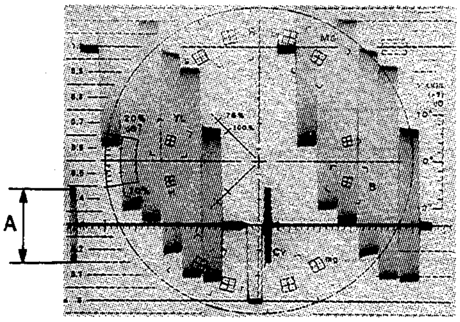
VP-33 board



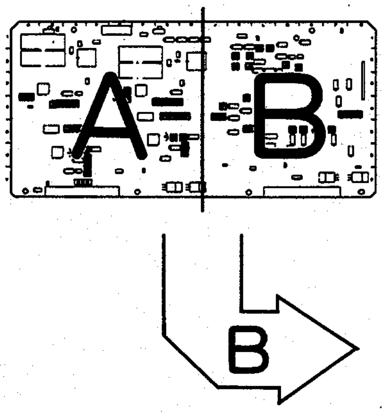
APPLICATION : 11-3-10.

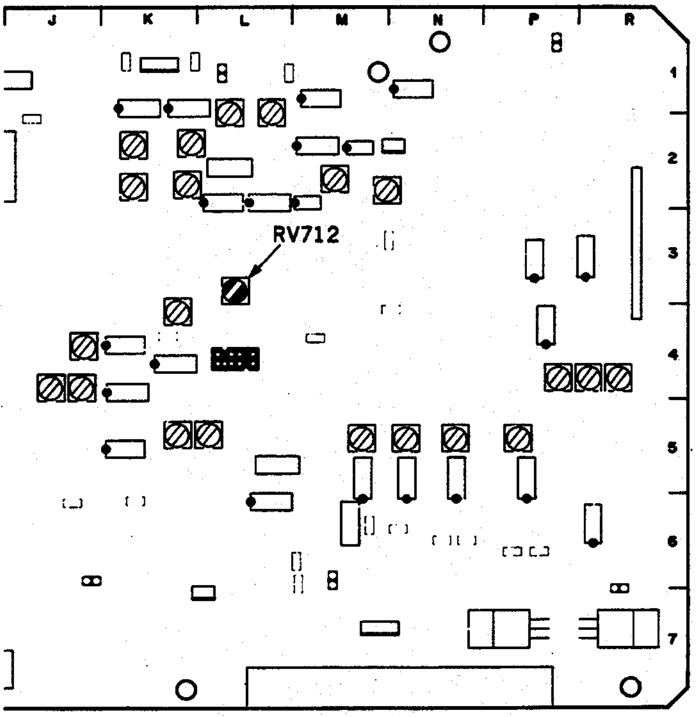


11-3-12. VIDEO OUT 1 Burst Level Adjustment

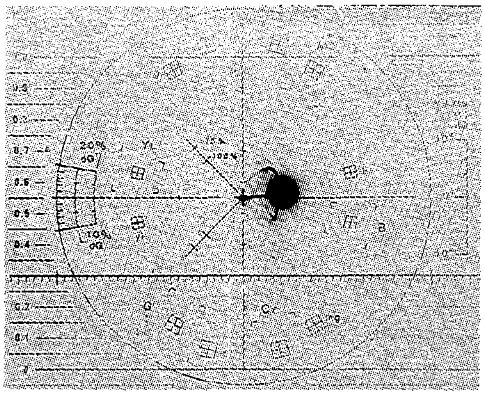
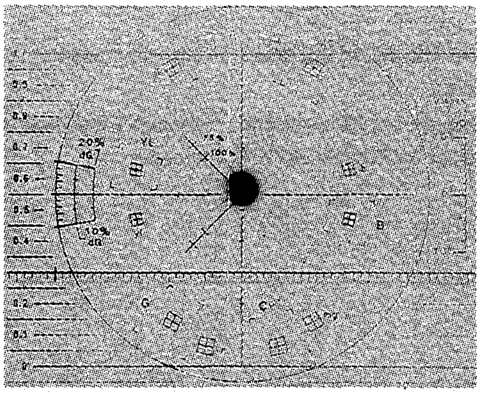
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector.	VIDEO OUT 1 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=300±3 mV p-p	⊘RV712/VP-33 (L-3) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

VP-33 board

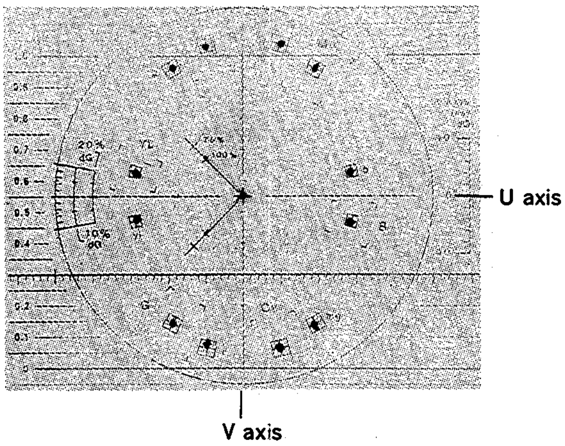




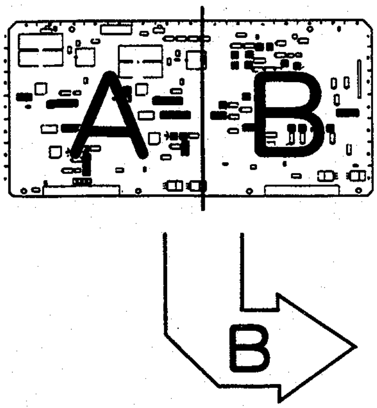
APPLICATION : 11-3-12.

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the flat field signal portion (24:00—26:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Set the time axis of the wave form monitor to magnification mode.	VIDEO OUT 1 SCH mode **Before adjustment**  ⇩ **After adjustment**  Maximum the gain of the vectorscope and check the dot is at center.	(Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

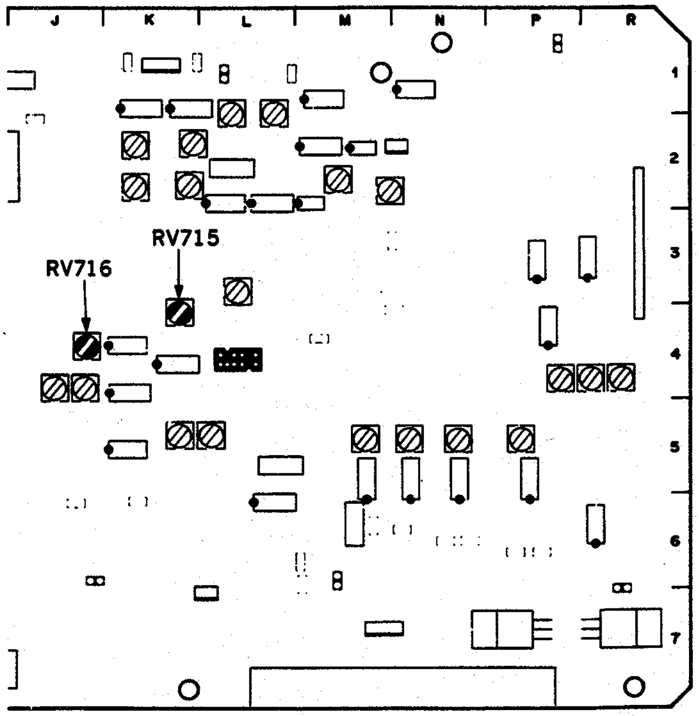
11-3-11. VIDEO OUT 1 Chroma Level Adjustment

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a vectorscope to VIDEO OUT 1 connector.	VIDEO OUT 1 Picture of the vectorscope  (A) Set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale. All dots should be inside the ⊞ mark on the vectorscope by adjust RV716 and RV715 alternately.	(A) Burst PHASE control/vectorscope (B) V axis (ENC R—Y) ⊘RV716/VP-33 (J-4) (C) U axis (ENC R—Y) ⊘RV715/VP-33 (K-4) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

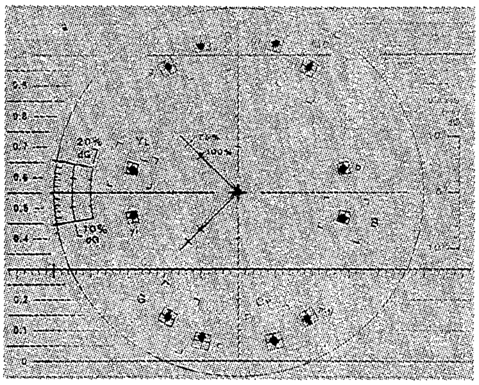
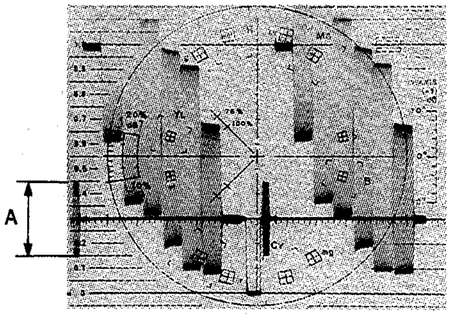
VP-33 board



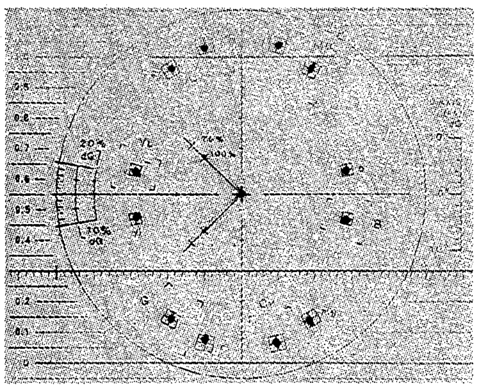
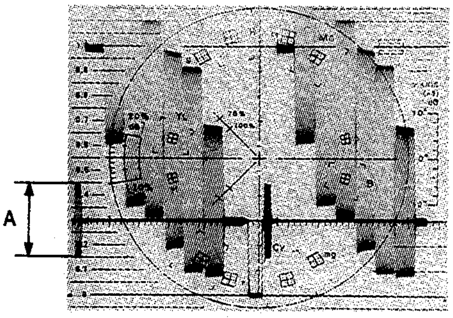
APPLICATION : 11-3-11.



11-3-13. VIDEO OUT 2 Chroma Level and Burst Level Check

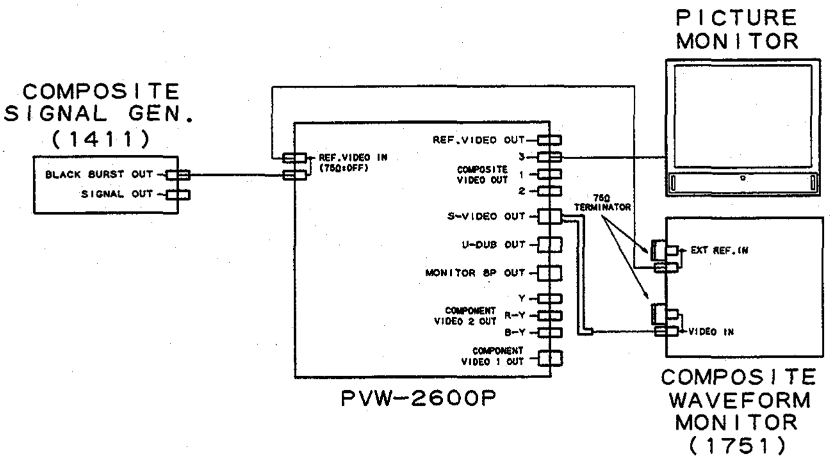
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector-monitor to VIDEO OUT 2 connector. Step 1 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope, set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale by PHASE control.	VIDEO OUT 2 Picture of the vectorscope  All dots should be inside the ⊞ mark on the vectorscope.	(Chroma level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2
Step 2 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a waveform monitor.	VIDEO OUT 2 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=300±6 mV p-p	(Burst level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

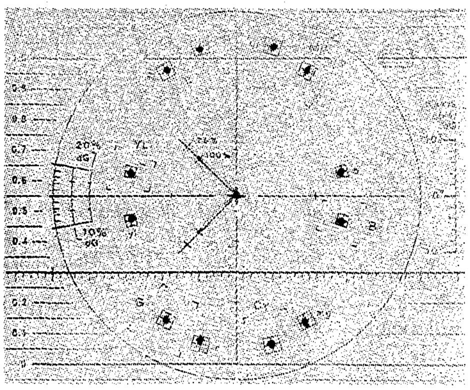
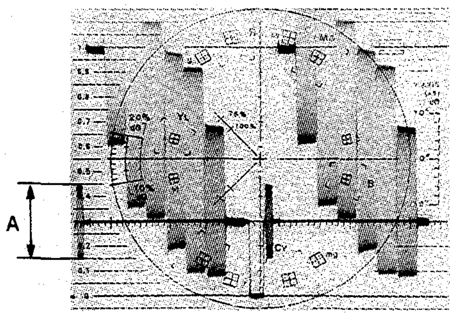
11-3-14. VIDEO OUT 3 Chroma Level and Burst Level Check

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector-monitor to VIDEO OUT 3 connector. Step 1 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope, set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale by PHASE control.	VIDEO OUT 3 Picture of the vectorscope  All dots should be inside the ⊞ mark on the vectorscope.	(Chroma level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2
Step 2 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a waveform monitor.	VIDEO OUT 3 Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=300±6 mV p-p	(Burst level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2

11-3-15. MONITOR OUT Chroma Level and Burst Level Check

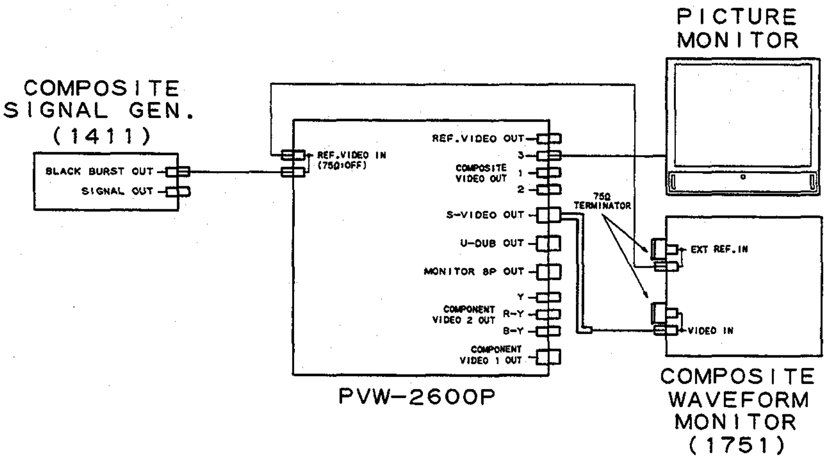
[CONNECTION]

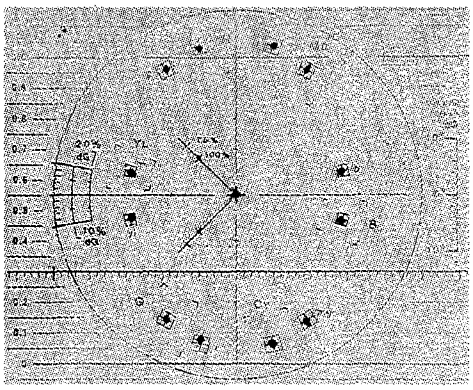
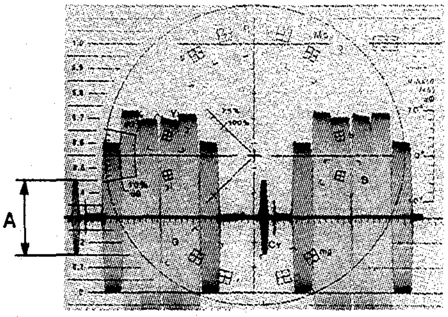

COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
3
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
Y
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
75Ω TERMINATOR
PVW-2600P
PICTURE MONITOR
EXT REF. IN
VIDEO IN
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector-monitor to the TV terminal (2-6(G)) of MONITOR OUT (TV-8P) connector. Step 1 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope, set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale by PHASE control.	MONITOR OUT Picture of the vectorscope  All dots should be inside the double size area of the ⊞ mark on the vectorscope.	(Chroma level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO
Step 2 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a waveform monitor.	MONITOR OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=300±15 mV p-p	(Burst level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO

11-3-16. S-VIDEO OUT Chroma Level and Burst Level Check

[CONNECTION]


COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P
75Ω TERMINATOR
PICTURE MONITOR
EXT REF.IN
VIDEO IN
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00~17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector-monitor to the C terminal (4-2G) of S-VIDEO OUT connector. Step 1 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope, set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale by PHASE control.	S-VIDEO C OUT Picture of the vectorscope  All dots should be inside the triple size area of the ⊞ mark on the vectorscope.	(Chroma level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO
Step 2 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a waveform monitor.	S-VIDEO C OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  A=300±45 mV p-p	(Burst level check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO

VIDEO OVERALL

SECTION 12
VIDEO OVERALL ALIGNMENT

[Equipment Required]

- Oscilloscope (TEKTRONIX 2445 or equivalent)
- Signal Generator
  - Component SG (TEKTRONIX TSG-300 or equivalent)
  - Composite SG (TEKTRONIX 1411 or equivalent)
  - Digital Composite (TEKTRONIX TSG-271 or equivalent)
- Network Analyzer (ANRITSU MS-420B or equivalent)
- Waveform Monitor
  - Component (TEKTRONIX WFM300/WFM300A/1781R or equivalent)
  - Composite (TEKTRONIX 1481C/1751/1781R or equivalent)
- Spectrum Analyzer (ADVANTEST R4131 B/D or equivalent)
- Picture Monitor
- Head Coupling Tool
- Alignment Tape CR5-2A PS (part No. 8-960-098-44)

Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK
0: 00	75% Color Bars
3: 00	60% Multi burst Y: 0.5,1.0,2.0,3.0,4.1,4.5 MHz C: 0.2, 0.5,1.0,1.5,2.0 MHz
6: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T
9: 00	Pulse & bar
11: 00	Quad phase
13: 00	C-Monoscope (Switching Position is shifted.)
15: 00	

- Alignment Tape CR5-1B PS (part No. 8-960-096-91)

Contents

TIME min s	VIDEO TRACK	AFM
0: 00	RF Sweep Marker 1,2,4,6,8,10,12 MHz	No-Signal
2: 00	60% H. Sweep (CTDM) Marker 0.5,1,2,3,4,5 MHz	
5: 00	Pulse & Bar (CTDM)	
8: 00	Multi Burst Y: 0.5,1,2,4.5,5.5 MHz C: 0.2, 0.5,1,1.5,2 MHz	
11: 00	Pulse & Bar	
14: 00	100% Color Bars	400 Hz Sine Wave 25 kHz Deviation
16: 30		75 kHz Deviation
17: 00	50% Bowtie & 10T	No-Signal
19: 00	Line 17A	
22: 00	Quad Phase	
24: 00	50% Flat Field	
26: 00	100% Color Bars with dropout	
28: 00	Composite H. Sweep with VISC	
30: 00		

[Switch/Setup menu Setting]

This setting should not be changed in position unless otherwise specified.

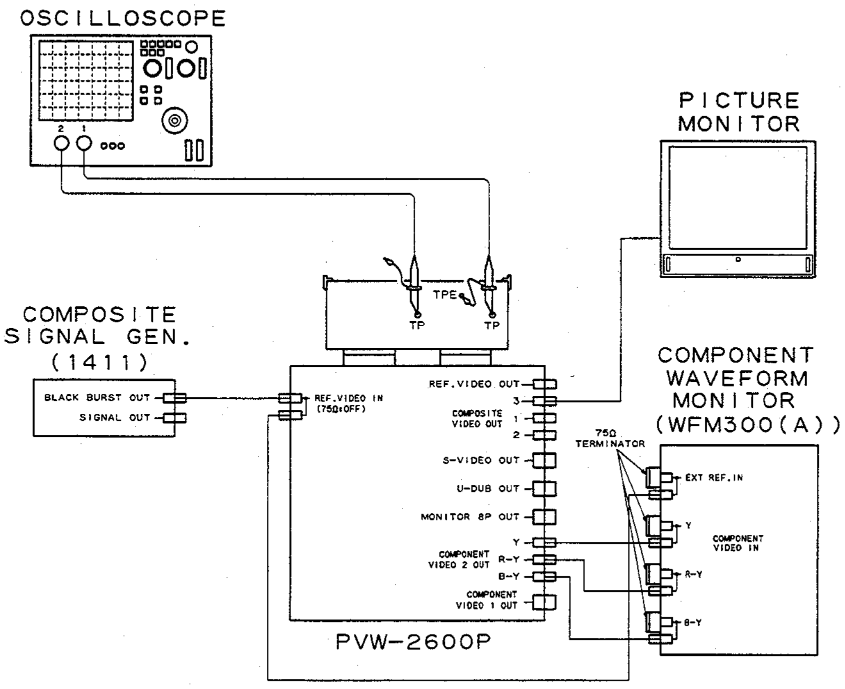
<Control Panel>
upper
LOCAL/REMOTE: LOCAL
lower
CTL/TC/U-BIT: TC

<Sub Control Panel>
CHARACTER: ON
TC: LTC
CAPSTAN LOCK: 8FD
TBC CONTROL: LOCAL
VIDEO: PRESET
CHROMA: PRESET
SET UP: PRESET
Y/C DELAY: PRESET

[Connection]

Connect some equipment as following unless otherwise specified.

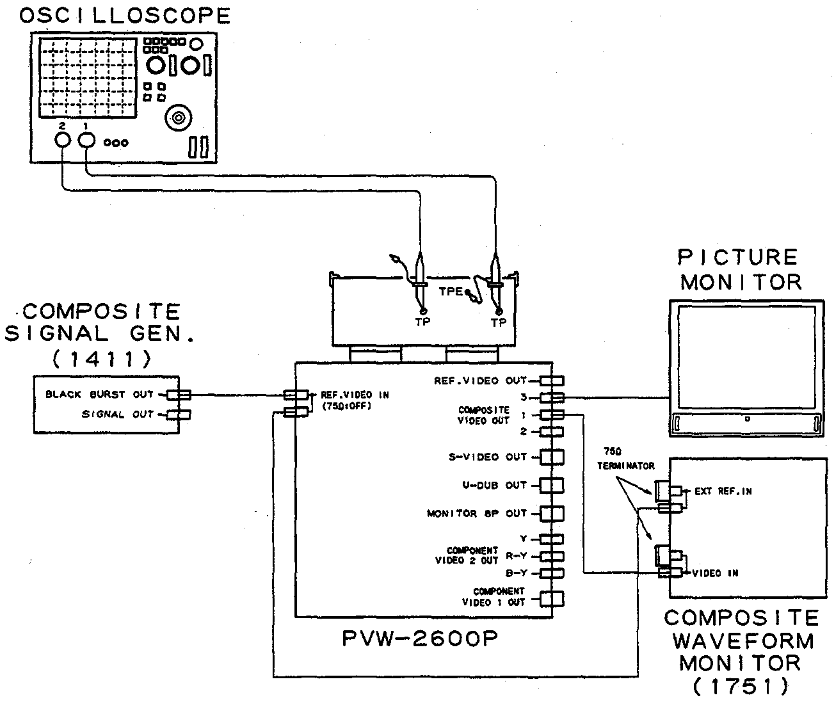
CONNECTION1
SG 1411/Waveform Monitor WFM-300 (A)/Oscilloscope/Picture Monitor



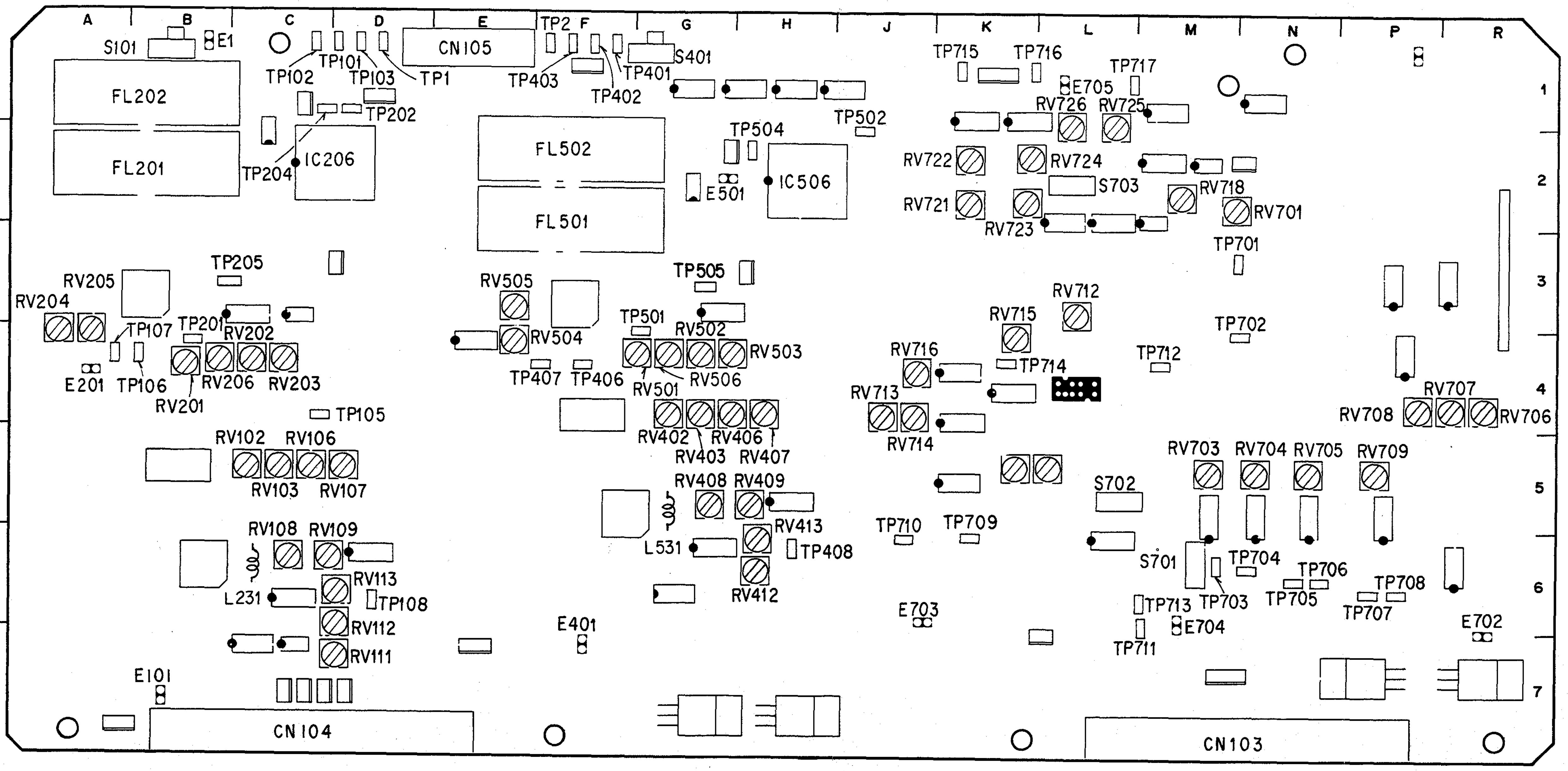
OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
PICTURE MONITOR
TPE
TP
TP
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P
COMPONENT WAVEFORM MONITOR (WFM300(A))
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO IN
R-Y
B-Y

CONNECTION2

SG 1411/waveform Monitor 1751/Oscilloscope/Picture Monitor

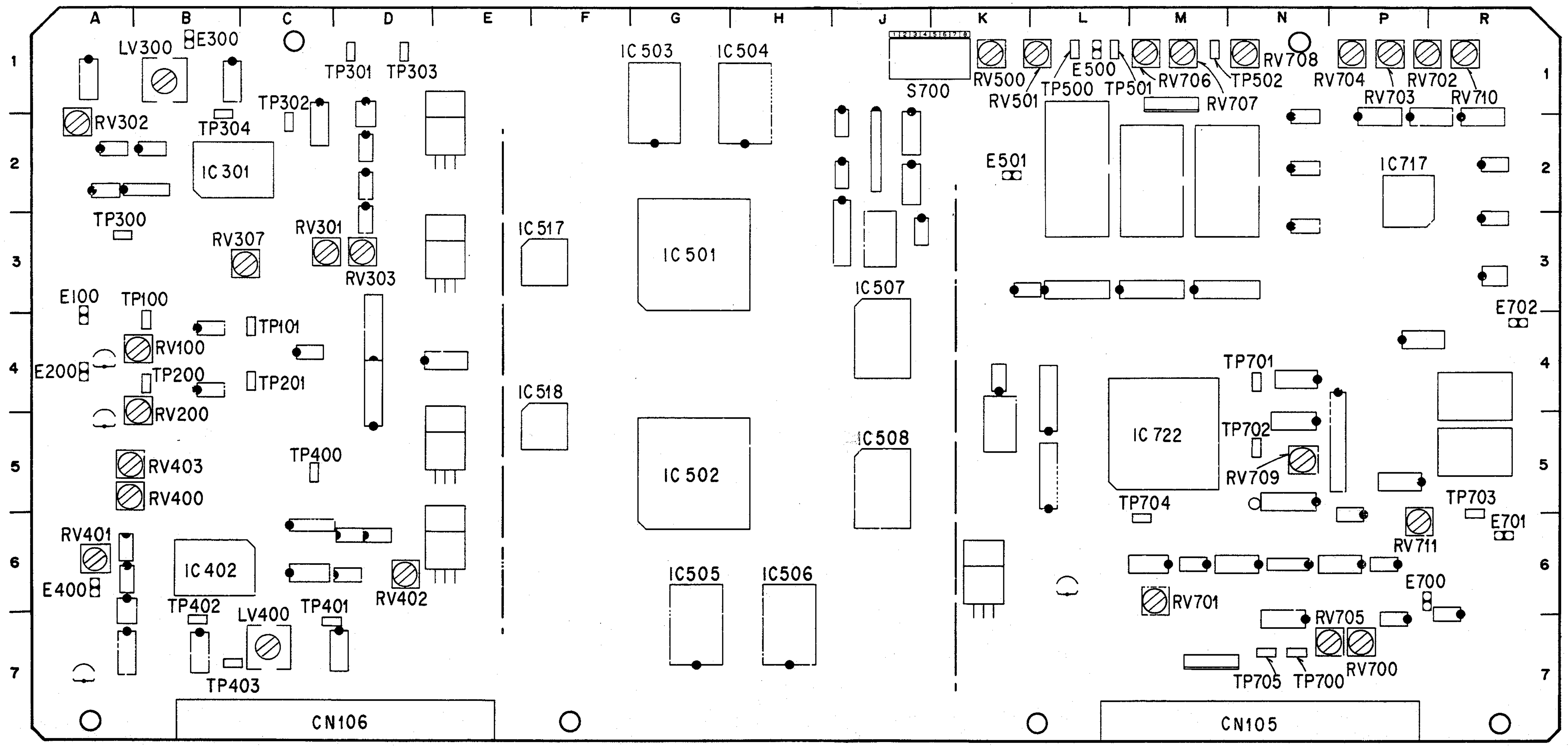

OSCILLOSCOPE
2
1
TPE
TP
TP
PICTURE MONITOR
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (1411)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
3
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
VIDEO IN
PVW-2600P
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

VP-33 board (A SIDE)

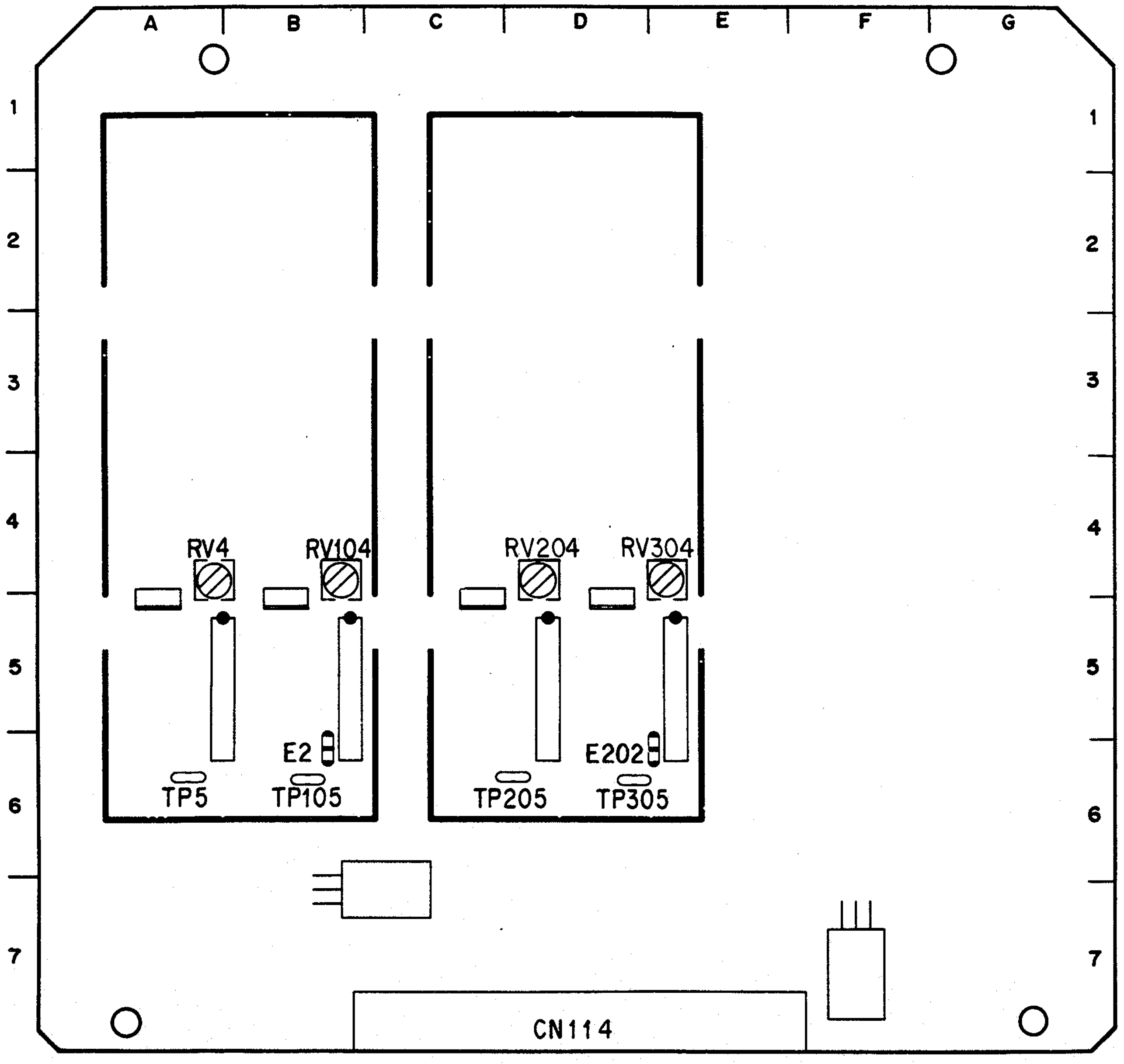


A
B
C
D
E
TP2
F
G
H
J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
S101
E1
TP102
TP101
TP103
TP1
CN105
TP403
TP401
TP402
S401
FL202
FL201
TP202
TP204
IC206
FL502
FL501
TP504
E501
IC506
TP502
TP715
TP716
TP717
E705
RV726
RV725
RV722
RV724
S703
RV721
RV723
RV718
RV701
TP701
TP205
RV205
RV204
TP107
TP201
RV202
E201
TP106
RV201
RV206
RV203
TP105
RV505
RV504
TP407
TP406
TP505
TP501
RV502
RV501
RV506
RV503
RV712
RV715
TP714
RV716
RV713
RV714
TP702
TP712
RV707
RV708
RV706
RV102
RV106
RV103
RV107
RV402
RV406
RV403
RV407
RV408
RV409
RV413
TP408
L531
RV412
RV108
RV109
RV113
TP108
L231
RV112
RV111
E101
CN104
E401
TP710
TP709
E703
S702
RV703
RV704
RV705
RV709
S701
TP704
TP706
TP713
TP703
TP705
TP708
TP707
E704
TP711
E702
CN103

TBC-18 board (A SIDE)

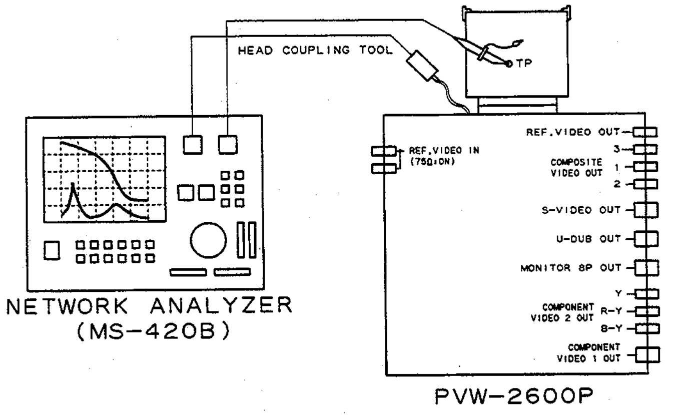

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
LV300
E300
TP301
TP303
IC503
IC504
S700
RV500
RV501
E500
TP500
TP501
RV706
TP502
RV707
RV708
RV704
RV703
RV702
RV710
RV302
TP302
TP304
IC301
E501
IC717
TP300
RV307
RV301
RV303
IC517
IC501
IC507
E100
TP100
TP101
RV100
E200
TP200
TP201
RV200
E702
IC518
TP701
IC722
TP702
RV709
IC508
RV403
RV400
TP400
IC502
TP704
TP703
RV711
E701
RV401
E400
IC402
RV402
IC505
IC506
E700
RV701
TP402
LV400
TP401
RV705
TP403
TP705
TP700
RV700
CN106
CN105

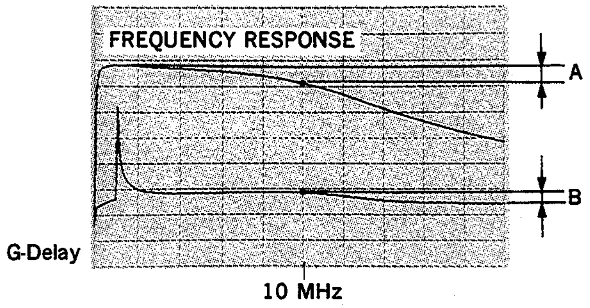
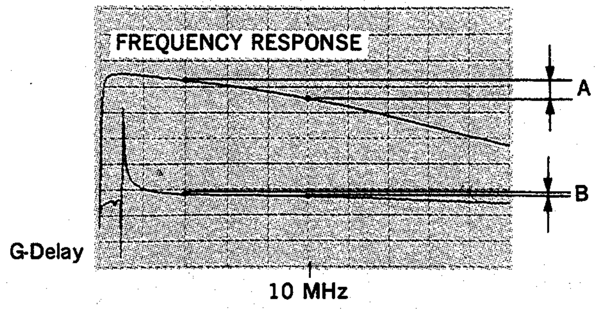
RP-57 board (A SIDE)


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV4
RV104
RV204
RV304
E2
E202
TP5
TP105
TP205
TP305
CN114

12-1. Y and C PB RF FREQUENCY RESPONSE ADJUSTMENT

[CONNECTION]

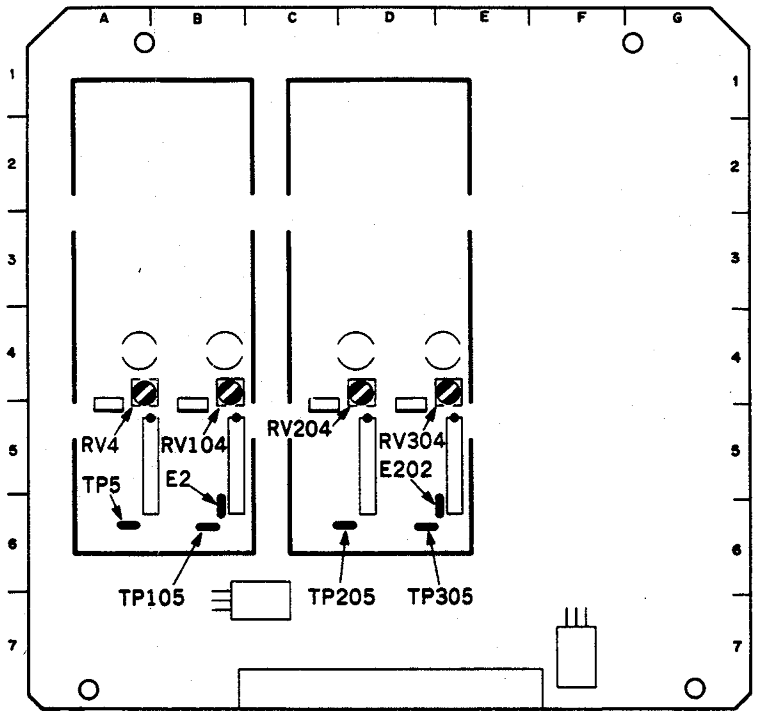

HEAD COUPLING TOOL
TP
NETWORK ANALYZER
(MS-420B)
REF.VIDEO IN
(75Ω:ON)
REF.VIDEO OUT
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
3
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
Y
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
PVW-2600P

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Attach a head coupling tool to the drum. Depending on the channel to be adjusted, replace the tool to the head for its channel. • Depending on the channel to be adjusted, connect the INPUT probe of a network analyzer to the test point for its channel. • Use the network analyzer in the following modes: RECALL-5 for Y adjustment RECALL-6 for C adjustment • After adjustment is completed, remove the tool.	CH-A: TP5-E2(GND)/RP-57(A-6)(B-6) CH-B: TP105-E2(GND)/RP-57(B-6)(B-6) Picture of the network analyzer  $A=-1.5^{+1.0}_{-1.5}$ dB $B=-2\pm3$ ns	(Y PB RF F. RESP.) CH-A: ⊘RV4/RP-57(A-4) CH-B: ⊘RV104/RP-57(B-4)
	CH-A: TP205-E202(GND)/RP-57(D-6)(E-6) CH-B: TP305-E202(GND)/RP-57(D-6)(E-6) Picture of the network analyzer  $A=-3\pm1$ dB $B=-5\pm3$ ns	(C PB RF F. RESP.) CH-A: ⊘RV204/RP-57(D-4) CH-B: ⊘RV304/RP-57(E-4)

NOTE: This adjustment is impossible without a network analyzer.
If any of RV4, RV104, RV204 and RV304 is moved unintentionally, as a temporary measure, set the volume to the same mechanical position as any other volume which is not moved.

APPLICATION: 12-1.

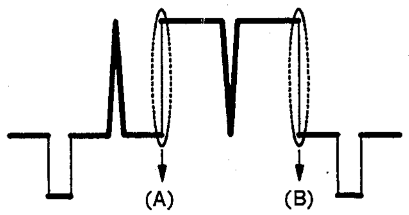
RP-57 board


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV4
TP5
RV104
E2
RV204
RV304
E202
TP105
TP205
TP305

12-2. NOISE REDUCE ADJUSTMENT

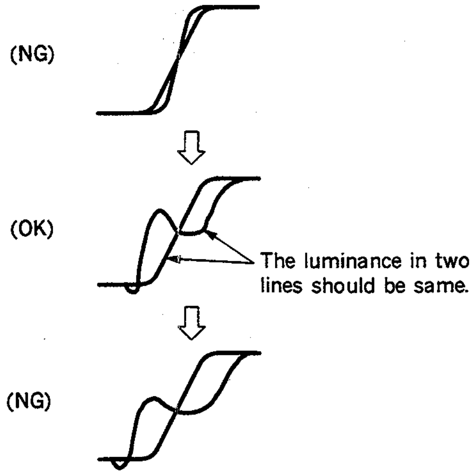
- Before performing this adjustment, use tape aligned by the PVW-2800P.
- INPUT SELECT switch: COMPOSITE
- Supply a pulse & bar signal (−1.5 dB) to the PVW-2800P's VIDEO INPUT connector.
- Record the pulse & bar signal.

<table>
<tr><th>Preparations for adjustment</th><th>Specifications</th><th>Adjustments</th></tr>
<tr>
<td>
• Play back the pulse & bar signal that is recorded on tape by PVW-2800P as mentioned above.
• Connect the waveform monitor to the COMPONENT 2 Y OUTPUT connector.
• Set S700-2 (ENR TEST) (J-1) on the TBC-18 board to ON.
• After adjustment is completed, set S700-2 to OFF.
</td>
<td>
COMPONENT 2 Y OUT
waveform of the waveform monitor

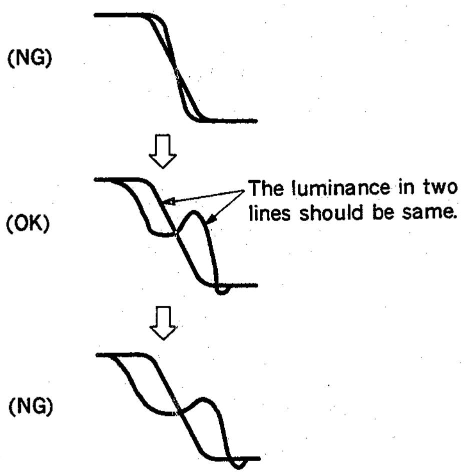


Expanded

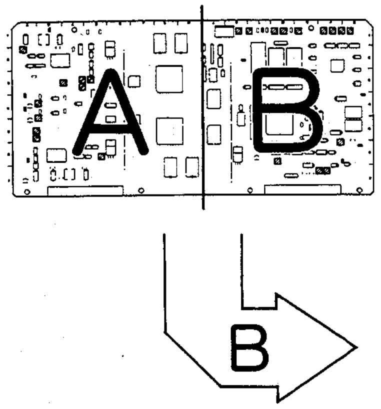
(A) Confirm that rising edge changes as below, and set to (OK) position.


(NG)
(OK)
The luminance in two lines should be same.
(NG)

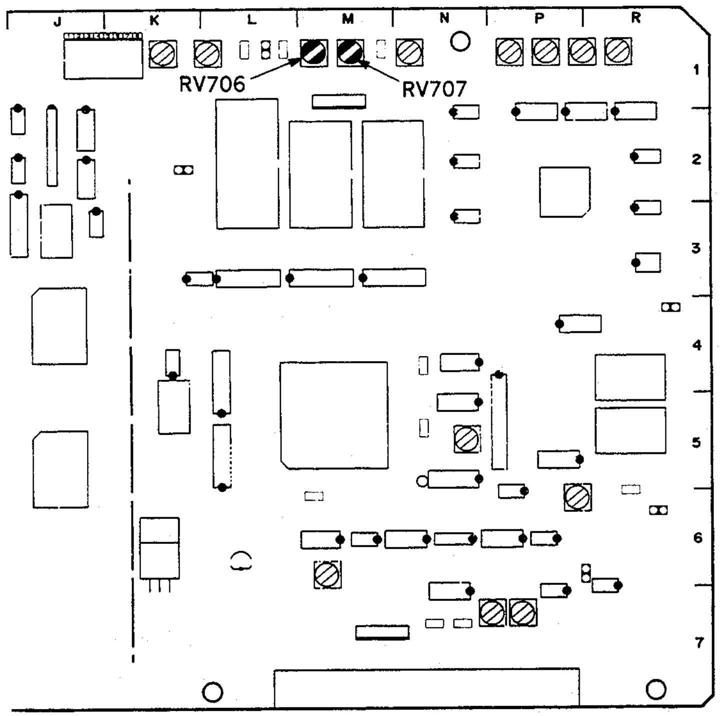
(B) Confirm that falling edge changes as below, and set to (OK) position.


(NG)
(OK)
The luminance in two lines should be same.
(NG)
</td>
<td>
(A) (POSI EDGE)
⊘ RV706/TBC-18 (M-1)
(B) (NEGA EDGE)
⊘ RV707/TBC-18 (M-1)
TRIG: INT/WFM
CONNECTION 1
</td>
</tr>
</table>

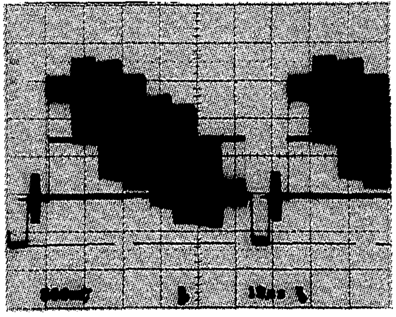
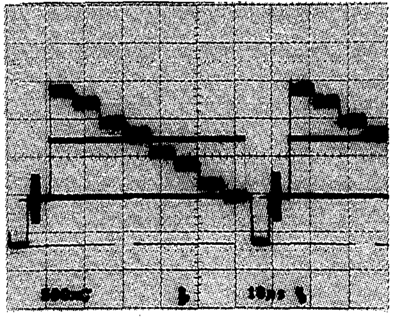
TBC-18 board



APPLICATION: 12-2.

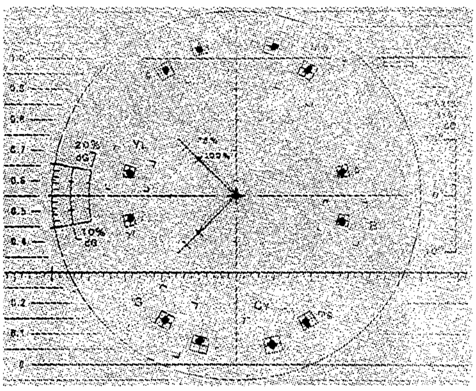

J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV706
RV707

12-3. Y and C BID LEVEL CHECK

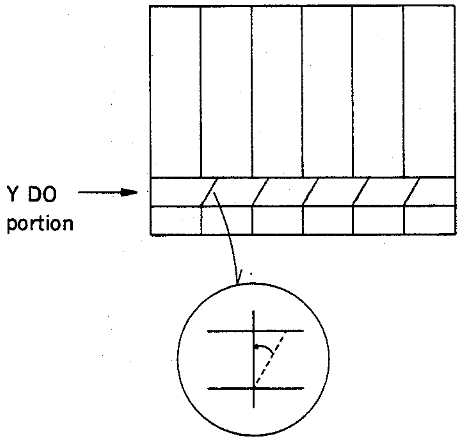
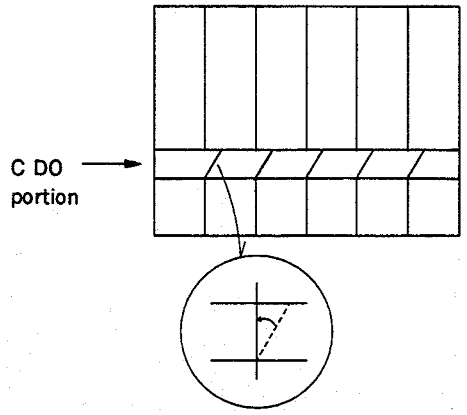
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Connect a color-monitor to MONITOR OUT (TV-8P) connector. Step1 • Check using the color monitor. • (Reference) Check using the waveform/vector monitor as a waveform monitor.	MONITOR OUT picture of the color monitor (Reference) Waveform of the waveform monitor (VIDEO OUT 1) shuttle mode: +10 times speed  shuttle mode: +24 times speed  Check the following conditions in shuttle mode: (1) When set to the speed multiplied by −10,−1,+1,+10: Colored picture should appear on the color monitor. (2) When set to the speed multiplied by −24,+24: Black and white picture should appear on the color monitor.	(Y BID Level Check) TRIG: REF.VIDEO CONNECTION 2

Continues to the next page.

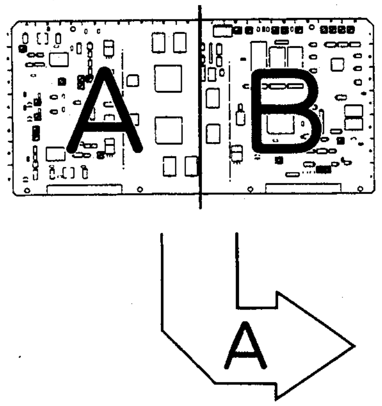
12-3. Y and C BID LEVEL CHECK (Continued)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14: 00—17: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Connect a color monitor to MONITOR OUT (TV-8P) connector. Step2 • Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope. Set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale.	VIDEO OUT 1 Picture of the vectorscope  Check the following conditions in shuttle mode: (1) When set to the speed multiplied by −10,−1,+1,+10: All dots should be inside the double size area of the respective ⊞ mark on the vectorscope. (2) When set to the speed multiplied by −24,+24: All the dots should disappear.	(C BID Level Check) TRIG: REF.VIDEO CONNECTION 2

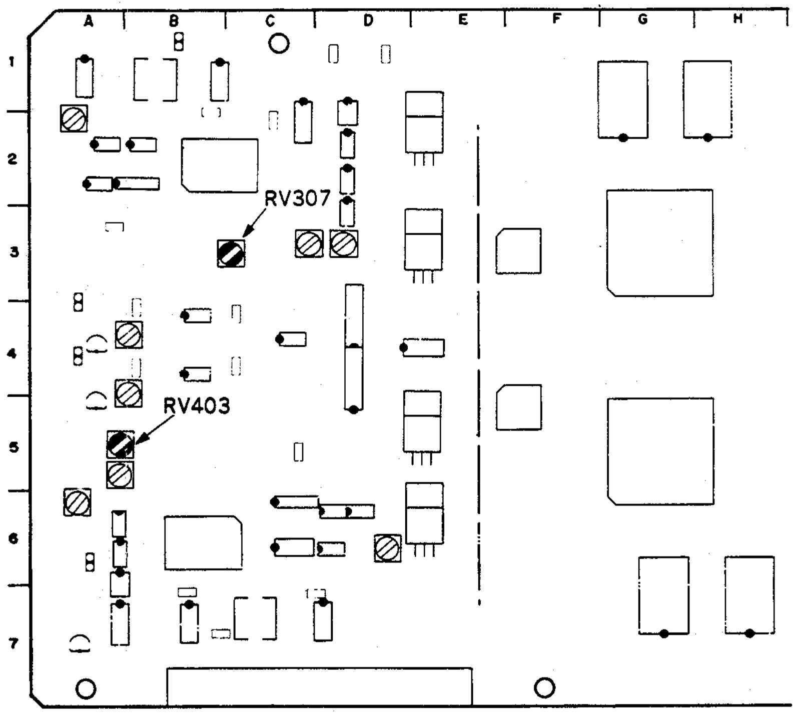
12-4. Y and C WCK FREQUENCY ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step1 • Set S700-4 (COLOR MUTE) on the TBC-18 board to ON. • Play back the color bars signal with dropout portion (26: 00—28: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a monitor TV to the VIDEO OUT 3 connector. • After adjustment is completed, set S700-4 on the TBC-18 board to OFF.	VIDEO OUT 3 Picture on the monitor TV  Adjust to a straight line.	(Y WCK Adjustment) (Y FREQ) ⊘RV307/TBC-18 (C-3) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 2
Step2 • Set S700-3 (Y MUTE) on the TBC-18 board to ON. • Play back the color bars signal with dropout portion (26: 00—28: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a monitor TV to the VIDEO OUT 3 connector. • After adjustment is completed, set S700-3 on the TBC-18 board to OFF.	VIDEO OUT 3 Picture on the monitor TV  Adjust to a straight line.	(C WCK Adjustment) (C FREQ) ⊘RV403/TBC-18 (A-5) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1

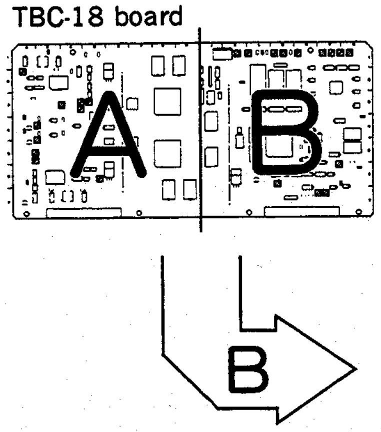
TBC-18 board



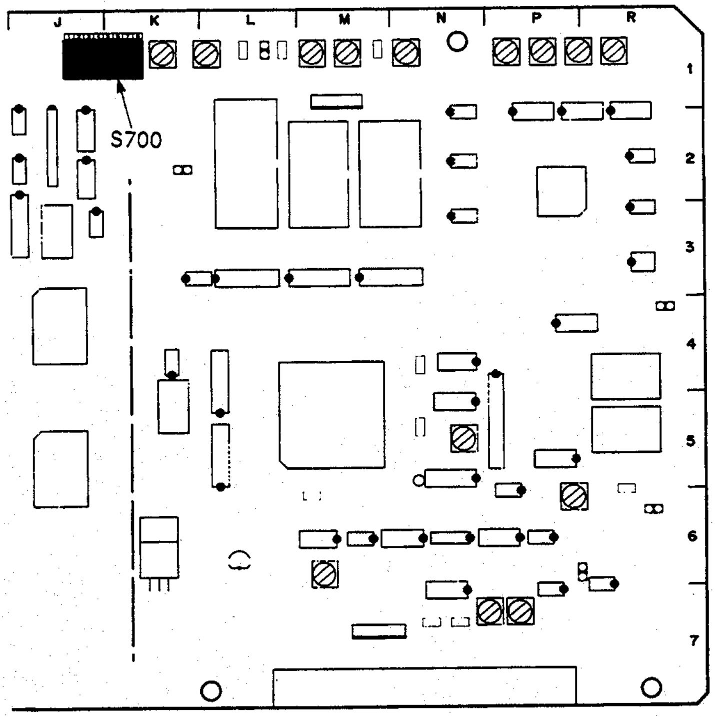
APPLICATION : 12-4.



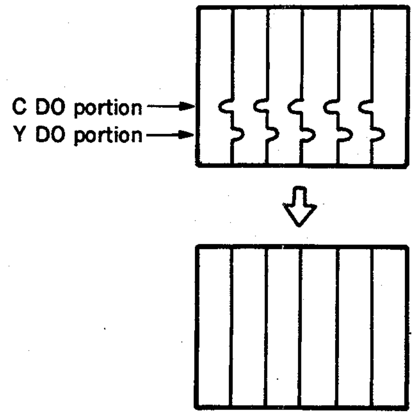
TBC-18 board



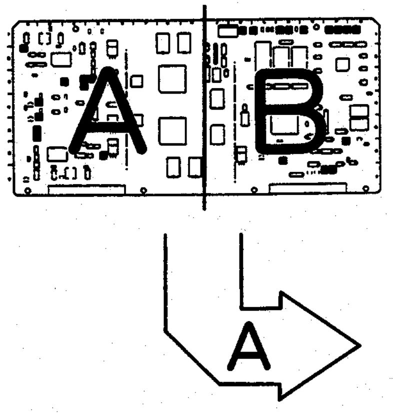
APPLICATION : 12-4.



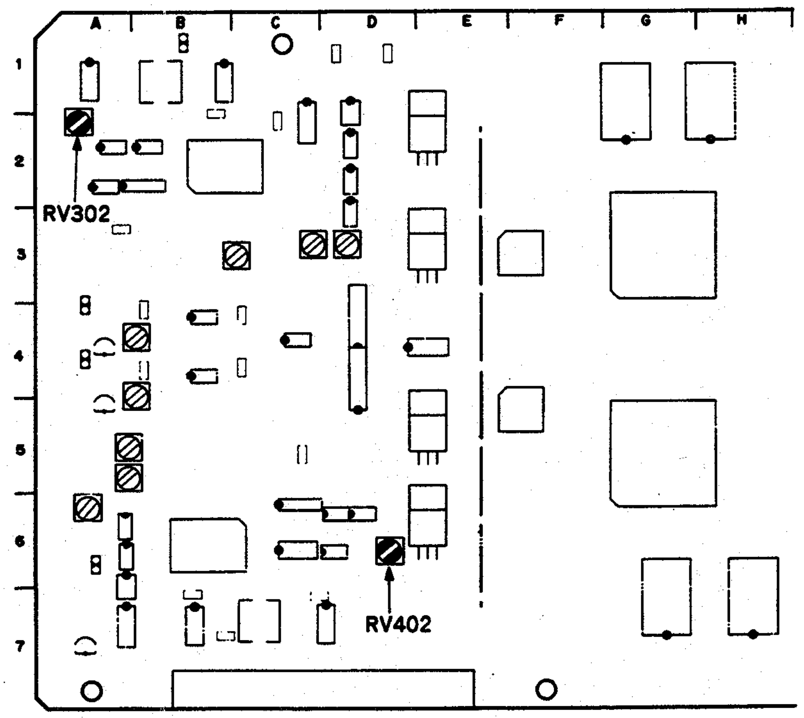
12-5. Y and C ERROR OFFSET ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal with drop out portion (26:00—28:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CHARACTER switch (sub control panel): OFF • Connect a monitor TV to VIDEO OUT 1 connector.	Monitor display  	(A) (Y ERR CLIP) ⊘RV302/TBC-18(A-2) (B) (C ERR CLIP) ⊘RV402/TBC-18(D-6)
• After adjustment is completed, set the CHARACTER switch to ON.	(A) The Y DO portions should disappear on the monitor display by RV302. (B) The C DO portions should disappear on the monitor display by RV402.	CONNECTION 1

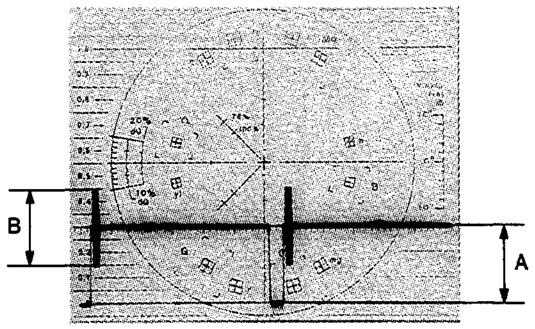
TBC-18 board



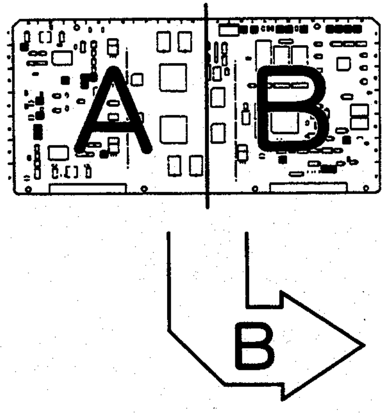
APPLICATION: 12-5.



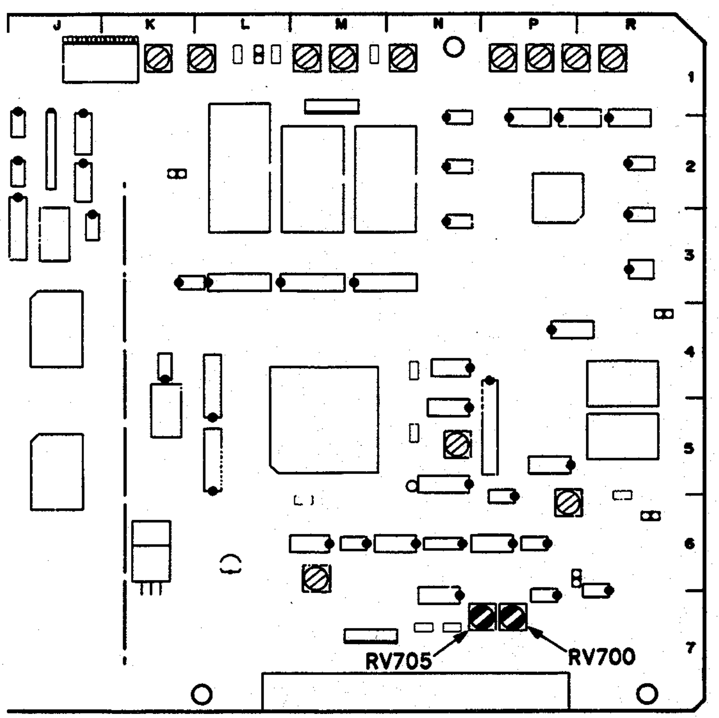
12-6. INT REF. VIDEO OUT LEVEL ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect a waveform monitor to REF. VIDEO OUTPUT connector. • Disconnect the REF. VIDEO INPUT connector to put the unit into INT REF. mode.	REF.VIDEO OUT Waveform of the waveform monitor  	(A) (SYNC LEVEL) ⊘RV700/TBC-18(P-7) (B) (BURST LEVEL) ⊘RV705/TBC-18(P-7)
• After adjustment is completed, connect the REF VIDEO INPUT connector.	A=300±1.5 mV p-p B=300±1.5 mV p-p	TRIG: REF.VIDEO CONNECTION 2

TBC-18 board

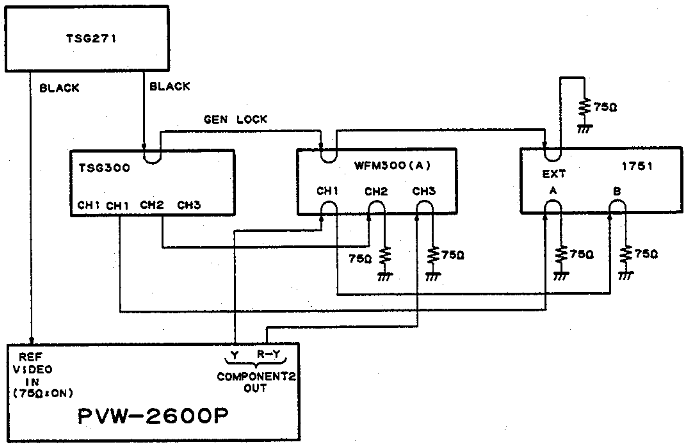


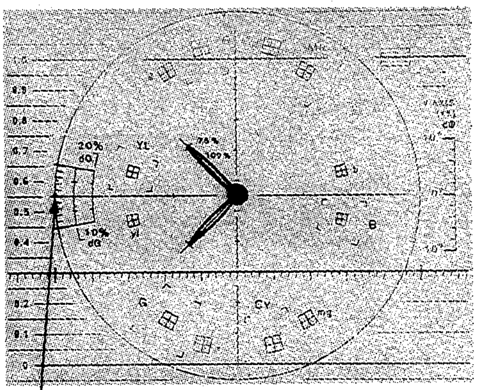
APPLICATION: 12-6.



12-7. PB VIDEO PHASE ADJUSTMENT

[CONNECTION]

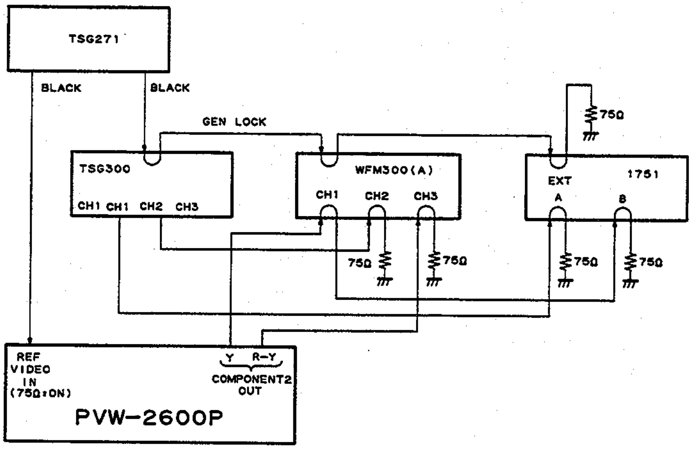

TSG271
BLACK
BLACK
GEN LOCK
TSG300
CH1 CH1 CH2 CH3
WFM300(A)
CH1 CH2 CH3
EXT
1751
A
B
75Ω
75Ω
75Ω
75Ω
75Ω
REF VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
Y R-Y
COMPONENT2 OUT
PVW-2600P

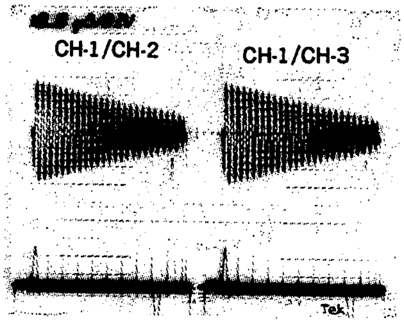
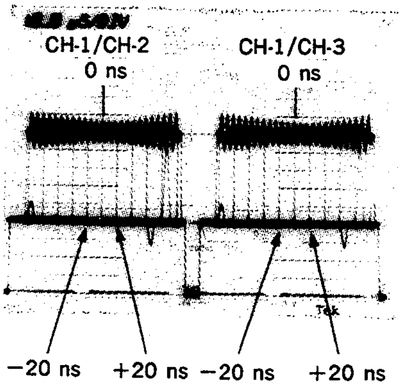
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
- CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 2FD - Connect the CH-A of a waveform/vector monitor to the CH-1 (Y) of a component signal generator. - Turn the signal of the component signal generator into bowtie signal. - Play back the bowtie signal portion (17:00—19:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. Step 1 - Use the waveform/vector monitor as a vectorscope.	COMPONENT2 Y OUT Picture of the vectorscope  SYNC CH-A → CH-B 1. Set the SYNC control on the sub control panel to the mechanical center. 2. Use 1751's PHASE control to adjust the SYNC phase of CH-A as shown above. 3. Change the CH-A to CH-B of 1751. Then, make the SYNC phase of CH-B coincides with the SYNC phase of CH-A with the SYNC control on the sub control panel. (Note: The dot position should be adjusted in the direction of the shortest movement.)	SYNC control /sub control panel TRIG: EXT/WFM

Continues to the next page.

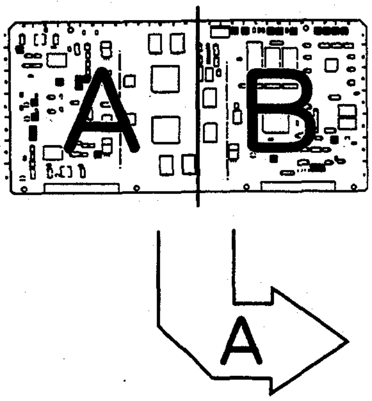
12-7. PB VIDEO PHASE ADJUSTMENT (continued)

[CONNECTION]

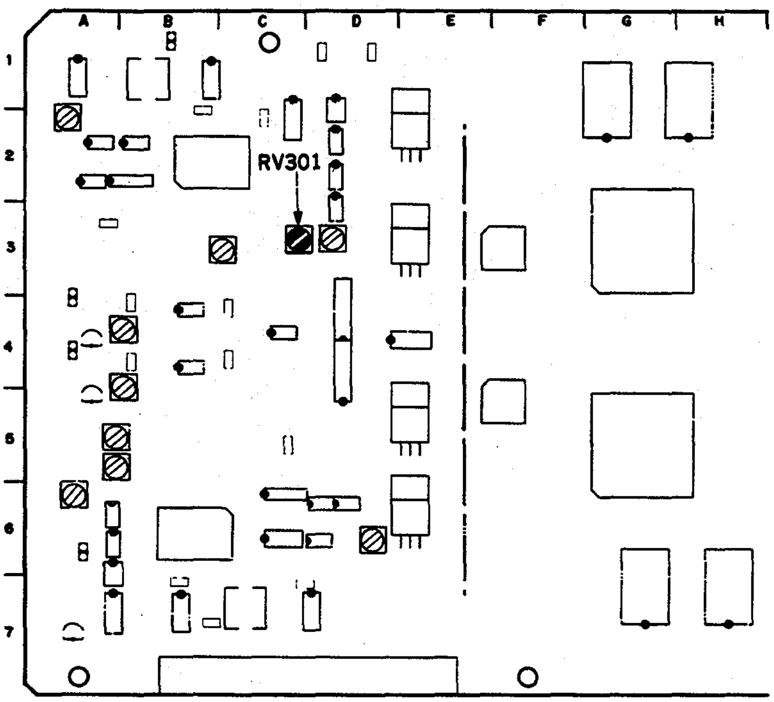

TSG271
BLACK
BLACK
GEN LOCK
TSG300
CH1 CH1 CH2 CH3
WFM300(A)
CH1 CH2 CH3
75Ω
75Ω
75Ω
1751
EXT
A
B
75Ω
75Ω
REF VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
Y R-Y
COMPONENT2 OUT
PVW-2600P

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 2FD • Connect the CH-A of a waveform/vector monitor to the CH-1 (Y) of a component signal generator. • Turn the signal of the component signal generator into bowtie signal. • Play back the bowtie signal portion (17: 00—19: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. Step2 Set the waveform monitor to BOWTIE mode.	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT BOWTIE mode/PARADE of the waveform monitor Before adjustment  CH-1/CH-2 CH-1/CH-3 Tek ⇩ After adjustment  CH-1/CH-2 0 ns CH-1/CH-3 0 ns Tek −20 ns +20 ns −20 ns +20 ns Set the BOWTIE DIP points (cross points of the CH-1/CH-2 and CH-1/CH-3) on the center marker. 0±10 ns	(Y PHASE) ❷ RV301/TBC-18(C-3) TRIG: EXT/WFM

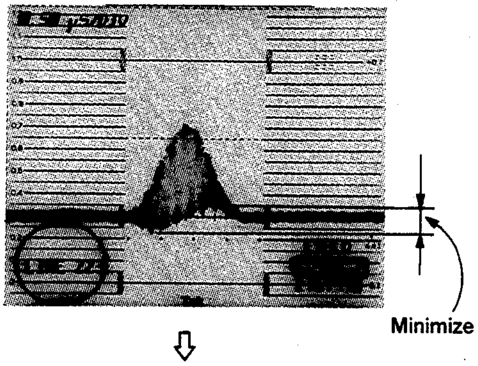
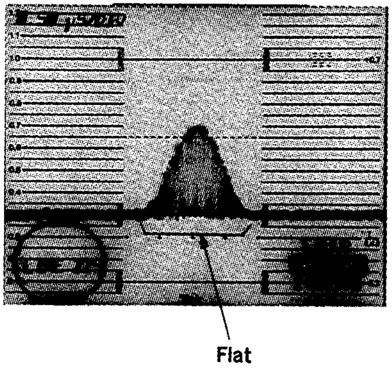
TBC-18 board



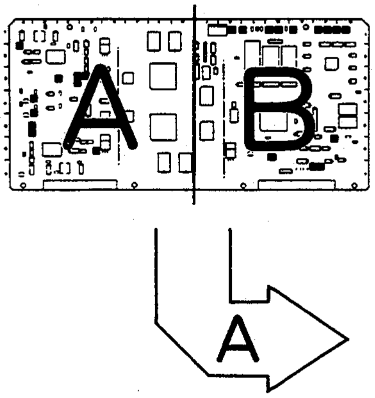
APPLICATION : 12-7.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV301

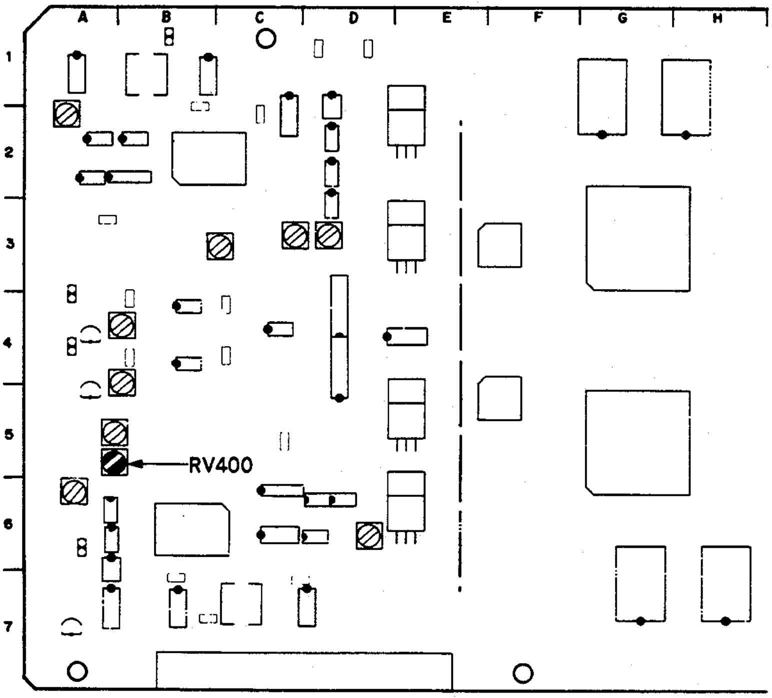
12-8. PB COMPOSITE Y/C DELAY ADJUSTMENT (METAL/OXIDE)

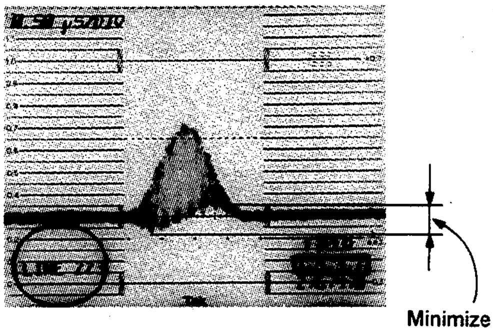
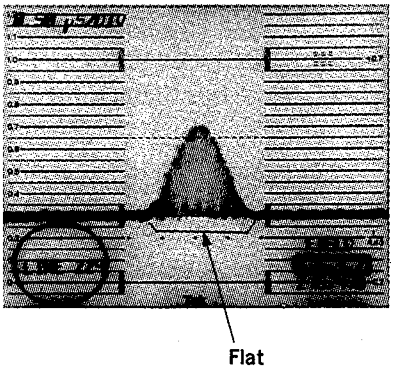
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 2FD • Connect a waveform monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. Step1 • Play back the 10T pulse of bowtie signal portion (17:00—19:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Select 195 line with the line selector of the waveform monitor.	VIDEO OUT 1 Waveform of the waveform monitor Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  	(Metal) ●RV400/TBC-18(A-5) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

TBC-18 board

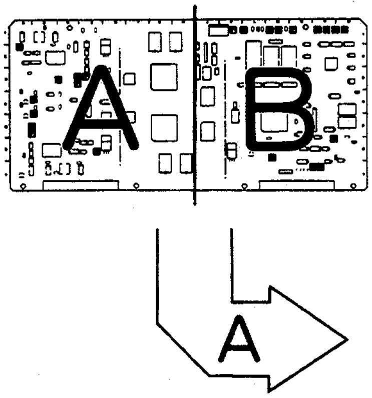


APPLICATION : 12-8. Step1

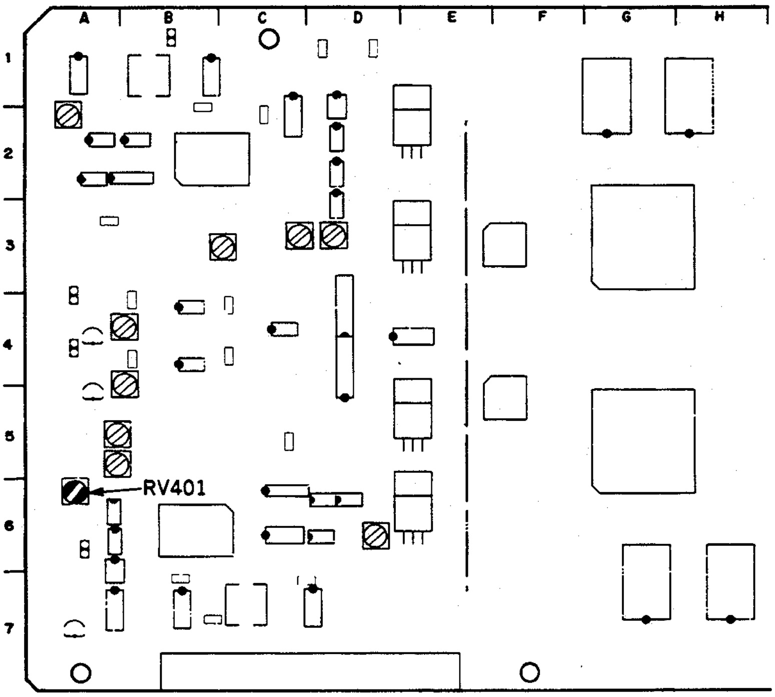


Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
NOTE: The metal adjustment in step 1 should be completed before this adjustment. Step2 • Play back the 10T pulse of bowtie signal portion (6:00—9:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS. • Select 195 line with the line selector of the waveform monitor.	VIDEO OUT 1 Waveform of the waveform monitor Before adjustment  Minimize ⇩ After adjustment  Flat	(Oxide) ⊘RV401/TBC-18(A-6) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

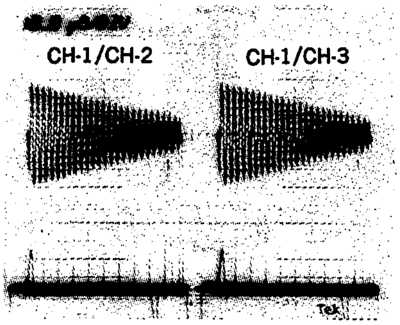
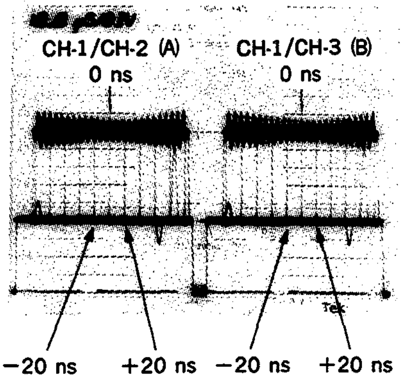
TBC-18 board



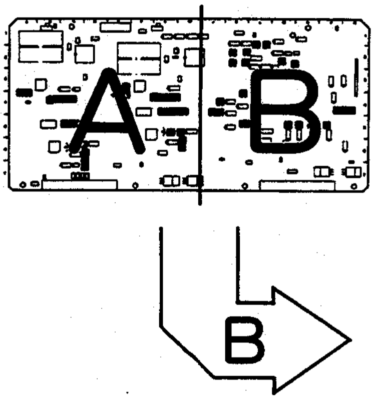
APPLICATION: 12-8. Step2



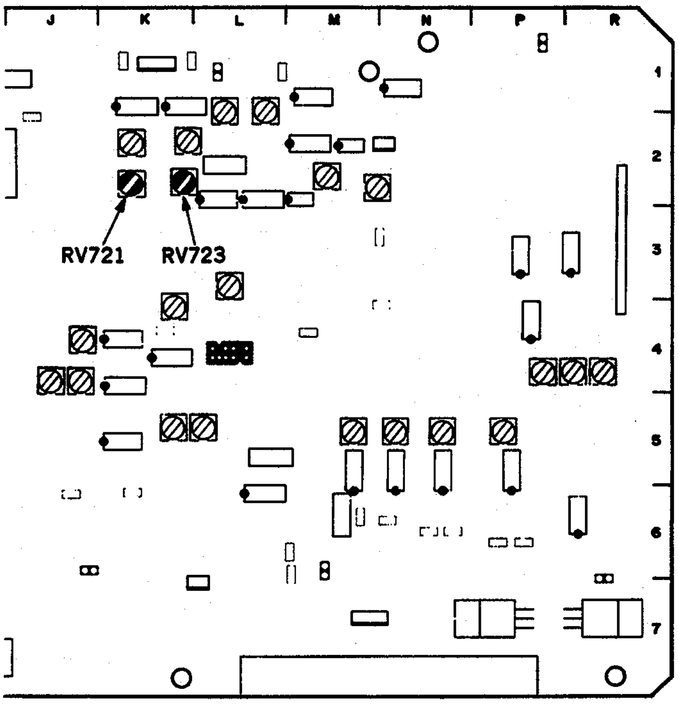
12-9. PB COMPONENT Y/C DELAY ADJUSTMENT (METAL/OXIDE)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
Step1 • Play back the bowtie signal portion (17:00—19:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	COMPONENT 2 OUT BOWTIE mode/PARADE of the waveform monitor Before adjustment  ⇩ After adjustment  CH-1/CH-2 (A) 0 ns CH-1/CH-3 (B) 0 ns −20 ns +20 ns −20 ns +20 ns Tek Set the each BOWTIE DIP point of (A) and (B) on the center marker. 0±10 ns	(Metal) (A) (B-Y DELAY) ⊘RV723/VP-33(K-2) (B) (R-Y DELAY) ⊘RV721/VP-33(K-2) TRIG: EXT/WFM CONNECTION 1
Step2 • Play back the bowtie signal portion (6:00—9:00) of the alignment tape CR5-2A PS.	COMPONENT 2 OUT BOWTIE mode of the waveform monitor The BOWTIE DIP point on CH-1/CH-2 and on CH-1/CH-3 should coincide with the center marker within the following range: 0±18 ns	(Oxide check) TRIG: EXT/WFM CONNECTION 1

VP-33 board

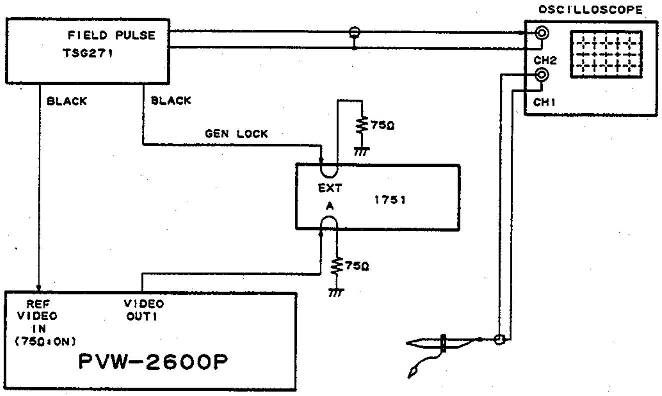


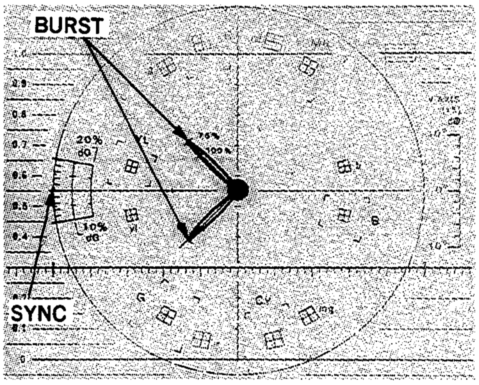
APPLICATION : 12-9.


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV721
RV723

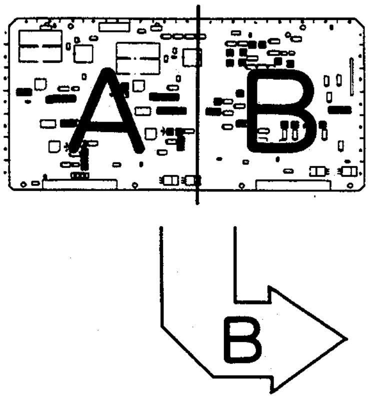
12-10. ENCODE CF PHASE ADJUSTMENT

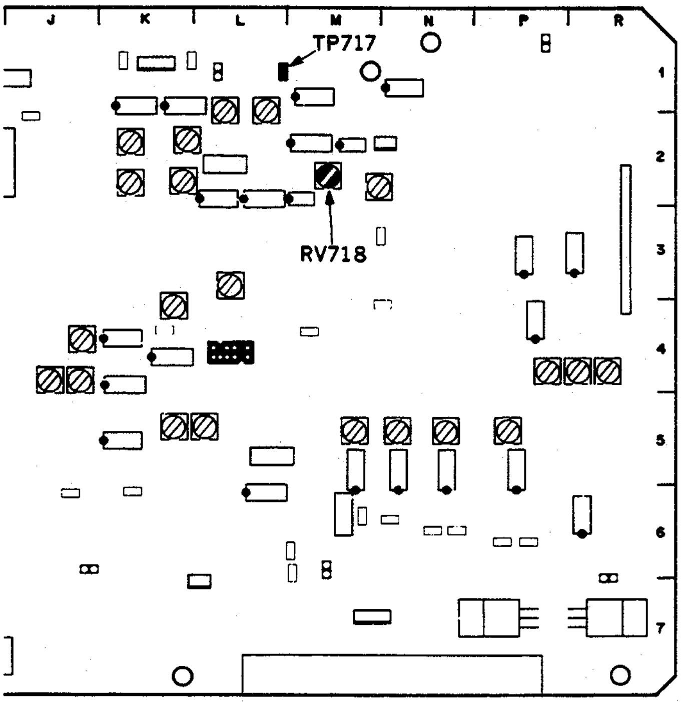
[CONNECTION]


OSCILLOSCOPE
FIELD PULSE
TSG271
CH2
CH1
BLACK
BLACK
GEN LOCK
75Ω
EXT
A
1751
75Ω
REF VIDEO IN (75Ω:ON)
VIDEO OUT1
PVW-2600P

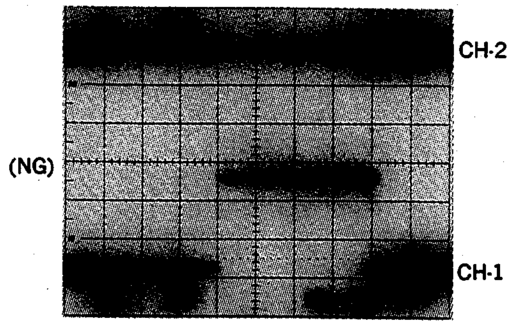
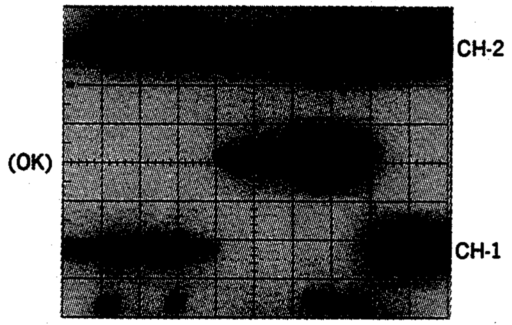
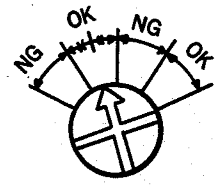
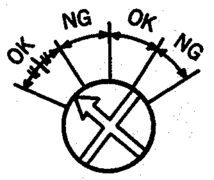
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • SC control (sub control panel): mechanical center	Step1 VIDEO OUT 1 Picture of the vectorscope  BURST SYNC 20% dG 10% dG (A) Set the dot of the burst on the normal position on the scale. (B) The SYNC should be in the same phase as the burst (SCH=0°).	(A) Burst Adjustment PHASE Control/Vectorscope (B) SYNC Adjustment SYNC control/sub control panel TRIG: EXT/WFM

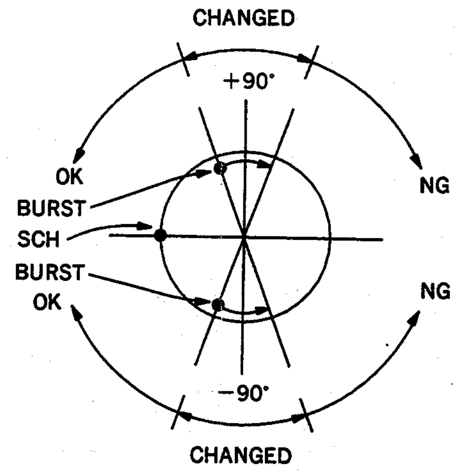
VP-33 board




J
K
L
M
N
P
R
TP717
RV718
1
2
3
4
5
6
7

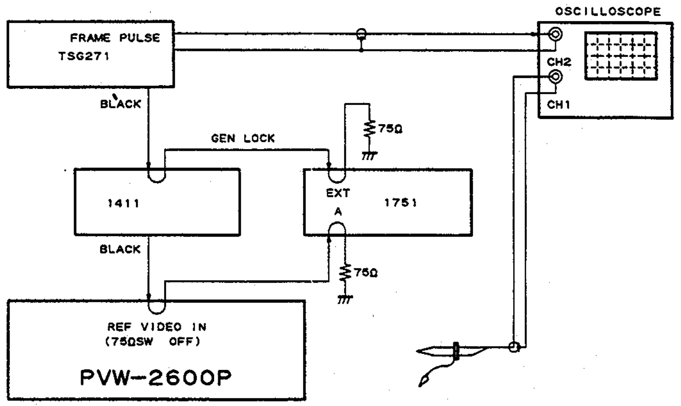
APPLICATION : 12-10. Step2

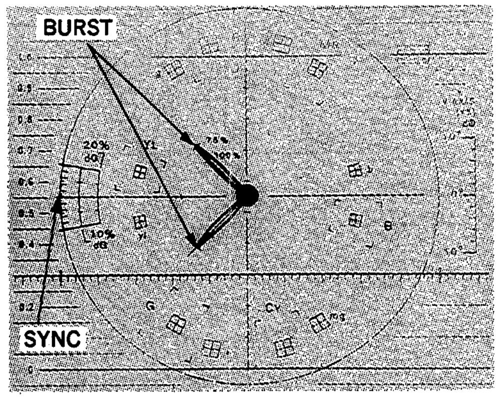
Preparations for adjustment	**Specifications**	**Adjustments**
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • SC control (sub control panel): mechanical center	Step2 CH-1 : TP717/VP-33(L-1) CH-2 : FRAME PULSE terminal/TSG271 Waveform of the oscilloscope  ⇩  (1) Turn RV718 counterclockwise fully. (2) When RV718 is turned clockwise gradually, the phase condition between CH1 and CH2 changes from NG to OK or OK to NG. (3) In case of the pattern of change is started to NG as shown in waveform picture, set RV718 to mechanical center of range of first OK. NG → OK → NG → OK ⏟ ↑ the mechanical center of this range  (4) In case of the pattern of change is started to OK as shown in waveform picture, set RV718 to mechanical center of range of first OK. OK → NG → OK → NG ⏟ ↑ the mechanical center of this range  * If the range of first OK is extremely narrow, set to mechanical center of range of second OK.	(CF ADJ) ⊘RV718/VP-33(M-2) TRIG: CH-2

Preparations for adjustment	**Specifications**	**Adjustments**
• Play back the color bars signal portion (14:00—17:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	Step3 While monitoring the burst phase with the vectorscope described in Step1, observe the CF phase for normal/inverted condition by the oscilloscope waveforms described in Step2. Check whether the adjustment position is in the center of the OK range or not. Use the SC control on the sub control panel to move the burst phase ±90° or more. Verify the following conditions are met:  CHANGED +90° OK BURST SCH BURST OK NG NG −90° CHANGED The CF phase changes from OK to NG within the range of +90±20°. The CF phase changes from NG to OK within the range of −90±20°. If the specification is not satisfied, check the deviation form the specification and perform the adjustment in Step 2, then perform Step3 and confirm. Repeat this procedure until the specification is satisfied.	(Adjustment Position Check)

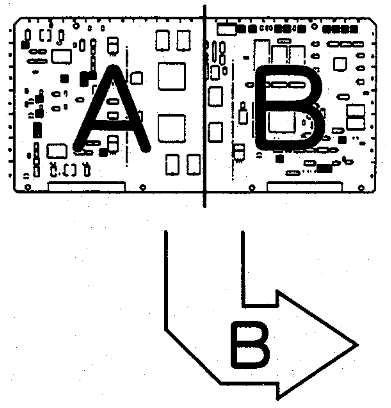
12-11. REFERENCE CF PHASE ADJUSTMENT

[CONNECTION]

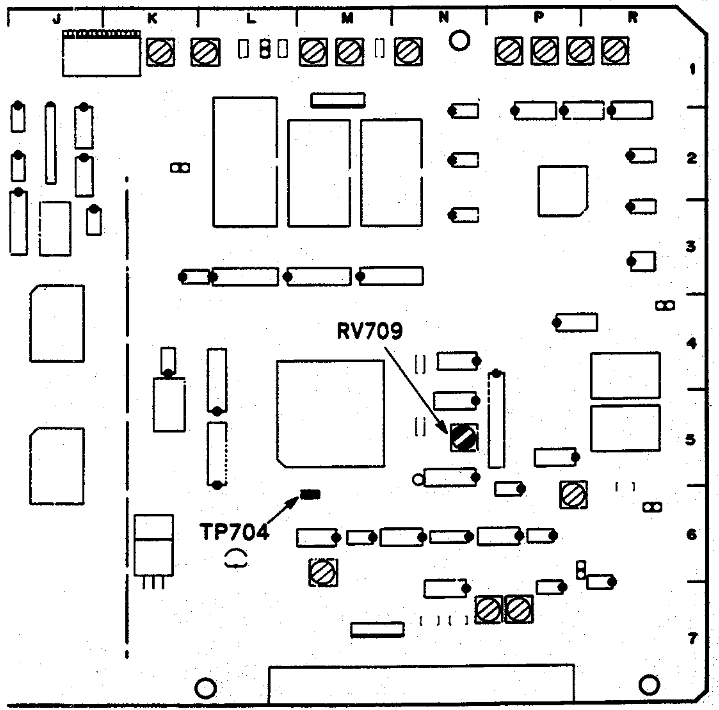

OSCILLOSCOPE
CH2
CH1
FRAME PULSE
TSG271
BLACK
GEN LOCK
75Ω
1411
EXT
A
1751
BLACK
75Ω
REF VIDEO IN
(75ΩSW OFF)
PVW-2600P

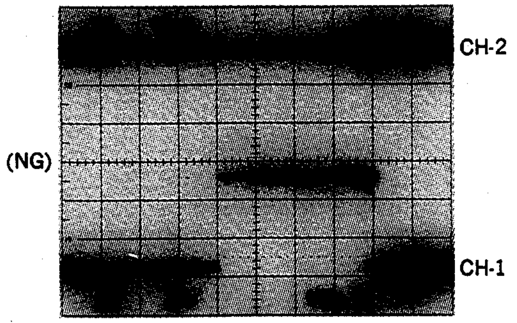
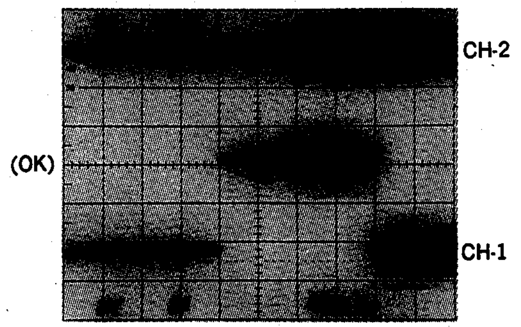
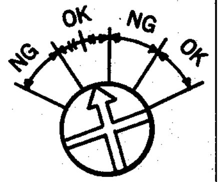
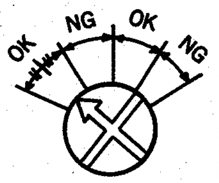
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect the equipments as shown in the upper figure.	Step1 REF VIDEO IN through out Picture of the vectorscope  (A) Set the dot of the burst on the right position on the scale. (B) The SYNC should be in the same direction as the burst (SCH=0°).	(A) SYNC Adjustment PHASE Control/Vectorscope (B) Burst Adjustment SC control/1411 TRIG: EXT/WFM

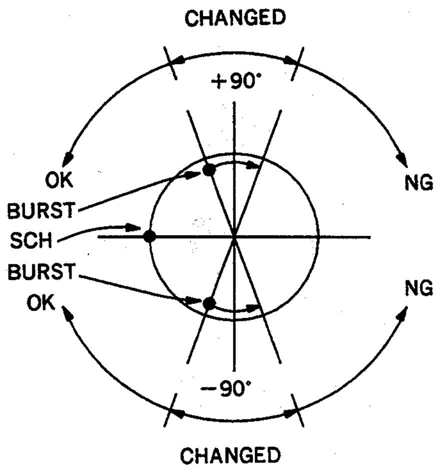
TBC-18 board



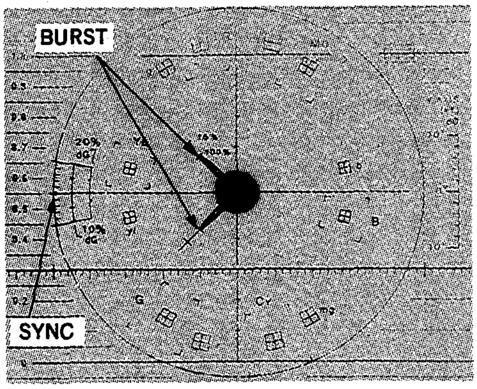
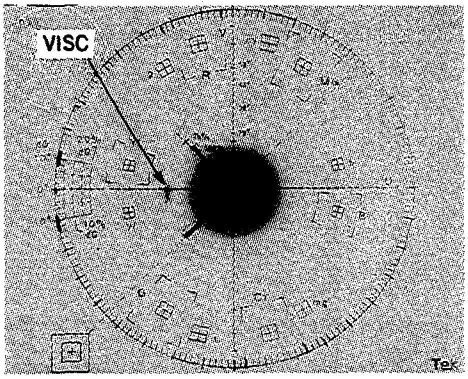
APPLICATION : 12-11. Step2


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV709
TP704

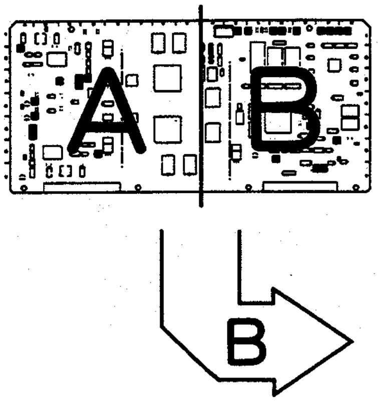
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
	Step2 CH-1 : TP704(1ST FIELD)/TBC-18(M-6) CH-2 : FIELD PULSE terminal/TSG271 Waveform of the oscilloscope   (1) Turn RV709 counterclockwise fully. (2) When RV709 is turned clockwise gradually, the phase condition between CH1 and CH2 changes from NG to OK or OK to NG. (3) In case of the pattern of change is started to NG as shown in waveform monitor, set RV709 to mechanical center of range of first OK. NG → OK → NG → OK ↑ the mechanical center of this range  (4) In case of the pattern of change in started OK as shown in waveform monitor, set RV709 to mechanical center of range of first OK. OK → NG → OK → NG ↑ the mechanical center of this range  * If the range of first OK is extremely narrow, set to mechanical center of range of second OK.	(1ST FIELD) ❶RV709/TBC-18(N-5) TRIG: CH-1

Preparations for adjustment	**Specifications**	**Adjustments**
	Step3 While monitoring the burst phase with the vectorscope described in Step1, observe the CF phase for normal/inverted condition by the oscilloscope waveforms described in Step2. Check whether the adjustment position is in the center of the OK range or not. Use SC control on the 1411 to move the burst phase ±90° or more. Verify the following conditions are met:  CHANGED +90° OK BURST SCH BURST OK NG NG −90° CHANGED The CF phase changes from OK to NG within the range of +90±20°. The CF phase changes from NG to OK within the range of −90±20°. If the specification is not satisfied, check the deviation form the specification and perform the adjustment in Step2, then perform Step3 and confirm. Repeat this procedure until the specification is satisfied.	(Adjustment Position Check)

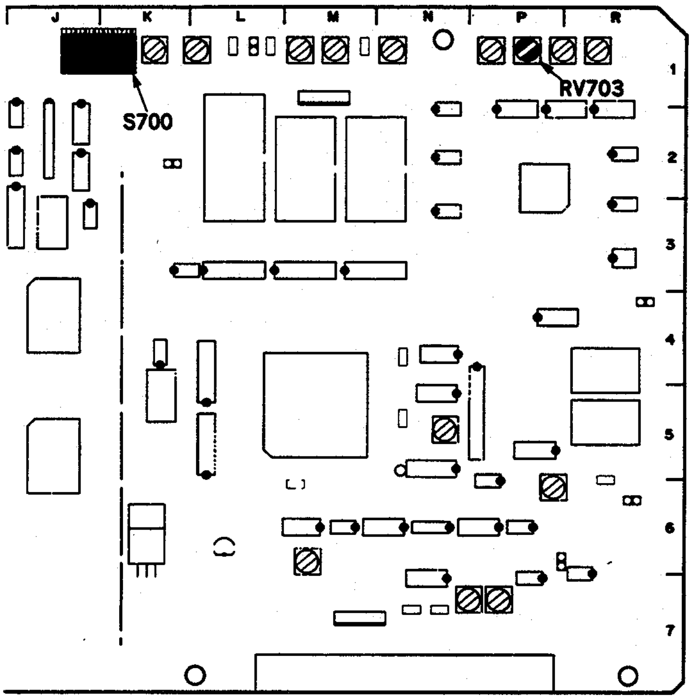
12-12. VISC LOCK IN ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Set the S700-6 (VISC TEST)(K-1) on TBC-18 board to ON. Step1 • Play back the composite V sweep signal with VISC portion (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD	VIDEO OUT1 Picture of the vectorscope (1751 vector mode) (A)  (B), (C)  (LINE 8) (A) The SYNC and burst should be in same phase. (B) Check that the VISC is within ±45°, when the CAPSTAN LOCK switch is set to 2FD. (C) Set the CAPSTAN LOCK switch to 8FD, then align the VISC in the same direction of the burst.	(A) SYNC Adjustment SYNC control/ sub control panel (B) Burst Adjustment SC control/ sub control panel (C) (VISC P) ●RV703/TBC-18(P-1) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2
Step2 • Set the S700-6(K-1) on the TBC-18 board to OFF.	Check that the VISC should disappear.	TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

TBC-18 board

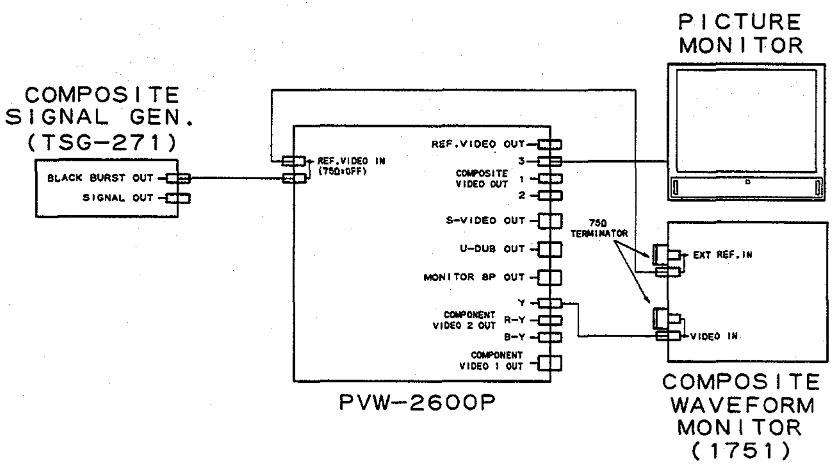


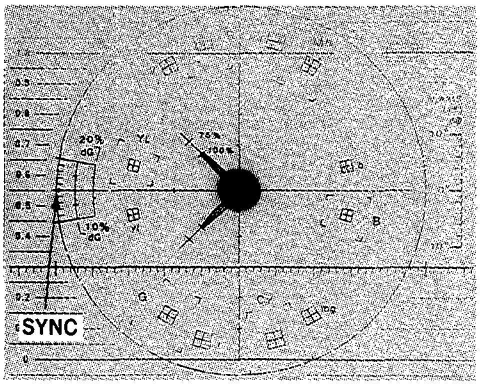
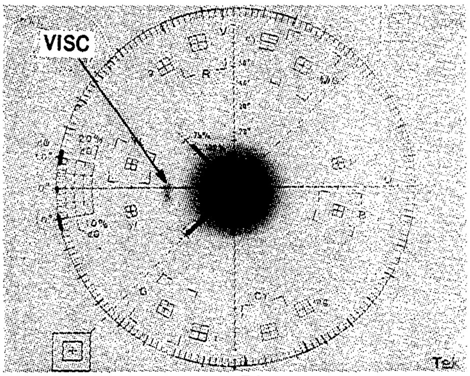
APPLICATION : 12-12


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
S700
RV703

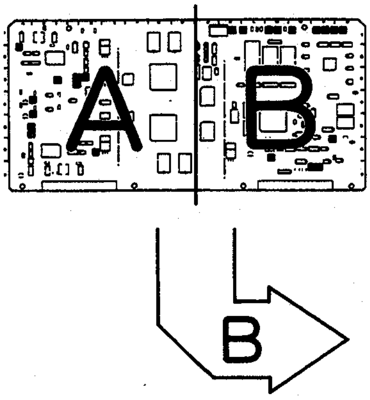
12-13. VISC REGEN PHASE ADJUSTMENT

[CONNECTION]

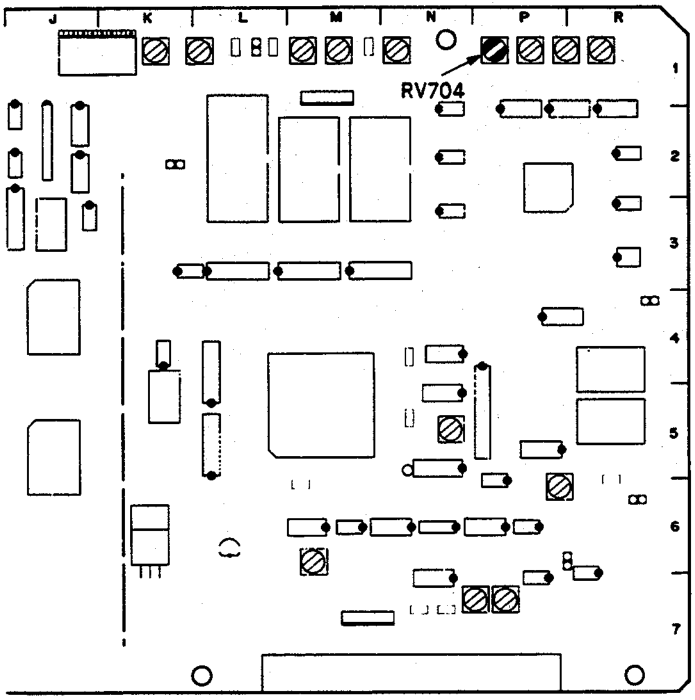

PICTURE MONITOR
COMPOSITE SIGNAL GEN. (TSG-271)
BLACK BURST OUT
SIGNAL OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
REF.VIDEO OUT
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT
3
1
2
S-VIDEO OUT
U-DUB OUT
MONITOR 8P OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT
Y
R-Y
B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
75Ω TERMINATOR
EXT REF.IN
VIDEO IN
PVW-2600P
COMPOSITE WAVEFORM MONITOR (1751)

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect a waveform/vector monitor to COMPONENT 2 Y OUT connector. • Play back the composite V sweep signal with VISC portion (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT Picture of the vectorscope (A)  (B)  (LINE8) (A) The SYNC dot should be on the normal position. (B) The VISC should be in the same phase as the SYNC.	(A) SYNC Adjustment PHASE Control/Vectorscope (B) (VISC R) ⊘RV704/TBC-18(P-1) TRIG: INT/WFM

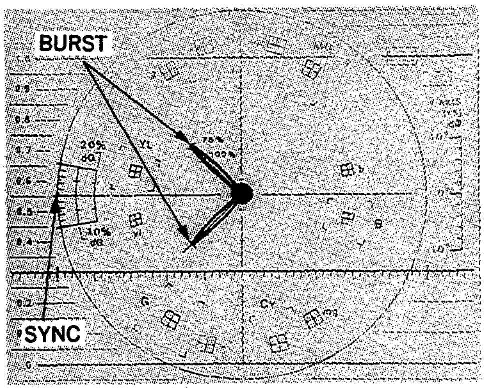
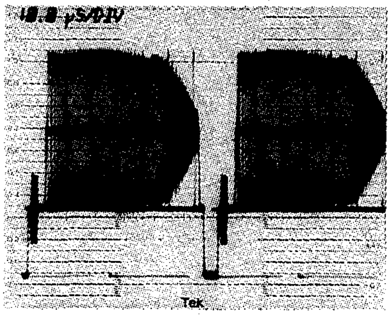
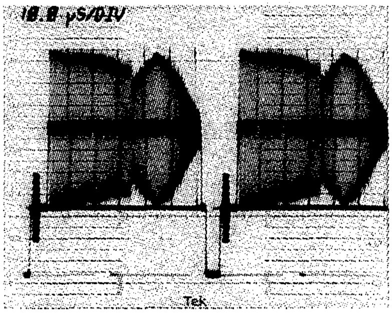
TBC-18 board



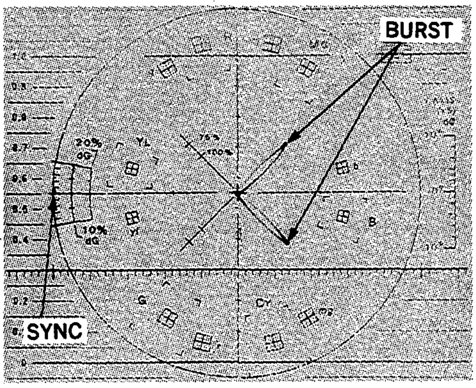
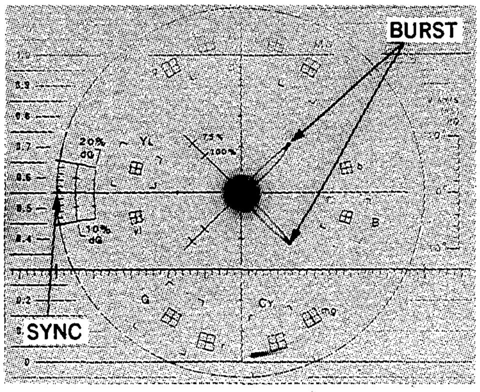
APPLICATION : 12-13.


J
K
L
M
N
P
R
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RV704

12-14. VISC TRACKING CHECK

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Play back the composite V sweep signal with VISC portion (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD	Step1 VIDEO OUT 1 Picture of the vectorscope  The SYNC and burst should be in the same phase (SCH=0°).	(SYNC Adjustment) SYNC control/sub control panel (Burst Adjustment) SC control/sub control panel TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2
	Step2 VIDEO OUT 1 Switch the mode from play back to stop and then back to play back, and observe the waveform of the waveform monitor. OK  NG  Perform this procedure five times. The waveform observed should be accepted each time this is made.	(Tracking Check) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

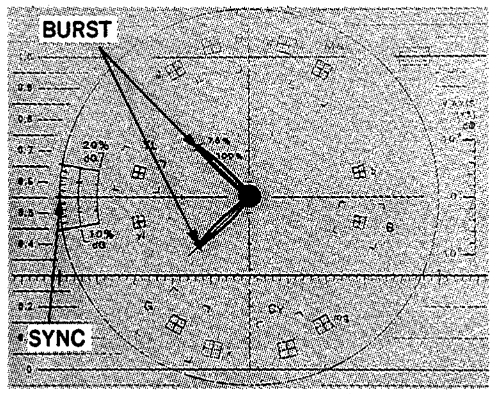
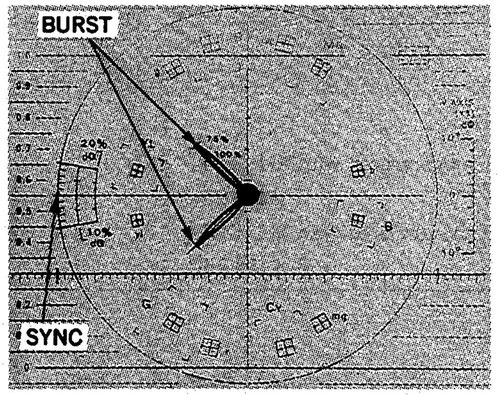
12-15. H SHIFT CHECK

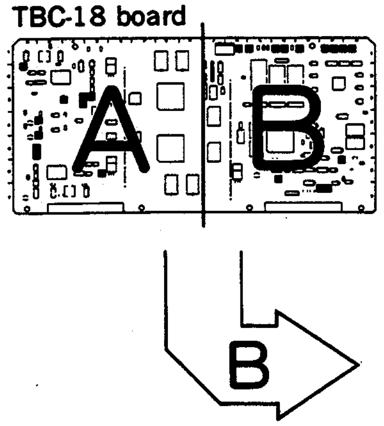
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Connect a waveform/vector monitor to VIDEO OUT 1 connector. • Connect a monitor TV to VIDEO OUT 3 connector. • Play back the composite V sweep signal with VISC portion (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS.	Step1 VIDEO OUT The SYNC and burst should be in the same phase. (SCH=0°)  BURST SYNC 20% dG 10% dG YL 75% 100% G CY B When setting the CAPSTAN LOCK switch on the sub control panel between 2FD and 8FD, the monitor TV screen should present no H shift.	(SYNC Adjustment) SYNC control/sub control panel (Burst Adjustment) SC control/sub control panel TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2
	Step2 VIDEO OUT Invert the burst phase on the vectorscope.  BURST SYNC 20% dG 10% dG YL 75% 100% G CY B When setting the CAPSTAN LOCK switch on the sub control panel between 2FD and 8FD, the monitor TV screen should H shift as follows: CAP.SW. 2FD 8FD picture shift left side right side After check is completed, set the CAPSTAN LOCK switch to 8FD. Then use the SC control to return to the state defined in Step 1.	(Burst Phase) SC control/sub control panel TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

12-16. NO BURST REF IN CHECK

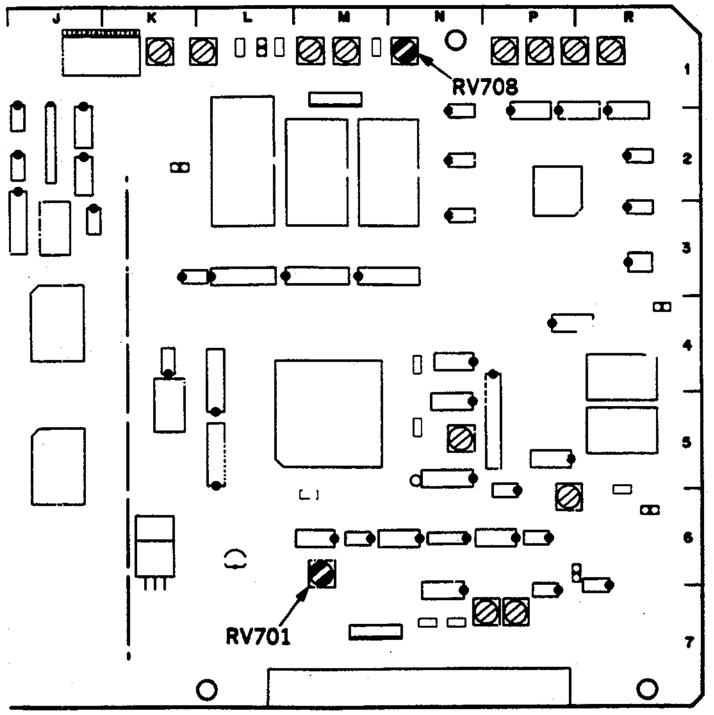
Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Supply a video signal without burst to REF. VIDEO INPUT connector. • Connect a monitor TV to VIDEO OUT connector. • Play back the composite V sweep signal with VISC portion (28:00—30:00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • CAPSTAN LOCK switch (sub control panel): 8FD	VIDEO OUT Picture of the monitor TV H Shift is not done. (H shift repeatedly to the right and left is delinquent.)	(H Shift Check) CONNECTION 2

12-17. INT SCH PHASE ADJUSTMENT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Disconnect the REF. VIDEO INPUT connector and put the unit into INT REF. mode. • Connect CH-A of a vectorscope to VIDEO OUT 1 connector, and CH-B to REF. VIDEO OUT connector.	Step1 VIDEO OUT 1 Vectorscope CH-A  (A) Set the dot of the burst on the normal position on the scale. (B) The SYNC should be in the same phase as the burst (SCH=0°).	(A) Burst Adjustment PHASE control/Vectorscope (B) (INT SC) ⊘RV708/TBC-18(N-1) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2
• After adjustment is completed, connect the REF. VIDEO INPUT connector.	Step2 REF.VIDEO OUT Vectorscope CH-B  (A) Set the dot of the burst on the normal position on the scale. (B) The SYNC should be in the same phase as the burst (SCH=0°).	(A) Burst Adjustment PHASE Control/Vectorscope (B) (SYNC PHASE) ⊘RV701/TBC-18(M-6) TRIG: INT/WFM CONNECTION 2

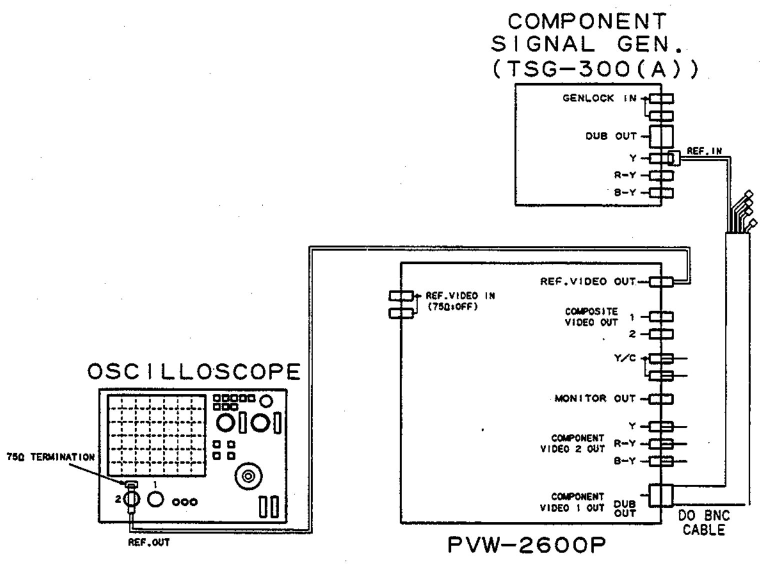


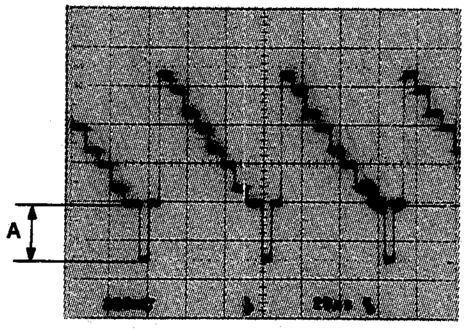
APPLICATION : 12-17.



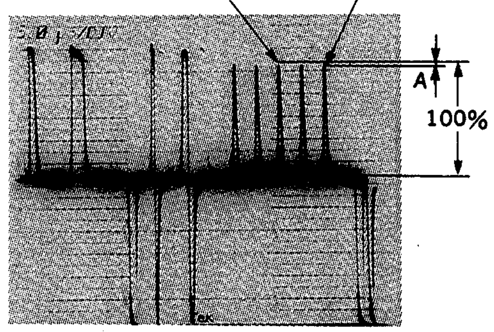
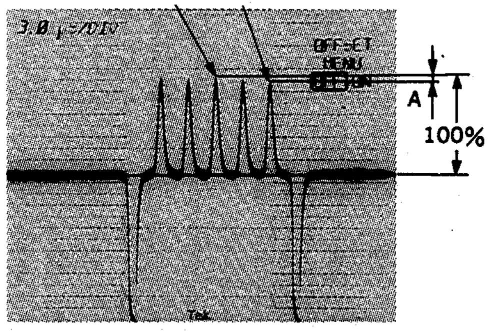
12-18. DUB OUT REF IN CHECK

[CONNECTION]


COMPONENT SIGNAL GEN. (TSG-300(A))
GENLOCK IN
DUB OUT
Y
R-Y
B-Y
REF. IN
REF.VIDEO OUT
REF.VIDEO IN (75Ω:OFF)
COMPOSITE VIDEO OUT 1 2
Y/C
MONITOR OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO 2 OUT Y R-Y B-Y
COMPONENT VIDEO 1 OUT
DUB OUT
DO BNC CABLE
PVW-2600P
OSCILLOSCOPE
75Ω TERMINATION
REF.OUT

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Supply a component color bar Y signal to the REF IN terminal (DUB OUT REF IN terminal) (9-10 (G)) of COMPONENT 1 OUTPUT connector. (Using a multi connector cable DOBNC.) • Connect the oscilloscope to the REF. VIDEO connector which is terminated at 75Ω. • Disconnect a REF. VIDEO INPUT connector. • After check is completed, connect the REF. VIDEO INPUT connector.	DUB IN REF OUT (terminated by 75Ω) Waveform of the oscilloscope  A (1) A=300±30 mV p-p (2) Only Y signal of the color bar should appear.	(DUB REF Operation Check) TRIG: INT CONNECTION 2

12-19. PLAY BACK COMPONENT LINEARITY CHECK

Preparations for adjustment	Specifications	Adjustments
• Play back the LINE 17A signal portion (19: 00—22: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform monitor 1781R to COMPONENT 2 Y OUTPUT connector. • Waveform monitor 1781R: DIFF/WFM mode	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT waveform of the waveform monitor the maximum in the five pulses the minimum in the five pulses  A 100% A≦2.8%	(Y Linearity Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1
• Play back the QUAD PHASE signal portion (22: 00—24: 00) of the alignment tape CR5-1B PS. • Connect a waveform monitor 1781R to COMPONENT 2 R-Y OUTPUT and B-Y OUTPUT connector. • Waveform monitor 1781R: DIFF/PARADE mode	COMPONENT 2 Y OUT waveform of the waveform monitor max min  A 100% (1) as compared with R-Y OUT A≦3.8% (2) as compared with B-Y OUT A≦3.8%	(Y Linearity Check) TRIG: REF. VIDEO CONNECTION 1